

THE
EXPERIENCED FARRIER,
OR,
Farring Compleated.

IN TWO BOOKS
PHYSICAL and CHYRURGICAL
BEING
Pleasure to the Gentleman, and Profit to the
Country-man.

IN WHICH
You have the Whole Body, Sum and Substance of
it, in one Entire Volume, in so Full and Ample Manner, that there
is Little or Nothing more Material to be Added thereto.

For here is Contained
Every thing that belongs to a True HORSE-MAN, GROOM, FARRIER,
or HORSE-LEACH, *Viz. BREEDING; The Manner How, The Season
When, The Place Where, The Colours, Marks and Shapes of all Stallions
and Mares, and what are Fit for Generation; The Feeder, Rider,
Keeper, Ambler and Buyer; As also the making of several Precious
Drinks, Suppositories, Pills, Purgations, Scourings, Ointments, Salves,
Powders, Waters, Charges, Balls, Perfumes; And Directions how
to use them for all Inward and Outward Disafes.*

ALSO
The PARING and SHOOING of all manner of HOOVES, and in what Point that
ART doth Consist. The Prices and Vertues of most of the Principal Drugs, both
Simple and Compound belonging to *Farring*, (and where you may buy them)
VI. Roots, Bark, Woods, Flowers, Fruits, Seeds, Juices, Gums, Resins, &c. As
also a large Table of the Vertues of most Simples set down Alphabetically; And
many Hundreds of Words Placed one after another, for the Cure of all Diseases, With
many New Receipts of Excellent Use and Value, never yet Printed before in any Author.

By E. R. Gent.

LONDON, Printed for Rich. Northcott Adjoyning to St. Peters Alley in Cernhill,
and at the Marriner and Anchor upon New-Fish street Hill, near London-bridge. 1678.

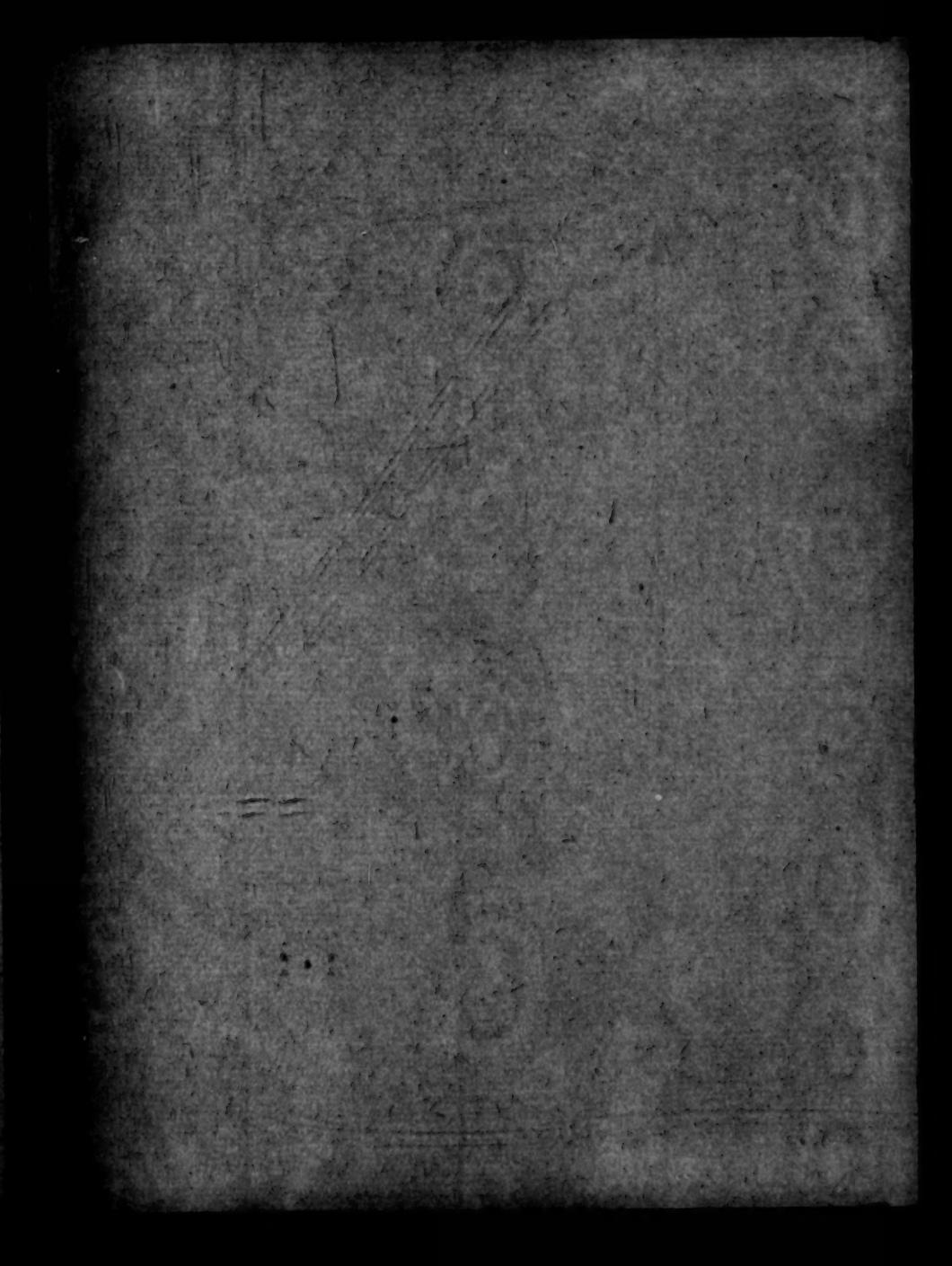
43-1070



*The Right Honourable
Dodgson Hamilton Muddlen*

268

15





horse. My dun mare foaled May 13. 87. at 9. m. in the Evening. She
 failed. My Chestnut mare was covered Aug. 11. 20th 1687.
 and it. My old dun mare was covered June 11. 28th 1688.
 failed. My old dun mare was covered May 11. 16th 1690.
 failed. My Chestnut Mare foaled Aug. 11. 1690. mare. said mare.
 And was covered againe June 24. following.
 My grey Colt went to yearling in 16. month & backd Mar. 16.
 My old dun mare foaled Mar. 17. 1690. mare. a bay foal. bay
 My young dun mare was covered Apr. 11. 30th of July 81.
 My old dun mare was covered June 11. 21. 81. said it & did.
 My Chestnut mare foaled Aug. 11. 1691. bay mare.
 My young dun mare was covered May 11. 17. 1692.
 My mare foaled May 11. 27. 1693. p. mare: a dun mare with
 And was covered againe June 11. 3. following.
 My Chestnut mare was covered May 11. 1692.
 My mare And foaled 1693. a brown mare foal
 My mare My dun mare foaled 1693. a bay mare foal
 My black Mare foaled (11. 19. day of April 1702. A mare
 And was covered againe June 27. of April 1702. & 2. p. mare
 And was covered againe 20th Apr. 1700. by R. L. L. L.
 My Curys Mare foaled on Horse Coat in May 1714. Covered by M. J. L. L. L.
 foaled on Horse May 11. 1716 Covered by M. J. L. L. L.
 170 Covered by M. J. L. L. L.
 My Black Mare foaled on Horse Coat in June in August. 1717.
 foaled on Horse Coat in July 1718.
 Covered by my daughter horse in May 1719.

Cure. Young Mare of trophelon

My little black Mare, run with the old Span horse all year

on 5th Sept 1724 foaled a black horse Colt

18 Sept 1724 Sea was covered by Mr. Wood's black Colt & did not hold

But Spring after was turned to the old horse

On 20th March 1725 foaled a brown Mare Colt

Nov: 19 1734. Hipp: foaled a Black Horse foal gotten by
Philip Showgers Gray Cart Stone horse.

On the 28. following was covered by Nutcracker
Chestnut Colt. from Yoxford.

On the 27th the young Brown Cart mare was
covered by Philip Showgers grey Stone horse
July 4th ~~the~~ Old Hipp covered again.

Oct. 8. The Gray Alt foaled a Horse foal got by the ~~Old~~ Black
March 4th 29 1735 foaled a Chestnut mare foal
March 29 1735 - - - by Old Hipp: gotten by the

April 27. Covered again by Nutcracker Black Stone horse

May 11th 1741. My Riding Mare was covered by Nutcracker Hunter. foaled a horse foal.
Colt. of next May 2nd 1742. Took the same Horse May 11th 1742. Covered
again 3 weeks after. - May 4th 1743. foaled
a Bay Horse Colt with a white strip up on his neck

May 4th 24. Covered again by Smith's Black Stone horse Did not hold

May 9th 22. 1744. Covered again by the same Nutcracker.



THE
EXPERIENCED FARRIER,
OR,
FarringCompleated.

IN TWO BOOKS
PHYSICAL and CHYRURGICAL
BEING
Pleasure to the Gentleman, and Profit to the
Countrey-man.

IN WHICH
You have the Whole Body, Sum and Substance of
it, in one Entire Volume, in so Full and Ample Manner, that there
is Little or Nothing more Material to be Added thereto.

For here is Contained
Every thing that belongs to a True HORSE-MAN, GROOM, FARRIER,
or HORSE-LEACH, *Viz. BREEDING; The Manner How, The Season
When, The Place Where, The Colours, Marks and Shapes of all Stallions
and Mares, and what are Fit for Generation; The Feeder, Rider,
Keeper, Ambler and Buyer; As also the making of several Precious
Drinks, Suppositories, Pills, Purgations, Scourings, Ointments, Salves,
Powders, Waters, Charges, Balls, Perfumes; And Directions how
to use them for all Inward and Outward Disases.*

ALSO
The PARING and SHOOING of all manner of HOOVES, and in what Point that
ART doth Consist. The Prices and Vertues of most of the Principal Drugs, both
Simple and Compound belonging to *Farring*, (and where you may buy them)
Viz. Roots, Barks, Woods, Flowers, Fruits, Seeds, Juices, Gums, Resins, &c. As
also a large Table of the Vertues of most Simples set down Alphabetically; And
many Hundreds of Words Placed one after another, for the Cure of all Diseases, With
many New Receipts of Excellent Use and Value, never yet Printed before in any Author.

By E. R. Gent.

LONDON, Printed for Rich. Northcott Adjoyning to St. Peters Alley in Cernhill,
and at the Marriner and Anchor upon New-Fish street Hill, near London-bridge. 1678.



TO THE READER.

YOU would say, That this Book, though New, is no otherwise then Old, by reason that a great Part thereof are Collections, and therefore the less to be regarded. Let me ask you one Question, Is the Honey the worse, because the Bee sucks it out of many Flowers; Or is the Spiders Web the more to be Valued, because Extracted out of her own Bowels; Let not this be any Prejudice to this Book, but Peruse it without Partiality, and with the Judgement of a Fattier, and you shall then find that these Old Collections are become New; Not because they are New Printed, but because they are New Digested and Modelized: and put into a better Form and Method then ever yet before Printed. For let me tell you, there was never anything in this Nature ever Printed before, but there was something or other wanting to make it a Compleat Book of Farring. But in this you shall finde nothing wanting, either to the Perfelling a Cure of all Diseases of a Horse, either inward or outward, or to the making a Man a Compleat Horseman. Besides these Old Collections, you shall find a great many New Additions. As First, the Price, Value and Vertue of most of the Principal Drugs, both Simple and Compound, belonging to Farring, as they are commonly sold at the Druggist in London. Secondly, you have a large Table of the Nature, Temperature and Vertue of most Simples set down Alphabetically. Thirdly, you have an Accompt in general what things are good for every Disease, set down in Order one after another, which you are to use as your Discretion serveth. Fourthly, wherever you find a Hand pointing, you shall find such Receipts as have often been made use of with very good success, and which was never yet Printed before in any Author. Fifthly, you have the Gathering, Drying and Preserving of Simples and their Juices. Sixthly, you have the Making and Drying of all necessary Compounds. Seventhly, you have hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the

Nil dictum quod
non prius dictum.

The Epistle Dedicatory.

Body. *Eighthly*, you have cold Medicaments appropriate to the same use. *Ninthly*, you have the Properties of purging Medicaments. *Tenthly*, you have the Properties of Altering Medicaments. *Eleventhly*, you have a Table of all the Diseases of a Horse, either inward or outward, set down Alphabetically, shewing where they do grow, in any part of his Body, how you may know them, and what were the Causes that bred them. *Twelfthly*, you have in the Table of the said Diseases the page quoted where to finde the proper Cures for every one of them. *Thirteenthly and lastly*, you have five infallible Cures never yet put to Press before, which your Table of Diseases will direct you to. *Viz.* The Glaunders, Farcin, Staling of blood, Scratches, and making the brittlest Hoof, that it is so Tough that it will carry a Shoe passing well; With many other Things contained in this Book, which is not here inserted.

THE

THE EXPERIENC'D FARRIER.

The first Part.

The Shapes of a Horse.

HE must have the Eyes and Joynts of an *Ox*, the Strength of a *Mule*, the Foot of the same, the Hoofs and Thighs of an *Ass*, the Throat and Neck of a *Wolf*, the Eare and Tail of a *Fox*, the Breast and Hair of a *Woman*, the Boldness of a *Lion*, the sharp and quick Sight of a *Serpent*, the Pace of a *Cat*, the Lightness and Nimbleness of a *Hare*, a high *Pace*, a deliberate *Trot*, a pleasant *Gallop*, a swift *Running*, a rebounding *Leap* and *Present*, and be quick in hand.

The Colours of a Horse in Verse.

*If you desire a Horse thee long to serve.
Take a Brown-bay, and him with Care preserve.
The Gray's not ill, but he is prized far
That is Cole-black, and blazed with a Star:
If for thy self, or Friend, thou wilt procure
A Horse, let him White-Lyard be, he'll long Endure.*

The Shapes of a Horse. Another Way.

He ought to have three of an *Ox*, which is a fair and full *Eye*, a large *Neck*, and to be strong and short Joynted. 1. *Ox.*

Three of a *Fox*, which is to have a comely and short *Trot*, small, and long *Eares*, and a Bushy *Tail*. 2. *Fox.*

Three of a *Hurt*, which is to have lean and dry *Legs*, to be well risen before, and a lean *Head*. 3. *Hurt.*

Three of a *Woman*, which is to have a fair and large *Breast*, to have a beautiful and full *Hair*, and gentle to his Rider and Keeper. 4. *Woman.*

*A Proverb amongst Husbandmen.**If you have a Foal with four white Feet, keep him not a day.**If you have a Foal with three white Feet, make him soon away.**If you have a Foal with two white Feet, give him to thy Friend.**If you have a Foal with one white Foot, keep him to his lives End.**These things are good to strow in a Horses Provender.*

Turnerick,
white Lilly
Roots chop-
ped small or
diced.

The Powder of *Annisecds*, *Licoris*, *Fennegreek*, *Bay-berries*, *Brimstone*, *Allum*, *Hemp-seed*, *Alacampane*, or the Roots of *Pollipodium* of the *Oak* or *Savin*, *Marshmallows*, *Rhue*, *Hyssop*, *Here-hound*, *Colts-foot*. If you give him the Herbs green, you must chop them small, if dry, beat them to powder, which simples will keep him sound and in perfect health; for their Vertues are to purifie the *Blood*, prevent *Obstructions*, open and resolve the *Liver*, cool the *Blood*, keep and preserve the whole structure of the body in sound and perfect Health.

These things you are always to have in a readines by you.

Fennegreek a pound, *Licoris* half a pound, *Bay-berries* a quarter of a pound, *London-Treacle* one pound, *Annisecds* a quarter of a pound, *Cummin-seeds* a quarter of a pound, *Grains* a quarter of a pound, *Turnerick* a quarter of a pound, *Long-Pepper* two ounces, *Alacampane* half a pound, *Alum* half a pound, *Brimstone* half a pound, green *Copperas* half a pound, *Savin* three handfuls, *Chopt-hair* a handful.

These things Repeated over again with their Vertues declared.

Fennegreek, *Licoris*, *Bay-berries*, *London-Treacle*, *Annisecds*, *Cummin-seeds*, *Grains*, *Long-pepper*, *Alacampane*, all good for } Colds.
Colds.


Turnerick, good to Purge the blood }
and to Cure the *Yellows*. } *Yellows*.

Throw these
things among
his Proven-
der.

Brimstone, *Alacampane*, *Allum*, *Savin*, }
Chopt-hair, good for the *Wormes*. } *Wormes*.

The Office of the Breeder.

3

If you are ask't what fault your Horse hath, if you know him to be sound, you may answer him in this manner. 

He hath neither *Splint*, *Spavin*, nor *wind*, *gall* *Scratches*, *Crepases*, nor *Rats-tails*, *Mules* nor *Civil-heeles*, *Sellander*, nor *Mallender*, *Curb*, *Ring-bone*, *Quitter-bone*, *Hough-bonny*, *Sit-fast*, *Ambury*, *Vines*, but good *Eyes*, and good *Thighs*; Or if you can affirm him further to be sound, you may say he hath neither *Farcin*, *Foundred-Foot*, *broken-wind*, *Molten-grease*, nor *Running-glaunders*.

The Office of the Breeder.

The best Manner of Breeding.

YOU are not to breed in Fenny, Moorish Pastures, nor in Lands too Fertile, nor too Barren, the Golden Number is the best temper, yet to incline a little to hardness, is better then much rankness, the one breeds Health and the other Diseases. Let the situation be a little hilly, and in some places stony and rocky, for they are very good for *Cols* to play on, and helpeth their *VVind*, and knitteth their *Joynts*, and hardeneth and maketh tough their *Hoofs*; and no matter how rough and uncertain it is, for it will make them the more sure footed. As much ground as will keep a *Milch-Cow*, will keep a *Milch-Mare*.

Change of Grounds.

You are to have three sorts of Grounds, one to Foal in, another to *Summer* in, and a third to *VVinter* in. The first to be without danger, the second not to be without shelter of *Bushes*, or under *Wood*, to defend them from *Storms* and *Tempests*; and the third is to have good *Hovels*, *Sheds*, *Barnes*, or *Back-stables*, wherein may be stored *Winter-Provision*. You are likewise to Accommodate your Grounds with *Partitions*, to put each Cattel by themselves, as your young and old, rafe or breeding *Mares* by themselves, your *VVeanlings* by themselves, your *Fillies* by themselves, and your stoned *Cols* by themselves, or else your Breed will come to nothing, and you may run the hazard both of your cost and pains.

Choyce of Stallions.

You are to be careful, that neither your *Stallion* nor *Mare* have any of these defects, viz. Neither *Moon-eyes*, *Watery-eyes*, or *Bloodshot Eyes*, neither *Splint*, nor *Spavin*, nor *Curb*, &c. Nor any Natural Imperfection, for the *Colts* will take them as Hereditary from their Parents. I shall advise you that you choose the best and ablest, the highest spirited, the fairest coloured, and the finest shaped, whether he be *Neapolitan*, *Turk*, *Spaniard*, *Barbary*, *English*, *Dutch*, *Polander*, *French* or *German*, and that you would inform your self of all Natural defects in the *Stallion* (for it is impossible to find out absolute perfection) and to amend them in the *Mare*, and what is amiss in the *Mare* to see it Repaired in the *Horse*.

The Age of Stallions and Mares.

A *Stallion* ought not to be younger than four years when he Covereth a *Mare*, and he will beget *Colts* from that Age to twenty. And a *Mare* may bring forth from three years old to thirteen, when she is four years she will nourish her *Colt* best, but after she is ten years she is not good, for commonly an old *Mare-Colt* will be heavy in Labour.

Observations upon Covering.

Let your *Mare* be covered from the end of the first Quarter to the full of the Moon, or at the full, for those *Colts* will be more strong and hardier of Nature.

After the Change.

It is not good for *Mares* to be covered after the Change, for those *Colts* will be tender and nice.

The VVain.

Mark the *VVain* in that time the *Mare* was Covered, the same time of the Moon she will Foal.

Burning.

If your *Mare* hath been Covered, and the *Colt* knit within her, if another Horse covers her he burns her.

Of Spaying a Mare-Colt.

If a *Mare-Colt* be Spayed nine days after it is Foaled, she will prove (as some say) Fair, Gallant and well.

Of Gelding of Colts.

Horses will be better shaped, and in less danger of Gelding if they be gelt at nine or fifteen dayes old, if the Stones appear, or so soon as you find them fall down into the Cod.

The time of Gelding is when the Moon is in the Wain, the Sign in Aries or Virgo, the time of the year is early in the Spring or Fall.

What time a Mare is to take Horse.

If your *Mare* be covered of St. Lucies day, which is the thirteenth of December, then she will foal about St. Thomas his day, the same Moneth in the year following.

How long time a Mare goes.

During the time of her going with Foal, from the day of her Covering unto the day of her Foaling, is commonly twelve Moneths and ten dayes, unless it be a young *Mare* upon her first *Colt*, which may come sooner.

How to order her before she is Covered.

You are to take her into the House about six weeks before she is Covered, and feed her well with good Hay and Oats, well sifted, to the end she may have Strength and Seed to perform the Office of Generation. But if you would have her certainly Conceive, then take blood from both sides of her Neck, and let her bleed nigh a quart of either vein, which you must do five or six dayes before you have her Covered; if you desire to have a *Horse-Colt* of your *Mare*, then let her be Covered when one of the first Masculine Signes do reign, which are either Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, or Leo. But if she be Covered when any of the Feminine Signes be Predominate, as Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius or Pisces, then be confident it will be a *Mare*, for it is so certain, that it seldom or never fails, especially if the Wind be either West or North, but West is best.

The Manner of Covering her.

You are to bring her out into some broad Place, and tie her to a Post, then bring out some Stone Jade to dally with her, to provoke her to appetite, then let the Stallion be led out by two men, and let him leap her, and let him do it in the Morning fasting, and when the Horse is dismounting, throw a Pail full of cold water upon her Shape, which by reason of the coldness will make her shrink in, and truss up her Body, and will make her retain her Seed the better; then take away the Stallion, and let her be put out of the hearing of the Horse, and let her neither eat nor drink in four or five houres after, and give her a Mash and white water. If she stands to her Covering, you may know it by this, if she keeps a good Stomach, and does not Neigh at the sight of a Horse, or if she does not Piss often, or open and shut her Shape often; or that if her Belly, four days after her Covering, be more gant, and her hair more slick and close to her skin, &c.

How many Mares for one Horse.

If you Cover abroad, one Horse will serve twelve Mares, if you expect no other service from him; but if you keep him in the Stable where he hath extraordinary keeping, he will serve fifteen.

How to Order a Mare after Covering to her Foaling.

Keep her with the same Diet as before Covering, for three weeks or a Month after, lest the Seed be empai red before it be formed in the Womb; and let her be kept sweet and clean without any Exercise, during three weeks or a Month, and to keep her in the House till mid-May, and not to turn her out before mid-May, and with her Feet well pared, and a thin pair of Shooes upon them, and take her in again the latter end of September, if not before, and keep her to the end of her Foaling, and let her be loose in the Stable with good store of straw with her, that so the Foal may fall the softer, for a Mare does usually Foal standing.

How to help her if she cannot Foal.

If she cannot Foal, hold her Nostrils so that she cannot take her wind; or if that will not do, take the quantity of a Wallnut of Madder, and dissolve

dissolve it in a pint of old Ale, and being warm give it the *Mare*, if both fail, take the help of some understanding *Farrrier*. If she cannot avoid her *Secundine*, then boyl two or three handfulls of *Fennel* in running water, and take half a pint of it with as much Sack, or for want thereof, a pint of strong Beer or Ale, with a fourth part of Sallet-oyle, mix them together, and give it her Luke-warm into her Nostrils, and hold them close for a good space, or, for want thereof, give her good green *Wheat*, or *Rye* (but *Rye* is the best) and they are as effectual. Let her not eat her Clean, for that is very unwholesom and will dry up her Milk.

To order her after Foaling.

When she hath Foaled, and licked her Foal, Milk and stroak her before the *Colt* doth suck, which will both cause her to bring down her Milk, but make it to multiply, and keep it that it doth not clod; which may cause her to become dry, which if there be cause, boyl as much Milk as you can get from her, with the leaves of *Lavender*, or *Spike*, and bath the Udder with it warm till it be broken, and the knobs and knots dissolved. Let her water after Foaling be white water, which is Bran put into her water, and give her sweet *Mashes*; and a Month after her Foaling give her a *Milke*, and put into it some *Brimstone* or *Savin*, which will be a great Preservation to the *Colt*. And then if she be moderately laboured at *Plough*, or *Harrow*, the *Mare* and *Colt* will be the better, provided she be kept from Raw-meats, while she remaineth in the Stable, which will both increase her Milk, and cause her *Colt* to thrive the better. And that you suffer not the *Colt* to suck when she is hot, lest thereby you Surfeit the *Colt*.

How long Foals are to run with their Dams.

Let them run with their Dams a full year at least, but if they be choyce Foals, then two years, for the loss of the use of the *Mare* will be no loss, in comparison of the benefit you will receive by the Foal; but if you want Accommodations Wean at seven months, but be sure to keep them well, for what they lose the first year they will hardly gain in three following; And at the Weaning give them *Savin* and *Butter* for divers Mornings together, or else the *Worm* and *Gargil* will hazard to destroy them; besides, have an eye to the *Strangle*, for it is apt to essay them, and if not taken in time it will destroy them; The first Winter spare neither Hay nor Corn, that is,
Oats

Oats in the Chaff or in the Sheaf, or give him any Offal that comes from any Grain whatsoever.

The Time of Foaling look'd upon to be very improper, because in the Winter-Season.

The Time of *Foaling*, as I have said before, I would have in *December* or *January*, which most hold to be a very improper time, the Weather being cold, and but little Grass, which of Necessity she must be Housed, and fed with hard Meat, which will dry up her Milk, and so starve the Foal: But to satisfy this Scruple, and to tell you, That Experience is the best Master, for certainly the winter season must needs be the best both for the *Mare* and *Foal*, being kept in a warm house; and as for her Milk, she will have great plenty, being fed well, and that more nourishing then that got at *Grass*, which will make him more lusty, and of greater Bone and Stature, and cleaner Limb'd, and more neatly Jointed and Hoof'd, and in better liking then that Colt Foaled in *May* or *June*, or any of the hotter Months, for though Grass doth yield great plenty of Milk, yet it is not so nourishing, because it is very thin and watery, therefore it will not yield so substantial Nourishment as the Winter-food, if it be good, for though the quantity of Milk is not so great, yet it is of greater goodness; And besides, the pinching Cold Rains and Floods in Winter, will so Nip the poor Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in such desperate manner, that the wanting her former plenty of Food and dry Lodging, her Milk will decay when the Colt hath most need of it, by which means they must needs both fall into extreme Poverty; And over and above all this, by his Running abroad with the Mare, he becometh so savage and wild, that if any Infirmitie seize upon him, his own unruliness being so great, the Cure may be very difficult, for infinite are the Number that hath perished in this kind.

When Mares are fit to take Horse.

Observe their Chasing and Galloping up and down morning and evening, and their throwing up of their Noses, and lifting up of their Tails, riding on one anothers backs, often Pissing, or opening of the Shapes, and closing of them again, which are signs of Lust.

To know the true Shape, Spirit, and Height of a Foal.

The same Shape that it carries at a Month old, he will carry at five years

years old, if he be not abused in after-keeping, and as the good Shape, so the Defects also.

From the Shin-bone.

A large shin-bone, that is long from the Knee to the Pastern in a Foal, shews a tall Horse.

From the space between his Knee and Withers.

Look what space he has between his Knee and Withers, double that will be his height when he is a compleat Horse.

From their Spirits to know their goodness.

If they are stirring Spirits, free from affrights, wanton of disposition, and very active in leaping and running, striving for Mastery, prove generally good mett'd Horses, the contrary, lades.

From his Hoofs.

If his Hoofs be strong, deep, tough, smooth, upright-standing and hollow, he cannot be evil, for they are the Foundation of his building, and lend Fortitude from all the rest. Therefore the *Barbary*-Horse is well known by his Hoofs, for there is no Horse hath naturally so good a Hoof as he.

Weaning of Foals.

Wean your ordinary Foals at the end of seven Months, your better at a year or two, and let them not be within the hearing of one another, and keep them very high the second year; but the third and forth put them to hard Grazing.

Taming of Colts.

You are to make them familiar to you from the first Weaning, and so Winter after Winter (in the house) use them to familiar Actions, as Rubbing, Clawing, Haltering, Leading to water, taking up of his Feet, knocking his Hoofs, and the like.

The Time to break Colts.

The best Time to break Colts to the Saddle is at three years old, and the advantage, or four at the utmost. But he that hath the patience to stay to see his Horse full Five, shall be sure to have him of longer continuance, and less subject to disease or infirmity, and on that (but by death) will hardly come to the knowledge of tiring.

Coiling of the Stud, or making of Election.

I advise you by no means to make too early Coiling: for some Horses will shew their best Shape at two and three years old, and lose it at four, others not till five, nay, six, but then keep it ever, some will do their best days work at six or seven years old, others not till eight or nine.

nine. But be the time when it will, let him preserve for his own use the best; those that be defective, I mean, such as bring incurable deformities, gross Sorrancess, as *Spavins*, *Ring-bones*, imperfect Eyes, or the like, make away with them.

Barren Mares.

If you find any of your Mares grow into Barrenness, away with them, for though I could prescribe you Remedies, yet they are not worthy of your use.

General Observations concerning Mares.

In length and height, a Mare groweth till she be five, and a Horse till he be six years old.

Covering.

When a Mare is past two years old, she may be Covered, but the best time is after four years old.

Bringing of Foals.

Common Mares may bring Foals every year, but let your best bring but every second year, especially if they bring Horse-colts.

To make a Mare sink Foal.

To make a Mare sink her Foal is to give her down her throat with a Horn some water, with three Grig Eccles, which will make her sink with a great deal of safety.

To make her stand to horse.

To make a Mare stand to Horse the better, is to let her stand by him two or three days before he cover her.

Stallion for Trotters.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either Neapolitan Courser, or Arabian, Turk, or Barbary, and for Amblers, either the Spanish Fennet, or the Irish Hobby.

Mares to horse.

Put your Mares to Horse, from the middle of March, till the middle of May, or middle June, the Moon having newly changed.

To put your horse into an empty house.

It is good to put the Horse and the Mare for three or four nights together in an empty house, and take him away in the morning, and feed him

The Office of the Breeder.

11

him well, and feed your Mare sparingly; but especially give her but little water.

Chasing the Mares.

At the end of six Months chase not the Mares, for then they are a quickning, and may easily be made to cast their Foals.

The Wall-eye.

The Wall-eye of a Horse or Mare doth never see perfectly, especially when the Snow is upon the ground.

Choyce of Mares.

For your choyce of Mares you ought to respect their Shapes and Mettles, that they be beautifully forehanded, and that they be of a mean stature, large and broad, and the Stallion of like Shape, but somewhat broader and taller, and temper their Natures thus. Put unto the hot Horse the cool Mare, and to the hot Mare the cool Horse.

If you will Elekt a Horse for Service and Warlike Imployment, then these are best.

The Neapolitan, the Sardinian, the Courser, the Almanne, the French, the Fenner, or the Turkey.

Or if any of these Bastardized in themselves, or with a fair well Shaped and Mettl'd English Mare.

For Swiftnes.

If you will Elekt for Swiftnes, then

The Arabian, the Barbary, which is a Horse of Africa. The Spanish, the Grecian, which is the Turkey-horse. Or any of these Bastardized in themselves with our English Mares.

For Travel.

If you will choofe for long Travel and Service. Then, the English, the Hungarian, the Swedeland, the Poland, the Irish.

For Draught.

If you will choofe for Draught and Service. Then, the Flanders, the Friesland, or any of the Netherlands, either Bastardized in themselves, or with our English Rases, and these are excellent for Coach.

The Office of the Keeper.

for Cart, for Pack or any Burthen. If you will choofe for Ease, the the *Irish*.

To know whether your Mare be with Foal, or not.

If you pour a spoonful of cold Vinegar or Water into her ear, if she shake only her head, it is a sign she is with Foal; but if she shake her head, body and all, then it is a sign she is not with Foal. Or if she scoures, her Coat grow smooth and shining, and that she grows Fat, is a sign that she holds.

To make the Mare Conceive Male Foals.

To make your Mare Conceive Male Foals, is to keep your Stallion proud, and your Mare poor; that his Lust mastering hers, he may only be predominate and chief in the action.

The Office of the Keeper.

Of the Horse in General, his Choyce for every several use, his Ordering Diet, and best Preservation for Health, both in Travel and in Rest.

Of the Nature of Horses in general.

HE is Valiant, Strong and Nimble, and above all other Beasts most apt and able to endure the extreamest Labors, the moist quality of his Composition being such, that neither extreme heat doth draw up his strength, nor the violence of Cold, freeze the warm temper of his moving spirits, for he withstandeth all defects of Sickness with an uncontrouled constancy. He is most gentle and loving to Man, apt to be taught, and not forgetful when an impression is fixed in his Brain; he is watchful above all other Beasts, and will endure his labour with the most empty Stomach, he is naturally given to much cleanliness, he is of an excellent Scent, and therefore not so much as to offend any man with his evil Savours.

Your Choyce of a Horse for the Wars.

Chuse him of a tall Stature, with a comely Head, and out-swelling Forehead, a large sparkling Eye, the white thereof covered with the
Eye

The Office of the Keeper.

13

Eye-brows, a small thin Ear, short and pricking, if it be long, well carried, and ever moving, a deep Neck, a large Crest, broad Breast, bending Ribs, broad and streight Chine, round and full Buttocks, a Tail high and broad, neither too thick nor too thin, a full swelling Thigh, a broad, flat and lean Leg, short Pasterned, strong Joynted.

Colours of a Horse.

The best Colours are Brown-bay, Dapple-gray, Roand, Bright-bay, Black, with a white near Foot behind, white fore Foot before, white Star, Chestnut or Sorrel, with any of those marks, or Dun with a black Lift.

Horses for a Princes Seat.

If you will chuse a Horse for a Princes Seat, or for any Supream Magistrate, or any great Lady; then choose the finest Shape, that is Nimble, with an easie Pace, and Gentle to get up, familiar and quiet in the company of other Horses; and let his Colour be Milk-white, with red Frames, or without, or else Dapple-gray, with a white Mane, and white Tail.

Horses for Travel.

If you choose a Horse for Travel, choose him for Strength, viz. His Joynts strong, his Pastornes short and streight without bending in his going, hollow and tough Hoofs, let him be of a temperate Nature, neither too furious, nor too dull, &c.

Hunting Horses.

If you choose a Horse for Hunting, let his Shape be generally strong, and well knit together, making equal Proportions, for as unequal Shapes shew weakness, so equal Shapes shew strength and durance; your unequal Shapes, are a great Head, and a little Neck, a big Body and a thin Buttock, a large Limb to a little Foot, &c. Let him have a large and lean Head, wide Nostriils, open Chauld, a big Wheasand, and the Wind-pipe streight.

Running Horses.

If you choose him for Running, let him have all the finest Shapes that may be. Let him be nimble, quick, and fiery, apt to fly with the least Motion; long Shapes are sufferable, for though they shew weakness, yet they assure sudden speed.

Coach-Horses.

If you choose him for the Coach, which is called the swift Draught, let

let his Shape be tall, broad, and well furnisht, not gross with much Flesh, but with the bigness of his Bones; let him have a strong Neck, a broad Breast, a large Chine, sound clean Limbs, and tough Hoofs. And for this purpose, your large *English* Geldings are best, your *Flemish* Mares next, and your strong Stone-horses tollerable.

Pack-Horses.

If you choose a Horse for Postage, that is, for the Pack or Hampers, Let him have a strong Body and Limb, but not tall, with a broad Back, out-Ribs, full Shoulders, and thick Withers; for if he be thin in that Part, you shall hardly keep his Back from Galling; and be sure he take a large stride, for he that taketh the largest stride, goes at the most ease and rides his ground the fastest.

Cart or Plough.

Lastly, If you will choose a Horse for Cart or Plough, which is the slow Draught, choose him that is of an ordinary height, for Horses in the Cart unequally sorted never draw at ease, but the tall hang up the low Horse. Let him be big, large bodied, and strong Limb'd, by Nature rather inclin'd to crave the Whip, then to draw more then is needful. And for this purpose, Mares are most profitable, if you have cheap keeping for them, for they will not only do your work, but bring you yearly increase; be sure you take them well fore-handed, that is, good Head, Neck, Breast and Shoulders; for the rest, it is not so regardful, only let her body be large, for the more room a Foal hath in her Dams Belly, the fairer are his Members. And be sure you never put your Draught-Beasts to the Saddle, for that alters their Pace, and hurts them in their Labour.

How to order these several Horses. And first of the Horses for the Wars.

During his time of teaching, which is out of the Wars, you shall keep him high; let his Food be good Hay and clean Oats, or two parts Oats, and one part Beans or Pease well dried and hard, half a Peck at a Morning, Noon, and at Evening is sufficient. In his days of rest, Dress him betwixt five and six in the Morning, and Water him at seven or eight in the Afternoon. Dress him between three and four, and Water him about four or five, and give him Provender always after watering; Litter him at eight, and give Food for all night. The night before

fore he is ridden, about Nine at Night take away his Hay, and at four of the Clock in the Morning give him a handful or two of Oats, which being eaten, turn him upon the Snaffle. Rub him all over with dry Clothes, then Saddle him and make him Fit for his exercise; and when you have done with him, bring him into the Stable all sweaty, as he is, and rub him all over with dry Wipps, then take off his Saddle, and after you have rubbed him all over with dry Cloaths, put on his Housing-Cloth, then put on the Saddle again, and girt it, and walk him about gently while he be cold, then set him up, and after two or three hours fasting, put him to his Meat, then in the Afternoon Curb, rub and dress him, and water him, and order him as aforesaid.

Ordering a Horse for a Prince, or great Ladies Seat.

You must order him in the time of his Rest, like unto the Horse for Service; and in his time of Labour like the Travelling Horse, only you are to keep him more choicely, I mean, in a beautiful manner, his Coat lying smooth and shining; if he come in sweating into the Stable, after you have rubbed him down take off the sweat with a Sword Blade, whose edge is rebated.

Ordering of Travelling Horses at home and abroad.

Feed him with good Hay in the Winter, and good Grass in the Summer. His Provender let it be good dry Oats, Beans, Pease, or Bread, according to his Stomach; In the time of rest, half a Peck at a Watering is sufficient, in the time of Labour as much as he will eat with a good Stomach.

Of Watering in the Morning.

When you Travel him, Water two hours before you Ride, then rub, dress, and lustily feed, then bridle up, and let him stand an hour before you take his back.

Of feeding betimes.

In your Travel, feed your Horse betimes for all night, that thereby he may the sooner take his rest.

Moderate Travelling.

Travel moderately in the morning, till his wind be rack't, and his Limbs warmed, then after do as your Affairs require. Be sure
at

The Office of the Keeper.

at Night to water your Horse two miles before you come to your Journeys end; then the warmer you bring him to his Inn the better, walk not, nor wash not at all, the one doth beget Colds, the other Foundrings in the Feet or Body, but set him up warm, well stopt, and well rubbed, with clean Litter; Give no meat whilst the outward Parts of your Horse are hot or wet with sweat, as the *Ear-Roots*, the *Flanck*, the *Neck*, or under his *Chaps*; but being dry, rub and feed him according to the goodness of his Stomach.

To get a Stomach.

Change of Food begetteth a Stomach, so doth the washing the Tongue or Nostrils with Vinegar, Wine and Salt, or warm Urine.

Not to stop the Horses Feet with Cow-dung till they be cold.

Stop not your Horses Feet with Cow-dung, till he be sufficiently cold, and that the blood and humors which were dispersed, be settled into their proper places.

Look to his Back, Girths and Shoos.

Look well to his back, that the Saddle hurt not, to the Girths, that they gall not, and to his Shoos, that they be large, fast and easie.

Not to eat nor drink when he is hot.

Let him neither eat nor drink when he is hot, nor presently after his Travel.

To labour him moderately, when the Weather is either extream hot or cold.

Labour him moderately when the Weather is either extream hot, or extream cold, that so you may avoid extream Heats or sudden Colds.

Not to Travel him too late.

Travel him not too late, that your own eye may see him well dricd, and well fed, before you take your own rest.

The Saddle not to be presently taken off.

Take not the Saddle from your Horses Back suddenly.

Horse-bread very good food.

Horse-bread which is made of clean Pease, Beans or Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Rivv.

River-water is not so good as standing-water.

Let your Horses Meat and Drink, be exceeding sweet and clean, Standing-water is better then River-water, for that is too piercing.

Swine and Pullen is naught to be nigh a Stable.

Let him lie clean and dry, keep your Stable sweet, let no Swine lie near it, nor let any Pullen come within it.

Let the Light of your Stable be towards the South and North.

Let the Light of your Stable to be ever towards the South, and North; yet so as the North-windows may in the Winter be shut close at Pleasure.

To be tyed with two Reins.

Let him be tyed with two Reins.

To Ride him on stony wayes.

Ride him often on stony wayes, that he may the better feel his Feet, and harden his Hoofs.

Wheat-straw, and Oate-straw, best for Litter.

Let his bed be of Wheat-straw above his Knees, the Barly-straw is the softest, yet a Horse will covet to eate it, which is unwholesome; Wheat-straw though it be hard to lie upon, yet it is wholesom to eat, and as for Oate-straw, it is the best in the Superlative, for it is not only wholesom to eat, but soft to lie upon.

Of Dressing your Horse.

Curry or Dress your Horse twice a day, that is before water; and when he is Curried, rub him well with your hand, and with a Rubber, his Head should be rubbed with a wet Cloath, and his Cods made clean with a dry Cloath, otherwise he would be Scabby between his Legs; you should wet his Fore-top, his Mane, and his Tail with a wet Mane-Comb, and over where the Horses Hair is thinnest, there Curry the gentlest.

Of the Stable.

Let the Plaunchers of your Stable lie even and level, that your Horse may stand at his ease, and not prove Lame by too much oppressing his hinder Feet.

A mud-Wall is naught to be nigh a Horse.

Let not any mud-Wall be within your Horses reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholesom.

Chopt Straw is good to strow amongst his Provender.

Give your Horse plenty of Garbage (which is Chopt Wheat-straw) both with his Provender and without, for it is a mighty cleanser of a Horses body.

Bottles of Hay to be Tied hard.

Let your Hay-bottles be very little, and tied very hard, for so your Horse shall eat with a better stomach, and make least waste.

To Sprinkle the Hay with water is good, and to strow Fennegreek amongst his Provender.

To sprinkle water upon your Hay is most wholesom, and to sprinkle Fennegreek upon your Provender is as sovereign; The first is good for the VVind, the latter for Wormes.

Exercise good.

Let your Horse have daily exercise, for that begets a good stomach to his meat.

Grass is good once a year to cleanse the Blood and cool the Body.

Purge your Horse once a year with Grass, or green Blades of Corn called Forrage, for 15 days together; yet before you purge him, in any case let him Blood, and whilst he is in purging let him have no Provender.

A Horse good Store of Blood after Travel.

A Horse after Travel hath ever more Blood then any Beast whatsoever, therefore it is good to take blood from him to prevent the Yellows, or other diseases that may follow.

What you are to doe in Case of Necessity, coming late to your Inn.

If you come late to your Inn, so that your Journey be great and earnest, and that your horse will not eat till he hath drunk, and yet is hot notwithstanding, then let his Drink be Milk given in the dark, lest the

the whiteness make him refuse it ; this is both cordial and pleasant : if you cannot get Milk enough, then mingle Milk with water lukewarm.

To give him Mares-Milk to drink if he be Poor.

If your Horse either by Labour or any Surfeits be brought low, lean and weak, give him Mares Milk to drink many days together, and it will make him strong.

The best times to Water in the Winter.

The best houres to water your Horse in the Winter (when he is at rest) is betwixt seven and eight in the Morning, or four or five in the Evening.

Not good to wash a Horse if he be hot.

It is not good to wash a Horse when he is hot, but you may wash him above the Knees, so that you do not wash his Belly ; and that you ride him after he is washed, and so set him up and dress him. The purer the water is wherein you wash your horse, the more wholesom it is, so that it be not too extream cold.

To light at every steep Hill.

When you Travel, at every steep Hill, light, both to refresh your horse and yourself.

How a fat Horse is to have his Meat and his Water.

Let a fat horse have his water at four times, and not as much as he will drink at once, and let him stand two or three houres every day without meat.

Rubbing is good for a Horse.

Rubbing much, hard and well, doth profit, preserve, and it keeps both legs and body in strength, and he doth much delight in it, and it doth better then much meat.

Boyled Barley is good.

Boyled Barley is a great Fatner of a Horse.

To Pick his Feet after Travel.

Cleanse and Pick the Soles of his feet ever after Travel, and stuffe them well with Ox-dung, and anoint his Hoofs with Grease, Tarr or Turpentine.

Much Rest naught.

Much Rest is the Nurse and Mother of many diseases.

Be careful to look to your Saddle.

When you Ride, look often to your Saddle and your Horses Shoes, and you shall find much more ease in your Journey.

A Horse-Mans Rule,

*IF you do intend to keep your Horse in his Skin,
Go softly out, and come softly in.*

Riding softly.

Ride moderately the first two hours, but after according to your occasions.

Trotters Oyle is good to help stiff Limbs.

Trotters Oyle is an excellent Oyntment, being applied very warm to your Horses Limbs, to nimble them, and to help Stiffness and Lameness. And Dogs Grease is better, therefore never want one of them in the Stable.

To bath his Legs with cold water, is good to keep his Legs from Scabs and Swellings.

Bath the Fore-Legs from the Knees and Gambrels down-wards with cold water, for it is wholesom, and both comforteth the Sinews, and prevents Scabs and Swellings.

To wash at the Stable door, if necessity requires.

If foul wayes compel you to wash your Horses Legs, then do it with a Pail of water at the Stable Door, rather then to endanger him in Pond or River, and for walking, rather set on your Horses back, to keep his spirit stirring, then to walk him in your hand, for he will soon catch Cold that way, the Wind and Air getting between his Saddle and Back.

Dressing upon Travel and Rest.

Dress your Horse twice a day upon Rest, and once upon Travel.

Blooding.

Spring and Fall are the best times to take Blood from a Horse.

Ordering of Hunting Horses.

While he is at Rest, let him have all the quietness that may be, let him have much Meat, much Litter, much Dressing, and Water ever by him, and let him sleep as long as he pleaseth, keep him to Dung rather

ther soft than hard, and look that it be well coloured and bright, for Darknes shews Grease, and Rednes inward Heating. Let Exercise and Mashes of sweet Mault, after his usual Scourings; or let Bread of clean Beans, or Beans and VVheat mixt together, be his best food, and Beans and Oats the most ordinary.

The Ordering of your Running Horse.

Let him have no more meat then will suffice Nature, drink once in twenty four houres, and dressing every day once at Noon only; Let him have moderate exercise Morning and Evening, Aydings, or the fetching of his water, and know no other violence but in his Courtes only. If he be very fat, scoure oft; if of reasonable stature, seldm; If lean, then scour but with a sweet Mash only; let him stand dark and warm, having many Clothes and much Litter, and that VVheat-straw only. Let him be empty before you Run, and let his food be the finest, lightest, and quickest of digestion that may be; The Sweats are most wholesom that are given abroad, and the Cooling most natural which is given before he cometh into the Stable. Keep his Limbs with cool Oyntments, and let nor any hot Spices come into his body. If he grow dry inwardly, wash'd Meats is most wholesom. If he grow loose, give him VVheat-straw in more abundance. And be sure do every thing Neat and cleanly about him, which will nourish him the better.

Ordering of Coach-Horses.

Let them have good Dressing twice a day, Hay and Provender their Belly-full, and Litter enough to tumble on. Let them be walk'd and wash'd after Travel, for by reason of their many occasions to stand still, they must be inur'd with all hardnes, though it be much unwholsom. Their best food is sweet Hay, or well-dried Beans and Oats, or Bean-bread; Look well to the strength of their Shooes, and the Galling of their Harness; Keep their Legs clean, especially about their hinder fet-locks; And let them stand in the House warmly Cloathed.

Ordering of the Pack and Cart-horse.

They need no walking, washing, or houres of fasting, only dress them well, look to their Shooes and Backs, and then fill their Bellies, and they will do their Labour. Their best Food is sweet Hay, Chaff or Pease,

Pease, or Oat-hulls and Pease, or chopt straw and Pease mixt together, To give them warm Grains and Salt once a week will not be amiss, which will prevent the breeding of Wormes and such like mischief's.

The Office of the Rider and Groom, and of things belonging to him, viz. His General and Particular Knowledge in Handling, Sadling, Mouthing, Backing and Riding of the Great Horse, or Horse of Pleasure.

Of the Stable, and what it ought to be built with.

TO begin first with the Winter-house of the Horse, the Stable: You ought to Place it in a good Air, and to be made of Brick, and not Stone, for Brick is most wholesom and warmest, for Stone will sweate upon change of Weather, which begetteth damp, and causeth Rheums in Horses. There ought not to be nigh it any unfavoury Gutter nor Sink, no Jakes, Hog-sty or Hen-Roust to annoy it. The Rack ought to be placed neither too high nor too low, and so well Placed that the Hay-dust fall not into his Neck, Mane nor Face. The Manger ought to be of an indifferent height, made deep, and of one entire Piece, as well for strength as conveniency. Let the Floor be Pitched and not Planked, and let there be no Mud or Lome-wall near it, for he will eat it, which will cause him to be sick, for Lome and Lime are suffocating things, and they will infect and putrifie the blood, and endanger his Lungs, and spoil his VVind; Neither let any dung lie nigh his heels, for that will breed Cib'd and scabby heels.

Paving of Stables is better then Planked Stables for these Reasons.

First, they are much more durable and lasting.

Secondly, they are less charges by much.

Thirdly, for him to stand continually upon a Pitched Floor, it emboldeneth his feet and treading the more.

Fourthly, it is the most excellent thing that may be for Colts, who are

are unshod, for it hardeneth their Hoofs, so that by custom they will be as bold to go upon stones, rocky and hard ways, as Horses that are shod; neither will it suffer the Hoofs to grow abroad in the manner of an Oyster; besides, the use thereof will make their Hoofs more tough, durable and hollow, insomuch that when they come to be shod, they will carry their Shoes much longer.

To shew you the Inconveniencies of a Planked Floor.

First, it is more slippery, out of which reason a mett'd Horse may be endangered, to be lamed or spoiled by some sudden slip, which a Pitched Stable is not so subject to.

Secondly, the Planks oftentimes shrinking, if the Horse be high Mett'd and be subject to Curvet, he may break a Plank, and so Plunging may easily spoil or break his Leg.

Thirdly, when you put forth your Horse to Grass in the Summer, the Sun will so dry the Planks, that they will warp and loosen the Pins, and make them give way, that so when Horses that have gone for some Months before, not being handled, become wild and unruly, that when they come into the Stable, and feel the Planks to give way under them, will fall to Flinging and Leaping, till they have dislocated the Planks, and not only both endanger himself but his Fellows also.

Fourthly, whereas you may imagine a Planked Stable warmer than a Paved one, I know the contrary, for your Pitched Floors have no Vaults or Channels under them, like as your Planked ones have, to carry away the water that the Horses make, by which means the Horse lieth over a dampish, moist Vault; and besides, the evil savour of the Horse-piss will be ever in their Nose, which is very unwholesome and noisome, and many times the cause of many infirmities; neither can it be so warm as the other for chinks and holes, which are made by the Awger through the Planks, (which must always be kept open to let forth the Urine) to give way to the cold wind which cometh from thence, which cannot but be very unwholesome. Therefore I do affirm, that if your Groom do Litter up horse well, so that he may lie soft and warm, he will prosper better then upon a Planked Floor, provided it be laid even, not higher before then behind, more then will carry the water to his hinder-feet, where there ought to be a small Gutter to carry it away, for by raising your Floor too much, his hinder Legs will swell, and so he will become lame, by reason he bears too much weight on his hinder parts.

Of the Care in the Choyce of a Groom.

After you have bred Colts according to my Instructions, and that they prove to your mind, then the next care you ought to have, is of Grooms, which ought to be very expert in their Faculties, which consisteth their making or marring, for you cannot say that a Colt three or four years old can be a perfect Horse, till he come to be handled and made fit for his Masters Riding, which is to be made gentle, Shod, Backed, Broken, Ridden, VVayed, Mouthed, and in brief brought to his utmost perfection. His Rider therefore must be an Expert and able Horse-man, and his Keeper every way as sufficient, otherwise what Defects you find in your Horse, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider, or to his Groom; therefore let your care be that they be both sufficient.

How a Rider ought to be qualified.

If you desire your Colts to come to their utmost perfection, then let your Rider be one, who is cried up to be an Experienc'd Horse-man; he must not be of life dissolute or debauched, nor of Nature harsh, furious, cholerick, or hair-brain'd, for the least of either of these Vices are very unseemly in a Person of this profession, he must be Master over his passions, for he that is not, cannot make a good Horse-man. And it is not much to be wondered at, if a Horse fall into Imperfections or Vices, for these his evil conditions and faults are not so much to be imputed to the Horse, but to the Teacher, for he is not a good Horse-man that doth not bring his Horse to perfection, by sweet and gentle means, rather then by Correction and severe Chastisements: yet not but that I allow of Correction, and that it is as necessary as Meat, if it do not exceed the limited bounds of Moderation, and that it be done at the very instant when he offendeth, and does justly merit the same, or else he will not know the cause why he is Chastised, so on the other side, when he doth well, let him be Cherished and made much of, which will encourage him to go forward in well-doing.

What manner of Person a Groom ought to be.

The Groom must be a man that must truly love his Horse, and so shape his course towards him, as that the Horse may love and dote upon

upon him; for the Horse is the most lovingest Creature to Man of all other bruit Creatures, and none more Obedient to him; Wherefore if he be mildly dealt withal, he will be also reciprocal; but if he be harsh and Cholerick, the Horse will be put by his Patience, and become Rebellious, and fall to biting and striking; For the old Proverb is, *Patience once wronged, will turn into Fury.* He must continually toy, dally and play with him, be always talking and speaking pleasing words unto him; he must lead him abroad in the Sun-shine, and then run, scope and shew him all the delight you can; he must duely Curry, Comb and Dress him, wipe dust, pick and cleanse him, feed, pamper and cherish him, and be always doing somewhat about him, either about his heels, or taking up his feet, or rapping him upon the Soles; And he must keep him so well dress'd that he may almost see his face upon his Coat; he must keep his Feet stopp'd and daily Anointed, his heels free from Scratches and other Sorances, and to have so vigilant an eye upon him, to oversee all his Actions, as well feeding as drinking, that so no inward infirmity may seize upon him, but that he may be able to discover it, and being discovered may seek for to Cure it.

To Saddle and Bridle a Colt.

When your Horse is made gentle, take a sweet Watering Trench, wash'd and anointed with Honey and Salt, put it into his Mouth, and so place it, that it may hang about his Tush; then offer him the Saddle, but with that carefulness that you do not affright him therewith, suffering him to smell at it, to be rubbed with it, and then to feel it; then in the end to Fix it on, and Girt it fast, and at what part and motion he seems most coy, with that make him most familiar; then being thus Saddle and Bridled lead him forth to water, then bring him in, and after he hath stood a little Reined upon the Trench, an hour or more, take away the Bridle and Saddle, and let him go to his meat till the Evening, then lead him forth as before, and when he is set up gently, take off his Saddle and dress him, and cloath him up for all Night. The way to make him endure the Saddle the better, is by making it familiar unto him, by clapping the Saddle with your hand as it stands upon his back, to shake it and sway upon it, to dangle the Stirrups by his Sides, and to rub them on his Sides, and make much of him, and be familiar with all things about him, as straining the Crooper, fastning and loosening the Girts, or taking up and letting out of the Stirrups.

Of Mouthing.

When he will Trot with the Saddle obediently, then you shall wash a trench of a full Mouth, and put it into his Mouth, and throw the Reins over the fore-part of the Saddle, so that the Horse may have a full feeling of it; then put on a Martingal, and you shall buckle it at such length, that he may no more then feel it when he jerketh up his Head, then take a broad piece of Leather, and put it about the Horses Neck, and make the two ends of it fast by platting, or otherwise at the Withers and mid-part before his Weiland, about two handfuls below the Throple, betwixt the Leather and his Neck, let the Martingal pass, so that when at any time he shall offer to duck or throw down his Head, the Cavezan being placed upon the tender Grissle of his Nose, may correct and punish him, which will make him bring down his Head, and fashion him to an absolute Rein. Then trot him abroad, and if you find the Reins or Martingal grow slack, straiten them, for where there is no feeling there is no Vertue.

Of Backing.

When you have Exercised your Horse thus, divers Mornings, Noons, or Evenings, and find him Obedient, then take him into some Ploughed Ground (the lighter the better) and after you have made him trot a good Pace about you in your hand, and thereby taken from him all his wantonness, look and see whether your tackling be firm and good, and every thing in his true and due place, you may then (having one to stay his Head and govern the Chasing Rein) take his Back, yet not suddenly, but by degrees, and with divers heavings, and half-railings, which if he endure patiently, then settle your self; but if he shrink or dislike, then forbear to mount, and chase him about again, and then offer to mount, and do thus till he be willing to receive you. Then when you are settled and have receiv'd your Stirrups and Cherisht him, put your Toes forward, and he that stays his Head, let him lead him forward half a dozen Paces, then Cherish him; then lead him a little further and Cherish him, and shake and move your self in the Saddle, then let him stay his Head, and remove his hand a little from the Cavezan, and as you thrust forwards your Toes, let him move him forward with his Rein, till you have made the Horse apprehend your own Motion of Body and Foot, (which

must

must go equally together, and with Spirit also) so that he will go forward without the other Assistance, and stay upon the restraint of your own hand, then Cherish him, and give him Grass and Bread to eat, a light from his Back, then mount and unmount twice or thrice together, ever mixing them with Cherishings. Thus Exercise him till you have made him perfect in going forward, and standing still at your pleasure.

Helps at first Backing.

When this is effected, you may lay by the long Rein, & the Band about the Neck, and only use the Trenches and Cavezan, and the Martingal, and let a Groom lead the way before you on another Horse, and go only straight forward, and stand still when you please, which will soon be effected, by trotting him after another Horse, and bring him home sometimes after the Horse, sometimes equally with him, and sometimes before, so that he may fix upon no certainty, but your own pleasure; And be sure to have regard to the well carriage of his Neck and Head, and as the Martingal slackeneth so to straighten it.

What Lessons for what Horse.

When this work is finished, then Teach your Horse these Lessons: As if he be for Hunting, Running, Travel, Hackney, or the like, then the chiefest things you are to apply your self to, are to preserve a good Mouth, to Trot freely and comly, to Amble surely and easily, to Gallop strongly and swiftly, to Obey the hand in stopping gently, and Retiring willingly, and to turn on the other hand readily and nimbly. But if you intend him for the great Saddle, or the use of the Wars, then although the Lessons be the same, yet they are to be done in a more punctual manner. So that if any Horse can be brought to the best, the easier must needs follow with little industry. And it is a Rule in Horseman-ship, that no Lesson which belong to the Wars can be hurtful, or do injury to any Horse whatsoever, that is kept for any other purpose. Whence it cometh, that any Horse for the Wars may be trained for a Runner, or Hunter, at pleasure; but every Runner, or Hunter, will not serve the Wars; and every Horse-man that can make a Horse for the Wars, may be a Jockey when he pleases; but no Jockey (that I know) can make a Horse for the Wars. Therefore I will run a middle way, and sute my Lessons to both purposes.

Helps and Corrections.

Before you Teach your Horse any Lessons, you must know there are seven helps to advantage him in his Lessons, to punish him for faults gotten in his Lessons. And they be the Voyce, the Rod, the Bit or Snaffle, the Calves of the Legs, the Stirrop, Spur, and the Ground.

Voice.

The Voice is an help when it is sweet and accompanied with Cherishings, and it is a Correction when it is rough or terrible, and accompanied with strokes or threatenings.

Rod.

The Rod is an help in the shaking, and a Correction in the striking.

Bit or Snaffle.

The Bit is an help in its sweetnes, the Snaffle in its smoothnes; and they are Corrections, the one in its hardnes, the other in its roughnes, and both in flatnes and squarenes.

Calves of the Legs.

Are helps when you lay them to the Horses sides gently, and Corrections when you strike them hard, because they give warning that the Spurs follow.

Stirrop and Stirrop-Leathers.

Are Corrections, when you strike it against the hinder part of the Shoulder, and they are helps when you thrust them forward in a quick Motion.

Spur.

Is a help when it is gently delivered in any Motion that asks quicknes and agility, whether on the ground, or above the ground, and a Correction when it is stricken hard in the sides, upon any sloth, or any fault committed.

The Ground.

The Ground is an help when it is plain and smooth, and not painful to tread upon; and it is a Correction when it is rough, deep and uneven, for the Amendment of any Vice conceived.

Of large Rings.

When your Horse will receive you to and from his Back gently, Trot forward willingly, and stand still obediently. Then intending him for the Wars, or other purpose, (for these Lessons serve all occasions,) you shall in some gravelly or sandy place, where his footsteps may be discerned, labour him within the large Ring, that is, at least fifty Paces in Compass; And having trod it about three or four times on the right hand, rest and cherish; then change the Hand again, and do as much on the left Hand, then rest and cherish; and Change the Hand again, and do as much on the right Hand, ever observing upon every stop to make him retire and go back a step or two.

Thus labour him, till he will Trot his Ring on which Hand you please, changing within the Ring in the manner of a Roman S, and to do it readily and willingly; Then teach him to Gallop them as he did Trot them, and that also with true Footing, lofty Carriage & brave Rein, ever observing when he Gallops to the right hand, to lead with his left fore-foot, and when he Gallops to the left hand, to lead with the right fore-foot.

Objct. Now here is to be cleared a Paradox held by many of our Horsemen, which is, *That the Exercise of the Ring is not good for Running Horses, because it raiseth up his fore-feet, and make him Gallop Painfully, and so an hindrance unto speed.*

Answ. But if they consider that this habit, (if it betaken) is soon broken, either by the Horse-mans hand or discretion, who hath power to make him move as he pleaseth; Or if they will truly look into the benefit of the Ring it self, they shall finde it is the only means to bring an Horse to the true use of his feet, and the nimble carriage of them in all advantages. For every Runner of horses will allow, that for an horse (in his course) to lead with his right foot, is most proper, and when at any time he breaks or alters it, it must be disadvantage, because, (not well acquainted to lead with the other) he cannot handle it so nimbly. Now at his first Backing, by the use of his Ring and Change of Hands, he will become so expert and cunning with both, that whatsoever mischance shall alter his stroke, yet shall his speed and nimbleness keep one and the same goodness.

Of Stopping.

When you come to the place of stop, or would stop, by a sudden drawing in of your Bridle-hand, somewhat hard and sharp, make him stop close, firm and streight in an even Line: and if he erre in any thing, put him to it again, and leave not till you have made him understand his error, and amend it.

Advancing.

Now if you do Accompany this stop with an Advancement a little from the ground, it will be more gallant, and may be done by laying the Calves of your Legs to his sides, and shaking your Rod over him as he stops.

If it chance at first he understand you not, yet by continuance and labouring him therein, he will soon attain unto it, especially, if you forget not to cherish him when he gives the least shew to apprehend you.

Retiring.

After Stopping and Advancing, make him Retire, as before shewed. And this Motion of Retiring, you must both Cherish and Encrease, making it so familiar with him, that no Lesson may be more perfect; neither must he retire in a confused manner, but with a brave Rein, a constant Head, and a direct Line: neither must he draw or sweep his Legs one after another, but take them clean, nimbly, and loosely, as when he Trotted forward.

Of Biting.

When your Horse is come to perfection in these Lessons, and hath his Head firmly settled, his Reins constant, and his Mouth sweetened, you may then (if you intend him for the Wars) take away his Trench and Martingal, and only use the Cavezan of four or three pieces, that is a Joynt or no Joynt in the midst, and to that Joynt a strong Ring, and a Joynt of each side, with Rings before the Joynts, to which you shall put several Reins to use, either at the post or otherwise. Into his Mouth you shall put a smooth sweet Canon-bit, with a French Cheek suitable to the proportion of the Horses Neck; knowing that the long Cheek raises up the Head, and the short pulls it down. And with these you shall Exercise the Horse in all the Lessons before taught, till he be perfect in them without either disorder or amazement.

Of Freight Turns and Turnings.

When he is settled upon his Bit, then you are to teach him to turn roundly and readily in the straighter Rings; and of these there are divers

vers kinds, and divers methods to teach them. But I shall fix upon two manner of straight Turns, as the perfection from whence all Turnings are derived.

The one is when a Horse keepeth his hinder Parts inward and close to the Post or Center, and so cometh about and maketh his Circumference with his hinder Parts, opposing face to face with his Enemy.

The first streight Turn.

You shall to the Ring in the mid-part of the Cavezan, fix a long Rein of two Fathom or more, and to the other Rings two other shorter Reins; then having Saddled the Horse, and put on his Bit, bring him to the post, and put the Reins of the Bit over the fore-part of the Saddle, Bolsters and all, and fix them at a constant streightness on the top of the Pomel, so that the Horse may have a feeling both of the Bit and Curb. Then if you will have him turn to the right hand, take the short Rein on the left side of the Cavezan, and bringing it under the fore-Bolster of the Saddle up to the Pomel, and there fix it at such a streightness, that the horse may rather look from, then to the post on the right side. Then let some Groom or skilful Attendant hold the right-side Rein of the Cavezan at the post, governing the fore-parts of his body to come about at large: Then your self taking the long Rein into your hand, and keeping his hinder parts inward, with your Rod on his outward Shoulder, and sometimes on his outward Thigh, make him move about the post, keeping his inward parts as a Center, and making his fore-parts move in a larger Circumference. Thus you shall Exercise him a pretty space on one hand, till he grow to some Perfection; then Changing the Reins of the Cavezan, make him do the like to the other hand. And thus apply him divers Mornings, and cherishing him in his exercise according to his deservings, till you have brought him to that readines, that he will upon the moving of your Rod couch his hinder Parts in towards the Post, and lapping the outward fore-leg over the inward, Trot about the Post swiftly, distinctly, and in as strait a Compass as you can desire, or is convenient for the motion of the Horse; And from Trotting you may bring him to Flying and Wheeling about, with that swiftness, that both the fore-legs rising and moving together, the hinder Parts may follow in one and the same instant. When you have made him thus perfect in your hand, you shall then mount his Back; and making some skilful Groom

Groom govern the long Rein, and another the short, by the Motion of your hand upon the Bit, and soft Rein of the Cavezan, keeping the Horse's Head from the post, and by the help of the Calve of your Leg laid on his Side, and your Rod turned toward his outward Thigh, to keep his hinder parts into the post, labour and exercise him till you have brought him to that perfection which you desire. Then take away the long Rein, and only exercise him with the help of the short Rein of the Cavezan, and no other. After take both the Reins of the Cavezan into your hands, and exercise him from the post; making him as ready in any place where you please to ride him, as he was at the post.

The other freight Turn.

Now for the other freight flying Turn, which is to keep his Face fixt on the post as on his Enemy, and to move about only with his hinder parts, you shall take the same helps of the long Rein, and the short Reins of the Cavezan, and govern them, as before shewed, only you shall not give the short Rein to the post-ward, so much liberty as before, but keep his Head closer to the post, and following his hinder parts with the long Rein, by the help of your Rod make him bring his hinder parts round about the post; and observe that as before, he did lap one foot over another, so now he must lap the hinder Legs one over another. In this Exercise, exercise him as the former, then (after a perfectness) mount his Back, and labour him, as before shewed. Then lastly, leaving the post and all other helps, only apply him in such open and free places as you shall think convenient, for upon the finishing of this work your Horse is made compleat, and can perform all things that can be required either for the Service in the Wars, for the High-way, or any other Galloping Pleasure.

How to help an ill Rein, and Cure a Run-away Jade.

Many Horses are so evil-beholding to Nature, for giving them short Necks, and worse set-on Heads, and so little beholding to Art to amend them, which causes many a good Horse to be left cureless of those two gross insufferable faults, which are either a deformed carriage of the Head, like a Pig on a Broach, or else a furious running away, got by a spoiled mouth, or an evil habit.

The Help.

If it be a young Horse at his first Riding, then to his Trench; if an old, then to his Snaffle, (for I speak not of the Bit) but a pair of Reins, half as long again as any ordinary Reins, and loops to fasten and unfasten at the eye of the Snaffle, as other Reins have. Now when you see that the Horse will not yield to your hand, but the more you draw the more he thrusts out his Nose, or the more violently he runs away; then undo the buttons of the Reins from the eye of the Snaffle, and draw them through the Eyes, and bring them to the Buckles of the foremost Girth, and there button them fast: then riding the horse in that manner, labour him with the gentle motions of your hand, coming and going by degrees, and sometimes accompanied with your Spur, to gather up his body, and to feel your Command, and in a short time he will bring his Head where you will place it. And for running away, if you draw one Rein, you turn him about in despite of all Fury; and if you draw both, you break his Chaps, or bring them to his Bosom. In the end, finding himself not able to resist, he will be willing to obey.

Another Help for unconstant Carriage.

There is another foul error in many horses, which these Reins also Cure, as this, When your horse is either so wythie cragg'd (as the Northern Man calls it) or so loose and unsteady Necked, that which way soever you draw your hand, his Head and Neck will follow it, sometimes beating against your Knees, sometimes dashing against your Bosom, and indeed, generally so loose and uncertain, that a man knows not when he hath steady hold of him; A Vice wonderful incident to running horses, especially the Furious ones. In this Case you shall take these long Reins; and as before you drew them to the Buckles of the Girths, so now Martingal-wise draw from the Eyes of the Snaffle, betwixt his fore-Legs to the Girths, and there fasten them. Thus Ride him with a constant hand, firm and somewhat hard, Correcting him both with the Spurs and Rod, and sometimes with hard Twitches in his Mouth when he errs; and with a few weeks labour, his Head will come to a constant carriage, provided, that you labour him as well upon his Gallop as his Trot, and leave him not till you find him fully reclaimed.

The Office of the Feeder.

An Introduction to the Work touching the limitation of time for preparing the Running Horse.

I will not dispute the several Opinions of men in this Kingdom, touching the keeping of Running Horses, because they are idle and frivolous. Only this I shall do, clear one Paradox, and that is the limitation of time, allowed for the making ready of a Horse for a Match or Wager.

Some do affirm that a Horse newly taken from Grass, being foul, cannot be made fit under six Months: By which they rob their Masters of half a years pleasure, thrust him upon a tiring charge to make the sport loathsome, and get nothing but a Cloak for Ignorance, and a few false got Crowns, that melt as they are possessed.

Their Reasons.

Yet as Heretiques cite Scripture, so these find Reasons to defend want of Knowledge.

As the danger of too early Exercise, the offence of Grease suddenly broken, the moving of evil Humours too hastily, which leads to mortal sickness; And the moderation, or helping of these by a slow proceeding, or bringing of the Horse into order by degrees and time, or (as I may say) by an ignorant sufferance.

These Reasons have shew of a good ground, for too early Exercise is dangerous, but not if free from violence.

To break Grease too suddenly is an offence insufferable, for it puts both Limbs and Life in hazard, but not if it be purged away by wholesome Scourings. The hasty stirring up of Humours in the Body, where they superabound, and are generally dispersed, and not settled, cannot choose but breed sickness; but not where Discretion and Judgment vacuateth them in wholesome, sweet and moderate Airings.

Long Time Inconvenient.

And for the moderation of all these, by the tediousness of time, as two Months

Months for the first, two Months for the second, and as much for the last. It is like the curing of the *Gangreen* in an old man; better to die then to be disinembred, better lose the prize, then bear the charge. For I appeal to any Noble Judgment, whose Purse hath experienced these Actions, if six Months preparation, and the dependants to it, do not devour up a hundred pounds wager.

Now I allow but of two Months time at any time of the year whatsoever, for an old Horse, or an Horse formerly trained, for I speak not of Colts; if he does it not in two Months, he shall not do it in fifteen.

But reply they, no Scouring is to be allowed, for they are Physical; they force Nature, and so hurt Nature; they make Sickness, and so impair Health. And that indeed nothing is comparable to the length of time, because Nature worketh every thing it self, and though she be longer, she hath less danger.

I confess that Sibbesauce Scourings, which are stuf with poisonous Ingredients, cannot choose but bring forth Infirmary: but wholesom Scourings; that are composed of beneficial and nourishing Simples, neither occasion Sickness, nor any manner of Infirmary, but brings away Grease and all foulness, in that kindly and abundant sort, that one week shall effect more then two Months dilatory and doubtful forbearance.

I call it dilatory and doubtful, because no man (in this lingering Course) can certainly tell which way the Grease and other foulness will avoid, as whether in his Ordure (which is the safest) into Sweat, (which is hazardous,) into his Limbs, (which is mischievous) or remain and putrifie in his Body, (which is mortally dangerous) since the Issue of any, or all these fall out according to the strength and estate of the Horses Body, and the diligence of the Feeder. And if either the one fail in Power, or the other in Care, Farewell horse for that year.

All this Envy cannot choose but confess; only they have one broken Crutch to support them, which is, they know no Scouring, therefore they will allow of no Scouring.

Against Barbarism I will not dispute, only I appeal to Art or Discretion, whether Purgations or Sufferance, when Nature is offended, be the better doers.

But they reply by a figure called absurdity, that whatsoever is given to any Horse more then his Natural Food, and which he will Naturally, and willingly receive, is both improper and unwholesom. To this I answer, the natural Food of Man is Bread only, all other things (according to the Philosopher) are superfluous, and so to be avoided.

At this Argument both Humanity and Divinity laughs. For other helps, as Physick, divers Meats, and divers Means, ordeined for both, even by the Power of the Almighty himself, tells the contemnners here; of, how grossly they erre in this foolish Opinion. Nay, allow them a little shadow of truth, that things most natural are most beneficial, then it must follow, that Grasse or Hay, (which is but withered Grasse) is most natural, and so most beneficial. Now Grasse is Physical, for in it is contained all manner of Simples, of all manner of mixtures, as hot, cold, moist, dry, of all qualities, all quantities. So that whatsoever I give (which is good) is but that which he hath formerly gathered out of his own Nature, only with this difference, that what he gathereth is in a confused manner, clapping contraries together so abundantly, that we are not able to judge where the Predominant quality lyeth; and that which we compound is so governed by Art and Reason, that we know how it should work, and we expect the event, if it be not crost by some greater disaster.

But will they bind themselves to keep the Running Horse only with Grasse or Hay? They know then the end of their Labours will be loss. Nay, they will allow Corn, nay, divers Corns, some nourishing and loosening, as Oates and Rye; some Astringent and Binding, as Beans; and some Fattning, breeding both Blood and Spirit, as Wheat: nay, they will allow Bread, nay, Bread of divers Compositions, and divers Mixtures, some before heat, and some after, some quick of Digestion, and some slow. And if this be not as Physical as scourings a good Horse-man gives, I repent me that I have said any thing.

Nay, these Contemnners of scourings will allow an Egg, and that mixt with other Ingredients. And for Butter and Garlick they will use it, though it be never so fullom; the Reason is, because their knowledge can arise to no higher a stair in Physick; and Authorised Ignorance will ever wage Battel with the best Understanding: Like foolish Gallants on *Sr. Georges* day, who neither having Ability to buy, nor Credit to borrow a Gold Chain, scorn at them that wear them; or *Martin Marprelate*, that not having Learning worthy of a *Deacon*, found no Felicity, but in railing at Divine Fathers. There are another sort of Feeders, which in a contrary extream, run beyond these into mischiefs, and those are they that over-scur their Horses, and are never at peate, but when they are giving of Portions (which they call Scourings) sometimes without cause, always without order, bringing upon

upon an Horse such intollerable weakness, that he is not able to perform any violent labour.

From this too little, and too much, I would have our Feeder to gather a mean; that is, first to look that his Simples be wholesom: then to the occasion, that he be sure there is foulness: and lastly, to the Estate of Body, that he may rather Augment then decrease vigor, so shall his Work be Prosperous, and his Actions without Controulment. To conclude, two Months I allow for preparation, and according to that time have laid my directions. Mine humble suit is, out of a sincere Opinion to Truth and Justice, so to allow or disallow, to refrain or imitate.

The first ordering of the Running Horse, according to the several Estates of their Bodies.

This *Office of the Feeder*, albeit in general it belong to all Horse-men, yet in particular it is most appropriate to the Feeder of the Running-horse; because other general Horses have a general way of Feeding, these are Artificial and Prescript from, full of Curiosity and Circumspection, from which whosoever errs, he shall sooner bring his Horse to destruction then perfection. You are to have regard to three Estates of a Horses Body.

The first is, if he be very Fat, Foul, or either taken from Grass or Soil.

The second, if he be extream Lean and poor, either through over Riding, disorder, or other Infirmary.

And the third, if he be in good and well-liking estate, having had good usage and moderate exercise.

If he be in the first Estate of Body, you shall take longer time for his Feed, as two Months at the least: for he will ask much labour in airing, great carefulness in hearing, and discretion in scouring, and rather a strict then liberal hand in feeding. If he be in the second Estate of Body (which is poor) then take a longer time, and let his Airings be moderate, as not before and after Sun, rather to encrease Appetite then harden Flesh, and let him have a bountifull hand in feeding, but not so much as to cloy him.

If he be in the third Estate of Body, which is a mean betwixt the other extreams, then a Month or six Weeks, or a Fort-night, or less, may be time sufficient to dyet him for his Match. Now as this Estate participates with both the former, so it would borrow from them a share in all their orderings, that is, to be neither too early, nor too late in
airings

airings, laborious, but not painful heatings, nourishing in Scouring, and constant in a moderate way of Feeding.

To have an eye to the particular Estate of a Horses Body.

Now as you regard these general Estates of Bodies, so you must have an eye to certain particular estates of Bodies. As if an Horse be Fat and Foul, yet of a free and spending Nature, apt quickly to consume and lose his Flesh, this horse must not have so strict a hand, neither can he endure so violent exercise as he that is of an hardy disposition, and will feed and be fat upon all Meats and all Exercises.

Again, if your horse be in extreame Poverty, through disorder and misusage, yet is by Nature very hard, and apt both soon to recover his Flesh, and long to hold it; then over this horse, you shall by no means hold so liberal a hand, nor forbear that Exercise, which is of a tender Nature, a weak Stomach, and a free Spirit, provided always you have regard to his Limbs and the Imperfections of Lameness.

The first Fort-nights feeding of an Horse for Match, that is, fat, foul, or either newly taken from Grass or Soil.

If you Match a Horse that is fat and foul, either by running at Grass, or standing at Soil, or any other means of Rest, or too high feeding; you shall (after his Body is emptied, and the Grass avoided, which will be within three or four dayes) for the first Fort-night at least, rise early in the Morning before day, or at the spring of day according to the time of the year; and having put on his Bridle washt in Beer, and tyed him up to the Rack, take away his dung and other foulness of the Stable; then dress him well as in *The Office of the Keeper*. When that work is finished, take a fair large Body-cloth of thick House-Wives Kerseie (if it be in Winter,) or of Cotton or other light stuff (if it be in Summer,) and fold it round about his Body; then clap on the Saddle, and girt the fore-most Girt pretty straight, but the other somewhat slack, and Wisp it on each side his Heart, that both the Girts may be of equal straightness.

Then put before his Breast a Breast-cloth suitable to the Body-cloth, and let it cover both his Shoulders, then take a little Beer into your Mouth, and squirt it into the Horses Mouth, and so draw him out of the Stable, and take his Back, leaving a Groom behind you to trim up

up the Stable to carry out your dung, and to truss up the Litter. For, you are to understand that he is to stand upon good store of dry Litter both Night and Day, and it must be Wheat-straw or Oat-straw, for Barley-straw and Rye-straw are very unwholesom and dangerous, the one doth Heart-burn, the other causeth Scouring. When you are Mounted, Rack the Horse a Foot-Pace, (for you must neither Amble nor Trot, for they both hurt speed) at least a mile or two, or more upon smooth and sound ground, and (as near as you can) to the steepest Hills you can finde; there Gallop him gently up those Hills, and rack and walk him softly down, that he may cool as much one way, as he warmeth another. And when you have thus exercised him a pretty space, and seeing the Sun begin to Rise, or else Risen, rack down either to some fresh River, or clear Pond, and there let him drink at his pleasure. After he hath drunk bring him gently out of the water, and so Ride him a little space with all gentleness, and not according to the ignorance of some Grooms, rush him presently into a Gallop, for that brings with it two mischiefs, either it teaches the Horse to Run away with you so soon as he is watered, or else refuse to drink, fearing the violence of his exercise which follows upon it. When you have used him a little calmly, put him into a Gallop gently, and exercise him moderately, as you did before; then walk him a little space, after offer him more water; if he drink, then Gallop him again (after calm usage;) if he refuse, then Gallop him to occasion thirst. And thus always give him Exercise both before and after water. When he hath drunk sufficient, bring him home gently, without a wet Hair, or any sweat about him. When you come to the Stable Door, provoke him to Piss if you can, by stirring up his Litter under him, which if he do not a little custom will make him do it, and it is a wholesom Action, both for his health and the sweet keeping of the Stable. This done, bring him to the Stall, and tie him up to the Rack, and rub him well with wisps, then loose his Breast-cloth; and rub his Head and Neck with a dry Cloth, then take off the Saddle and hang it by, then take his Body-cloth and rub him all over with it, especially his Back, where the Saddle stood. Then Cloath him up first with a Linnen-sheet, and then over that a good strong Housing-Cloth, and above it his Woollen Body-cloth, which in the Winter it is not amiss to have louned with some Cotton, but in the Summer the Kerfie is sufficient. When these are Girt about him, stop his Circingle with small wisps very loose, for they will be the softer.

His Feet stopped with Cows dung.

After he is Cloathed, stop his Feet with Cows dung, then throw into the Rack a little bundle of Hay, hard bound together, and well dusted, and let him eat it, standing upon his Bridle. When he hath stood an houre upon his Bridle, take it off, and rub his Head and Neck very well with a Rubber of Hempen Cloth, for this is good to dissolve all gross and thick humors from the Head; Then after you have made clean the Manger, take a quart of sweet, dry, old and clean dres'd Oats, for those that are unsweet breed infirmities; Those that are moist cause swelling in the body, those that are new breed Wormes, and they which are half-dres'd deceive the Stomach, and bring the Horse to ruine. Though the black Oat is tolerable, yet it makes foul dung, and hinder a mans knowledge in the state of his body. This quart of Oats you shall dres in such a Sieve as will let a light Oat pass thorough it, and if he eat them with a good stomach, let him have another, and let him rest till eleven of the Clock. Then rub his Head and Neck as before, and dres him another quart of Oats, then leave him till one of the Clock, with the Windows close, for the darker you keep him the better, and will cause him to lie down and take his rest, which otherwise he would not, therefore you are to Arm the Stable with Canvass, both for darkness, warmth, and that the filth may not come near him. Then at one of the Clock use him as you did before, and give him another quart of Oats in the same manner, making of him clean by taking away his dung, and give him a little Knob of Hay, and leave him till the Evening. At the Evening come to the Stable, and having made all things clean, bridle as in the Morning, take off his Cloaths, and dres him as before. Then Cloath, Saddle, bring him forth, and urge him to empty; Mount, rack him abroad, but not to the Hills, if you can find any other plain ground, and Air him in all points as you did in the Morning. When you have watered and spent the Evening in Airing, till within night, (for nothing is more wholesom and consumeth foulness, more then early and late Airings;) Rack him home to the Stable-door, and there alight and do as you did in the Morning, both within doors and without, and so let him rest till Nine at Night; then at Nine come to him, and rub down his Legs well with Wisps, and his Face and Neck with a clean Cloth, and turning up his Cloaths rub all his hinder parts, then give him a quart of Oats in the same manner as you did before, and after that a little bundle of Hay; then Toss up his Litter,

Litter, and make his bed soft, and leave him till the next Morning. Then the next Morning do every thing to him, without the least omission, as hath formerly been declared, and thus keep him for the first Fort-night, which will so take away his foulness, and harden his flesh, that the next Fortnight you may adventure to give him some Heats.

Object. But to answer an Objection, that may be urged touching the quantity of Provender which is prescribed. *Being but a quart at a Meal, seeing there be many Horses that will eat a larger Proportion, and so scant them to this little, were to starve, or at the best to breed weakness.*

Ans^r. I set not down this as an Infallible Rule, but a President that may be Imitated, yet altered at Pleasure: For I have left you this Caveat, that if he eat this with a good Stomach, you may give him another, leaving the Proportion to the Feeders Discretion.

Four Considerations in giving of Heats.

First, That two Heats in the Week, is a sufficient proportion for any Horse of what Condition or state of Body whatsoever. That one Heat should ever be given on that day in the Week, on which he is to run his Match; as thus: Your Match day is a *Monday*, your Heating-days are then *Mondays* and *Fridays*, and the *Monday* to be ever the sharper Heat, but because it is the day of his Match, and there are three days rest betwixt it and the other Heat. If the day be *Tuesday*, then the Heating days are *Tuesdays* and *Saturdays*; if *Wednesday*, then *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays*, by reason of the Lords-day, if on *Thursdays*, then *Thursdays* and *Mondays*, and so of the rest.

You shall give no Heat (but in case of necessity) in Rain or foul weather, but rather to defer houres and change times; for it is unwholesom and dangerous. And therefore in case of Showers and uncertain weather, you shall have for the Horse a loyned Hood, with loyned Eares, and the Nape of the Neck loyned to keep out Rain, for nothing is more dangerous then cold wet falling into the Ears, and upon the Nape of the Neck and Fillers.

4. And lastly, observe to give the Heats, (the Weather being seasonable) as early in the Morning as you can, that is, by the Spring of day, but by no means in the dark, for it is to the Horse both unwholesom and unpleasant, to the man a great Testimony of folly, and to both an Act of danger and precipitation.

The second Fort-nights Feeding.

You shall do all things as in the first Fort-night, onely before you put

put on his Bridle, give him a Quart of Oats, then bridle him up, and dress him, as before shewed, then Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water, Exercise and bring him home, as before shewed, onely you shall not put Hay into his Rack, but give it him out of your hand, handful after handful, and so leave him on his Bridle for an hour, then rub him, and after other Ceremonies Sift him a Quart of Oats, and set them by, then take a Loaf of Bread that is three days old, and made in this manner.

The First Bread.

Take three Pecks of clean Beans, and one Peck of Wheat, mix them together, and grind them, and bolt it pretty fine, and knead it up with good store of Barm and Lightning, but with as little water as may be, labour it in the Trough very well, and break it, and so cover it warm, that so it may swell, then knead it over again, and make it up in big Loaves, and so bake it well, and let it soak soundly, and when they are drawn, turn the bottom upwards, that so they may cool. At three days old give it him, for new Bread is hurtful, when you give it him, chip it very well, and cut some of it into small pieces, and put them into his quart of Oates you had formerly sifted. About eleven of the Clock give him the same quantity of Oats, and let him rest till the Afternoon. At one of the Clock in the Afternoon, if you intend not to give him a Heat that day, feed him with Bread and Oates as you did in the Forenoon, and so consequently every Meal following for that day.

But if you intend the next day to give him a Heat (to which I now bend mine aim) you shall only then give him a quart of Oates clean sifted, but no Hay, and so let him rest till Evening.

At four of the Clock give him a quart of clean sifted Oats, and after they are eaten, Bridle him up; Dress, Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water, Exercise, bring home and order, as before shewed, only give him no Hay at all. After he hath stood an hour upon his Bridle, give him a quart of Oates, and after they are eaten, put on his Head a sweet Muzzle, and let him rest till nine at night.

The use of the Muzzle.

The Use of the Muzzle being rightly made, is to keep the Horse from eating up his Litter, from gnawing upon Boards and mud-walks, and indeed to keep him from eating any thing but what he receives from your own hands, they are made sometimes of Leather, and stamped full of holes, or else close, but they are unsavory and unwholesome.

Nay, indeed all Leather is unpleasant. Besides, they are too close and too hot for him. The best Summer Muzzel (and indeed best at all times) is the Ner-muzzle, made of strong Pack-thread, and knit very thick and close in the bottom, and so enlarged wider and wider upwards to the middle of the Horses Head; then bound upon the top with Tape, and on the nether side a loop, and on the farther side a long string to fasten it to the Horses Head. The best Winter Muzzel (and indeed tolerable at any time) is made of double Canvas, with a round Button, and a square Latice Window of small Tape before both his Nostrils, down to the very bottom of the Muzzle, and upward more then a hand-ful, and must also have a loop and a string to fasten about his Head. At nine of the Clock at night, give him a quart of clean Oats, and when they are eaten, put on his Muzzel, and toss up his Litter, and so leave him.

The next day early give him a quart of clean Oates, rubbed between your hands with some Beer or Ale, and when he hath eaten them, Dress him and Saddle him as before, and being ready to depart, give him a new laid Egg or two, and wash his Mouth after it with Beer or Ale, and so lead him away, and at the Door provoke him to empty, then Mount and Rack him gently to the Course, ever and anon making him smell another Horses Dung.

When you are come within a Mile of the starting-Post, alight and take off his Body-cloth, and Breast-cloth, and girt on the Saddle again; then sending away your Grooms both with those Cloaths, and other dry Cloaths to rub with, let him stay at the end of the Course till you come: then your self Rack your Horse gently up to the starting-Post, and beyond, making him smell to that Post, (which you call the weighing Post) that he may take notice of the beginning and ending of the Course. There start your Horse soundly and sharply, at near a three quarters speed, and according to his Strength of Body, Ability of Wind, and Cheerfulness of Spirit, run him the whole Course through. But by no means do any thing in extremity, or above his Wind, but when you find him a little yield, then give him a little ease, so that all he doth may be done with Pleasure, and not with Anguish; For this manner of training will make him take delight in his labour, and so increase it: The contrary will breed discomfort, and make Exercise irksome. Also during the time you thus course him, you shall note upon what ground he runneth best, and whether up the hill or down the hill; whether on the smooth or on the rough, on the wet or on the dry, or

on the level or the earth somewhat rising: and according as you find his nature, so mannage him for your own advantage. When you have finished the Heats, and a little slightly Galloped him up and down to rate his Wind and chear his Spirits, you shall then (the Groom being ready) ride into some warm place, and with your glassing Knife, or scraping Knife, made either of some broken Sword-blade, or some old broken Sythe, or for want of that, a thin piece of old hard Oaken-wood, fashioned like a long broad Knife with a sharp edge, scrape off the Sweat of your Horse in every part (Buttocks excepted) till there will none arise, ever and anon moving him up and down: Then with dry Cloaths rub him all over (Buttocks excepted) then take off his Saddle and having glassed his Back, and rub'd it neer dry, put on his Body-Cloath and Breast cloth, and set on his Saddle again and girt it, then Mount and Gallop him gently, and ever and anon rubbing his Head, Neck and Body, as you sit, then walk him about the Fields to cool him; and when you find he dryeth apace, then Rack him homewards, sometimes Racking, and sometimes Galloping; and by no means bring him to the Stable, till you find him thoroughly dry. When you are come to the Stable-door intice him to empty, then set him up and tie him to the Rack, and (as having prepared it before) give him this scouring, made in this manner.

The first Scouring.

Take a pint of the Syrup of Roses, or a pint of strong Honyed-water, and dissolve into it of *Cassia*, *Agarick* and *Myrrhe*, of each an ounce, and Jumble them well together in a Viol-glass. Then being Mul'd, and made warm at the fire, and the Horse newly come from his Heat (as before shewed) give him this scouring, for it is a strong one, and avoideth all manner of Molten-grease and foulness.

Ordering him after his Scouring.

When you have given it him, rub his Legs well, then take off his Saddle, and if his Body be dry, run slightly over it with your Curry-Comb, and after that the *French Brush*, and lastly, rub him all over with dry Cloaths very well, and Cloath him up warm, and if the Weather be very cold, to throw over him a loose Blanket. He must fast full two houres after his Scouring, not departing out of the Stable, and keep

keep him stirring therein, for it will work the better. After he hath fasted on the Bridle two houres, then take a handful of Wheat-ears, and coming to him, handle the Roots of his Ears, then put your hand under his Cloaths next to his Heart upon his Flanks, and on the nether part of his things; and if you find any new Sweat arise, or any Coldness arise, or if you see his Body beat, or his Breast move fast, then forbear to give him any thing, for it shews there is much foulness stirred up, on which the Medicine worketh with a conquering quality; the Horse is brought to a little Sicknes, therefore in this case you shall only take off his Bridle, put on his Coller, toss up his Litter, and absent your self, (having made the Stable dark and still) for other two houres, which is the utmost end of that Sicknes. But if you find no such offence, then give him the Ears of Wheat, by three or four together, and if he eat this handful, give him another, and so another or two. Then give him a little knob of Hay well dusted, and draw his Bridle, and rub his Head well. An hour after give him a quart of clean Oates, and put two or three handfuls of spelted Beans amongst them, and see that they be very clean, and Break amongst them two or three Shives of Bread clean chipt, and so leave him for two or three houres. At evening before you dress him, give him the like quantity of Oates, Beans and Bread, and when he hath eaten them, Bridle him. Dress and Cloath him; for you shall neither Saddle or Air him forth, because this evening after his Heat, the Horse being foul, and the Scouring yet working in his Body, he may not receive any cold water at all. After he is drest and hath stood two hours on his Bridle, then wash three pints of clean Oates in Beer or Ale, and give them him, for this will inwardly cool him, as if he had drunk water.

After he hath eaten his washt Meat, and rested upon it a little, you shall at his feeding times with Oates and spelt Beans, or Oates and Bread, or altogether, or each several, or simply of it self, according to the liking of the Horse, feed him that night in plentiful manner, and leave a knob of Hay in his Rack when you go to Bed.

The next day early, first feed, then dress, Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water, and bring home as at other times; only have a more careful eye to his emptying, and see how his Grease and Foulness wasteth.

At his feeding times feed as was last shewed you, only but little Hay, and keep your Heating dayes, and the preparation of the day before, as was before shewed. Thus you shall speed the second Fort-night, in which your Horse having received four Heats, Horse man like given him,

him, and four Scourings, there is no doubt but his body will be drawn inwardly clean, you shall then the third Fortnight Order him according to the Rules following.

The Third Fortnights Feeding.

The third Fortnight you shall make his Bread Finer then it was formerly. As thus,

The Second Bread.

Take two Pecks of clean Beans, and two Pecks of fine Wheat. Grind them well, and Searce them through a fine Raunge, and knead them up with Barm and great store of Lightning, and make it up as you did the former Bread. With this Bread after the Crust is taken away, and being old, feed your Horse, as before shewed, for this Fortnight, as you did the former, putting it amongst his Beans and Oats, observing his Dressings, Airings, Feedings, Heatings and Preparations, as in the former Fortnight, only with these differences.

First, you shall not give your Heats so violently as before, but with a little more pleasure, as thus. If the first Heat have violence, the second shall have ease, and indeed none to overstrain him or to make his body sore. Next, you shall not after his Heats, give him any more of the former Scouring, but in stead thereof, instantly upon the end of the Heat, after the Horse is a little cooled and cloathed up; and in the same place where you rub him, give him a Ball as big as a Hens egg, of that Confection which is mentioned in the Office of the Farrier, and goeth by this Title, *The true Manner of Making those Cordial Balls, which Cure any violent Cold, or Glanders, which, &c.*

The fourth and last Fortnights Feeding.

The fourth and last Fortnight you shall make your Bread much finer then either of the former.

The last and best Bread.

Take three Pecks of fine Wheat, and one Peck of Beans, Grind them on the black Stones, and boulit them through the finest Boulter you can get, then Knead it up with sweet Ale. Barm, and new strong Ale and the Barm beaten together, and the Whites of twenty or thirty Eggs; but in any wise no Water at all, but instead thereof some small quan-

quantity of New Milk, then work it up. Bake it and Order it as the former. With this Bread, having the Crust cut clean away, and with Oats well Sunned, Beaten and Rubbed between your hands, then new Winnowed, Sifted and Drest'd, with the purest Ipelt Beans, and some fine Chiltern Wheat, with any Simple, or any Compound, feed your Horse at his Feeding times, as in the Fortnight last mentioned.

You shall keep your Heating days the first Week or Fortnight, but the last Week you shall forbear one heat, and not give any five days before the Match-day, onely you shall give him strong and long Airings.

You shall not need this Fortnight to give him any Scouring at all. If this Fortnight Morning and Evening, you burn the best Frankincense in your Stable, you shall finde it exceeding wholefom for him, and he will take wonderful delight therein.

In this Fortnight, when you give him any washt Meat, wash it in the Whites of Eggs, or Muskadine, for that is most wholefom and less Purfie.

This Fortnight give him no Hay, but what he taketh out of your hand after his Heats, and that in little quantity, and clear dusted.

The last Week of this Fortnight, if the Horse be a soul Feeder, you must use the Muzzel continually; but if he be a clean Feeder, then three days before the Match is sufficient.

The Morning, the day before your Match, feed well both before and after Airing, and water as at other times; before Noon and after Noon, scant his Portion of Meat a little; before and after Evening Airing, feed as at Noon, and Water as at other times, but be sure to come home before Sun-set.

Late at Night feed as you did in the Evening, and give him what he liketh, according to his stomach, onely as you can, forbear Bread and Beans.

This day you shall Coul your Horse, Shoo him, and do all extraordinary things of Ornament about him, provided that you do not give him offence to hinder his feeding or resting; For I have heard some Horse-men say, that when they had shod their horses with light Shoes, the night before the Course, that their Horse hath taken such notice thereof, that they have refused to eat, or lie down. But you must understand that those horses must be old, and long exprienced in this Exercise, or else they cannot reach these subtil apprehensions. But to
pass

pass by Curiosity, as plating of tails, and all other unnecessary Ornaments, whereby they do injury to the Horse, I shall advise you for necessary and indifferent things that they be done the day before, then on the Morning of the Course, because I would have him that morning find neither trouble nor vexation.

The next morning (which is the Match day) come to him very early, and take off his Muzzle, rub his Head well, right his Cloaths and give them ease by wisping and using the plain Circingle, then give him a pretty quantity of Oates washed in *Muscadine*, or the whites of Eggs, or if he refuse them, try him with fine drest Oates, mixt with Wheat, or Oates simple; when he hath eaten them, if he be a slow emptier, walk him abroad, and in the places where he uses to empty, there entice him to empty, which when he hath done bring him home and let him rest till you have warning to make ready. But if he be a free emptier, let him lie quiet.

When you have warning to make ready, take off his Muzzle and put on his Snaffle well washed in *Muscadine*, but before you Bridle him (if you think him to empty) give him three or four Mouths full of washed Meat last spoken of, then Bridle him up and dress him, and after pitch the Saddle and Girts with Cordwainers Wax, set it on and girt it gently, so as he may have feeling, but no straitness: then lay a clean Sheet over the Saddle, over it his ordinary Cloaths, then his Body-cloth and Breast-cloth, and wisp him round with soft wisps, then if you have a Counterpane, or Cloth of State for bravery sake, let it be fastened above all. Being now ready to draw out, give him half a pint of *Muscadine*, and so lead away.

In all your leadings upon the Course, use gently and calm Motions, suffering him to smell upon any Dung, and in especial places of advantage, as where you find Rushes, long-Grass lying, Heath or the like, walk in and entice him to Piss. But if you find no such help, then in especial places on the Course, and chiefly towards the latter end, and having used the same means before, break some of the wisps under him, and entice him to Piss.

Also in your leading, if any white or thick foam or froth rise about the Horses Mouth, with a clean Hand-kerchief wipe it away, and carrying a Bottle of clean water about you, wash his Mouth now and then with it.

When you come to the place of freight, before you uncloath, rub or chafe his Legs with hard wisps; then pick his Feet, uncloath, wash his

his Mouth with water, Mount his Rider, start fair, and leave the rest to Gods good will and Pleasure.

*Certain Observations and Advantages for every Feeder to observe in
Sundry Accidents.*

There is no unreasonablen Creature of pleasure subject to so many disastrous chances of Fortune, as the Horse, and especially the Running Horse, both by reason of the multiplicity of diseases belonging unto them, as also the violence of their Exercise, and the nice tenderness of their keeping: and therefore it behooveth every Feeder to be Armed with such Observations as may concern mischiefs, and those helps which may amend them when they happen.

Of Meat and Drink.

The first Observation that I shall Arm the Feeder withal, is the true distribution of Meat and Drink.

Let him observe, if there be any Meat or Drink or other Nourishment which you know to be good for him, yet he refuseth it: in this case you are not to thrust it violently upon him, but by gentle means and cunning enticements win him thereunto, tempting him when he is most hungry, and most dry; and if he get but a bit at a time, it will soon increase to a greater quantity, and ever let him have less then he desireth; and that the sooner he may be brought unto it, mix the Meat he loveth best with that he loveth worst, till both be made alike familiar, and so shall the Horse be a stranger to nothing that is good and wholesome.

Observations for Lameness.

Our Feeder must Observe, if his Horse be subject to Lameness or Stiffness, to surbate or tenderness of Feet, then to give him his Heat upon smooth Carpet Earth, or to forbear strong Ground, hard Highways, cross Ruts and Furrows, till extremity compel him.

Observations from the State of his Body.

Our Feeder must observe that the strongest state of Body (which I
H account

account the highest and fullest of Flesh, so it be good, hard, and without inward foulness) to be the best and ablest for the performance of these Wagers; yet herein he must take two Considerations: the one the Shape of the Horses Body, the other his inclination and manner of feeding.

For the Shape of his Body. There be some Horses that are round, plump and close knit together, so that they will appear Fat and well Shaped, when they are lean and in Poverty. Others are raw-boned, slender and loose knit together, and will appear lean and deformed when they are Fat, foul, and full of gross Humors.

From his Inclination.

So likewise for their Inclination, some Horses (at the first) will feed outwardly, and carry a thick Rib, when they are inwardly lean as may be. There be others that will appear lean to the eye, when they are only Grease. In this case the Feeder hath two helps to advantage his knowledge, the one outward, the other inward.

From his outward Handling.

The outward help, is the outward handling and feeling the Horse Body, generally over all his Ribs, but particularly upon his short and hindermost Ribs.

If his Flesh generally handle soft and loose, and the Fingers sink into it, as into Down, then is he foul without all question; but if generally it be hard and firm, only upon the hindermost Rib is softness, then he hath grease and foul matter within him, which must be avoided, how lean and poor soever he appear in outward Speculation.

The inward help is only sharp Exercise and strong Scouring; the first will dissolve the foulness, the latter will bring it away.

Observation from the Privy Parts.

Our Feeder must observe his Horses Stones, for if they hang down Side, or low from his Body, then is he out of lust and heart, and is either sick of Grease, or other foul humors; but if they lie close, couched up, and hid in a small Room, then he is Healthful and in good plight.

Observation

Observations for the Limbs.

Our Feeder must observe ever the night before he runs any Match, or sore heat, to bathe his Legs well, from the Knees and Cambrels downwards, either with clarified Dogs-grease, (which is the best) or Trotters Oyl (which is the next,) or else the best Hogs-grease, which is sufficient, and to work it well in with your hands and not with fire. For what he gets not in the first night, will be got in the next morning, and what is not got in the next morning, will be got in when he comes to uncloath at the end of the Course: So that you shall need to use the Oyntment but once, but the rubbing as often as you find opportunity.

Observation for Water.

Our Feeder shall observe, that albeit I give no directions for watering him after the heats, yet he may in any of the latter Fort-nights (binding him clean, and his grease consumed) somewhat late at night, as about six a Clock give him water in reasonable quantity, being made luke-warm, and fasting an hour after it. Also if through the unreasonableness of the weather, you cannot water abroad, then you shall at your watering houres water in the house, with warm water, as aforesaid. If you throw a handful of Wheat-Meal, Bran or Oat-meal finely powdred (but Oat-meal is the best) into the water, it is very wholesome.

Observations for the ground to run in.

Our Feeder shall observe that if the ground whereon he is to run his Match, be dangerous and apt for mischievous Accidents, as strains, over reaches, Sinew-bruises, and the like, that then he is not bound to give all his Heats thereon; but having made him acquainted with the Nature thereof, then either to take part of the Course, as a Mile, two or three, according to the goodness of the Ground, and so to run him forth, and again (which we call turning Heats) provided always that he end his Heat at the weighing Post, and that he make not his Course less, but rather more in quantity then that he must run. But if for some special Cases, he like no part of the Course, then he may many

The Office of the Ambler.

times (but not ever) give his heat upon any other good ground, about any spacious and large Field, where the Horſe may lay down his Body and run at pleaſure.

Observations from Sweat.

Our Feeder ſhall take eſpecial regard in all his Airings, Heatings, and all manner of Exerciſes whatſoever, to the Sweating of the Horſe, and the occaſions of his Sweating; as if he Sweat upon little or no occaſion, as walking a Foot-pace, ſtanding ſtill in the Stable, and the like, it is then apparent that the Horſe is Faint, foul fed, and wanteth Exerciſe.

If upon good occaſion, as ſtrong Heats, great Labour, and the like, he Sweat, yet his Sweat is white Froth, and like Sope-Suds, then is the Horſe inwardly foul, and wanteth alſo Exerciſe. But if the Sweat be black, and as it were only water thrown upon him, without any frothineſs, then is he clean fed, in good luſt and good caſe, and you may adventure riding without danger.

Observations from the Hair.

Our Feeder ſhall obſerve his Hair in general, but eſpecially his Neck, and thoſe Parts that are uncovered, and if they lie ſlick, ſmooth and cloſe, and hold the beauty of their natural colour, then is he in good caſe; but if they be rough or ſtaring, or if they be diſcoloured, then is he inwardly cold at the Heart, and wanteth both Cloaths and warm keeping.

Many other Obſervations there are, but theſe are moſt Material, and I hope ſufficient for any underſtanding.

The Office of the Ambler.

Observations in Ambling.

THere is not any Motion in a Horſe more deſired, more uſeful, nor indeed more hard to be obtained unto by a right way, than the Motion

tion of Ambling; and yet (if we will believe the Protestations of the Professors) not any thing in all the Art of Horsemanship more easie, or more several ways to be effected, every man conceiving to himself a several Method, and all those Methods held as infallible Maximes, that can never fail in the accomplishment of the Work.

Mens Opinions and Errors.

But they which know truths, know the Errors in these Opinions, for albeit, every man that hath hardly a smell of Horsemanship, can discourse of a way how to make a Horse Amble, yet when they come to the performance of the Motion, their failings are so great and their errors so gross, that for mine own part, I never yet saw an exact Ambler, I confess some one man may make a Horse Amble well and perfectly, nay, more then one, per-adventure many, and thereby assume unto himself the name of perfection, yet such a man have I seen erre grossly, and spoil more then his labour was able to recompence.

But leaving mens Errors, because they are past my Reformation, I will only touch at some special Observations, which in mine Opinion I hold to be the easiest, the certainest and readiest for the effecting of this work; and withal glance at those absurdities which I have seen followed, though to little purpose, and less benefit.

Ambling by the Plowed Field.

There is one commends the new Plowed Lands, and affirms, that by toyling the Horse thereon in his Foot-pace, there is no way so excellent for the making of him Amble; but he forgets what weakness, nay, what Lameness, such disorderly toyl brings to a young Horse, nay, to any Horse; because the Work cannot be done without weariness, and no weariness is wholesome.

Ambling by the Gallop.

Another will teach his Horse to Amble from the Gallop, by sudden stopping, a more sudden choking him in the Cheeks of the Mouth, thrusting him into such an amazedness betwixt his Gallop and his Trot, that losing both he cannot choose but find out Ambling.

But this Man forgets not alone the Error before spoken (which is too great toil) but also spoils a good Mouth (if the Horse had one,) loses a good Rein (if there were any,) and by over-reaching and clapping one foot against another, endangers upon every step an Hoof-breach or Sinew-strain.

Ambling by Weights.

Another says there is no better way then Ambling by Weights, and thereupon overloads his Horse with unmerciful Shooes of intolerable Weight, and forgets how they make him enterfere, strike short with his Hind-feet, and though his motion be true, yet is so slow, that it is not worth his labour. Another folds great Weights of Lead about his Feet-lock Pasterns, and forgets that they have all the mischiefs of the former; besides, the endangering of incurable Straines, the crushing of the Crownet, and the Breeding of Ring-bones, Crown-scabs and Quitter-bones.

Another Loads his Horse upon the Fillets with Earth, Lead, or some other Massy substance, and forgets the swaying of the back, the overstraining of the Fillets, and a general disabling of all the hinder parts.

Ambling in Hand, or not ridden.

Another struggles to make his Horse Amble in his Hand, before he Mounts his Back, by the help of some Wall, smooth Pail or Rail, and by Chocking him in the Mouth with the Bridle hand, and Correcting him with his Rod on the hinder Hoofs, and under the Belly, when he treadeth false, and never remembers in what desperate frantickness it drives an Horse, before he can make him understand his meaning, as Splaunging, Rearing, Sprauling out his Legs, and using a World of Antick postures, which once settled, are hardly ever after reclaimed: besides when he hath spent all his labour, and done his utmost, as soon as he mounts his Back, he is as far to seek of his Pace as if he had never known such a Motion.

Ambling by the help of Shooes.

Another finds out a new stratagem, and in despite of all opposition in the Horse. will make him Amble perfectly, and thereupon he makes him a pair of hinder-Shooes, with long Spurns or Plates before the Toes, and of such length, that if the Horse offer to Trot, the hinder-Foot beats

beats the fore-Foot before it. But he forgets that the Shoes are made of Iron, and the Horses Legs of Flesh and Blood, neither doth he remember with what violence the hinder-Foot follows the fore-Foot, nor that every stroke it gives can light upon any place, but the back Sinews, then which there is no Part more tender, nor any wound that brings such incurable Lameness.

Ambling by the help of fine Lifts.

Another (out of quaintness more then strong Reason) strives to make his Horse Amble by taking of fine soft Lifts, and folding them streight about the Cambrels, in that place where you Garter an Horse for a stifle strain, & then turn him to Gras for a Fort-night or more, in which time (saith he) he will fall to a perfect Amble, (for it is true, he cannot Trot but with pain) then taking away the Lifts, the work is finished.

But under the Correction of the Professors of this foreign trick, for it is a *Spanish Practice*, I must assure them, that if they gain their purpose, they must offend the Members: If they hurt not the Limbs, they lose their labour; but however this is most assured, that the Amble thus gained, must be disgraceful, crambing and Cringing in the hinder Parts, without comeliness, speed, or clear deliverance.

Ambling by the Hand only.

Another (and he calls himself the Master Ambler of all Amblers) affirms, there is no true way of making an Horse to Amble, but by the hand only, and I am of this Opinion, could this secret be found out, or could a man make a horse do all that he Imagined; but horses are Rebellious, and men are Furious, and the least of either of these spoils the whole work; and it is impossible for any man to fadge an horse to a new Motion, utterly unknown, against which he will not resist with his uttermost power. Besides, to do this Action with the hand only, it must only be done from the horses Mouth, and that Mouth must of necessity be altered from his first manner of Riding; for to use all one Hand must preserve all one Motion, and then where is his Ambling, which was not known at the first Backing? Again, we strive at the first Backing of an horse, to bring his Mouth to all sweetness, his Reins to all

all Statelines, and the general Carriage of his Body to all Comelines. Now in this Course of Ambling by the hand only, the Mouth must be changed from the Chaps to the Weeks of the Mouth, which is from sweetness to harshness, his Rein must be brought from constancy to inconstancy: for the Eyes that did look upward, the Nose and Muzzle which was couched Inward, must be turned outward, and the general comelines of the Bodies Carriage must be brought to disorder and false treading, or else he shall never accomplish the true Art of Ambling by the hand only.

Ambling by the Tramel.

There is another, (I will not call him the best, because his error may be as great as any) and he will make his horse Amble by the help of the Tramel only, which I confess is neerest, the best and most assured way, yet he hath many errors, as followeth.

Errors in the Tramel.

First, he loseth himself in the want of knowledge, for the length of the Tramel, and either he makes it too long, (which gives no stroke) or too short (which gives a false stroke) the first makes an horse hackle and shuffle his Feet confusedly, the latter makes him roul and twitch up his hinder-Feet so suddenly, that by Custome it brings him to a string halt, from which he will hardly be recovered ever after. Another loses himself and his labour by misplacing the Tramel, and out of a Niceness to seem more expert then he is, or out of fearfulness to prevent falling (to which the Tramel is subject) places them above the Knee, and above the hinder foot-hoof. But the Rule is neither good nor handsom; for if the Tramel be too long or loose, that is, gives no offence to the Sinews, and other ligaments, about which they must necessarily be bound, when they are raised so high, then they can give no true stroke, neither can the fore-Leg compel the hinder to follow it. And if they be so short or streight, that the fore-Leg cannot step forward, but the hinder must go equal with it, then will it so press the main Sinew of the hinder-Leg, and the Veins and Flethy part of the fore-Thighs, that the Horse will not be able to go without halting before, and cringing and crambling his hinder-parts so ill-favouredly, that it will be irksome to behold it: besides it will occasion Swellings, and draw down

down humors, which will be more noysome then the Pace will be beneficial.

Another makes his Tramel of such course and hard stuff, or else girts it so streight, or leaves it fretting up and down so loose, that he galls his Horses Legs, and leaves neither hair nor skin upon them, at the best it leaves such a foul print and mark upon the Legs, that every one will accuse both the Horse and his Teacher of disgrace and indiscretion.

As these, so I must conclude with the last error of the Tramel, which is Mens Opinions, and though it be the most insufficient, yet it hath the greatest power to over-sway Truth, and that is, the Tramel is utterly unnecessary and unprofitable, and the Defender worthy of no Imploiment, alledging the Land only to be excellent.

The Errors I have already confuted; it now remains (after all these faults finding) that I shew the truest, the easiest, and that way which is most uncontrollable for the making of an Horse to Amble with all the gracefulness and perfection that can be required.

The best way to Amble an Horse.

When you are about to make an Horse Amble truly, and without controulment. First, try with your hand by a gentle and deliberate racking and thrusting of the Horse forward, by helping him in the Weeks of his Mouth with your Snaffle, (which must be smooth, big and full) and correcting him first on one side, then on another with the Calves of your Legs, and sometimes with the Spur; if you can make him of himself strike into an Amble, though shuffling disorderly, there will be much labour saved: for that proclivity or aptness to Amble, will make him, with more easiness and less danger, endure the use of the Tramel, and make him find the Motion without stumbling or amazement: but if you find he will by no means either apprehend the Motions or Intentions, then struggle not with him, but fall to the use of the Tramel in this manner following.

The form of the Tramel.

But before I come to the Use and Vertue thereof, I will shew you the form and substance whereof it ought to be made; because nothing hath ever done this Instrument more injury, then false Substances and false Shapes. Therefore some make these Tramels all of Leather, and
I
ch at

that will either reach or break, the first marrs the Work by uncertainty, the other loseth the labour.

Another makes it of Canvals, and that galls.

A third makes it of strong Lifts, and that hath all the faults of both the former, for the softness will not let it lie close, and the gentleness makes it stretch out of all compass, or break upon every stumble. And as these, so there are a World of other useles Tramel, for you must understand, that touching the true Tramel, the side-Ropes must be firm, without yielding an hair: The Hose must be soft, lie close, and not move from his first place, and the Back-band must be flat, no matter how light, and so defended from the Fillets, that it may not gall. And this Tramel must be thus made, and of these Substances.

First, for the side-Ropes they must be made of the best, finest and strongest Pack-thread, such as your *Turky*-thread, and turned by the Roper into a delicate strong Cord, yet at the utmost, not above the bigness of a small Jack-line, with a Noose at each end, so strong as is possible to be made; neither must these side-Ropes be twined too hard, but gentle, and with a yielding condition, for that will bring on the Motion more easie, and keep the Tramel from breaking, now these side Ropes must be just thirty six Inches in length, and so equal one with another, that no difference may be espied.

For the Horse which must be placed in the small of the fore-Leg, and the small of the hinder-Leg above the Feet-lock, they must be made of fine Girt-Web, which is soft and pliant, and loyned with double Cotton: Over the Girt-Web must be fastened strong Tabbs, of white Neats-Leather well Tallowed, and suited to an even length, and stamped with holes of equal distance, which shall pass through the Nooses of the side-Ropes, and be made longer or shorter at pleasure, with very strong Buckles. These Hose, the Girt would be four Inches in length, and the Tabbs ten.

The Back-Band being of no other use but to bear up the side-Ropes, would (if you Tramel all the fore-Legs) be made of fine Girt-Web, and loyned with Cotton; but if you Tramel but one side, then an ordinary Tape will serve, being sure that it carries the side-Ropes in an even line, without either rising or falling; for if it rise, it shortens the side-Rope, and if it fall, it endangers tangling.

Thus you see what the true Tramel is, and how to be made: touching the use, it thus followeth.

The true Use of the true Tramel.

When you have brought your Horse into an even smooth Path without rubs or roughness, you shall there loose the neer-fore-Leg, and the neer-hinder-Leg; then put to them the side-Rope, and see that he stand at that just proportion which Nature her self hath formed him, without either straining or enlarging his Members, and in that even and just length, stay the side-Rope by a small Tape fastened up to the Saddle. Then with your hand on the Bridle, straining his Head, put him gently forward, and if need be, have the help of a by-stander to put him forward also, and so force him to Amble up and down the Road with all the gentleness you can, suffering him to take his own leisure, that thereby he may come to an understanding of his restraint, and your will for the performance of the Motion, and though he snapper or stumble, or per-adventure fall now and then, yet it matters not, do you only stay his Head, give him leave to rise, and with all gentleness put him forward again, till finding his own fault, and understanding the Motion, he will become perfect, and Amble in your Hand to your contentment. And that this may be done with more ease and less amazement to the Horse, it is not amiss (at his first Trampling) that you give your side-Ropes more length then ordinary, both that the twitches may be less sudden, and Motion coming more gently, the Horse may sooner apprehend it.

But as soon as he comes to any perfectness, then instantly put the side-Ropes to their true length. For an Inch too long, is a Foot too slow in the Pace; and an Inch too short causeth rousing, a twitching up of the Legs, and indeed a kind of plain Halting.

When to Alter the Tramel.

When the Horse will thus Amble in your hand perfectly, being Trammelled on one side, you shall then change them to the other side, and make him Amble in your hand as you did before. And thus you shall

shall do, changing from one side to another, till with this Half-Tramell he will Run and Amble in your hand, without snapping or stumbling, both readily and swiftly; when this is attained unto, which cannot be above two or three houres labour, (if there be any tractableness) you may then put on the whole Tramel, and the broad, flat back band, Trampling both sides equally; and so run him in your hand (at the utmost length of the Bridle) up and down the Road divers times, then pause, cherish, and to it again; and thus apply him, till you have brought him to that Perfection, that he will Amble swiftly, truly and readily, when, where, and how you please: then put him upon uneven and uncertain ways, as up-hill and down-hill, where there are clots and roughness, and where there is hollowness and false treading.

When to Mount his Back.

Now when he is perfect in your hand upon all these, you may then adventure to Mount his Back, which (if you please) you may first do by a Boy, or Groom, making the Horse Amble under him, whilest you stay his head to prevent danger, or to see how he striketh. Then after Mount your self, and with all gentleness and lenity, encreasing his Pace more and more, till you come to the height of Perfection. And thus as you did before in your hand, so do now on his Back, first with the whole Tramel, then with the half, and changing the Tramel oft, first from one side, then to another, then altering Grounds, till you finde that exquisiteness which you desire, and this must be done by daily exercise and labour, as twice, thrice, sometimes oftner in the day.

When to Journey.

When you have obtained your wish in the Perfection of his stroke, the nimbleness of his Limbs, and the good Carriage of his Head and Body, you may then take away the Tramel altogether, and exercise him without it. But this Exercise I would have upon the High-way (and not Horse-courser like) in a private smooth Road, for that affords but a confusing Pace, which is left upon every small weariness; therefore take the High-way forward for three, four or five miles in a Morning, more or less, as you finde his aptness and ability. Now if in the Journeying, either through weariness, ignorance or peevishness, you finde in him a willingness to forsake his Pace, then (ever carrying in your Pocket the half Tramel) alight and put them on, and so exercise him in them, and now and then give him ease, bring him home in his

true Pace. This Exercise you shall follow day by day, and every day encreasing it more and more, till you have brought him from one mile to many; which done, you may then give him ease, as letting him rest a day or two, or more, and then apply him again; and if you finde in him neither error nor alteration, then you may conclude your Work is finished.

But if any alteration do happen (as many phantastick Horses are subject unto,) if it be in the motion of his Pace, then with your hand reform it. But if that fail, then the use of the half Tramel will never fail you.

Now if the Error proceed from any other occasion, look seriously into the cause thereof, and taking that away the effect will soon cease; for you are to understand, that in this manner of teaching him to Amble, you are forbidden no help whatsoever which belongs unto Horsemanship, as Chain, Cavezan, Musroul, Head-strain, Martingale, Bit, or any other necessary Instrument, because this motion is not drawn from the Mouth, but from the Limbs.

Many things else might be spoken on this subject; but it would but load paper, and weary memory, and I am only at short Essays, and true Experiments, therefore take this as sufficient.

The Office of the Buyer, wherein is shewed all the Perfections and Imperfections that are or can be in a Horse.

Observations and Advertisements for any man when he goes about to buy an Horse.

THERE is nothing more difficult in all the Art of Horsemanship, then to set down constant and uncontrollable Resolutions, by which to bind every mans minde to an unity of Consent in the buying of an Horse: for, according to the old Adage, *What is one Mans Meat, is another Mans Poison*; What one affects, another dislikes. But to proceed according to the Rule of Reason, the Precepts of the Ancients, and the Modern practice of our conceived Opinions, I will, as briefly

as I can, (and the rather, because it is a labour I never undertook in this wise before) shew you those Observations and Advertisements which may fortifie you in any hard Election.

The End for which to Buy.

First, therefore you are to observe, that if you will Elect an Horse for your Hearts Contentment, you must consider the end and purpose for which you buy him, as whether for the Wars, Running, Hunting, Travelling, Draught or Burthen, every one having their several Characters, and their several Faces both of Beauty and uncomeliness.

But because there is but one Truth, and one Perfection, I will under the Description of the perfect and untainted Horse, shew all the Imperfections and Attaindures, which either Nature or Mischance can put upon him of greatest deformity.

Let me then advise you that intend to buy an Horse, to acquaint your self with all the true Shapes and Excellencies which belong to an Horse, whether it be in his Natural and true Proportion, or in any accidental or outward increase or decrease of any Limb or Member, and from their Contraries, to gather all things whatsoever that may give dislike or offence.

Election how divided.

To begin therefore with the first Principle of Election, you shall understand they are divided into two especial Heads, the one General, the other particular.

The General Rule.

The General Rule of Election is, First, the End for which you buy; Then his Breed or Generation, his Colour, his Pace, and his Stature, These are said to be General, because they have a general dependence upon every mans several opinions, as the first, which is the End for which you buy, it is a thing shut up only in your own bosom.

Of Breed.

The other which is Breed, you must either take it from faithful report, your own knowledge, or from some known and certain Characters, by which one strain, or one Countrey is distinguished from another, as the *Neapolitan* is known by his Hawk-Nose, the *Spaniard* by his small Limbs, the *Barbary* by his fine Head and deep Hoof, the *Dutch* by his rough Legs, the *English* by his general strong knitting together, and so forth of divers others.

Of Colour.

As for his Colour, though there is no Colour exempt from goodness, for I have seen good of all, yet there are some better reputed then others, as the Dapple-Grey for Beauty, the Brown Bay for Service, the Black with Silver Hairs for Courage, and the Light and true mixt Roan for Countenance. As for the Sorrel, the Black without White, and the unchangeable Iron Grey, are Reputed Cholerick; the bright Bay, the Flea-bitten, and the Black with white Marks, are Sanguinists; the Black, White, Yellow, Dun, Kite-glewed and the Py-bald, are Phlegmatick; and the Chetnut, the Mouse-dun, the Red-bay, the blew Grey, are Melancholy.

Pace, as Trotting.

Now for his Pace, which is either Trot, Amble, Rack or Gallop, you must Refer it to the end also for which you buy; as if it be for the Wars, Running, Hunting, or your own Pleasure, then the Trot is most tolerable, and this Motion you shall know by a Cross Moving of the Horses Limbs, as when the fore-Leg, and the near Hinder-Leg, or the near fore-Leg and the far Hinder-Leg move and go forward in one instant. And in this Motion, the nearer the Horse taketh his Limbs from the Ground, the opener, the evener and the shorter is his Pace; for to take up his feet slovenly, shews stumbling and lameness: To tread narrow or cross shews enterfering or failing; to step uneven shews toil and weariness, and to tread long, shews over-reaching.

Ambling.

Now if you Eleſt for Eaſe, great Perſons Seats, or long Travel, then Ambling is required. And this Motion is contrary to Trotting, for now both the Feet on one ſide muſt move equally together, that is, the far fore-Leg, and the far hinder-Leg, and the near fore-Leg, and the near hinder-Leg. And this Motion muſt go juſt, large, ſmooth and nimble: for to tread falſe, takes away all eaſe: to tread ſhort, rides no ground, to tread rough, ſhews rouling; and to tread un-nimble, ſhews a falſe Pace that never continueth, as alſo Lameneſs.

Racking.

If you Eleſt for Buck-hunting, Galloping on the High-way Poſt, Hackney, or the like, then a racking Pace is required: and this Motion is the ſame that Ambling is, only it is in a ſwifter time, and a ſhorter tread; and though it rid not ſo much ground, yet it is a little more eaſie.

Galloping.

Now to all theſe Paces muſt be joyned a good Gallop, which naturally every Trotting and Racking Horſe hath; the Ambler is a little unapt thereunto, becauſe the Motions are both one, ſo that being put to a greater ſwiftnes of Pace then formerly he hath been acquainted withal, he handles his Legs confuſedly, and out of order, and being trained gently and made to underſtand the Motion, he will as well undertake it as any Trotting-horſe whatſoever. Now in a good Gallop you are to obſerve theſe Vertues. Firſt, that the Horſe which taketh up his Feet nimble from the ground, but doth not raiſe them high, that neither rouleth nor beateh himſelf, that ſtretcheth out his fore-Legs, follows nimble with his hinder, and neither cuteth under his Knee (which is called the ſwift cut) nor croſſeth, nor claps one Foot on another, and ever leadeth with his far fore-Foot, and not with the near, he is ſaid ever to Gallop comely and moſt true, and he is the fitteſt for Speed, or any ſwift Imploiment. If he Gallop round, and raiſe his fore-Feet, he is then ſaid to Gallop ſtrongly, but not ſwiftly, and is fitteſt for the great Saddle, the Wars and ſtrong encounters; If he Gallop ſlow, yet ſure, he will ſerve for the High-way: but if he labor his Feet confuſedly, and Gallop painfully, then is he good for no Galloping Service: beſides, it ſhews ſome hidden Lameneſs.

Stature.

Lastly, touching his Stature, it must be referred to the end for which you buy, ever observing that the biggest and strongest are fittest for strong occasions, and great burthens, strong draughts, and double carriage, the middle size for pleasure and general employments; and the least for ease, street-walks, and Summer Hackney.

The particular Rule.

Now touching the particular Rule of Election, it is contained in the discovery of Natural deformities, accidental outward Sorances, or inward hidden mischiefs, which are so many and so infinite, that it is a World of Work to explain them, yet for satisfaction sake, I will in as methodical manner as I can, shew what you are to observe in this occasion.

How to stand to view.

When a Horse is brought unto you to buy (being satisfied for his Breed, his Pace, Colour and Stature,) then see him stand naked before you, and placing your self before his Face, take a strict view of his Countenance, and the cheerfulness thereof: for it is an excellent Glass wherein to behold his goodness and best perfections. As thus,

His Ears.

If his Ears be small, thin, sharp, short, pricked and moving; or if they be long, yet well set on, and well carried, it is a mark of beauty, goodness and mettle: but if they be thick, laved or lolling, wide set, and unmoving, then are they signs of dulness, doggedness, and evil Nature.

His Face.

If his Face be lean, his fore-head swelling outward, the Mark or Feather in his Face set high, as above his Eyes, or at the top of his Eyes, if he have a white Star, or white Ratch of an indifferent Size, and even placed, or a white Snip on his Nose or Lip; all are Marks of Beauty and goodness. But if his Face be Fat, Cloudy or Skouling, his Fore-head flat as a Trencher, (which we call Mare-faced) for the mark in his Fore-head stand low, as under his Eyes: If his Star or Ratch stand awry, or in an evil posture, or instead of a Snip, his Nose be raw and un-hairy, or his Face generally bald, all are signs of deformity.

His Eyes.

If his Eyes be round, big, black, shining, starting or staring from his Head, if the black of the Eye fill the Pit or Outward Circumference, so that in the moving, none (or very little) of the white appeareth, all are signs of beauty, goodnes, and material: but if his Eyes be uneven, and of a wrinkled proportion, if they be little (which we call Pig-eyed) both are uncomely signs of weaknes: if they be red and fiery, take heed of Moon-eyes, which is next door to blindness, if white and walled, it shews a weak Sight and unnecessary starting or finding of Buggards: if with white Specks, take heed of the Pearl, Pin and Web: if they water or shew bloody, it shews bruises; and if any Matter, they shew old over-riding, festered Rheums, or violent strains. If they look dead or dull, or are hollow, or much sunk, take heed of Blindnes at the best. The best is of an old decrepit Generation: if the Black fill not the Pit, but the white is always appearing, or if in moving, the White and Black be seen in equal quantity, it is a sign of weaknes and a dogged disposition.

His Cheeks and Chaps.

If in handling his Cheeks or Chaps, you find the bones lean and thin, the space wide between them, the Throple or Wind-pipe big as you can gripe, and the void place without Knots or Kernels; and generally the Jaws so great, that the Neck seemeth to couch within them, they are excellent signs of great Wind, courage and soundnes of Head and Body. But if the Chaps be fat and thick, the space between them closed up with gross Substance, and the Throple little, all are signs of short Wind, and much inward foulness. If the void place be full of Knots and Kernels, take heed of the Strangle or Glaunders, at the best, the Horse is not without a foul Cold. If his Jaws be so streight that his Neck swelleth above them, if it be no more then natural, it is only an uncomely sign of short Wind, and Purflenels or Grossnes; but if the Swelling be long, and close by his Chaps like a Whet-stone, then take heed of the Vices, or some other unnatural Impostume.

His Nostrils and Muzzle.

If his Nostrils be open, dry, wide and large; so as upon any straining
the

the Inward redness is discovered, and if his Muzzle be small, his Mouth deep, and his Lips equally meeting; then all are good signs of Wind, Health and Courage. But if his Nostrils be streight, his Wind is little; if his Muzzle is gross, his Spirit is dull; if his Mouth be shallow, he will never carry a Bit well; and if his upper Lip, will not reach his nether, old Age or Infirmary hath marked him for Carrion. If his Nose be moist and dropping, if it be clear water, it is a Cold; if foul Matter, then beware of Glaunders: if both Nostrils run, it is hurtful; but if one, then most dangerous.

His Teeth.

Touching his Teeth and their Vertues, they are set down in a particular Chapter; onely remember, you never buy an Horse that wanteth any, for as good lose all almost as one.

His Breast.

From his Head look down to his Breast and see that it be broad, out-swelling, and Adorned with many Features: for that shews strength and durance. The little Breast is uncomely, and shews weakness, the narrow Breast is apt to stumble, fall and enterfeir before: the Breast that is hidden Inward, and wanteth the beauty and division of many Feathers, shews a weak Armed Heart, and a Breast that is unwilling and unfit for any violent toyl or strong labour.

His Fore-Thighs.

Next look down from his Elbow to his Knee, and see that those fore-Thighs be rush grown, well horned within, Sinewed, Flethy, and out-swelling, for they are good signs of strength, the contrary shews weakness, and are unnatural.

His Knees.

Then look on his Knees, and see that they carry a proportion, be lean, Sinewy and close knit, for they are good and comely; but if one be bigger and rounder then another, the Horse hath received mischief: if they be gross, the horse is Gouty: if they have Scars, or Hair-broken, it is a true mark of a stumbling Jade, and a perpetual faller.

His Legs.

From his Knees, look down to his Legs, to his Pasterns, and if you find them lean, flat and sinewy, and the Inward bought of his Knee without Seames, or Hair-broken, then he shews good Shape and Soundness. But if on the inside of the Leg you find hard Knots, they are Splinters; if on the out-side they are Screws or Excressions; if under his Knees be Scabs, on the in-side, it is the swift cut, and he will ill endure Galloping; if above his Pasterns on the in-side you find Scabs, it shews interfeiring; but if the Scabs be generally over his Legs, it is either extream foul keeping, or else a spice of the Maunge; if his Flesh be fat, round and fleshy, he will never endure labour: and if on the Inward bought of his Knee you find Seams, Scabs or Hair-broken, it shews a Melander, which is a Cankerous Ulcer.

His Pasterns.

Look then on his Pastern-joynt and his Pastern, the first must be clear and well knit together, the other must be short, strong and upright standing: for if the first be big or swell'd, take heed of Sinew strains and Gourdings: if the other be long, weak or bending, the Limbs will be hardly able to carry the Body without tiring.

His Hoofs.

For the Hoofs in General, they should be black, smooth, tough, rather a little long then round, deep, hollow and full of Sounding: for white Hoofs are tender, and carry a Shoo ill; a rough, gross Seamed Hoof, shews old Age or over Heating. A brittle Hoof will carry no Shoo at all; an extraordinary round Hoof is ill for foul wayes, and deep Hunting. A flat Hoof that is pumised, shews foundering; and a Hoof that is empty, and hollow-sounding, shews a decaied Inward part, by reason of some wound or dry founder. As for the Crown of the Hoof, if the Hair lie smooth and close, and the Flesh flat and even, then all is perfect; but if the Hair be Staring, the Skin Scabbed, and the Flesh rising, then look for a Ring-bone, or a Crown-scab, or a Quitter-bone.

The setting on of his Head, his Crest and Mane.

After this, stand by his side, and first look to the setting on of his Head, and see that it stand neither too high, nor too low, but in a direct

direct line, that his Neck be small at the setting on of his Head, and Long, growing deeper to the Shoulders, with an high, strong and thin Mane, long, soft, and somewhat curling, for these are beautiful Characters: whereas to have the Head ill set on, is the greatest deformity, to have any bigness or swelling in the Nape of the Neck, shews the Pole-evil, or beginning of a Fistula; to have a short thick Neck like a Bull, to have it falling at the Withers, to have a low, weak, a thick or falling Crest, shews want both of strength and mettle: to have much Hair on the Mane, shews intollerable dulness; to have it too thin, shews fury; and to have none, or shed, shews the Worm in the Mane, the Itch, or else plain Maunginess.

His Back, Ribs, Fillets, Belly and Stones.

Look on the Chine of his Back, that it be broad, even and streight, his Ribs well compassed and bending Outward, his Fillets upright, strong and short, and not above a handful between his last Rib and his Huckle-bone, let his Belly be well let down, yet hidden within his Ribs, and let his Stones be well truss'd up to his Body, for all these are marks of Health and good Perfection; whereas to have his Chine narrow, he will never carry a Saddle without wounding, and to have it bending or Saddle-backed, shews weakness.

To have his Ribs flat, there is not liberty for Wind.

To have his Fillets hanging, long or weak, he will never climb an hill nor carry a burthen. And to have his Belly clung up or gaunt, or his Stones hanging down, loose, or aside, they are both signs of sickness, tenderness, foundering in the Body, and unaptness for labour.

His Buttocks.

Then look upon his Buttocks, and see that they be round, plump, full, and in an even Level with his Body: or if long, that it be well raised behind, and spread forth at the setting on of the Tail, for these are comely and beautiful. The narrow Pin-buttock, the Hog or Swine-rump, and the falling and down-let Buttock are full of deformity, and shew both an injury in Nature, and that they are neither fit or becoming, for Pad, Foot-Cloth or Pillion.

His hinder-Thighs.

Then look to his hinder-Thighs or Gaskings, if they be well let down even to the middle Joynt, thick, brawny, full and Swelling: for that

is a great argument of strength and goodness, whereas the lank, slender Thighs shew disability and weakness.

His Cambrels.

Then look upon the middle Joynt behind, and if it be nothing but Skin and Bone, Veins and Sinews, and rather a little bending then too streight, then it is perfect as it should be. But if it hath Chaps or Sores on the Inward bought or bending, then that is a Sellander. If the Joynt be swell'd generally all over, then he hath got a blow or Bruise, if the Swelling be particular, as in the Pit or hollow Part, or on the inside, and the Vein full and proud, if the Swelling be soft, it is a Blood-spaven: if hard, a Bone-spaven, but if the Swelling be just behind, before the Knuckle, then it is a Curb.

Hinder-Legs.

Then look to his hinder-Legs, if they be lean, clean, flat and Sinewy, then all is well; but if they be fat they will not endure labour. If they be Swelled, the Grease is molten in them. If he be Scabbed above the Pasterns, he hath the Scratches: if he have Chaps under his Pasterns, he hath Rains, and none of these but are noysome.

His Tail.

Lastly, For the setting on of his Tail, where there is a good Buttock the Tail can never stand ill; and where there is an evil Buttock, there the Tail can never stand well: for it ought to stand broad, high, flat and Couched a little Inward. Thus I have shewed you the true Shape and true Deformities, you may in your choice please your own Fancies.

An uncontrollable way to know the Age of an Horse.

There are seven Outward Characters, by which to know the Age of Every Horse. As namely, his Teeth, his Hoofs, his Tail, his Eyes, his Skin, his Hair, and the Barrs in his Mouth.

His Teeth.

If you would know his Age by his Teeth, you must understand that an Horse hath in his Head just forty Teeth, that is to say, six great Wongs, Teeth above, and six below on one side, and as many on the other, which maketh twenty four. And are called his Grinders: then six above and six below, in the fore-part of his Mouth, which are called Gatherers, and make thirty six. Then four Tussets, one above and one below on one side, and are called the Bit teeth, which make just forty.

Now the first year he hath his Foals Teeth, which are only Grinders and Gatherers, but no Tusshes, and they be small, white and bright to look on.

The second year he changeth the four fore-most Teeth in his Head, that is, two above, and two below in the midst of the Rows of the Gatherers, and they are browner and bigger then the other.

The third year he changeth his Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no apparent Foals Teeth before, but two above, and two below of each side, which are all bright and small.

The fourth year he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more Foals Teeth but one of each side, both above and below.

The fifth year his fore-most Teeth will be all changed; but then he hath his Tusshes on each side compleat, and the last Foals Teeth which he cast, those which come up in their place will be hollow, and have a little black speck in the midst, which is called the mark in the Horses Mouth, and continueth till he be past eight years old.

The sixth year he putteth up his new Tusshes, near about which you shall see growing a little of new and young Flesh, at the bottom of the Tush: besides, the Tush will be white, small, short and sharp.

The seventh year all his Teeth will have their perfect growth, and the mark in his Mouth will be plainly seen.

The eighth year all his Teeth will be full, smooth and plain, the black speck or mark being no more but discerned, and his Tusshes will be more yellow then ordinary.

The ninth year his fore-most Teeth will be longer, broader, yellow, and fouler then at younger years, the mark gone, and his Tusshes will be bluntyish.

The tenth year, the inside of his upper Tusshes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers ends, which till that Age you shall ever feel; besides, the Temples of his Head will begin to be crooked and hollow.

The eleventh year his Teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black and foul, only he may then cut even, and his Teeth will stand directly opposite one to another.

The twelfth year his Teeth will be long, yellow, black and foul, but when his upper Teeth will hang over his nether.

The thirteenth year his Tusshes will be worn somewhat close to his Chaps (if he be a much ridden Horse) otherwise they will be black, foul and long, like the Tusshes of a Boar.

His

His Mouth.

See that he does not over hang his upper Teeth over his nether, for though it be the mark of an old Horſe, yet ſometimes a young Horſe hath that Infirmitie. See likewise that he is not too deep burnt of the Lainpus, and that his Fleſh lie ſmooth with his Barrs, for if it be too deep burnt, his Hay and Provender will ſtick therein, which will be very troubleſome to the Horſe.

His Hoofs.

If his Hoofs be rugged, and as it were Seamed one Seam over another, and many Seams; if they be dry, full and Cruſty, or crumbling, it is a ſign of very old Age: and on the contrary part, a ſmooth, moiſt, hollow and well-ſounding Hoof, is a ſign of young years.

His Tail.

If you take an Horſe with your Finger and your Thumb by the Stem of the Tail, cloſe at the ſetting on by the Buttock, feeling there hard, and if you feel of each ſide of the Tail a Joynt ſtick out more then any other, by the bigness of an Hazel-nut, then you may preſume the Horſe is under two years old: but if his Joynts be all plain, and no ſuch thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and it may be thirteen.

His Eyes.

If his Eyes be round, full, ſtaring or ſtaring from his Head, if the Pits over them be filled, ſmooth and even with his Temples, and no wrinkles either about his brow, or under his Eyes, then he is young, if otherwiſe you ſee the contrary Characters, it is a ſign of old Age.

His Skin.

If you take his Skin in any part of his Body, between your Finger and your Thumb, and pull it from his Fleſh, then leting it go again, if it ſuddenly return to the place from whence it came, and be ſmooth and plain without wrinkle, then he is young and full of ſtrength: but if it ſtand and not return inſtantly to its former place, then he is very old and waſted.

His Hair.

If an Horſe that is of any dark Colour, ſhall grow grifſle only about his Eye-brows, or underneath his Mane; or any Horſe of a whitifh colour

lour shall grow Meannelled with either black or red Meannels universally over his Body, then both are signs of old Age.

His Barrs.

Lastly, If the Barrs in his Mouth be great, deep, and handle rough and hard, then is the Horse old; but if they be soft, shallow, and handle gently and tenderly, then is he young, and in good ability of body.

And thus much be spoken touching the Office of the Buyer.

The perfect Shape of a Horse altogether.

First, there is required that the Hoof be black, smooth, dry, large, round and hollow: the Pasterns streight and upright, Fet-locks short, the Legs streight and flat, called also Lath-legged, the Knees bony, lean and round, the Neck long, high reared, and great towards the Breast, the breast large and round, the Ears small, sharp, long and upright, the Fore-head lean and large, the Eyes great, full and black, the Brows well filled, and shooting Outwards. the Jaws wide, slender and lean, the Nostrils wide and open, the Mouth great, the Head long and lean, like to a Sheep, the Mane thin and large, the Withers sharp and pointed, the Back short, even, plain and double Chined, the Sides and Ribs deep, large and bearing out like the Cover of a Trunk, and close shut at the Huckle-bone, the Belly long and great, but hid under the Ribs, the Flanks full, yet gaunt, the Rump round, plain and broad, with a large space betwixt the Buttocks, the Thighs long and large, with well fashioned Bones, and those Flethy, the Hams dry and streight, the Trunchion small, long, well set on, and well couched, the Train long, not too thick, and falling to the ground, the Yard and Stones small, and lastly, the Horse to be well risen before. And to conclude, the perfect Shape of a Horse, according as a Famous Horse-man hath described it is in a few words, thus, *viz.* A broad fore-head, a great Eye, a lean Head, thin, slender, lean, wide Jaws, a long high reared Neck, high reared Withers, a broad deep Chest and Body, upright Pasterns, and narrow Hoof: And this is the common, allowed and approved Shape of a perfect Horse, so that if any of those things be deficient in him, he cannot be said to be a Horse of a perfect Shape. Wherefore I conclude, that if a Horse be of a good Colour, well Marked and rightly Shaped, and right also by Sire and Mare, it will be seldome seen that he would prove ill, unless his Nature be alienated and marred, ei-

ther in the Backing and Riding, or else that he be otherwise wronged, by the means of an unskilful Groom. But I may in this point be taxed to hold a Paradox; for some may object unto me, that many times Horses, who are of the best Colours, best Marks and truest Shapes, do never the less prove Arrant Jades. I answer, I acknowledge all this to be true, for I have known Horses, who upon their first view, have been in extrinsecal shew so hopeful, as that they have promised what a man could expect from them, which notwithstanding when they have come to the Test, they have been a scandal to their Sex: but this is not a thing frequent, for in every one of these who have thus miscarried, you shall have twenty prove right and answerable to your minds.

Rules to be Observed of putting a Horse to Grass, and of taking of him up again.

Before you put your Stable-Horse to Grass, eight or nine days before, take Blood from him, the next day after give him the drink of *Diapente*, and a day or two after his drink abate of his Cloaths by degrees, before you turn him forth, lest by doing them on the sudden he take more Cold, and after his Cloaths are taken off, Curry him not at all but let him stand in his dust, for that will keep him warm. Neither would I have you put him forth till the midst of *May*, at the soonest, for till that time Grass will not have Bite enough, (and let the day wherein you turn him forth be a warm Sun-shine day, and about the hour of ten) for Horses pampered in warm Stables, and kept close, will be subject to take Cold.

Taking of him up.

Secondly, Let him be taken up from Grass very dry, or else he will be subject to be Scabby, and that not later then *St. Bartholomews* day, which is the twenty fourth of *August*, for then the Season doth begin to let fall cold dews, which causeth much harm to your Horse, and then beginneth the Heart of Grass to fail, so as the Grass which he then feedeth upon breedeth no good Nutriment, but gross, Phlegmatick and cold Humors which putrifieth and corrupteth the Blood, and take him up very quietly for fear of melting his Grease, for his Fat gotten at Grass is very tender, so that every little Motion dissolveth the same, whereby the Blood may be enflamed, and so be in danger of sickness, if not of death. A day or two after you have him in the Stable, let him be shod, let Blood, and drencht, as before is shewed you, for
this

this preventeth Yellowes, Stavers and such like Diseases, which the Gall and Spleen occasioneth, which the Heart and Strength of Grasse (through the rankness of Blood) doth ingender in his Body.

But if you intend to be curious after you have taken him into the Stable, before you have either Blooded or Drencht him, you may clean him in this manner.

Of cleansing, or making a Horse clean.

First, Therefore if it be a hot Sun-shiny day, take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there trim him, then take ordinary soft washing Sope, and Anoint his Head and every Part of him all over therewith, and to have a care that none of it get into his Ears or Eyes, then wash him very well with warm water all over, then wipe him with a warm Linnen-cloth, and after rub him dry with Woollen-cloaths, then Sope him all over again, especially his Mane and Tail, and wash him very clean with Buck-lee, with a Wisp or Woollen Cloth, and when you have sufficiently cleansed him, dry him as you did before, and so lead him into the Stable, and Cloath him up with a clean, thin, soft Cloth. And by this kind of trimming and cleansing him, you may so alter him, that the Owner can scarce know him.

General Notes concerning some Simples.

All manner of Marrows or Pithes, of what kind soever they be, must be kept by themselves in a dry cool place, and preserved from all filth or uncleanness, and from the annoyance either of Wind or Fire, and so they will last full out a whole year.

Syrups, Powders, Pills, Eleatuaries and Oyntments.

You shall keep no Syrups, no sweet Eleatuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conserve of Flowers, nor any Oyntments, Sewets, or Emplaisters, or Conserve of Fruits or Roots, will last fully out two years.

Oyles.

Of Oyls, some will last long, some must be new made: Oyls extracted out of Wood or Metals will last long.

Roots.

Gather Roots in *Autumn*, but take the small Sprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry small Roots in the Shade and Wind, and great ones either in the Wind or Sun, or by the Fire; Lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor Moisture do injure them.

Herbs.

Gather all manner of Herbs, when they do most flourish, and dry them in the Shade, except they be very moist and apt to putrifie, they last for the most part a whole year.

Seeds.

Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe, and they also last but one whole year.

Rind or Bark.

Gather the Rind or Bark of any Simple when the Herb is ripe, dry them, and they will last many years.

*The Office of the Farrier.**What Points Consist the Office of the Farrier.*

IT Consists in four things; viz. Science, Experience, Knowledge and Handy-work: But I shall let pass the first three, and speak to Handy-work, and that is, to Heat an Iron well, to Turn a Shoo well, to make and Point a Nail well, to Pare the Hoof well, to Cauterize well, to let Blood well, to be light and well Handied, Bold and Hardy, and Dressing of a Horse well of such Accidents as may happen unto him.

The Principal Members of a Horse.

Some hold that there be four, and make the Stones or Gignitors one, but I say there are but three, *The Liver, the Heart and The Brain*, and if he be offended in any of these he will die, but if any other Member besides these be hurt, he may live; and therefore the Stones or Gignitors cannot be one of the Principal Members, for you cannot touch any of those three, but you kill him out-right, or desperately endanger him. Now the Stones may receive hurt, and if I despair of Curing them, I can cut them out, without peril of his life.

Of the Sinews, and of the number of them.

There are two Sinews, or Tendons, which are white, and begin at the end of the Nose, and extend themselves along the Neck, and along the Back,

Back, and make their extent to the four Legs, and take their ligaments in the four Feet.

There are in every Horse twenty nine or thirty, great and small.

The two great Sinews which I named before.

It. Two Branches which are main Sinews that proceed from the Brain, and run down the Cheeks to the Teeth.

It. There are from the Shoulders to the first Joynt of the Armes, or fore-Legs downwards, two great Sinews.

It. From the Knees to the Pasterns are four great Sinews, with the same Number in the hinder-part.

It. In the fore-part of the Breast, and above it, as well within as without, are ten Sinews, some greater and some smaller.

It. From the Reins of the Back to the Stones are four great Sinews. Lastly, one great main Sinew which runneth along to the end of the Tail. So as the full number of the Sinews are twenty nine, or thirty, which are to be discerned. But to speak properly, a Horse hath but one only Vein, which is that which we call the Median, or Lives Vein, which is in the Liver, being the true Fountain, Scource, and great Tun, from whence the Canes, Conduit-pipes, and little Veins, (as the smaller Rivers) do separate themselves, which do run through all the Parts and Members of the whole Body. Those Veins that do ascend to the Head and Body, are called Veins ascendent, and those which do run low as to the Legs, and lower Members, are called Hol low or descendent Veins.

Of the Vital Blood.

Those are Veins which are Vessels of quick or running Blood, and is that, that when the Creature sleepeth, his Blood is in continual agitation, and never ceaseth.

Of the Number of the Veins that you are to take Blood from.

In the Neck, in the Weeping-Veins, under the Ears, and in six other places, of and about the Head; as in the Pallat-Veins, in the Tongue, in the Flank-Veins, in the Breast and Spur-Veins: In the four Members, to wit, the Legs, Thighs, Pasterns and Feet; also in Sundry other Places, according as necessity shall require it, and in places which may the better kill the Malady of the said Horse.

For what Use you open the Veins.

To open the two Temple-Veins causeth the pain in the Head, coming of Colds, Rhumes, Feavers, Yellows and Stavers, Drowfines, Frenzie, the sleepey Evil, falling Evil, or any grief in or about the Eyes or brain. Secondly we open the two Eyes or Weeping-Veins, being most sovereign for such diseases whereunto the Eyes are subject; as Watery or Weeping-Eyes, Blood-shotten, Pin and Web, Haw, or the like. Thirdly we open the two Pallat-Veins in the Mouth, and those do cure the Lampasse, and any Inward sickness in the Body; as the Yellows, Stavers, Anticor, Surfeits, Drowfines, Tiredness, or weariness of the Body; or if he hath any Malady in the Throat, as the Strangle Quinzy, Kernels, Pustils, either within or without; it many times helpeth inflammations, Glanders, or the like: For the eating or swallowing of his own Blood, is most wholesom and Sovereign in such Cases. Fourthly, we do usually open the two Neck-Veins, which helpeth Farcins, Yellows, Stavers, Scabs, Mainges, Agues, Feavers, Colds, Surfeits, Glanders, or any other Malady, which may be any ways noxious to the inward Part of the Body. And it also preventeth sudden sickness, if you do suspect it. Fifthly, the opening of the two Plate or Breast-Veins, do help the Anticor, sickness of the Heart, Morifounding, which is the Foundering in the Body by over-riding, whereby the Grease of the Horse is Molten, it also preventeth Diseases in the Liver, Lungs, and Inward Parts grieved; and sometimes hurts in the Shoulder, which causeth Lameness before. Sixthly, we use to touch the two Thigh-Veins before, which helpeth Foundring in the fore-Fet, Malenders, Splent, Screw, Ring-bone, and such like infirmities in the fore-Foot, and such other higher Parts. Seventhly, we use to take Blood from the four Shackle-Veins before, and this is very good for the Crow-Scab, Ring-bone, and such like Diseases. Eighthly, we use to strike the two Spur-Veins, which Cureth the Farcin in the Sides, Morifounding, swelling under the Belly, which is a Disease called the Feltrick, and the like. Ninthly, we prick the two Toe-Veins, which do help Frettizing, Foundering, Hoof-bound, heating of the Horses Feet by Riding upon hard and Stony wayes, and the like. Tenthly, we open the two Thigh-Veins behind; and this doth help the grief of the Kidneys, swelling in the hinder-Legs, Foundering, Sellenders, Scratches, Kv es, &c. And it also helpeth Diseases in and about the Belly, as pissing of Blood, Pissing, oft after great and extraordinary labour, and the

the weakness of the Reins, the Back, Belly, Guts, or any other of the Inward Parts, the Curb, Spaven, and such Diseases which come of Rankness of Blood. Eleventhly, we sometimes do open the four Shackle-Veins behind, and this is very good against Foundering, and other pains in and about the Feet. Twelfthly, we let Blood in the two Flank or Hanch-Veins, and this is most probable for all kind of Feavers, the Stones, Poverty, and the Felter-worm. Thirteenthly, we draw Blood from the two Tail-Veins, which Cureth the Mange in the Tail, falling of the Hair, or the Itch in the Tail. And these are for the most part all the Veins that are usually opened. So that the full Sum or Number of Veins which Farriers commonly open are thirty. Other Veins there are which are of a smaller proportion, and therefore not fit to be opened, I will not say that these Veins so opened doth Cure the Diseases absolutely; but it doth sometimes assuage the Malignancy of the Malady, sometimes it preventeth Diseases, and sometimes again it prepareth the Body the better to receive such Physical Drinks which do inwardly Cure them, and such Salyes, Oyls, Unguents, which do dry and heal up Outward Infirmities, &c.

How many Bones a Horse hath, and where they are Situated.

All the Bones which every Horse hath, whereby to make up an Organical Body, are these; viz. He hath in his Head thirty nine or forty Teeth: the Bones in his Head do Comprehend the Crocks and Handles of the Skull, albeit they be composed of parts and parcels of other Bones, also the two flat Handles, which from the Pallat and the Fork or Throat hath five, the Chine hath fifty two, the Breast one, the Ribs hath thirty six, the fore-Legs and fore-Feet hath fourty four, and the hinder-Legs and Feet fourty, so as the whole structure of the Body of a Horse, wherby to perfect a full building of Bones consisteth of about two hundred fifty seven, or two hundred sixty nine, if they be rightly computed; which do represent themselves altogether at what time the perfect Anatomy of a Horse is laid open.

Of the Elements.

The Elements are four, and they give Life and Nutriment unto Man, and all other living Creatures. They are these, *Fire, Air, Water, and Earth.*

Their

Their Nature.

The Nature of Fire is to be hot and dry, Air to be hot and moist, Water to be cold and moist, and Earth to be cold and dry.

Signs of the Zodiack.

Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces: These do all govern the twelve Months of the year, and are placed above the Zodiack.

Names of the Planets.

Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury and Luna.

The Government of the Signs.

Aries governs the Head, *Taurus* the Neck, *Gemini* the Shoulders and Armes, *Cancer* the Stomach and Breast, *Leo* the Heart, *Virgo* the Belly and Guts, *Libra* the Reins and Buttocks, *Scorpio* the Privy Parts, *Sagittarius* the Thighs, *Capricornus* the Knees, *Aquarius* the Legs, and *Pisces* the Feet.

The best time to let a Horse Blood in.

If there be no extraordinary cause, as in Case of desperate sickness, or so; then *Jan.* the third and fifteenth, *Feb.* the fourth and ninth, *Mar.* the seventeenth and eighteenth, *April* the tenth and sixteenth, *May* the first and thirteenth, *June* the 15 and twentieth. But for *July* and *August*, by reason that the Canicular dayes be then predominant, Blood-letting is not so good, but only in urgent Case of necessity. In *Septem.* the eleventh and twenty eighth, *Octob.* the eighth and twenty third, *Novemb.* the fifth and sixteenth, *Decemb.* the fourteenth and twenty sixth. And these dayes we hold to be the very best, unless dangerous and sudden sickness do cause us to alter the same, for in cases of necessity no dayes are to be regarded or observed.

More Observations of Blood-letting you may find hereafter.

Of the Four Humors. Blood, Phlegm, Choler and Melancholy.

Four Humors also there are, which be as it were four Children to the four Elements already spoken of: and these are, *Blood, Phlegm, Choler* and *Melancholy*, without which a Natural Body cannot be made:

made; for *Blood* naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moist, but taketh most from Heat, and therefore is subordinate to *Air*: *Phlegm* is cold and moist, but the Principality thereof is Coldness, and therefore hath reference to *Water*. *Choler* is hot and dry, but his chiefest Nature is Heat, and therefore is Governed by the Element of *Fire*: *Melancholy* is cold and dry, but his chiefest condition is Driness, and therefore subjects it self to the Element of *Earth*. Now the Fountain of Blood is the Liver, which dispersing it self by the help of the Veins into all the parts of the Body, nourisheth and preserveth the same. *Phlegm* preoccupateth the Brain, being a cold and spongy substance, and the Seat of the sensible Soul. *Choler* inhabiteth the Liver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleasing Harmony with the Blood. *Melancholy* resideth in the Spleen, which is the Receptacle and discharge of the Excrements of the Liver, from whence we may Collect, that it hath its proper use and end: As for demonstration, *Blood* principally nourisheth the Body. *Phlegm* occasioneth Motion of the Joynts and Members, *Choler* exciteth and provoketh the Belly to avoid its Excrements; And lastly, *Melancholy* disposeth the Body to an Appetite. Whereupon all the Learned Philosophers do with one unanims Assent agree in this, That in every Natural Body there are four Principal Instrumental Members, from which all the Parts of an Organical Body are said to be framed, and these are the Brain, the Heart, the Liver, and the Stones or Gignitors, and each one of these do Perform its true Function to all the particular Members of the Body; for the Sinews do receive their Sustentation from the Brain, and these are called Animal spirits; the Arteries from the Heart, which are Vital spirits; the Veins from the Liver, which are Natural Parts; and the Seed-Vessels from the Stones or Gignitors, as the Place of Generation.

Of a Horses Complexion, which is the most necessary Faces that a Farrier can judge of his Infirmities.

To speak of the Complexions of a Horse in a particular manner, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the judging of Horses infirmities, and also for the true Compounding of his Medicines for every disease: And therefore by the Colour of the Horse you are to judge his Complexion. For look which of the Elements is most Predominate in him, from that Element you may draw his Complexion; as thus, If he participate more of

the Fire, then of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a Cholerick Horse, and his Colour is either a bright Sorrel, a Coal-black without any white, or an Iron gray unchangeable; that is, such a Gray as neither will ever turn a Dapple-gray, a White or a Flea bitten, and these Horses are of Nature light, hot, fiery, and seldom of any great strength. These Horses are most subject to Pestilent Feavers, Yellows and Inflammation of the Liver. Therefore every Farrier shall be careful in his Composing of any Medicine for such a Horse, to purge Choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary strength in the Potion or Drench; because the Horse being in his best strength, not reputed strong, should you apply any violent thing to him, that little strength being abated, there were great danger in confounding the whole Body. If the Horse participate more of the Air than of the other Elements; then is he of a Sanguine Complexion, and his Colour is either a bright Bay, or a dark Bay, which hath neither scouling Countenance, Ragged Mouth, nor white Flank; Or a white Flea-bitten, White Lyard-like Silver, or black with a white Star, white rash or white Foot. These Horses are of Nature pleasant, nimble, free, and of good strength. The Diseases to them most incident, is Consumption of the Liver, Leprosie, Glanders, or any disease that is infectious; They are of a good strong Constitution, and may endure strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cool-eth the Blood.

If the Horse participate more of the Water than of the other Elements, then is he of a Phlegmatick Complexion, and his colour is either Milk-white, a yellow dun Kite-glewed, or a Pyde-ball, in whom there is an equal Mixture of colours. Otherwise, if the Bay, the Black or the Dun exceed the White, he is said to be of that Complexion of which the colour is greatest. These Horses are of Nature slow, and apt to lose Flesh. The Diseases which are most incident unto them, are Colds, Head-ach, Rheums, Staggers, and such like. They are able to endure the reasonable strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of Phlegm which is in them, sufficeth both Nature, and the potion to work upon. All cold Simples are to them exceeding hurtful, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree: The first, because it bindeth too soon; The latter, because it disperses too suddenly, therefore Simples of a Moderately Mean are best.

If the Horse participate of the Earth more than of the other Elements, then is he of a Melancholy Complexion: And his colour is a

Moufe-dun, Ruffet, Cheshut, Ashie Gray, dark Bay, having long white Hair, like Goats Hair, growing on his Legs; These Hories are of Nature heavy and faint-hearted. The Diseases to them most incident, are Inflammations in the Spleen, Frenzie, Dropley and such like; They are commonly of better strength then they appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable Medicine: All cicatrizing and dry Simples are hurtful unto them, the cold and moist are the most profitable. Having thus shewed you these four Complexions, *Cholerick, Sanguine, Phlegmatick* and *Melancholy*, together with their qualities and strengths; You shall understand now, that amongst Farriers there is another Complexion or fifth Constitution which is called the Composition, or Mixture of Complexions: that is, when a Horse doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion, and this is the best Complexion, and the Horse that is of this Complexion is ever one of these Colours; that is to say, of a fair brown Bay, dabled, or not dabled, a Dable Gray, a Black full of Silver Hair, or a fair Roan red or black. And these Horses are of Nature most excellent, most temperate, strongest, gentlest and most healthful, though they may have any disease as the other hath, yet are they naturally inclined to no disease. But what infirmity soever falleth unto them, is meerly accidental, and not through any over-flow of natural distemperature. All Medicines must be Compounded for them, according to the Nature of the Sicknes, and the time of their Languishment; for if the Sicknes be young and new bred then are they able to receive any well-Composed Receipt; but if it be old, and the inward Powers and Faculties feebled, then you must be careful to help Nature, by adding to every Medicine, of what Nature soever, some Simple of Comfort, that as ill Humors be cleared, so strength may still be repaired and maintained. And thus much for Complexions.

Twelve Causes of Health and long Life.

1. The First is Nature, good Digestion, and good Nourishment.
2. The second is, Moderation in Feeding and Diet.
3. The third is, Moderate Labour.

4. The fourth is, moderate Use of Sleeping and Waking.
5. The fifth is, moderate spending upon Mares.
6. The sixth is, moderate Journeys.
7. The seventh is, wholesom Air.
8. The Eighth is, not to be exercised too soon after Grass.
9. The Ninth is, to be kept from raw and green Meats.
10. The tenth is, not to be suffered to eat or drink being hot.
11. The eleventh is, not to be neither washed nor walked at the end of his Journey.

12. The twelfth is, to give him with his Provender such Powders and Simples as are Prescribed you in all those Chapters, which are by me mentioned, but more particularly in *Page 2*. And though he dislikes them at first, yet by mixing a little and a little at a time, they will become natural to him.

Dangerous Sicknes how it cometh.

First, all Sicknes cometh either by Heats in over-violent exercise, as when the Horse hath his Grease moulted, the Heart over-charged, the vital Blood forced from the inward Parts, and the large Pores and Orifices of the Heart are so obstructed and stopped, that the Spirits cannot return back to their proper places, so as the Organs of the Body cannot rejoyce, but by this means the Body must of necessity languish, founder and mortifie.

Secondly, dangerous Sicknes cometh also by Colds, as by indiscreet and negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent exercise; and then is the Head perplexed, the Eyes dulled and pained, the Roots of the Tongue inflamed and swelled, the Lungs with Rheum tickled and offended, occasioning strong and laborious Coughing, and the Nostrils often Distilling and pouring forth filthy and corrupt matter.

Thirdly, dangerous Sicknes cometh also by Surfeit of food, either by eating too much or too little of what is good, or also of what is not wholesom; so as the first killeth, or at least debilitateth the Stomach, oppresseth the Heart, and sendeth up those evil Fumes into the Head, by which are engendred the Stavers, Frenzies, and other mortal diseases; The second putrifies the blood, and converts all its nutriment into Corruption, from whence proceeds the Yellows, Farries, Fevers, Mainges, and other such like Pestilent, Leprous and loathsome diseases, which suffocating the Heart, and clogging the Stomach, dilates

and

and spreads it self universally over the whole body, leaving no Member free, and confoundeth every Faculty and Member thereof.

Fourthly and lastly, dangerous Sicknes come also by Accidents, when a Horse receiveth some deep or perillous wound or hurt, either in his body, or elsewhere, in some vital or dangerous part, by means whereof Nature is so far offended, as that incontinently a general Sicknes seizeth upon him, which if not prevented, Death immediately ensueth.

Signes to know these dangerous Sickneses.

If his Sicknes proceeds from the first, which are *Heats*, then are the Signes these, viz. *The Heaviness of his Countenance, Swellings of his Limbs, especially of his Hinder-legs, Scouring and Looseness of his Body, in the beginning of his Sicknes, short and hot Breath, a Loathing and forsaking of his Meat.*

If from the second, viz. *Cold*; then the Signes are, *A dejected Countenance, Dulness or Sleepiness of the Eyes, Pustils or hard Knots under the Caul, yea, and many times inflamed Kernels and Swellings so high as to the very Roots of the Ears, a rotten, moist, inward and hollow Cough, he many times Chewing betwixt his Teeth, some loose, filthy and obliquemack matter, immediately after his Coughing, which in some Cases is not an evil Sign, by reason that thereby the Cold rotteth and goeth away; Whereas on the contrary side, for a Horse to Cough clear and dry, doth demonstrate a dry Cough, which hath long time lurked in his Body, which is difficult to Cure, which will so discover it self at last, that his Belly will shrink up, and when he drinketh Water will come forth of his Nose, and his Eyes will be either watery or mattery, and run continually, through pain he hath in his Head, procured by means of his Cold, and his Hair will be rough and stringy, &c.*

If from the Third, which is *Surfeit*, then the Signes of his Sicknes are these, *A dulness of the Head, Eyes and Countenance, and that so violent, that he will not be able to lift up his Head from the Manger; A dull and dead Eye, and sunk into his Head, his Ears Pricked upright, and the Tops of them cold, as also his upper Lips and his Sheath, his Pace Reeling and Staggering, and if he be too far gone he will be Mad, which you may know by biting the Rack and Manger, or any body that shall come nigh him; and sometimes biting of himself, and beating his Head against the Wall, &c.* But if the Malady be not got into the Brain, then you shall finde by the yellowness of his Eyes, Lips and Tongue, that

that it is turned to the *Yellows*, which will so infect his Blood all over, that if not prevented suddenly he will soon come to the Dogs.

Accidental.

The fourth and last ground of his Sicknes is, if it proceed from Accidental means, the Signs then are a perplexed and troubled Body, Sweating at the Roots of his Eares, Flanks, behind the Shoulders, against the Heart, sometimes trembling all over his Body, and sometimes glowing and burning in his Vital Parts, as in the Temples of his Head, against his Heart, on the inside of his fore-Legs, and on the inside of his hinder-Legs, his Mouth will be dry and hot, his Tongue will be subject to be inflamed and furied, he will have a loathing against Meat, and a great draught to thirst, and drink cold Water, and to keep his Mouth in the same when he hath done drinking.

To Cure Sicknes before it comes, or to prevent it when it comes.

First, when you find it come, to let him Blood, and for three mornings together to give him the Drink of *Diapente*, and keep him warm, and let him fast three houres after it, then give him a Mash, and Hay after that. But in case *Diapente* is not to be had, then take *Celandine* half a handul, as well Roots as Leaves, well washed and picked, *Worm-wood* and *Rue* of each half a handul, boile them in a Bottle of Ale or Beer to a quart, and strain it well, and put it into half a pound of sweet Butter and two or three spoonfuls of Treacle, and give it him luke-warm.

But Secondly, to prevent it before it comes, is when you turn him to Grass, to let him Blood likewise, and to give him the next day the Drink of *Diapente*, and so to abate his Cloaths (if he hath any) to harden him before you turn him to Grass, to prevent his taking of Cold.

The Drink of Diapente.

Take of *Gentian*, of *Aristolochia*, of *Bay-berries*, of *Mirr*, and of the Shavings of *Ivy*, of each a like quantity, and let them be pounded severally, and finely Searced, and after weighed, so as the quantity may be just and even, not any one less or more then another, and after you have mixed them very well together, put them into a gally-Pot close stopped, as that no Air get into it, and so keep it for your use.

Hm

How to use it.

If you drench him for a Cold or Glanders, give it him in *Muscadine*, if for other Maladies, then in sweet Sack, and the quantity must be a pint and a half. But if you cannot get either Sack or *Muskadine*, then give it in strong Ale or Beer, the quantity of this Powder of *Diapente* must be two or three spoonfuls, unless to a small, Sick and Feeble Horse, then according to your own Judgment, as you shall think requisite. The Word *Diapente* is as much as to say composition of five Simples.

The Vertues of Diapente.

It is the most Sovereign thing which can be given to a Horse by way of drench to Cure him of very many Diseases. It is good against all infectious Maladies, as *Feavers* of what Nature soever, all sorts of Pestilencies, or, contagious Colds, *Coughs*, wet or dry; *Glanders*, *Surfeits*, inflammations in the Blood or Liver, *Frenzies*, *Yellows*; it purifieth, refineth and purgeth the Blood from all Infection and Corruption, it easeth the overflowing of the Gall, and the working of the Spleen; in a word, it Cureth whatsoever diseases the Body of an Horse may be inwardly inclined unto.

The making of the true Diahexaple.

Take the Roots of round *Aristolosbia*, wash them small, scrape them, and make them as clear as may be, then take *Juniper-Berries* unexcorticated, and *Bay-berries* excorticated; take the purest and best drops of *Myrrh*, and the finest Shavings of *Ivory*, of each an equal quantity, beat all but the *Myrrh* together, and Searce them fine. Lastly, beat the *Myrrh* and searce it also, then mix them all together, press it hard into a Gally-pot and keep it for your use.

The Vertues of Diahexaple.

This Powder or indeed Mithridate, is most Excellent and Sovereign against all manner of Poyson, either Inward or Outward, it Cureth the biting of venomous Beasts, and helpeth short-wind and pur-

It Mundifieth, Cleareth, Suppleth, and maketh thin all groſs Humors, it healeth all diſeaſes of the Liver and Stomack, helps Digeffion, and being given in a Pint of Sack, it Cureth all Colds; it is good againſt Conſumptions, breaks Phlegm, helps Staggers and all diſeaſes of the Head. *Gerrard.*

It Recovers Tiring and Weariedneſs, and takes away Cramps and Conвуlſions, dries up the Scurvey, breaks the Stone, opens all inward Obſtructions, and helps the Yellowe, the Gargil, and the Dropſey. *Diaſcordies.*

It Cures all diſeaſes of the Lungs, as Glanders and Rottenneſs, gives eaſe to all Gripings and windineſs of the Belly, provoketh Urine, takes away Infection, and kills Wormes.

A Drink to Open an Horſes Body, and to Cleaſe it.

Take a quart of New Milk, Sallet-Oyl, Honey, of each half a Pint, an Ounce of London-Treacle, and the Yolks of ſix Eggs, beat all together; then put to it Licoras, Sugar-Candy, Annifeeds, (all in Powder) of each an Ounce, and infuſe altogether, and ſo give it him, ride him after it, ſet him up warm, and let him faſt two houres or more.

How to make Diateſſaron, Mithridates or Horſe-Treacle.

Take of the Powder of *Diapente*, two Ounces, and put it into a clean Stone-Mortar, and put thereto Clarified or Life-Honey the like quantity; Let the Mortar be hot before you put them in, then with a Peſtle of Wood, work it till it come to a Treacle, then take it forth, and keep it in a Gally-pot cloſe ſtopped for your uſe.

How to uſe it.

Take half an Ounce of this Confection, and diſſolve it in a Pint and a half of Muſcadine, or ſweet Sack, and give it him Blood-warm, and as you ſee occaſion, you may add to it of London-Treacle an Ounce.

The Vertues of it.

It is good for all Poiſons and infectious diſeaſes, and drives forth all manner of Sickneſs from the Heart, and is good for all ſorts of Feavers, and all other deſperate and dangerous Sickneſs, taking firſt blood from him if there be cauſe.

A Drink given when you neither have Diahexaple, Diapente or Diateffaron.

Take of Tarr two Ounces, of Honey an Ounce, black Sope two Drams, and bay-Salt a handful, incorporate them well together, then take two Egg-shells, the crowns only being broken, so as you may get forth the Meat, and fill them full with this Medicine, and put them down his Throat, and walk or ride him gently up and down a quarter of an hour or more warm Cloathed; that done, set him up warm, and Litter him well, and let his Drink be either Mashies or white Water for four or five days after, and let him fast three houres after his Medicine, and let his Hay and Provender be sweet and good.

Signs of all Sicknes in General.

If you find in your Horse heaviness of countenance, extream looseness or extream costiveness, shortness of Breath, loathing of Meat, dull and imperfect Eyes, rotten or dry Cough, staring Hair, or Hair unnaturally discoloured, a staggering Pace, frantick behaviour, yellowness of the Eyes, of Skin, faint or cold Sweat, extraordinary lying down, or beating or looking back at his Body, alteration of qualities or gestures, not casting of the Coat, Leanness, Hide-bound, and the like. All these are apparent signs of distemperature and Sicknes.

The Diseases of a Horse known by the Signs he makes.

If he be slower in Pace then he use to be, if his Eares hang down more then they are wont, if his Flank be more then usually hollow, if he burn between his Eares, or about his Pasterns, if in Travel his Stomach fail him, or his Mouth, that in his labour do use to foam, become dry, all these are Signs of Sicknes.

By hanging of his Head.

If he hang down his Head, which was wont to be of a cheerful Countenance, it is a sign of a Feaver, Head-ach, the Staggers or sore Fyes.

By the turning of his Head Backwards.

If he turn his Head backward to the place grieved, if it be to the right Side, it is a sign of Obstructions in the Liver, but if he turn it down to his Belly, it is a sign either of the Cholick, Bots or Worms.

By Water running from his Mouth.

When water runs from his Mouth, it is either a sign of the Staggers or wet Cough.

By his stinking Breath or stinking Matter from his Nostrils.

If his Breath stinks, or foul Matter issues from his Nostrils, it is a sign of an Ulcer in the Nose or Head; but if the Matter be white, then it is a sign of Glanders: if the Matter be black, then it is a sign of the mourning of the Chine, if there be any such disease. But if it be yellow, then it is the Consumption of the Liver: but if he cast little lumps out of his Mouth, then it shews Consumption and Rottenness of the Lungs.

By his Breath and Body being hot.

If his Body and Breath be hot, it is a sign of a Feaver and Heat of the Stomach, if therewithal he forsake his Meat, it is a sign of Inflammation of the Liver, and either of dry or moist Yellows.

By his hollow Temples.

If his Temples be very hollow, it is a sign of the Strangle or old Age.

By shortness of Breath.

Shortness of Breath and beating of the Flank, is a sign either of a Feaver or the Strangle, but if the passage of the Throat be stopped, it is a sign the Filme of the Lungs are broken, and the Spleen troubled, or else broken-Winded.

By the Swelling about the Eares.

If there be any thing Swelling about the Ears, it is a sign of the Pole-evil: Swelling under the Eares is a sign of the *Vives*; and Swelling in the Mouth, is a sign either of a *Canker*, *Flaps*, or *Lampas*.

By the Swelling under the Throat.

Swelling under the Throat is a sign of the *Glanders*, and Swelling about the Tongue Roots, a sign of the *Strangle*: but if there be about the Tongue-Roots nothing but little small Knots, like Wax-kernels, then it is a sign but of a Cold only.

By his swelling about his Body.

Swelling on the left Side, is a Sign of a Sick *Spleen*, Swelling in the Belly and Legs, a sign of the *Dropsy*, and Swelling in the Flank of *Cholick* only.

By his offering to Cough.

To Cough, or to offer to Cough, it is a Sign either of the *Glanders*, or of a wet or dry *Cough*, of a Consumption or Foundring of the Body.

By his Staggering.

Staggering is a sign either of a *Feaver*, of the *Staggers*, or of fwaying in the Neck: but if he stagger or roul behind only, then is it a sign either of Foundring of the Body; or of pain in the Kidneys.

By the Hollowness of his Back.

The hollowness of a Horses Back is a sign of a dry Malady, or the *Dropsy*.

By his Trembling.

Trembling is a sign of a *Feaver*, or of Foundring in the Body: and here is to be noted, that if he trembleth after he hath drunk, he hath during the time of his trembling a Fit of an *Ague* upon him, and after he hath done trembling, he will glow, and some Horses after their burning will Sweat also.

By the Staring of his Hair.

Hair-staring is a sign either of a Cold Stomach, or of Foundring in the Body, but generally of a Cold, or want of Cloaths.

By his Staling with Pain.

If he Stale with Pain, it is a sign either of Foundring in the Body, the *Wind-Cholick* or the *Stone*; and if the Urine which comes from him be yellow, it is a sign of the *Glanders*, but if it be blackish and thick, it is a sign of the Pain in the Kidneys

By his Leanness and Gauntness.

Leanness and Gauntness is a sign of Hide-bound, or of the Consumption of the dry Malady, of Foundring in the Body, inflammation of the Liver, the *Tellows*, *Cholick*, or *Wormes*.

By his Loosness of Body.

Laxativeness or looseness of Body, is a sign of a hot Liver.

By his Costiveness.

Costiveness in the Body, is a sign of dry *Yellows* or Diseases of the Gall.

By his stinking Dung.

If his Dung stink, it is a sign of a hot Liver: if it have no smell, then of a cold Liver; but if it be undigested, then either of a Consumption or of a dry Malady.

By his lying.

If he desire to lie much on his left Side, then is he troubled with the *Spleen*, if on the right, then it is a sign of Heat of Liver, and if finding no rest it may be *Bots*, *Worms*, *Cholick*, or *Griping* in the Belly, if when he is down he spreads himself abroad, it shews the *Dropsey*, if he groan when he is down, it shews either a Sick *Spleen*, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, *Bots* or *Film* broken, if he be not able to rise when he is down, then either Mortal Weakness, Foundering in the Body or Legs.

By his striking at his Belly.

If he strike with his Foot at his Belly, it is a Sign of the *Cholick*: but if when he striketh, he fisk with his Tail also, then it is either *Bots* or rough *Wormes*.

By his being Scabby.

If he be Scabby and Ulcerous all over his Body, and about his Neck, it is a Sign of the *Mange*: if it be an Ulcer full of Knots, creeping about the Veins, it is the *Farcy*: if spreading abroad only in one place, it is a *Canker*: if the Ulcer be Hollow and Crooked, it is a *Fistula*: but if it be a spongy Wart, full of blood, it is then an *Anbury*.

By his Tongue.

If his Tongue hang out and is Swoln, it is a Sign of the *Sirangle*.

By his eating and drinking much.

If he eat much and drink little, it is a Sign of a Cold Liver, but if he desire to drink much and eat little, it is either a Sign of a *Fever*, rotten *Lungs*, Heat in the Stomach, Heat in the Liver, or the dry *Yellows*.

By

By his Dung.

It is necessary to observe his Dung, for it is the best Tel-troth of his Inward Parts; and you must not judge it by a General Opinion, but by a private discourse with your self how he hath been fed, because Food is the only thing that breeds alterations, — as thus —

If he Feed altogether upon Grass, his Dung hath one Complexion, as green; if upon Hay, then another, as a little more dark. If upon little Provender, then inclining to yellow. But to avoid both curiosity and doubt, observe well the Complexion of his Dung, when he is in best Health, and the best feeding, and as you find it alter, so judge either of his Health or Sickness, as thus —

If his Dung be clear, crisp, and of a pale yellowish Complexion; hanging together without separation, more then as the weight breaks it in falling, being neither so thin nor so thick, but it will a little flat on the Ground; and indeed, both in Savour and Substance, resembling a sound Mans Ordure, then is he clean, well fed, and without Imperfection. If it be well Coloured, yet fall from him in round Knots or Pellets, so it be but the first and second Dung, the rest good, as aforesaid, it matters not, for it only shews he did eat Hay lately, and that will ever come away first. But if all his Dung be alike, then it is a Sign of foul feeding, and he hath either too much Hay, or eats too much Litter, and too little Corn.

If his Dung be in round Pellets, and blackish, or brown, it shews Inward Heat in the body.

If it be greasie, it shews foulness, and that Grease is Molten, but cannot come away. If he void Grease in gross Substance with his Dung, if it be white and clear then it comes away kindly, and there is no danger: but if it be yellow or putrified, then the Grease has long lain in his body, and Sickness will follow if not prevented.

If his Dung be red and hard, then he hath had too strong Heats, and Costiveness will follow if not prevented; if it be pale and loose, it shews Inward coldness of body, or too much moist and corrupt feeding.

Signs from the Urine.

Though the Urine be not altogether so Material as the Dung, yet it hath some true Faces, as thus —

Pale Colour.

That Urine that is of a pale yellowish Colour, rather thick then thin, of a strong smell and piercing condition, is an healthful, sound and good Urine: but if it be of an high, red Complexion, either like blood, or inclining to blood, then hath he had either two sore heats, been over-ridden, or ridden too early after Winter Grass.

High Complexion.

If the Urine be of an high Complexion, clear and transparent, like old *March Beer*, then he is inflamed in his Body, and hath taken some Surfeit.

White like Cream.

If it carry a white Cream on the top, it shews a weak Back or Consumption of the Seed.

Green.

A green Urine shews Consumption of the Body.

Bloody streaks.

A Urine with Bloody streaks shews an Ulcer in the Kidneys, and a black, thick, cloudy Urine shews Death and Mortality.

Of Sickneſs in General.

Whensoever upon any occasion, you shall find your Horse droop in Countenance, to forsake his Meat, or to shew any other apparent sign of Sickneſs, if they be not great, you may forbear to let blood, because where the blood is spent, the Spirits are spent also, and they are not easily recovered. But if the signs be great and dangerous, then by all means let blood instantly, and for three mornings together (the Horse being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder (called by me) *Diahexaple*, and by the Italians, *Regina Medicina*, the Queen of Medicines, brewed either in a pint of *Muskadine* or *Malmsey*, or a pint of the Syrop of Sugar, being two degrees above the ordinary Molosses, or for want thereof Molosses will serve the turn, and where all are wanting, you may take a pint either of Dragon-water, or a quart of the sweetest and strongest Ale-wort, or in extremity, take a quart of strong Ale or Beer, but then warm it a little before the Fire. This must be given with an Horn, and if he hath Ability of Body, ride him in some warm place

place after, and let him fast near two houres after the riding. At noon give him a sweet Mash, Cloath very warm, and let him touch no cold water. The making of the *Dish:table* you may find in the Table.

General Observations in the Physicking of Horses.

Know then first, that whensoever you give your Horse any Inward, or Glister, give it him no more then Milk-warm, for there is nothing more Mortal to a Horse then the Scalding of his Stomack, for a Horse of all living Creatures, can worse endure to receive inwardly hot things: besides, let his drinks and inward Medicines be given him easily and gently, lest in making too much hast you suffocate him, which if it do, you must then let his Head loose, and walk him up and down till the Passion be past. Now for the Administring of Pills, Balls, and such like Medicines, little advice is required, if they be not made too great, only if you take forth his Tongue first, and then put them up into his Mouth upon the end of a stick, then let go his Tongue again, which when he draws it into his Mouth, he must needs force the Balls down his Throat. You are to Administer your Physick evermore fasting, unless upon urgent occasion (as in case of sudden and dangerous Sicknes) and the longer he be kept Fasting from Meat and Drink, as well before he taketh his Physick as after, it will be the better, for by that means his Medicine will work the more kindly in his Body; for he ought to be kept from eating and drinking at least three houres before and after.

What Exercise is meet with Physick.

A little moderate Exercise is very necessary, whereby his Physick may work the better, and the sooner, as to Trot him easily about, or to walk him up and down under the Wind in the warm Sun about a quarter of an hour. Then bring him into the Stable, and Cloath him up warm, and litter him well, and let his Keeper be with him three or four houres, observing his Postures, and as occasion may require, to help him with all things necessary for his use. No Creature hath a moister Body then a Horse.

Of Mixing your Simples.

If your Horses Sicknes be a Feaver, to mix always your Simples with warm Water, with Honey, or with Oyl; but if the Disease be Coughs, Rhumes, or any thing that proceedeth of cold causes, then mix

mix them with good Ale or Wine, but if he be brought low with Sickneſs, then mix them with Milk and Eggs.

Observations upon Raking a Horſe

Obſerve whenſoever you Rake your Horſe with your hand (which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot Dung, that you anoint your hand with Sallet Oyl, or Butter, or Hogs-greaſe: the like you muſt ever do when you put up any Suppoſitory; but when you Adminiſter any Gliſter, you ſhall then but anoint the Gliſter-Pipe.

Observations upon Blood-letting.

Obſerve in Blood-letting, that you take not ſo much Blood from a Colt, as an old Horſe, and but the fourth part from a yearling Foal, you muſt likewiſe have regard to his Age and Strength, taking more or leſs, according to his Ability of his Body. Laſtly, letting of Blood is either to divert Sickneſs and preſerve Health, or to reſreſh and cool the Spirits, or to diminifh blood, or to purge Greafe and bad Humours. Before you let him blood, moderately chafe or exerciſe him, and let him reſt a day before his blood-letting, and three days after, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal Seaſons for that purpoſe, unleſs urgent occaſion requires. He will bleed the better if you let him drink before you blood him, conditionally you do not heat him.

When he is bleeding, put your Finger into his Mouth, and tickle him in the Roof thereof, making him chaw and move his Chaps, and that will force it to ſpin forth, which when he hath bled enough, according to your Diſcretion, rub the Horſes body all over therewith, but eſpecially the place where he is blooded on, for the Antient Farriers hold that it is endued with a certain natural Vertue to comfort the weak and feeble Members of a Horſe, and to dry up all evil Humours. And tie him up to the Rack for an hour or two, leſt he bleed a freſh, for that will turn his blood.

Signs to know when he wanteth Bleeding.

If he ſtand in need of bleeding, his Eyes will look red, and his Veins will ſwell more then ordinary: alſo he will have a certain Itch about his Main and Tail, and ſtill be continually rubbing them, and ſometimes will ſhed ſome of his Hair alſo, he will now and then pill about the Roots of his Ears, or in thoſe places where the Head-ſtall of the Bridle lies: his Urine will be red and high Coloured, and his Dung will be black

black and hard, also if he hath red Inflammations, or little Bubbles on his Back, or doth not digest his Meat well, or if the Whites of his Eyes be yellow, or the inside of his Lips, either upper or nether, many other Signs there are of Bleeding, but let these suffice, &c.

Of Outward Sorrancces what they are, and of certain General Observations in the Cure of them.

Outward Sorrancces, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of ways, that is to say, either it is an evil state and composition of the Body, which is to be discerned, either by the Shape, Number, Quality or sight of the Member, evil affected and diseased: or else it is the Loosning and Division of any Unity, which as it may chance diversly, so it hath divers names accordingly. For if such a Division or Loosning be in the Bone, then it is called a Fracture: if it be in any Fleshy part, then it is called a Wound or an Ulcer, if it be in the Veins then a Rupture, if in the Sinews then a Convulsion or Cramp, and if it be in the Skin, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all these severally I intend to intreat in the Chapters following. Now for as much as in this General Art of Chyrurgery, or Sorrancces, there are certain General Observations or Caveats to be held inviolate, I will before I proceed any further, give you a little tast thereof.

Burning.

First, You shall therefore understand, that it is the duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oyl, or to make any incision with Knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews or Joynts, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

Corrasives.

It. You shall never apply to any Joynt or Sinewey-part, either *Resolgar*, *Arsnick*, *Mercury*, *Sublimate*, nor any such violent *Corrasive*.

Cauterizing.

It. It is ever better to Lance with a hot Iron then a cold, that is, it is better to Cauterize then to Inoife.

Blood.

It. Blood doth ever produce white and thick Matter, *Choler*, a
O waterum

waterish thin Matter, but not much, Salt *Pblegm* great abundance of Matter; and *Melancholy* many dry Scabs.

Bleeding.

It. You must never let Blood, except it be either to divert Sicknes and preserve Health, or to refresh and cool the Blood, or else to diminish Blood, or to purge bad Humors.

It. When you let Blood, take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horse.

Swellings.

It. In all Impostumes and swelling Sores, called Tumors, you must observe the beginning of the grief, the encrease of the grief, the perfection and state of the grief; and lastly, the declination and ending of the grief.

It. In the beginning of every such Swelling Impostumes (if you can not quite destroy them) use Repercussive Medicines, if they be not neer some principal part of the Body; but then not for fear of endangering Life, and in Augmentation, use mollifying Medicines, and suppling to Ripen them, and when they are Ripe, Lance them, and let out the Corruption, or dry them up, and the declination of them, use cleansing and healing Medicines.

Hard and soft Swellings.

It. All Swellings are either hard or soft, the hard will commonly corrode, the soft will continue long.

It. If you thrust your Finger upon any Swelling upon a Horses Leg, then if it presently rise again, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent do remain and continue still behind, then is it an old hurt, and commeth of cold humours, and asks great Art in healing.

Sores.

When Sores begin to Matter, then they heal, but if the putrifaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Cauterizing.

All Cauterizing or Burning, with hot Irons, straineth things enlarged, dryeth up what is too much moistned, dissolveth things gathered together or hardened, draweth back things which are dispersed, and helpeth old griefs: for it repineth, dissolveth, and maketh them to run and issue forth Matter, as you may find more at large hereafter.

Burning

Burning

It. You must sometimes burn under the Sore, to divert humours, and sometimes above, to defend and withhold humours.

It. It is ever better to burn with *Copper* then with *Iron*, because *Iron* is of a Malignant Nature, *Steel* is of an indifferent Vertu: betwixt both.

Actual and Potential burning, what it is.

It. All Actual Burnings is to burn with Instruments, and Potential burning is to burn with Medicines, as are Causticks and Corrasives-

Of blowing Powder into a Horses Eyes.

It. If you blow Powder into a Horses Eyes often it will make him blind.

Of taking up of Veins.

It. By no means take up any Veins in the fore-Legs, un'less great extremity compel you: for there is nothing will sooner make a Horse stiff and Lame. Many other Observations there are, which because they are not so general as these be, I think it meet to omit.

Five things a Farrier ought Principally to know.

1. First, What diseases a Horse is inclinable to.
2. Secondly, What be the causes of every disease in particular.
3. Thirdly, How, and by what ways and means these Diseases do

accrue.

4. Fourthly, The Signs how to distinguish and know them.
5. And Lastly, the means and manner how to Cure them.

Of Glisters and their Uses.

The Nature and properties of Glisters are divers, therefore every Farrier ought to know to what end they serv, and which hath Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded, for every Glistre is to be made according to the Disease. Now some are to ease Grievs, and to allay the sharpness of the Humours, some to bind, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heal Ulcers. These Glisters by cleansing the Guts, refresh the Vital Parts, and prepare the Body (i the Body be not at that time Soluble) to make the Purgation work the better, which if you give your Medicine without giving a Glistre before it, you may stir up and provoke the peccant Humours, which by reason they cannot find present way forth, being hindred by Oppilations in the Guts, through Costiveness and Ventosity, and other Impediments do attempt to make their passage a contrary way, which cannot be done but with great hazard to the life of the poor Beast.

Now for the Composition of Glisters, you shall understand that they be made of four things, that is, of Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyl, of such like Unctuous Matter, as Butter, or soft Grease, and fourthly, of divers Salts, to provoke the Vertue expulsive. A Decoction is a Broth made of certain Herbs, as *Malloes, Marsh-malloes, Pellitory, Camomile*, and sometimes of white *Lilly-Roots* and other such like things, which we do boyl in Water to a third part, and sometimes we use instead of Herbs and Water, to take the Fat of Beef-broth, of a Sheep's Head, Milk, Whey, and some such kind of Liquor, mingled sometimes either with Honey or Sugar, according to the quality of the disease: the Glisters being either Lenitive, that is to say, easing of Pain or Glutinate, which is, joyning of things together: or else Absterfive, which is, wiping away or cleansing of filthy Matter. You ought to Administer according to the Age, Strength, Greatness and Corpulency of the Horse; for if he be a Horse of a strong and able Body, of large growth and stature, fat and lusty, we use to put into the Glisters of the Decoction three pints; but if he be of a small growth, weak, sick, feeble or lean, then we do put in a quart of the same at most. Of Oyl we use to put in half a pint, of Salt two or three drams at most, and sometimes we put Verjuice, sometimes Honey, as we find Cause: Drugs we use are *Sene, Cassia, Agarick, Aniseeds, Oyl of Dill, Oyl of Camomile, Oyl of Violets, Sugar-Candy, &c.* You ought not to exceed the quantity of three Ounces in one Glisters at the most, neither must you exceed of Butter four Ounces, and let it not be above luke-warm when you give it him, let him be somewhat empty, and let him be raked before you Administer it, give it him in a Glisters-pipe made for that purpose. Which ought to be twelve inches in the Shank, which must be put home and having the Confection within the Bladder, wring it with a very good strength into his Body, then draw out the Pipe by degrees out of his Body, and not all at once, and clap his Tail close to his Tuel, and hold it with your hand close, about half an hour at the least, to the end it may work in his Belly the better.

A Glisters for a Horse that is very Costive of Body and cannot Dung.

Take the Fat of Beef-broth a pint and a half, of English Honey half a pint, adding thereto of white Salt two drams, mix them well together, and Administer it Blood-warm, and clap his Tail close to his Tuel, and there hold it for half an hour at least, and if then it will not work

work as I am confident it will, let him Trot about easily about half an hour, and set him up warm Cloathed and Littered, and let him stand upon his Trench four or five honres, during which time he will purge kindly, then unbit him and give him sweet Hay, and an hour after he hath eaten give him a Mash of Malt, and an hour after that, white Water, and let him drink no cold Water in a day or two after.

The Vertues of it.

The Nature of this Glister is, to open and loosen the Body, to bring away with it all offensive Humours, to remove Obstructions ingendred in the Body by means of excessive Heat; it cleanseth the Guts, and slicketh away all slimy Substance which is residing in the Guts. The Horse that received this Glister was a small *Scotch* Nag, and was grown weak and poor, and low of his Flesh, but if he had been a great, large, fat, healthy or Corpulent Horse, you might have made it stronger.

Another Laxative Glister.

Take the Decoction of *Mallows*, and mix therewith fresh Butter four Ounces, or *Sallet-Oyl* half a pint, and so luke-warm Administer it, and order him as you did before.

The Nature of it.

This is of all the Glisters the most gentlest, and is very Lenitive and a great easer of Pain, it is good for a Horse that is taken with any Contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any Costiveness in a Horse whatsoever, proceeding from inward Surfeits or Sicknefs.

Another Glister Laxative.

Take *Pellitory* two handfuls, or for want thereof, *Melilot* two handfuls, or if you cannot get any of them, then two handfuls of *Camomile*, but *Pellitory* is the best, boyl it to a Decoction, and add to it of *Verjuice* and *Sallet-Oyl*, of each half a pint, of *Honey* four Ounces, of *Cassia* two Ounces, mix altogether, and apply it Blood-warm Glister-wise.

The Vertues of it.

It will open the Body and Guts of the Horse very well, it will take from him all noxious and offensive Humours; it will carry away all spongy Matter: it will allay the sharpness of Humours; it will cleanse old *Ulcers*; it will refresh and comfort the Vital Parts. But if

you find you have given him too great a quantity, so that he purgeth or Scoureth too much, then you may give him this Glister Restrington,

A Restrington Glister.

Take the aforesaid Decoction one pint, and as much of Cows Milk (as it cometh warm from her) and put to it the Yolk of three new laid Eggs, well beaten and mixed with the said Liquor, and give it him blood-warm. This is only to be applied to a Horse that is very Laxative, or that doth empty himself too much.

A Glister for a Fat Horse that cannot be kept clean.

Take *Mallows* three handfuls, *Marsh-Mallow* Roots cleansed and brased, and *Violet* leaves, of each two handfuls, *Flax* Seed 3 spoonfuls, as many of the Cloves of white *Lilly* Roots as you can hold in your hand: boyl all these in fair water, from a Gallon to a quart, and strain it, and put thereto of *Sene* one Ounce, which must be infused or steeped in the Liquor three hours, standing upon the hot Embers, then put to it of *Sallet-Oyl*, half a pint, and being blood warm Administer it.

A Glister in Case of desperate Sickness.

Take of the Oyl of *Dill*, of Oyl of *Camomile*, of Oyl of *Violets*, of *Cassia*, of each half an Ounce, and of brown *Sugar-Candy* in Powder, three Ounces, then take half a handfull of *Mallow* leaves, boyl them to a Decoction in fair Water, then strain it, and put to it all the forenamed ingredients, and Administer it blood-warm. This helpeth all Feavers, it is good against the Pestilence, and all languishing Diseases, most excellent against Surfeits, either by Provender or otherwise, and it will occasion great strength in a short time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given.

A Glister for the Pestilence and for all Feavers.

Take the Pulpe of *Colloquintida*, half an Ounce, (I mean the Seeds and Skin taken away) of *Dragantium* three quarters of an Ounce, of *Centaury* and of *Worm-wood*, of each half a handfull, of *Cassoreum* a quarter of an Ounce, boyl all these in three quarts of Water to a quart, then strain it, and dissolve into the Broth, of *Gerologundinum* three Ounces, and of white *Salt* three Drams, of *Sallet Oyl* half a pint, and blood warm Administer it.

A Glister for the Cholick.

Take Salt-water or new made Brine two pints, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of *Sope*, and so Blood-warm Administer it.

Vertues.

This is very good for the Cholick or any Sicknes, or griping in the Guts or Belly. And let this suffice for Glisters.

Advice given upon giving Glisters.

1. Before you administer any Glisters, be sure to rake him.
2. When you put in the Glisters-Pipe, anoint it first with Butter or Sallet-Oyl, and that you put it in and out gently, and by degrees; you must anoint likewise the Hand and Arm.
3. Let him keep it above half an houre, by holding his Tuel close to his Fundament.
4. That you do administer it but Blood-warm.
5. That you squeeze and press between your Hands the Bladder strongly.
6. And lastly, that you let him not drink any cold water in a day or two after, but let it either be sweet Mash, or else white Water.

What things are put into a Laxative Glisters.

Pellitory, Melelote or Camomile, (but Pellitory is the best,) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Sallet-Oyl, Honey, Aloes, and Verjuice of the Crab.

The Nature of the Principal Drugs.

Agarick purgeth the Brain, Aloes the Breast and Body, Rhubarb purgeth the evil water, and it openeth the Liver, and helpeth obstructions and opilations, Aristolochia rotunda mollifieth the Breast, Liver and Lungs, and Baccalanry or Bay-berries do mortifie the peccant humours which do ingender in the Breast or Entrails, near about the Heart; and Saffron (if it be discreetly given,) doth marvellously comfort and enlighten the Heart.

What the true Nature of Rubarb is.

Rubarb hath two contrary Natures, for if you either scrape, grate or cut it, then it is a Loosener, for it dissolveth and openeth the Liver, and expelleth the Obstructions thereof; it expulseth all bad humors in and about the Heart, Liver and Spleen; it clenseth the Body, and sendeth away the peccant humours among the excrements, and all such things as may annoy or offend the Entrails. But if you shall pound or beat it in a Mortar, or otherwise, the spirit whereof being a subtil body, will Transire and flie away, whereby the Operation thereof will be to bind, and be no way profitable.

The

The Nature of a Suppository.

The Nature of Suppositories are to help a Horse that cannot well empty himself, for a Suppository causeth him to discharge himself of many superfluous and evil Humours, which do disturb, annoy, and distemper his Body with their peccant qualities and conditions, for they breed bad Nutriment, which oft times good Diet cannot amend, and therefore must be sent away by Purgation, that is to say, by Suppository, or Glister, or Portion. A Suppository is but a Preparative to a Glister or Portion, and is of all other things the gentlest you can use; it will loosen the Guts, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot, and hard Excrements, which a Glister will not so well do.

The first Suppository.

Take a Candle of four or five in the pound, and cut off three Inches at the smaller end, and anoint the biggest part of it either with *Sallet-Oyl* or fresh Butter, and so put it into his Fundament, then with your hand hold his Tail to his Tuel about half an hour, by which time the Suppository will be dissolved, then take his back and Trot him up and down till he do begin to empty and purge himself, for by this means it will work the better and more kindly. This is the most gentle of all Suppositories that can be given. This dissolveth all hard, dry and hot Excrements, and sendeth them forth, and besides, it supplieth the Guts. Another, if you find him so weak that you dare not without the peril of his life, Administer unto him any Portion, or purging Medicine, then give him this Suppository.

The second Suppository.

Take of Common *Honey* six Ounces, of *Salt-Niter* one Ounce and a half, of *Wheat-Flower*, and of *Aniseeds* in fine Powder, of each an Ounce, boyl all these to a stiff thickness, and so make it into Suppositories, then take one of them and anoint it all over with *Sallet-Oyl*, and your hand also, and so put it up into his Fundament the length of your hand, then tie his Tail betwixt his Legs, by fastening it to his Girth, and let it remain so half an hour, then ride and order him as before. This is good in case of Surfeits or inward Sicknes.

Suppository the third.

Take a piece of *Castle-Sope*, and paring it, bring it into the fashion of a
Suppository,

Suppository, and apply it and order him as before is taught you. This is special good to purge Phlegm.

Suppository the fourth.

Take so much *Saven* as will suffice, and stamp it to a Mash, and stamp with it *Stavesakar* and Salt, of each two ounces; boyl these in common honey so much as will suffice, till it be thick, and so make it up into Suppositories, and administer one of them as you did before, and order him so likewise. This purgeth Choler.

Suppository the Fifth.

Take an angry red Onion, and Pill it, and Jag it Cross-ways with your Knife, and so administer it, and order him as before. This purgeth Melancholy.

Suppository the Sixth.

Take common Honey a Pint, and boyl it till it be thick, and make it up into Suppositories as it cooleth, and administer it, and order him as before prescribed. This purgeth ill humours, it cooleth and comforteth the body very much, and causeth a good appetite to meat.

Observations to be Observed in Giving of Suppositories, Glisters or Portions.

First, you must do it in a Morning Fasting, unless Necessity urgeth the contrary.

Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drink any cold water, no, not with exercise, but either sweet Mashcs, or white Water.

Thirdly, it is very needful, that before you administer either of them to Rake him. And

4 Fourthly, That he be after kept warm.

Of Purgations and their Uses.

Purgation is an emptying and voiding of superfluous humours, which do cumber, pester, and disturb the Body with their peccant Condition: which ill humours do breed bad Nutriment, which when it will not be concocted and amended, either by fair means or by the help of Nature, then it must be compelled, forced, and driven away by Purgation, Vomit, Glisters, or Suppository, but to speak only of Purgations. Purgings of Horses are either by Pills, or Portions; Pills are any solid

or substantial stuff fixed together in one body, and being made into round Balls, are cast down the Horses Throat. A Portion is when you give him any liquid purging Matter to drink, whether it be purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale; or that if it be any other liquid stuff. Now Pills purge and make clean the Head and Brain, bringing Phlegm and other gross Humours down into the Excrements. And Potions cleanse the Stomach, Guts, and every other Inward Member.

What a skilful Farrier ought to know before he goes about to Purge a Horse, he ought to consider the Nature of the Simples.

Now the Art of the true Farrier is in choosing of the Simples, where of these Pills or Portions are to be compounded, and in skilfully applying the same. First, then he ought to know what ill Humours he is oppressed with, as whether it proceed from *Choler*, *Phlegm*, and *Melancholey*, and where they do most abound, and then what Simples are best to purge those Humours, and with what quality and temperament they are indued, for some Simples are most violent, and next Cousins to strong Poysons, as *Scamony*, or *Colloquintida*: some again are gentle, as *Mauna*, *Cassia*, *Whey*, *Prunes*, and such like, and some are neither too violent nor too gentle, but of a Mean, as *Rubarb*, *Agarick*, *Sene* and *Alca*.

The Nature of the Disease, the Strength of the Horse, and the Climate he was bred in.

You ought to consider the Nature of the Disease, the Strength of the Horse, and with them joyn the Nature, Strength and quantity of the Medicine, he must consider likewise the Climate wherein he was bred. And you are to make a difference between delicate and tender Horses, and strong and sturdy Horses, and in such Cases the quality and quantity is to be looked into of every Simple. The Climate likewise is to be respected, whether it be too hot or too cold, and you are not to administer as hot Simples in the Summer, as in the Winter, nor so cold things in the Winter as in the Summer, you ought to have respect to the day, & to chuse that always that is most temperate, for too much heat makes a Horse Faint, and too much cold spoils the working of the Medicine.

When he is to have his Portion.

Give him his Portion in the Morning, after he hath fasted from Meat and Drink all the Night before.

To Ride him after it.

After he hath received his Portion, ride him gently after it, about an hour, and set him up, and let him stand on the Bit two houres after it, well Littered and Cloathed. If he be Sick let him lie down, but if

that

that will do him no good, and that you find him so Sick that you fear his life, then give him a quart of warm Milk with a little *Saffron* in it, and he will do well, and give him no other Meat then a Mash of Malt and white Water to drink till his Medicine hath done working.

How to make a Mash.

Take half a Peck of ground Malt and put it into a Pale, then put in as much scaulding hot Water as will wet it very well, then stir it about half an hour, till tasting the Water you find it as sweet as Honey, then being luke-warm give it the Horse to drink. This Mash is only to be used after you have given him a Purge to make it work the better, or after hard labour, or instead of drink in the time of any great Sickneſs.

Now to come to particular Receipts and Medicines themselves; and though the Antient Farriers do make but two kinds, that is to say, Pills and Purgations, yet I divide them into three, that is to say, Scourings, Pills and Purgations,

What Scourings are.

Scourings are those wholesom, Natural and gentle purging Medicines, which stirring up no great Flux of Humors, do only keep the Body clean from such Evils as would arise and grow, being every way as wholesome in Health, as in Sickneſs, and may most properly be termed preparatives, or preparers of the Body to entertain more stronger Medicines.

Scouring by Grass.

To speak of the most gentle and natural Scouring, which is Grass, which you are to give but for fifteen dayes together, and no more, for after that it Fatteth, the best Scouring Grass is a new Mown Meadow, for that will Rake his Guts very well, nor will he in such a place gather Flesh, but if you intend to fat him, you are to take him out from thence and put him into some other Pasture, where the Sithe hath not been. And this manner of Scouring will cause him to empty himself well of all his evil Humours and Surcits, ease his Limbs marvellous well, do his Legs and Feet very much good, refine his Corrupt Blood, and make him agile and full of Spirit. Next unto Grass is Sorrage, which is only the Blades of green Corn, as *Wheat*, *Rye*, *Barley*, and such like, being given him seven days and no more, which cleanseth & cooleth the Body very much, so doth the leaves of *Sallows*, and of the Elm-green Thistles likewise being cut up and given him for about five days is a good Scourer. And the last of these gentle Scourings is the Mash of Malt as aforesaid; but as you are prescribed there to make it of a quarter of a Peck of Malt, you are to take a larger here (if you use it for a Scouring) a Peck of Malt, and put to it a handiul or more of beaten Hemp-seed.

Scourings of a little stronger Nature are these.

To mix with his Oats a handful or two of *Hemp-seed*, or to take a handful of the Powder of dried *Box-leaves*, and as much of *Brimstone*, and mix it amongst his Provender. These are to be used after labour when he hath Sweat much.

They Purge the Head and Stomach.

These two Scourings work upon no Matter but what Nature will expel, they purge the Head, Stomach and Intrals, they kill all kind of Worms, and dry up *Phlegm*.

Scourings of a stronger Nature.

Take of *Sallet-Oyl* half a pint, of new Milk from the Cow a pint, brew it together and give it him luke-warm, or else take a pint of *Muskadine*, and half a pint of *Sallet-Oyl*, and give it him to drink, or the same quantity of *Oyl* and *Sack* mixt together, and give it him luke-warm.

Their Vertues.

These Scourings cleanse the Head, Body and Guts, from all *Phlegm* or Molten Grease, which any violent labour hath dissolved, they are exceeding good for any manner of Cold or stopping of the Wind-pipes, and if you add to them good store of *Sugar-Candy* it will be the better.

How to order a Horse before you give him Physick.

In Winter if his Body be purged it must be prepared by Blood-letting with Artificial Dyet, you are to keep him a day or two without Hay, Straw, or such like hard Meats, which will hinder the working of the Physick, and he must be kept for a time from all manner of Meat, because emptiness is a great help to Physical Operation, otherwise it may happen to do more hurt then good. Two or three days before you purge him, let his Meat be either Wheat or Rye-bran prepared like as has been taught you, or else good Bread made on purpose with Beans, Pease, and some Rye in it. Or else good sweet Oates clean sifted, and let his drink be white Water only. And that morning you intend to give him his purge, let him be fasting from either Meat or Drink.

The easiest sort of Pills.

The easiest Pills are these, either take twenty Cloves of Garlick cleag

clean pill'd and brused, then a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and so
roul up the Garlick in four or five Balls, as big as two Wall-nuts a
piece, and throw them down his Throat one after another; or else
take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red *Saunders*, beat
them very well together in a Morter, and make them up in Balls, and
give him them as you did the other; or else take a handful of *Rosemary*
leaves chopped very small, and mix them with a quarter of a pound of
Butter, and made it into round Balls as the other, and give them the
Horse; or else take five green *Figs* and put them down his Throat.

The strongest sort of Pill.

Take two pound of *Lard* laid in water two houres, and take nothing
but a quarter of a pound of the clean Fat thereof, and stamp it in a Mor-
ter, and put thereto of *Lycoras*, of *Aniseeds* and of *Fennegreek* beaten
to Powder, of each one Ounce and a half, of *Alloes* beaten into powder,
one Ounce, of *Agarick* half an Ounce, knead them altogether into
Paste and make four or five Balls of them, and give them the Horse.

This Pill is not to be given but to a Horse of great Stature, and
strong in Health of Body.

Purgations that are the strongest Cleansers.

1. Take *Myrrb* and mix it with a pint of white-Wine, and it will purge
all Sicknes that proceedeth of *Choler*, the Sgns whereof his Belly will
well, be very hot, neither Dung nor break Wind. Or

2. Take a pint of Wine and beat a raw Egg therein, and add to it a
quarter of an Ounce of *Brimstone*, and half an Ounce of *Myrrh* beaten
to powder, and give it him luke-warm, and it will purge all Inward Dis-
eases proceeding of Melancholy.

3. Two spoonfulls of the powder of *Diapente* given with half a pint of
wines Grease, purgeth all Diseases proceeding of *Phlegm*. Or

4. Take as much black Sope as the bigness of a Wallnut, a quart of
new Milk, and a quarter of a pint of *Sallet-oyl*, and give it him luke-
warm, and it purgeth all cold Infirmities, but it will make him exceed-
ing Sick. Or

5. Take the Guts of a *Tench* or *Barbel*, cut into small pieces and give
him in a quart of white-Wine, and it will purge him from all Costive-
ness and pain in the Guts.

6. *Rye* being boyled so that it burst not, and dried again, and given
him instead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms. Or

7. Take of radish Roots one Ounce, of the Root called *Panax*, and of *Scamony*, of each half an Ounce beaten altogether, and boyled in a quart of Honey, and give him two spoonfuls of it to drink in a quart of Ale warm, and this will purge all gross Humours whatsoever.

8. Take *Elecompain*-Roots boyled in Milk till they be soft, and add them to half a pint of *Sallet-Oyl*, and give it him luke-warm, and this will purge and cleanse any kind of *Glanders*. Or

9. Take of sweet Sope a quarter of a pound, made up into Balls, and give them the Horse, and it will purge all Humours whatsoever, both violently and most abundantly. Or

10. Take of white-Wine a pint, or for want of that, a quart of new Ale, so much of the powder *Mechoacan* of the best and choicest, as you may take up upon a shilling at four times, give it him warm. This will purge away his filth and slime, and carry away his peccant Humours which Surfeits hath ingendred. Or,

11. Take an Ounce or better of the best *Alloes*, and after you have beaten it to very fine powder, then work it up with a little sweet Butter, and then divide it into three parts and cover them all over with cleare Butter, as big as a small wash-Ball, and give them in a Morning fasting upon the point of a Stick, and give him a Horn full of warm Beer after them, and Ride him after them, and set him up warm, *Probatum est*.

12. Take of the strongest Ale-wort one quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a pint, of *London-Treacle* two Ounces, mix and brew altogether well, and so give it him blood-warm, and keep him upon the Trench warm Cloathed and well Littered six hours after, and let his Drink be white water or a sweet Mash: This both purgeth and comforteth, put into his Drink either the powder of *Brimstone*, or of *Fennel-greek*, or *Turnerick*, or *Elecompain*, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like, which being well mixed, put into his Drink one spoonful at once.

13. Take of ordinary Honey and mingle it with his Oates, which must be mixed by rubbing the Oates and Honey betwixt the hands, let him eat his Oates thus mingled till you find him quite Cured; which will be when he hath quite done running at the Nose. This is one of the best and most certain Cordials that I know, for this disperseth the *Pblegm* and *Choler*, it also purgeth the Head and Brain, and Blood, preventeth evil Humours, it causeth good Digestion, and freeth him from *Glanders*, *Colds*, *Catarrhs*, *Rheum*, running at the Nose, and the like.

Rules to know where a Horse Halteth, either before or behind.

If he do Halt before, his grief must of necessity be either in the Shoulder or Knee, or in the Shank, or in the Pastern, or in the Foot; if it be in the Shoulder it must be either towards the Withers, or in the pitch of the Shoulder, you may know it in that he will a little draw his Leg after him, and not handle it so nimbly as he doth the other, if he cast his Leg more outward then he doth the other, it is a sign that he is Lame, and that the grief lieth in his Shoulder; and if you take him in your hand turn him short either on either hand you shall find him to complain of that Shoulder he is lame of, & he will either favour that Leg, or trip in the turning, you may find him Lame by his standing in the Stable, and he will hold out that Leg that is Lame more then the other, and if he complains more when you are on his Back then otherwise, then be sure the grief lieth in the Withers, and gripe him hard, and you shall perceive him to shrink, and perhaps offer to bite. If he tread thick, and short before, then is the grief upon the pitch of the Shoulder close to the Breast, which you may find by setting your Thumb hard to the place, and by thrusting him with it, if you would have him to go back, whereat he will shrink, and put back his Leg, Foot and Body; if the grief be in the Elbow, you may know it by pinching him with your fore-Finger and Thumb, and he will hold up his Leg and offer to bite; and these be all the griefs that lie in the Shoulder of a Horse. If the griefs lie lower, they must be either in the Knee, in the Skin, in the Pastern, or in the Foot.

When in the Knee.

If it be in the Knee, you may find it by his stiff going, for he will not bend it so nimbly as he doth the other. If it be in the Shank or Shin-bone, you may see it and likewise feel the same, it being then a back Sinew-strain, Splint, or some such like Soreance or annoyance. If it be in the bending of the Knee, then it is a *Mallender*, which is also easily discerned; when it is in the Pastern or Joynt, then you may know it by his not bending it so well as the other; besides, if you put your hand upon the place, you shall find it very hot, if it be in the Foot, it must be either in the Cronet or in the Sole; if in the Cronet it is probable it came by some strain or wrench, if in the Heel, then it came by some over-reach, or else by some disease in or about the Frust; if in the Sole, then it came by some Prick, Actloy, Retoire, Nail, Stub, Stone or Gravel. And thus I have shewed unto you the several ways that cause a Horse to be lame before, and how to know and distinguish the places grieved, together with the occasion of every particular grief.

H^o to distinguish an old Grief from a New.

You have three Ways to find out his Lameness, in what Joynt Limb or Member of the Body soever.

1. The first way is to cause him to be turned at the Halters end, on either hand, suddenly and swiftly, upon as hard a way as you can pick out; and if he have any Ach, Wrench or Grief in his fore-parts, it will appear: for when he turneth upon that hand that the Grief is on, he will favour that leg, and so run both towards you and from you, especially done at a little yielding hill; and if he have any imperfection, he will soon shew it, for he will favour that leg wherein the Grief resideth. But if you cannot find it out this way.

2. Then your second way must be to take his Back, and ride him till you have thoroughly heat him, then set him up for two or three houres till he be cold, then turn him at the Halters end, or ride him, and you may easily discover the least grief that may be in him.

3. A third way there is; and that to know whether the Grief proceeds from a hot or cold cause, for if it proceed from a hot cause, he will halt most when he is hot; but if it be of a cold cause, then will he halt least when he is hot, and most ridden and travelled, and most at his first setting forth, whilest he is cold, and thus much for lameness and halting before.

Now finding that his lameness is not before, you may then conclude, if he be lame at all it must needs be behind, and then it must of necessity be either in the foot, or in the nether Joynt, in the Pastern or in the Leg, in the Ham or in the Hoof, in the stifling place or Joynt, or in the Hip. If the Grief be either in the Leg, Pastern or Foot, you may know it by the same Signes as I have inculcated to you already in the fore-legs. If it be in the bending of the Ham it must be a Selander. If it be in the Hoof, then it is either a Bone or Blood-spavin, which is easie enough to be discerned, or else it must come of some Blow, Wrench or Strain, neither then will the swelling easily appear, which you may perceive either by the stiffness of the Joynt, or you may find the place to be hot and burning. If the pain lie in the stifling place, you may know it by his Gate, for in his going he will cast the stiffling Joynt outward, and the bone on the inside will be bigger then the other, besides his Toe will hardly touch the Ground. If it be in the Hip, which is upon the side of the buttock; and if it be newly taken, you may know it in that he will go side-long like a Crab. And if it be an old hurt, the

Hip

Hip will be fallen lower then the other, and the flesh to shrink, which to discover it the sooner run him at the full length of the Rein, and he will be sure to favour that Leg the grief is in, but if you find him to go upright without favouring any Leg, then take his back and ride him till he be warmed, and then set him up till he be cold, and then lead or trot him in your hand as you did before, and if he be lame at all he will be sure to complain. And so much for Lameness, before and behind.

CHAP. I.

The true Art of Paring and Shoeing all manner of Hoofs, and in what Point the Art of Shoeing doth consist.

The Art of Shoeing consisteth in these Points, viz. in Pairing the Hoof well, in making the Shoo of good Stuff, in well fashioning the Web thereof, and well piercing the same, in fitting the Shoo unto the Horses Foot, in making Nails of good stuff, and well fashioning of the same; and finally, in well driving of the said Nails and cleansing of the same. But sith neither pairing nor shoeing is no absolute thing of it self, but hath respect unto the Foot or Hoof (for the shoo is to be fitted to the Foot, and not the Foot to the shoo) and there be divers kinds of Hoofs both good and bad, requiring great diversity as well of pairing as shoeing; it is meet therefore that we speak first of the diversities of Hoofs, and then shew you how they ought to be paired and shod.

CHAP. II.

Of Hoofs and divers kinds thereof.

1. Of Hoofs, some be perfect and some imperfect. The perfect Hoof is that which is round, smooth, tough, and short, so as he may tread more on the Toe then on the Heel, and also right, and somewhat hollow within, but not over-hollow, having a narrow Frush and broad Heels.

The imperfect Hoof.

The imperfect Hoof, is that which lacketh any of these properties before said, belonging to a perfect Hoof. If the Hoof be not round but broad, and spreading out of the sides and quarters, that Horse for the most part hath narrow Heels, and in continuance of time, will be flat Footed, which is a weak Foot, and will not carry a shoo long, nor Travel far, but soon surerate; and by treading more on his Heels then on his Toes, will go low on his Pasterns, and such Feet through their weakness be much subject to false quarters, and to Graveling, which is most commonly seen in Flanders-Horses, and such as are bred in moist Grounds.

Q

of

Brittle and Rugged Hoofs.

Secondly, if the Hoof be not smooth but rugged and full of Circles, like Rams-horns, then it is not only unseemly unto the eye, but also it is a sign that the Foot is in no good temper, but too hot and dry, and that makes it to be Brittle, which defect is often seen in our *English Horses*.

Long Hoofs.

Thirdly, if it be long, then it will cause the Horse to tread all upon the Heels, and to go low on his Pasterns, and thereby to breed *Wind-galls*, whereunto the Jennets of *Spain* be much subject, by reason of their long Hoofs.

Crooked Hoofs.

Fourthly, if the Hoof be not right but crooked, viz. broad without and narrow within, whereby the horse is splay Footed, then it will cause him to tread more inward then Outward, and to go so close with his Joynts together, as he cannot well Travel without enterfering, or perhaps striking one Leg so hard against the other, as he becometh lame. But if he be broad within, and narrow without, that is not so hurtful, notwithstanding it will cause him to Gravel sooner on the outside then on the inside.

Flat Hoofs.

Fifthly, If the Hoof be flat and not hollow within, is most commonly seen in *Frezons* and *Flanders*-horses, then it breedeth such inconveniences, as are before declared in the first imperfect Hoof. And again if it be over-hollow, then it will dry the faster and cause him to be Hoof-bound, for the over-hollow Hoof, is a streight narrow Hoof, and groweth upright, for though the Horse treadeth upright, and not on his Heels, yet such kind of Hoofs will dry over fast, unless they be continually stopt, and cause him to be Hoof-bound, which lameth him, making him to halt, whereunto the *Jennets* and *Barbary*-horses are much subject.

Broad Frushes.

Sixthly, If the Frush be broad, then the heels be weak and so soft, as you may almost bend them together, and then he will never tread boldly on the Stones, or hard Ground.

Narrow Heels.

Seventhly, Narrow heels be tender, and he will at last grow to be Hoof-bound, to which defects the *Jennets* are most commonly subject.

CHAP. III.

Of Pairing the perfect Hoof and fore-Fet.

First, Pair the Seat of the shooe, as even and plain as may be, that so it may sit close, and not bare more on one place then another, and take more of the Toe then the Heel, for the Heels must be higher then the

the Toes, because all the weight of the horses fore-Body, lieth upon the Quarters and Heels of the fore-Feet. And therefore those parts must be most maintained, and taken off with the Butter as little as may be, for the Heels are naturally weaker then the Toes. But in the Parcing of the hinder-Feet is clean contrary, as you shall find hereafter in its proper place.

CHAP. IV.

Of Shoeing the perfect Hoof and fore-Feet, and how the Shoe, Parcing, and Nail, should be made.

Make your shoe of *Spanish Iron*, with a broad Web, fitting it to the hoof, and let the Spunges be thicker & more substantial then any other part of the shoe, yea, and also somewhat broad, so as the Quarters on both sides may appear without the Hoofs a straws bredth, to guard the Collin, which is the strength of the Hoof, and when you come to the piercing thereof, pierce it from the Quarter to the hard Toe, but not backwards towards the Heel, and that the holes may be wiler on the outside then on the inside, and that the Circle of the piercing may be more distant from the edge of the Toe, then from the edge of the Quarter, whereas it beginneth because the Hoo is thicker forward then backward, and therefore more hold to be taken. Make your Nails of the same Iron as aforesaid, the Heads whereof should be square and not fully so broad beneath as above, but answerable to the piercing holes, so as the heads of the Nails may enter in and fill the same, appearing somewhat above the shoe, and then they will stand sure without shogging, and endure longer, and that that which pierceth them be of the same Size as the Nails, that is to say, great above and small beneath, which our common Smiths little regard, for they make the holes as wide on the inside as the outside and their Nails of so great a Shouldering by driving them over hard upon the Nail hole, as that the Heads, or rather Necks of the said Nails cannot enter into the holes. For to say the truth a good Nail should have no shouldering at all, but be made with a plain and square Neck, so as it may justly fill the piercing hole of the shoe, for otherwise the Head of the Nail standing high and the Neck thereof being weak, either it breaketh off, or else bendeth upon any light occasion, so as the shoe standeth loose from the Hoof, and is quickly lost. Moreover the shanks of the Nails should be somewhat flat and the points sharp, without hollownes or flaw, and stiffer towards the Head above then beneath. And when you drive, drive at the first with soft stroaks, and with a light Hammer, until the Nail be somewhat entred, and in shoeing fine and delicate horses, grease the points of the Nails with soft Grease, that so they may enter the more easily, and drive the two Talon Nails first.

Then look whether the shoo standeth right or not, which you shall perceive in beholding the Frush, for if the Spunges on both sides be equally distant from the Frush, then it standeth right, if not, then amend it and set the shoo right, and standing right drive in another Nail, that done, let the Horse set down his Foot again and look round about it, to see whether it fitteth the Horses Foot in all places, and whether he treadeth even and just on it or not, and if you see that the shoo doth not furnish every part equally, but appeareth more on one side then another. Then lift up the Horses other Foot that so he may stand steadily upon that Foot, and so standing strike him on the Hoof with your *Hammer* on that side that the shoo is scant, and that shall make the shoo to come that way. The shoo standing streight and just, drive in the rest of all the Nails to the Number of eight, that is to say, four on one side, and four on another, so as the points of the Nails may seem to stand in the out-side of the Hoof, even and just one by another, as it were in a circular Line, and not out of order like the Teeth of a Saw, whereof one is bent one way and another another way. That done, cut them off, and Clinch them so as the Clinches may be hidden in the Hoof, which by cutting the Hoof with a point of a Knife, a little beneath the appearing of the Nail, you may easily do. Thus done with a Rape, pair the Hoof round, so as the edge of the shoo may be seen round about.

CHAP. V.

Of Pairing of the imperfect Hoofs every one according to their Kinds. And first of the broad Hoof.

A broad Hoof, not being as yet grown to be too flat, may be holpen and kept from being flat, by the skill and diligence of the Farrier in well pairing and shoeing it. And therefore to pair it well, let him take as much of the Toe, with his Butteris as he can possibly, keeping it always under, but let him not touch the Quarters nor the Heels at all, unless it be to make the Seat of the shoo plain, and let that be done so superficially as may be, so shall the Hoofs remain always strong.

CHAP. VI.

Of Shoeing the Broad Hoof.

Make a good strong Shoo, with a broad Web, and broad Spunges, and pierced as is before said, fitting it to the Foot, being first pared as

is above said; and from the Talon-Nail towards the heel let the Shoo appear a straws bredth without the hoof, and set it on in such order and with such Nails as appertaineth unto the perfect hoof, saving that you shall set 5 Nails on the outside of his hoof, and 4 on the inside, because he weareth more without then within.

CHAP. VII.

Of Paring the rough and brittle Hoof.

This kind of Hoof is most commonly weaker without then within, and because it is for the most part hotter then the other hooves be, the heels may be more opened then the other, that so they may be the more easily stoppt with Cow-dung, or other Ointment to keep it moist, and also the raggedness on the outside of the Coffin should be filed away with a Rape, and made smooth, and also more often anointed then other hoofs; and as for the rest of the hoof it must be pared as the perfect one.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Shoeing the rough and brittle Hoof.

Make this Shoo neither too light, but so as it may well bear the Horse; nor yet too heavy, for then the hoof being weak, will soon cast it, and pierce this Shoo, to be set on with nine Nails, five without and four within.

CHAP. IX.

Of Paring the long Hoof.

The long Hoof may be helpen by cutting away the Toe, for the shorter foot a weak and slender Leg hath, the better. And to say the truth, it is the short foot that maketh the strong leg, and the long foot maketh the weak leg, being forced thereby to tread all upon the heel, and on the Pastern, and let the rest of the hoof be pared like the perfect hoof.

CHAP. X.

Of Shoeing the long Hoof.

Make this Shoo as round as you can at the Toe, that the bredth may take away the evil sight of the length; and if the foot be very narrow, then let the Shoo disbord without the hoof, and pierce the Shoo the

the deeper, and set it backward enough, because such kind of Feet do tread most on the Heels, and set the shooe on with eight Nails, like the perfect Hoof.

CHAP. XI.

Of Paring the Crusked Hoof.

First, look on what side the hoof is highest and least worn, and then Pare all that away, and make it equal with the lower side which is most worn, without touching the worn side at all, unless it be to make the Seat of the shooe plain, and as for the rest, Pare it like the perfect Hoof.

CHAP. XII.

Of Shoeing the Crooked Hoof.

Make an indifferent strong shooe with a broad Web, fitting it to the Foot, and Pare it not until you have laid the shooe unto the Foot, to the intent you may Pare it to the Horses most Commodity, which shall be done, if you Pare the scant side, which most commonly is the inside, more towards the Toe, then the fuller or stronger side. And where the Hoof is weakest, there also make the shooe strongest, and set on the shooe with nine Nails, viz. five on the stronger side, and four on the weaker side.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Paring the flat Hoof, otherwise called the promised Hoof.

Make the Seat of the shooe plain, and take somewhat of the Toe, but touch not the Heel nor the Ball of the Foot, but leave both them as strong as you can.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Shoeing the flat Hoof or Promised Hoof.

Make this shooe with a very broad Web, for the more it covers the weak Sole, the better, and let the mid-part of the Web that covers the Ball of the Foot be much thicker then the outsides where the pierce is, and let it be so hollow as it touch no part of the Ball of the Foot, and let it be large and long enough in all places, so as the horse may go ease, and let it be pierced round about the Toe, to favour the heels, and make ten holes for ten Nails, viz. five on each side.

CHAP. XV.

Of Paring the over-hollow Hoof.

Pare this hoof round about, and especially the Seat of the shoe, viz. round about by the Edges, to the intent the hollownes of the hoof within may not be so deep, but more shallow then it was before, and let it be always kept moist with stopping it, for fear of hoof-binding, observing in your Paring to even a hand as may be, in all points like unto the perfect hoof.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Shoeing the over-hollow Hoof.

Make a light shoe in such order and form as was said before, to serve the perfect hoof.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Paring the Hoof that hath a broad Frush.

Broad Frushes do cause weak heels, and therefore had need of little or no paring at all, and for that cause, pair only the Toe, and also the Seat of the shoe, so much as shall be needful to the even standing of the shoe, leaving the heels so strong as may be.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Shoeing the Hoof that hath a broad Frush.

Make this shoe stronger towards the heel then towards the Toe, and also let the Web be somewhat broad towards the heels to save them from the ground, and set on this shoe with nine Nails, because most commonly it is a great Foot, and in all other points make it like the shoe with the perfect hoof.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Paring the Hoof that hath narrow Heels.

Pare the Toe short, and make the Seat of the shoe fair and plain, and open only so much, as there may be some little space betwixt the Frush and the heel, for the less you take of the heel, the better.

CHAP. XX.

Of Shoeing the Hoof with narrow Heels.

Make a light shoe with a broad Web, and let the Spunges be so broad as they may almost meet together to defend the heel from the ground, and pierce it all towards the Toe, sparing the heel so much as you can, and let the shoe be long enough towards the heels, and set it on with eight Nails, like the shoe that fitteth the perfect hoof.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Pairing and Shoeing the hinder Feet.

The Pairing of the hinder Feet, is clean contrary unto the fore Feet, for the weakest part of the hinder Foot is the Toe, and therefore in pairing the hinder Foot, the Toe must be alwys more spared then the Heels, but in all other points observe the order of pairing, according to the perfection or imperfection of the Hoofs before declared.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Shoeing the hinder Feet.

Make the Shoo fit for the Hoof as is before said, and let it be strongest at the Toe, and pearced nigher the Heel then the Toe, because the Toe is the weakest part of the Foot, and let the outside of the hinder shoo be made with a *Calkin*, not over high, but let the other Spunge be agreeable unto the *Calkin*, that is to say, as high in a manner as the *Calkin*, which *Calkin* is to keep him from sliding, but then it may not be sharp pointed, but rather flat, and handsomly turned upward, which is the best sort of *Calkin*.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Shoeing the Hoof that hath a false Quarter.

If the Horse Halt, then make him a shoo fitting to his Foot, tacking it on the quarter on that side that his false Quarter is on. If he do not halt, then make him a shoo, with a Button or Shouldering on the inside of the shoo, and next to the Sole of the Foot, somewhat distant from the false Quarter towards the Toe, and that shall defend the fore place, so as the shoo shall not touch it. And with this kind of shoo you may Travel your Horse where you will.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Pairing and Shoeing for enterfering.

Those Hoofs that enterfere, are most commonly higher on the outside then on the inside, and therefore you should take off the outside with a *Butteris*, to the intent that the inside may be somewhat higher (if it will be) then the outside, and then make him a shoo fit for his Foot.

Foot which should be thicker on the inside then on the outside, and let that shooe never have any *Calkin*, for that will make him to tread a wry, and the sooner to enterfere, and let it be prepared in such sort that it makes him not to enterfere.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Paring and Shooing the Foot that is Hoof-bound.

First, Pare his Toe as short as may be, and pare the Sole somewhat thin, and open the Heels well, and make him a half shooe like a half-Moon.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making the Planch-shooe or Paunceler.

The Planch-shooe maketh a good Foot and evil Leg, because it maketh the Foot to grow beyond the measure of the Leg. Notwithstanding for a weak Heel it is marvellous good, and it will last longer then any shooe, and it is borrowed from the Moyl that hath weak Heels and Frushes, to keep the Foot from Stones and Gravel. Notwithstanding, wo be unto that Horfe that hath need of such a shooe.

CHAP. XXVII.

Shoes with Calkins, Rings, Welts, and turning Vices, and of the Patten shoe.

Besides all these kind of shooes before recited, there be divers others, whereof some be made with high *Calkins*, some with Rings, some with Welts or Borders about, and some with Vices, some with Toes turned upward, some with Heels turned upward, and of many other Fashions, which though they be not so needful, I thought good to speak somewhat of them. And first as touching shooes with *Calkins*, that though they be intended to keep the Horfe from sliding, yet they do him more harm then good, in that he cannot tread evenly upon the ground, whereby he many times wrencheth his Foot, or straineth some Sinew, and especially upon Stony wayes, where the Stones will not suffer the *Calkins* to enter, the Foot slippeth with more violence; yet some do not think him well shod, unless all his shooes be made with *Calkins*, either single or double, yet of two Evils, double is the less, for he will tread even, undouble then single *Calkins*, but then let them not be over long,

or sharp pointed, but rather short and flat. And thus much for shoes with Calkins.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Shoes with Rings.

Shoes with Rings were first invented to make a Horse lift up his Feet high, but such shoes are more painful then helpful, and is an unhand- som Sight in Horses, which thing is incident to most Horses that have not sound Hoofs, for having tender Hoofs, they fear to touch the ground that is hard. Now such kind of Horses that have naturally these tender Heels, some for want of discretion, do think to amend them by adding thereunto high *Calkins*, or else Rings, and thereby cause him to have weaker Heels, then he had before. Therefore I shall advise you to lay aside all these unprofitable Devices, and make all your shoes, especially your fore-shoes, with Spunges, as hath been before taught.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Shoes with Swelling Welts, or Borders about.

In *Germany* and high-*Almany*, the Smiths do make their shoes with a swelling Welt round about the shooe, which being higher then the Heads of the Nails, do save them from wearing, which are the best sort of lasting shoes, for Mr. *Blundevill* travelled in those Country out right above 500 Miles upon very stony ground, yea, and upon Mountains, without removing shooe or driving Nail, for the shooe being made of well tempered stuff, weareth equally in all parts, and the Horse treadeth evenly upon them.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Shoes with turning Vices, and also of Joynt-shoes.

Some that use to pass the Mountains where Smiths are not easily

be found, do carry about them shooes with Vices, whereby they fasten it to the Horses Foot, without the help of the Hammer or Nail, notwithstanding they are more for show then any good use. For though it save his Feet from Stones, yet it so pincheth his Hoof as he goeth with pain, and doth perhaps do his Hoof more hurt then the stones do, therefore it is better upon such needful times to use the Joynt-shooe, which is made of two pieces, with a flat Rivet-Nail joyning them together in the Toe, so that you may both make it wide and narrow to serve any Foot, therefore the Rider ought to understand to drive a Nail and to have his Instruments about him, meet for carriage, without the which there are but few Gentlemen of *Almany* that loveth his Horse, but can use those Instruments for that purpose as well as most Smiths.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Patten-shooe.

Because every Smith knoweth the use of this shooe, and how to make it, I shall not need to use many words, but only shew you that it is necessary shooe for a Horse that is hurt in the Hip, or stifle, or shoulder, which will make him bear upon that Leg the Grief is on, and consequently make him use it the better.

In what Causes to Canterize.

Cauterization or giving of fire, is of two Natures, *viz.* Actual and potential. Your Cautery Actual is made by hot burning Instruments, with which you sear and burn those places which be requisite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure well cured, but by giving of Fire: as in case of great impostumation, stanching of blood in Wounds, or in searing of Veins, Sinews, or the like, or else in case of dismembring, if other means be not at hand, whereby to stay the Flux of Blood without danger of Bleeding to death.

An Iron with a Button.



The Drawing Iron.

And if they that give Fire be not very skilful, I would advise them practice upon Jades, and not Horses of price, to the end they may the better come to know how to carry their hand either lighter or harder, and also that they do make their Circles round, and their Lines streight and even. For this Actual Fire is a thing most necessary for them that do understand the Vertue thereof, and therefore ought to be very carefully applyed, and never but upon very good grounds: which in so doing, you shall find it to be a most Sovereign Remedy to hinder and stay all manner of Corruption, whereunto any Member may be inclined, provided that in the handling of your Instrument you touch not *Muscles, Arteries, Sinews, Ligaments, Chords, or the like*; for so you may utterly lame, where you would set upright. For by this Actual Fire, you shall Joyn and Conglutinate Parts and Members severed, dry up superfluous Moisture, and Sick Members swelled, and bring forth all evil and putrefaction Matter, congealed and gathered into Knots, as, *Wens, Biles, Pustils, Exulceration*, and the like: you shall also assuage old grieves, and make perfect all such parts of the Body as be any way Corrupted: neither shall you need fear the encrease of any evil humours, by reason that the Skin being severed by means of the hot Iron, it doth Ripen and digest all manner of putrefaction and matterative stuff, whereby it venteth and passeth away much more easily, healing and qualifying all grief and pain, causing the Member which before was subject to Fettering and to Gangreen, to become the sounder and stronger, and the worst that can be made thereof, will be but a little Eye-sore, by reason of a Scar which it leaves behind it. But then you must have a very great regard unto your Instruments, that they be made according to the nature and quality of the place and Member which is to be Seared; for one fashion will not serve in all Causes: for as the places which are to be Cauterized, are commonly different in shape and proportion, so ought the shapes and fashions of your Instruments to be accordingly. You ought to have a care in the heating of them, for as they ought not to be too hot, so they ought not to be too cold, for by that means you may inflame the place too much. Your Instruments are to be made of Iron or Steel, which are the best to work with, and to be preferred before Gold, Silver, Brass or Copper, because Steel or Iron will retain its own received heat longer then any other Metal; for the others, as they are the sooner made hot, so they are the sooner cold. Now Steel and Iron Metals are much more substantial and harder then the other Metals are, and though they are the longer

longer a heating, yet they retain their heat the longer. Again, a man cannot tell when those other Metals are hot enough, as also when they be too hot, and if you put never so little water to them to allay their heat, they presently become too cold, the contrary whereof you shall find to be in the Nature of Iron and Steel.

Cautery Potential.

Now I will in a word handle Cautery Potential, which as the Cautery Actual burneth the Flesh by hot Instrument, even so doth Cautery Potential burn the Flesh by Medicine, of which there are three sorts or degrees.

Namely, by Corrosive, by Caustick, or by Putrifaction.

Corrosive.

Corrosive, is when that is applied to the wound, wherein is dead or proud Flesh to corrode or eat it away, by which means the wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplaisters, Waters, or Unguents which do carnify and make good Flesh, by which means the Wound which before was foul, is now become clean, healed up, and made sound, and these corroding things are commonly Precipitates, *Sublimatum*, *Arsnick*, *Resalgar*, *Leads* white and red, *Copperas* white and green, *Verdegrease*, *Alom*, *Vitral*, *Sandaracha*, *Chrysocollo*, *Origanum*, *Mercury*, *Aconitum*, *Capitellum*, *Romane*, *Vitrial*, shaving of Ox or Harts horn, red Coral, Sponge of the Sea somewhat burned, *Unguentum Apostolorum*, *Unguentum Egiptiacum*, *Unguentum Caraccum*, *Magistra*, *Sal-niter*, *Cantharides*, *Apium*, *Aqua fortis*, *Siclamine*, *Melanacardium*, and many more, that do burn, eat and corrode the Flesh, putting the poor Beast to a great deal of pain.

A Caustick.

A Caustick is a great burner, for that being once put to the Skin, will in short time make a Wound where none was before; for which we do use to make Issues, for Causticks are stronger and more violent than either Putrifactives or Corrosives; for whereas Corrosives do work only upon Skin broken, and to corrode and eat out dead, proud, spungy, and naughty Flesh, and Putrifactives do Ripen, Mollifie, and prepare the Wound for the Caustick, so Causticks do break Skin and Flesh, and all; and therefore it is more violent, and burneth worse than any of the two former.

Putrifactive.

Now your Putrifactives are such Medicines as we do commonly apply to Swellings, which we do make for the most part of Medicines compounded, as *Polteffes*, roasted *Sorrel*, white *Lilly-Roots*, and the like, for such things are drawers, causing swellings which be hard and Flethy, to become soft and Putrifactive, and to prepare Sorrancess for the Cauticks, whose nature is to break and open, what before the Putrifactive had Ripened, which otherwise must have been done by Cautery Actual, or by Incision. And this I do think sufficient to be handled upon this subject.

How to make Bread for a Horse to keep him in Heart and Strength of Body, and to keep him from fainting in his Labour and Exercise, be it never so sore.

Take Wheat Meal. Oat-Meal and Beans, all ground very small, of each a Peck, Anniseeds four Ounces, Gentiana and Fennegreek of each an Ounce, Licoris two Ounces, beat them all to fine powder, and searce them well, and add to them twenty new laid Eggs Whites, and all well beaten, and as much strong Ale as will knead it up, then make your Loaves like to Horse-bread, but not too thick, and let them be well baked, but not burned, give it him not too new, and when you give it him give it him five or six Mornings together, without any Provender, and thus you shall have him well winded, lusty, strong, hardy, and healthy, whereby to be able to hold out and retain his Metal to the last.

Another sort of Bread.

Take of Wheat-Meal one Peck, Rye-Meal, Beans, and Oat-Meal, of each hal a Peck. ground very small, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each one Ounce. and white Sugar-Candy four Ounces, beat all into fine powder, with the Whites and Yolks of twenty new laid Eggs well beaten and put to them, and so much white Wine as will knead it into a Paste, make them into great Loaves and bake them well, and after they be two or three days old, let him eat of this Bread, but clip away the outside. Now the reason I prefer Meal before Flower is, because Flower is much more hot and binding. and therefore the Courser the Bread is,
the

the better it is for the Horfe. And the reason why I put Rye into my latter Bread, is, becaufe Rye is a loosener, and a cooler, and therefore it will make him the more Soluble.

For what causes Veins are to be taken up.

As touching taking up of Veins, you shall understand that it is a thing very behoofeful, as that many times the most exquisite Farrier living shall not be able to perfect this cure, but by that way and means, or unless such Veins be either taken up, or some way stopped, which are noxious to the cure, by feeding the Malady with its peccant humours, the Farrier can never work by true Art. Again, Veins well taken up do prevent many Maladies, whereunto many Horses are much more prone than others are. And lastly, the taking up of Veins cureth some diseases which could otherwise never be cured. For the taking up of the Thigh Veins sendeth away *Spavens, Splints, Curbs, Kibed heels, Swelled-Legs, Scratches, Malenders, Farcin* in the Legs, and the like Sorances: besides, it causeth all Pains, Aches, Strains, stiffness in the Limbs, &c. Take up the shackle Veins, and it preventeth the Quarter-bone, Ring-bone, Swellings in the lower Joynts, Foundering, &c. Wherefore for as much as Ignorant People, whatsoever Opinion they may have of their super-abundant skill, yet they are very much to seek, in that they do so much exclaim against taking up of Veins absurdly, affirming it to be a great means of Laming of Horses: but let them not mistake themselves, for assuredly it is the best and only Remedy against these and many more Maladies, and when they shall have made Tryal, they will not be of so prejudicate an Opinion.

Of Roweling of Horses, and of the use thereof.

The Roweling of Horses is so common amongst our simple Smiths, that they will Rowel him for any disease almost, without any sence or reason, whereby they needlessly torment the Horse, and bring a Flux of naughty humours down to the place, which causes him to be lame, which might otherwise be found. But this I must say of it, that if it be well used by a skilful Farrier, it is not only commendable, but causes great good to a Horses Body and Limbs.

Helps got by Roweling.

The helps got by Roweling are these, it separateth and dissolveth evil humours which are gathered together in any one place, it looseth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakened, it strengtheneth sick Joints, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold Flegm. The use of it in General, is for inward strains, especially about the Shoulders or Hips, or else for great hard Swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward Medicine. Now if the Bruise be not taken away presently by applying to it some comfortable hot Medicine. There will arise a certain Jelly between the Pot and the Bone which offendeth the tender Gristle, which covers the ends of every Bone, which makes the horse halt most vehemently. Now nothing will take this away but Rowling.

Now the manner of Roweling is this.

When you have found out the certain place of his grief, after you have cast him upon some soft place, make a little slit a handful below the place grieved through the Skin, no bigger then you can thrust in a Swans Quill into the same then raise the Skin a little from the Flesh with your Croket, and then put in your Quill, and blow all the Skin from the Flesh upward, even to the top, and all over the Shoulder, then stopping the hole with your Finger and your Thumb, beat the place blown all over with a hazel-stick, and spread the wind with your hand into every place, and so let it go, then take some horse hair, or some red Sarcenet, half the bigness of a Mans little Finger, and put it into your rowling Needle which should be at least seven or eight inches long, thrust it in at the first hole, and put it upward, drawing it out above at least six inches and if you please you may put in another above that, & then tie the two ends of the Rows together, and move and draw them to and fro in the Skin, not forgetting before you put them in, to anoint them with sweet Butter or Hogs Grease, and every day after like wise, for that will make the corruption run out the better.

Now there are other Farriers think that these long Rowels of hair or Silk do make a double Sore, and a great Scar, therefore they make their Rowels of round pieces of stiff Leather, such as is on the upper part of an old Shoo, with a round hole in the midst, according to the form in the Margent, and then double it when they put it in, and then spread it open and lay it flat between the Flesh and the Skin, and that the hole in the Rowel may be just against the hole in the horses Skin, and



and once in two or three days to clean the Rowel, and to anoint it, and so put it in again.

Instructions upon Rowelling.

If you Rowel him for any Swelling, then put in your long Rowel the same way that the Veins run, and seldom or never cross wise, & the more you blow the Skin for a Swelling, the better, for the Wind is that that causeth Putrifaction, and makes the festered Humours to dissolve and distill down from the secret hollows of the Joynts into those open places, where it falleth away in Matter, and so the Breast becomes cured.

How to Geld Horses or Colts.

You are to observe in the Gelding of Horses. First, the Age. Secondly, the Season of the year; and lastly, the state of the Moon. For the Age, if it be a Colt, you may Geld him at nine days old, or fifteen, if his Stones be come down, for the sooner you Geld him the better for growth, shape and courage. Now a Farrier may Geld a Horse at any Age whatsoever, if he be careful in the cure.

The Season of the Year to Geld in.

The best Season for Gelding is between *April* and *May*, or in the beginning of *June* at the farthest, or about the fall of the Leaf, which is the latter end of *September*.

The state of the Moon.

Now for the state of the Moon, the fittest time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane: as touching the manner of Gelding, it is in this sort, whether it be Foal, Colt, or Horse, after you have cast him upon some soft place, take the Stones between your fore-most Finger, and your great Finger, then slit the Cod, and press the Stones forth, then with a pair of small Nippers, made either of Steel, Box, Wood, or Brasil, being very smooth, and clap the strings of the Stones between them, very near unto the setting on of the Stones, and press them so hard that there may be no Flux of Blood, then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red hot, sear away the Stone, then take a hard Plaister made of Rozen, Wax, and wash Turpentine, well Molten together, and with your hot Iron press it upon the head of the Strings: then sear the Strings, and then Melt more of the Salve, till such time as you have laid a good thickness of the Salve upon the Strings, then loose the Nippers, and do so to the other Stone, and fill the two slits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outside of the

Cod with Hogs Grease, and so let him rise, and keep him in a warm Stable loose, that so he may walk up and down, for there is nothing better for him then moderate Exercise. Now if you do perceive that he doth swim in his Cod, and sweat very much, then chase him up and down, and make him Trot an hour in a day, and it will soon recover him and make him sound.

To make a white Star either on your Horses fore-Head, or in any other part of his Body.

After you have with a Raifor shaved away the Hair so wide as you would have the Star, then take off a little of the Oyl of Vittriol in an Oyfter-shell, and dip a Feather or a piece of Silk into it (for it will eat both Linnen and Woollen) and just wet it all over the place shaved, and it will eat away the Roots of the Hairs, and the next that comes will be white. You need not do it above once, you may heal it up with your Copperas water and green Oyntment.

To make a black Star or white Hairs black.

Wash often the place you would have made black, with Fearn Root and Sage sod in Lye, and it will breed black Hairs in a white Horse. Or take Souter Ink, Galls, and Rust beaten well together, and anoint the place therewith, and it will turn white to black.

To make a Red Star.

Take *Aqua-fortis* one Ounce, of *Aqua-vitæ* a penny-worth, of Silver to the value of eighteen pence. Put them in a Glas and heat them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the Hairs to be of a perfect Red Colour, but they will endure no longer then the casting of the Hair, which you must renew again if you intend it shall continue.

To make a Horse seem Young.

Take a small crooked Iron, no bigger then a Wheat Corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outmost Teeth of each side the nether Chap before, next to the Tusshes where the Mark is worn out, then with an Awl-blade pick it, and make the Shell fine and thin; then with a sharp scraping Iron make all his Teeth white.

white and clean: this done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the Horses Eyes which are shrunk down, make a little hole only through the Skin, and put in the Quill of a Raven or Crow, and blow the Skin full of Wind, till all the hollownels be filled up, then take out your Quill, and lay your Finger upon the hole a little while, and the Wind will stay in, and he will look as youthful as if he were but six years old.

To make a Horse that he shall not Neigh either in Company, or when he is Ridden.

If either you be in Service of the Wars, and would not be discovered, or when upon any other occasion, you would not have him to Neigh or make a Noise, then take a List of Woollen Cloth, and tye it fast in many folds about the midst of his Tongue, and he will not Neigh nor make any extraordinary Noise with his Voice, as hath been often tried and approved of.

To help a Horse that hath Laved or Bangle Eares.

Take his Eares and place them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little Boards or pieces of Trenchers three Fingers broad, having long strings knit unto them, bind the Ears so fast in the places where they stand, as that they cannot stir, then betwixt the Head and the Root of the Eare, you shall see a great deal of empty wrinkled Skin, which with your Finger and your Thumb, you shall pull up, and with a sharp Pair of Scissers clip away all the empty skin close by the Head, then with a Needle and red Silk stitch the two sides of the skin close together, and then with your green Oyntment heal up the Sore. Which done, take away the Splints which held up his Eares and you shall find, that in a short space his Eares will keep the same place, as you set them without Alteration: And this you shall find to be as certain and true, as the healing of a cut Finger.

The first Inventors of Riding.

Bell raphons, as some Men say, was the first that invented Riding on Horse-back. And the *Pelletrones*, a people of *Lapithia*, found out afterwards the manner of Bridles, Bits, and Rings, to guide Horses withal. But they of *Thessalia* were the first that used the service of Horses in the Wars.

The Receipt of making the Cordial Balls.

The true manner of making those Cordial Balls, which cure any violent Cold or Glanders, which prevent heart-sickness, which purge away all Molten Grease, which recover a lost Stomach, which keep the heart from fainting with Exercise, and make a lean Horse fat suddenly.

Take Anniseeds, Cuminseeds, Fennegreek seeds, Carthumus seeds, Elecampain Roots, and Colts Foot, of each of these two Ounces, beaten and searced very fine, two Ounces of the Flower of Brimstone, then take an Ounce of the Juice of Licoras, and dissolve it on the Fire in half a pint of white Wine; which done, take an Ounce of Chymical Oyl of Anniseeds, then take of Sallet-Oyl, Honey, and of Syrup of Sugar, or for want of it, Molosses, of each half a pint, then mix all these with the former powders, and with as much fine Wheat-Flower, as will bind and knit them altogether, work them into a stiff Paste, and make thereof Balls somewhat bigger then French Wall-nuts, Hull and all, and so keep them in a close Gally pot (for they will last all the year) yet I do not mean that you shall keep them in the Pot in Balls; because they cannot lie close, the Air may get in, and do hurt; as also the strength of the Oyls will sweeten outward, and weaken the substance, therefore knead the whole lump of Paste into the Gally Pot, and make the Balls as you have occasion to use them.

The Use of these Balls.

Now for the Use of these Balls, because they are Cordial, and have divers excellent Vertues, you shall understand that if you use them to prevent Sicknes, then you shall take a Ball and anoint it all over with sweet Butter, and give it him in the morning in the manner of a Pill, then ride him a little after it (if you please otherwise you may chuse) and feed and water him abroad or at home, according to your usual custom. And thus do three or four Mornings together.

If you use them to cure either Cold or Glanders, then use them in the same manner for a Week together. If you use them to fatten a Horse, then give him them for a Fortnight together. But if you use them in the Nature of a Scouring, to take away Molten Grease and Foulness, then instantly after his heat, and in his heat. Again, if your Horse at any time hath taken a little Cold, as you shall perceive by his inward Ratling, if then you take one of these Balls and dissolve it in a pint of Sack and so give it him, it is a present Remedy. Also to dissolve

the Ball in his ordinary water, being made luke-warm, it worketh the like effect, and fatteneth exceedingly.

To give one of these Balls before travel, it prevents tiring; to give it in the heat of travel, it refresheth the weariness; and to give it after travel, it saves him from all Surfeits and inward Sickness.

A Receipt to Fat a Lean Horse in twelve or fifteen days,

First, Therefore to let him Blood if he wants Bleeding, then instead of Oates in the Morning give him Wheat-Bran prepared after this manner, set over the fire a great Kettle, and fill it almost full with fair water, and when it boyls put in your Bran, and let it boyl a quarter of an houre at least, then let it stand to cool, and in the Morning early give him of this Bran so hot as he can eat it, and let his drink be of the same water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be well Littered, and warm covered, but if it be in the Summer, his Stable ought not to be too hot, & at night with his Oats give him an Egg full of this Powder, with which you are to continue him the space of eight days, or according as you shall see cause. You must understand that Bran thus prepared, dryeth up his naughty, gross and corrupt humours, and doth the better prepare the Body to assume Lust, Courage, Strength and Flesh, together with the help of the Powder, which is this.

The Powder to make a Lean Horse Fat.

Take of Cumin, Fennegreek, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two Ounces, Quick-Brimstone, six Ounces, make all these into Powder, and give him the quantity of an Egg-shell full with his Oats every night, but first let him be watered with white water, which is two or three handfuls of Bran stirred amongst his water, then rub him, litter him and Cloath him well, and then give him some sweet Wheat-straw in his Rack, and let him feed on that for an hour, then give him his Oates mixed with his Powder, and when he hath eaten them, give him Hay at your pleasure, remembring to keep him warm, but so as with moderation, and you shall find him amend exceedingly, but you must put into his Oats every time two handfuls of Nettle-seeds, for that is the thing that will principally cause him to Battle. It will also greatly avail to his amendment, if he be Aired every Morning and Evening, an hour after Sun rising, and an hour before Sun set, if the Weather be warm and the Sun do shine. And this is the best Course you can take to set up a Lean and poor Horse.

Another Receipt to make a Lean Horse Fat.

Take of Elecampain dried, Cumin, Turmeric, Anniseeds, of each two Ounces, Groundsel half a handful, boyl all these together in a Gallon of Ale, with three heads of Garlick well bruised and picked, then strain it, and give him a quart of it in the Morning fasting blood warm, and Ride him after it, but not to heat him, and thus do four Mornings together, and in a short time after (if the year be seasonable) turn him to Grass, and he will Fatten suddenly. But if the time of the year will not serve, and that you have a mind to raise him in the Stable, then give him amongst his Oats this Powder, Take of Elecampain dried, and Cumin both alike, well beaten and searced, and when you give your Horse Provender, then give him half an Ounce of them well mixed amongst for fourteen days together, and you shall find him to amend and prosper after a strange manner: provided, that you give him seasonable Airing, moderate Exercise, and Mashes and white Water.

Of the Drink called Acopum.

Take of Euforbium half an Ounce, Castoreum one Ounce, Adrace half a quarter of a pound, Bidellium half an Ounce and half a quarter, Opoponax one Ounce, Fox Grease half an Ounce, Pepper one Ounce, Laserpitium three quarters of an ounce, Ammoniacum half a quarter of a pound, Pigeons Dung as much, Galbanum half an ounce, Nitrum one ounce and a quarter, Spuma nitri three quarters of an ounce, Ladana a quarter of a pound, Pyrethrum, and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cardanum two ounces, Seed of Rue half a quarter of a pound, Seed of Agnus Castri one ounce, Parsly seed half an ounce, dried Roots of Ireos, or Flour-deluce a quarter of a pound, and half a quarter, of Oyl de-Bay as much, of Oyl of Spiknard three quarters of a pound, of Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a pound, and half a quarter, the oldest Oyl Olive a pound and a half, Pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound, Melt of every of these that will be Molten, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the Ingredients, being first beaten to fine Powder, and after they have boyled a little on the Fire, take it off, and strain it into a cleane Gally-pot, and so keep it for your use. And when you give your Horse any of it at any time, you must not give him of it above two spoonfuls in a pint of Sack or Muscadine, and if by long keeping you find it wax hard,

ard, then soften it with the Oyl of Cypres, so that it may be good and
thick.

The Vertues of it.

It is both a Medicine and an Oyntment, for it helpeth Convulsions in
the Sinews and Muscles, it draweth forth all Noisom humours, and dis-
solueth the head of all grief, being put up with a long Goose Feather
pointed in it, into the Nostrils of the Horse, it healeth (I say, all manner
of Convulsions, Cramps, Numbness, and String-halts, Colds and Rhumes,
it dissolveth the Liver, being troubled with Opilations and Obstructions,
it helpeth Siccity and Aridity in the Body; it banisheth all weariness
and tyredness, if his Limbs be Bathed with this Medicine. And
lastly, it cureth all sorts of Inward Diseases, if it be administered by way
Drench, in Wine, strong Beer, or good Ale.

The Nature of it.

It is hot in working, otherwise it could not hold good in Case of Sur-
sits, Tyredness, and of Convulsions, and the like, wherein consisteth its
chief Vertues, being administered outwardly; but being administered in-
wardly, it is not altogether so hot, for it helpeth Feavers for the most
part, and I think it is most safe, to give not above two spoonfuls of it
in a quart of good strong Beer or Ale, though Mr. *Markham* adviseth
to give four or five spoonfuls in Sack or Muscadine, which are hot things
of themselves.

The Confection called Arman.

To make this Confection, of Honey of Roses a pound and a half,
as much as will suffice of the Crumbs of the whitest Manchet made
into fine Powder, then take of Cordial-powder of Nutmegs, and of
Cinnamon of each an ounce and a half, mix all these together, be-
ing first made into fine Powder, then put it into a Gally-pot, and
moisten it with Rose-Vineger, that it may be of a thick substance
like unto Pap, and so keep it for your use. When you use it, put some of
it upon the end of a Bulls Pizel into his Mouth, and let him champ there-
on; but if you give it for the Quinsie or Feaver, give him down two
Hornfull of it, and do this in the Morning fasting, and let him fast two
or three houres after it.

The Vertues of this Arman.

It provoketh a good Appetite to Meat, and causeth good Digestion, and taketh away all annoiances that troubleth the Stomach, it cooleth the inward heat in the Body, it helpeth all *Agues* and *Feavers*; and is most excellent against Surfeits, it is good for the Quinsie in the Throat, coming of Cold taken; and very good against the Gripings in the Belly or Guts, proceeding of Wind. This Confection was brought out of France.

How to make the Cordial Powder, which we have likewise from the French.

Take Cynamon and Sugar, of each four Ounces, and of fine Bole-Armoniack two Ounces: make them into very fine Powder, and mix them well together, and keep it for your use in a Gally-pot close stopped.

The Vertues of it.

It is good for Sick Horses that are far spent with a Consumption in the Flesh, and Liver, &c. For it is a most restorative Cordial, comforting the Vital parts, and Spirits Animal, and restoreth it to Sanity.

Another Cordial Powder called Electuarium Theriacum, by reason it hath much Treacle in it.

Take Syrop of Violets, Syrop of Lemons, Syrop of Roses, of each half an Ounce, adding to it an Ounce of London-Treacle (which is the best of all Treacles for Horses) mingle them well together, and it is a most Sovereign Cordial to be administred to Horses that are sick and weak.

To make the Black and Red Egyptiacum, which are both Corrosives. For their Natures are to Corrode and eat away all manner of Dead, Foul, Rotten, and naughty Flesh, out of any old Sore or Ulcer, and they do also cleanse and prepare a Sore, and make it apt to be healed with Carnisifying or healing Salves.

Take two pounds of Course English Honey, Verdegreate, Dyers Gall, and green Copperas, of each four Ounces, make them all into Powder, and mixed together, and put into a Earthen-pot, and set it upon the Fire, keeping it stirring, but so soon as it begins to boyl, take it off and let it cool, for if it boyl too long it will become Red, which will not be so good.

good. This black *Egyptiacum*, is good to dissolve the Hoofs of a Horse if they be too dry, or hard, so as it will cause the Corruption, if any be in the Foot, to ascend above at the Cronet, where the Hair is, and also to restore the Hoof of the Horse when the Sole is taken out, and in this Nature you must use this Unguent, but only at the third dressing after you have taken out the Sole.

The Red Egyptiacum is thus made.

Take course Honey two pounds, Verdegrease four ounces, green Copperas two ounces, beat the Verdegrease and the Copperas very small to Powder, then put it into an Earthen-pot, and put unto it a little Vineger, and so boyl it very well till it become red, and keep it for your use.

General Drinches, or Receipts for all inward Diseases, or Sicknes.

The Spaniards have this Receipt for all inward Diseases. Take Wheat-Meal twelve pounds, Anniseeds four ounces in fine Powder, Brimstone in Powder three ounces, Fennegreek in Powder three ounces and a half, Cumin in Powder three ounces, Honey two pounds, good Sallet-Oyl one pound and a half, of good Sack as much. These are all to be put into a Pot well nealed, and boyled untill it be thick, and when it is cold to make it up into Pills or Balls, you must keep it stirring while it is boyling, otherwise it will burn to, and when they are thus made into Pills, give him of them four or five Mornings together fasting. These killeth Worms in a Horses Body, helpeth the Diseases of the Lungs and inward parts, and is a very good Plaister applied outwardly. It is most useful in all cold causes, and it is so Cordial that it will bring a lean and poor Horse unto Flesh and good State in a little time.

Another Excellent Receipt for all inward Diseases.

Take Wheat-Meal six pounds, or as much as will bring the Ingredients unto a stiff Paste, Anniseeds two ounces, Cumin two ounces, white or Bastard Saffron two drams and a half, white-Wine four pints, Fennegreek one ounce and two drams; Brimstone one ounce and a half, Sallet-Oyl a pint and two ounces, *English* Honey one pound and a half. Make those things into powder that will beat to powder, then compound them together, and make it into a stiff Paste, and keep it in a Gally-pot close covered for your use.

When you use it. make a Ball thereof as big as a Mans Fist, and dissolve.

solue it in two Gallons of fair water, till it be all Molten, let him drink of this Morning and Evening so long as he please, and let him have no other water to drink; to the end he may be the better compelled to drink it, which in the end he will do and like it very well. This is good for many Inward Infirmities, it raiseth and battleth a Horse much better then either Grasse or Provender, and giveth him Life, Spirit and Stomach, and keepeth him in perfect Health.

Another Receipt for all Inward Diseases.

Take Fennegreek, Turmerick, Granis, Anniseeds, Licoris, Long pepper, Cumin, of each half an ounce, and of Saffron one dram; and of Herbs take Celendine, Rue, Pelamontine, Hyssop, Thyme and Rosemary, of all of them no more then will make half a handfull: chopt small and boyled first in a quart of good Ale or Beer, then put in your Spices finely powdered, and boyl them again, then strain it and put to it the quantity of an Egg of sweet Butter, and an ounce of London-Treacle; and give it him Blood-warm, and Ride him moderately after it, and set him up warm, and let him fast three or four houres, and let his drink be either a sweet Mash or white Water. This is very good against Feavers, Colds, and the Yellows.

Another Receipt for Inward Sicknes.

Take Aristolochia, Rotunda, Bay-berries, Gentian Anniseeds, Ginger, and of Trifora-Magna, of each an ounce, beat all the Simples to very fine Powder, and mix them well together, then take of white-Wine or good Ale or Beer a quart, then put into it one Spoonfull of all of them, with half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and of Methridate two drams, warm this upon a fire and administer it Blood-warm, and Exercise him before and after his drink, but not to Sweat him, neither let him drink any cold water in four or five days after, but either warm Masses or white Water. This is most Sovereign for any Inward Sicknes, Droopings, for taking of Meat, Feavers, Colds, Coughs, or the like.

A Suppository for Inward Sicknes.

If he be so Sick that you fear to give him any strong Medicine, and that Costive withal, then give him this Suppository.

Take of Honey six ounces, of Salt-Niter one ounce and a half, of Wheat-Flower and of Anniseeds beaten into fine powder, of each one ounce, boyl all these into a hard thickness, and make it into Suppositories, and after you have anointed your hand with Sallet-Oyl, and the Suppository likewise.

likewise, convey it into his Fundament a pretty way, and tie his Tayl be-
twixt his Legs to his Girts, or else hold it close with your hand about a
quarter of an hour, till it be throughly dissolved, and this will purge kind-
ly, and loosen his guts, so that you may be the more bold to administer
what drinks, Cordials, or other things which you think most requisite
for his recovery.

*Other General Drenches to Cure all Inward Sickness in Horses, which trou-
ble the whole Body; of Feavers of all sorts, Plagues, Infections, and
Suck like.*

Sickness in General are of two kinds, one offending the whole Body,
the other a particular Member, the first hidden, and the second visible.
Of the first then, which offend the whole Body, are Feavers of all sorts,
as the *Quotidian*, the *Tertian*, the *Quartan*, the *Continual*, the *Hectick*,
the Feavers in *Autumn*, in Summer, or in the Winter, the Feaver by
Surfeit, Feaver *Pestilent*, Feaver *Accidental*, or the General Plague,
they are all known by these Signs, much trembling, panting, and Sweat-
ing, a fullen Countenance that was wont to be cheerful, hot Breath,
fainting in Labour, decay in Stomach, and Costiveness in the Body, &c.
First, let him Blood, then give him this drink. Take of Sellendine-Roots,
leaves and all, a good handful, as much Worm-wood and as much Rue,
wash them well, then bruise them in a Morter, then boyl them in a quart
of Ale or Beer, then strain them, and add to them a pound of Sweet But-
ter, then give it the Horse to drink luke-warm: or half an ounce of the
Powder of Diapente, given in Sack or Ale, two or three Mornings to-
gether. Or give him three or four Yelks of new laid Eggs, beaten with
seven or eight spoonfuls of *Aqua vita* or Brandy. This is good when he
hath his shaking Fit upon him. Or take four ounces of Diapente, and
mix it with four ounces of Clarified Honey, and keep it in a close Glass,
and give him half an ounce thereof in Wine or Ale: or take of Licoras
an ounce, of Anniseeds, Cumiseeds, and Elecampain-Roots, of each
half an ounce, of Turmeric and Bay-berries, of each a quarter of an
ounce, of long-Pepper and Fennegreek, of each two drams beaten small,
and put five spoonfuls thereof into a quart of Ale, warmed with a little
Butter or Oyl, and it is very Sovereign for any Disease coming of cold
Causes. Or Red Sage, Mint, Sellendine and Rue, boyled in Beer is
good. Diatessaron is good simply of it self, so is Diapente, or Diahex-
aple.

There are several particular Receipts which I might give you for every sort of these Feavers, I have named, but I think these in General may serve instead of a more particular Account, only observe this Note by the way. That you must in all hot causes administer cooling things, and in cold Causes hot things.

Signs whereby you may know every sort of Feaver

Signs in General to know a Feaver, is by holding down of his Head, he will quake and tremble, and when his trembling is over, he will burn, and his breath be hot, he will breath fast, and his Flank will beat, he will reel, he will forsake his Meat, his Eyes will swell and be closed up, and watering, his Flesh will as it were fall from his Bones, and his Stones will hang down, he will desire to drink, yet not drink much, neither will he sleep, but more particularly.

A Quotidian Feaver proceeds from hard Riding, being set up too hot in the Stable without Rubbing.

Quotidian or every days Feaver, is known by Blood-shot Eyes, short and hot breathing, panting, loathing of his Meat, and stiffness in his Limbs, and his sickness will not last above six or eight houres in a day, and then he will be well again.

Tertian Feaver proceeds from the same Causes as the Quotidian.

The *Tertian* or every other days Feaver, is known by the Signs formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that he will be sick as on *Monday*, and well on the *Tuesday*, and sick on the *Wednesday* following.

Quartan Feaver proceeds from the same Causes as the Tertian doth.

The *Quartan* Feaver, as some Farriers call, a third days sickness, is thus: If his Fit begin on the *Monday*, he will be well on the *Tuesday* and *Wednesday*, and sick again on the *Thursday*. There is no other Sign to know it, then the coming and going of the Fits.

Continual Feaver proceeds from Heats and Colds.

The Feaver Continual, is that which continueth without any Intermision, the Signs are want of rest, and falling away of the Flesh, besides certain Inflammations or Swellings, which will appear about his Withers and Flanks.

Hedick Feaver proceeds from a sick Stomach, being Scalded with hot Drinks, hath lost the Power of Digestion.

The Hedick Feaver, which is the worst of Feavers, is known 'y this, that he will never eat with Appetite, and when you draw out his Tongue you shall find it Raw, his Flesh will be loose and Flaggy, and his Body subject to trembling. All these Feavers do most commonly happen to a Horse in the Spring, because the new Blood is apt to be inflamed.

Autumn Feaver proceeds from new Blood being Inflamed.

The Signs of an *Autumn Feaver*, is known by the same Signs I have declared, for they are the same Feavers, only altering the time of the year.

Summer Feaver.

A Feaver taken in the Summer is the worst of all ordinary Feavers whatsoever, especially such as are taken in the Dog-days. The Signs of this Feaver are, that his Arteries will beat most palpably, and wherefore he stalet, you shall perceive he sheddeth his feed also.

Winter Feaver.

A Feaver in the Winter is not so dangerous as the Feaver before mentioned, yet if you do not remove it speedily it will continue long. The signs are no other then hath been declared.

Feaver by Surfeit.

The Feaver by Surfeit is known by these signs, he will beat upon his Back, his Breath will be short hot and dry, and his Wind will draw only at his Nose with great Violence.

Feaver Pestilential.

The Feaver Pestilential; is known by the holding down of his Head, forsaking of his Meat, shedding much water at his Eyes, and many times Swellings, or Ulcers, rising a little below his Ear-Roots.

Feaver Accidental.

The Feaver Accidental comes by some blow or wound, by which any of the Vital Powers are let or hindered, which may bring him to a Feaver, then the signs be, he will covet much to drink, but cannot, and his Flesh will fall away in an extraordinary fashion.

How

How to make the Oyl of Oats.

Take of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the Fire, put to it a quarter of a pound of burnt Allom, which will make it turn to Curd; then take out the Curd and strain the Whey, then take a quarter of a Peck of clean Husked Oates that were never dryed, and put them in the Whey, and set them on the Fire till they burst and be soft; then put them into a Cullender to let the Whey run through them, then put the Oats in a Frying-Pan over the Fire, keeping them stirring, till you see the Vapour or Smoak of them ascend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan, then take them off and put them into a Press, and Press them most exceedingly, and what cometh from them is the Oyl of them which you must save in a close Glass.

The Vertues of it.

This Oyl is of all Medicines and Simples whatsoever, is the most Excellent and Soveraign for a Horles Body, as being extracted from the most Natural, wholesom, and best Food which doth belong unto a Horles Body. This Oyl being given by four or five Spoonfuls at a time in a pint of Sweet-Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and some of the Whey poured into his Nostrils, doth Cure the Glauanders before all other Medicines, it is also (given in the same manner) the best of all Purgations: for it purgeth away all those venomous and filthy humours which feedeth the most incurable Farcy whatsoever.

How to make the Powder of Honey and Lyme: which is so great a dry that it will dry up any Wound or Old Sore.

Take such a quantity of unslackt Lyme as you shall think fit, beat it to very fine Powder, then take so much Honey as will make it up into a stiff Paste, then put it into the form of a thick Cake, or Loaf, and put it into an Oven, or burning fire, till it be Baked or burnt glowing red; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into fine Powder, and then use it as occasion shall serve. If you mix amongst it the Powder of a burnt shoole, it will be much the better.

A comfortable Drench.

Make it of these Cordials, to wit, of Sugar, Cinamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Saffron, Licoris, Anniseeds; beat all these into fine Powder, adding thereto

unto white-Wine, and all these infused in an Earthen-pot.

An Operative Drink.

Put in such a quantity of these things as you think requisite for the Strength of the Horse, viz. white-Wine, Sallet-Oyl, Aloes, Rubarb, Agarick, Duke, or Duck-powder, Honey, Cordial-powder, &c.

Several sorts of Charges.

Take of black Pitch half a pound, of Mastick two ounces, of Galbannum four ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each half a pound, melt them into a Pot together, and when it is half cold charge the place up to the Hanch, and so overthwart the Reins of the Back, and if it be not Cured at the end of eight or ten days, take it off and apply this Ointment. Take of Oyl de-Bay, Althea, tryed Hogs-Grease, of each half a pound, incorporate them altogether, and therewith anoint and chafe the place grieved.

A Honey Charge for a Wrench or Slip in the Shoulder, Hip or other Member; for all sorts of Scratches, and for Stiffness of Sinews hurt, or any other way offended, to assuage Swellings and Tumours, and to draw away all bad Humours.

Take of Wheat-Meal two pounds, and put a little white-Wine unto, and put it into a Kettle, as if you were to make a Poulter's, and when it is well mixed, add to it of Bole-Armoniack in fine powder half a pound, of English Honey one pound, then set it upon the fire and boyl it, keeping continually stirring, and put to it in the boyling half a pound of black Pitch, keeping it stirring, and when you think you have boyled it enough, put to it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound of Oyl de-Bay, Cumin, Althea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries and Fennegreek, beaten to powder, and of Linseed-Meal, of each two drams, boyl them together again, still keeping them stirring, till they be well incorporate, and therewith Charge the grieved Member with it pretty warm, but not so scald him.

A Restricting Charge to be applied to broken Bones, or to Bones dislocated or out of Joynt, being first Set, and also to take moist Humours from weeping Wounds, and so to dry up bad Humours, which do pre-occupate the Body.

Take of Oyl de-Bay four ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium,

bium, of each two ounces, make all these into fine Powder, and mix them with your Oyl de-Bay very well, and therewith charge the place griev'd. This is also very good to charge the Swelling of a back Since strain.

Of Salves, Unguents, Powders and Waters.

Take of Perofin, and of hard Rosin, of each one pound, of Frankincense, Virgin-Wax, or for want thereof, new Wax, and Sheeps Suet, of each half a pound, of old tryed Hogs-grease one pound and a quarter boyl the Gums and Wax in half a pint of white-Wine; and then put in to your it Sheeps Tallow and Hogs-grease, and when all is Molten and Incorporated together, strain it; and whilst it is yet hot put in an ounce of Venice-Turpentine, and so work all well together, which when it is cold, pour in the Liquor from the Salve, which put up into a Gally-pot for your use.

The Vertues of it.

This is a most Sovereign Salve to heal any green wound (that is not come to an Ulcer,) and to dry it up.

Another most Excellent Powder.

Take unslicked Lyme, the dry Dust of Tanners Oken Bark, and old shoos Sole burned to a Coal, of each alike, make them into fine Powder, and mix them well, and keep them in a Box for your use.

The Vertues of it.

This Powder healeth the Buds of the Farcin after they be broken, and skinneth them, and if they be washed with the Juice of Vervine and strong Vineger, mingled together, and this Powder cast upon them, will heal and skin them. It healeth likewise and skinneth all other Sores.

Another Oyntment.

Take half a pound of tryed Hogs grease, a penny worth of Verde greafe beaten to fine Powder, give them two or three Walms on the fire, then take it off and put into it half an ounce of Venice-Turpentine, and stir it well together till it be cold, this Oyntment will heal any Wound or Sore in a Horse.

Another Oyntment.

Burn a good quantity of Roch-Allum, and as much Bay-Salt, and burn that

that also, make them both together into fine Powder. Then take of common *Honey*, and of sweet *Butter*, of each alike, as much as will suffice, incorporate them altogether, by melting them over a gentle fire, and with a Taint or Plaister apply it. And this Cureth any foul Sore.

A good Water.

Take a pint of fair Water and put into it of *Bay-Salt*, and of green *Copperas*, of each the quantity of a Hasle-nut, first, made into fine Powder, let them boyl a little upon the fire, with this wash your Sore before you do apply any of your Salves, Unguents or Powders.

Another Salve.

Take of common *Honey*, two ounces, *Roch-Allom*, *Verdegrease*, and *Vineger*, of each an ounce, make your *Allom* and *Verdegrease* into fine Powder, then take of *Sublimace* finely powdred, two ounces, boyl them a little on the fire, this laid Plaister-wise on the Wound once a day, or if the Wound be deep to taint it with it, but before you dress it, wash the Sore with water made of green *Copperas* and *Bay-Salt*. Mercury.

The Vertues of it.

This doth not only Cure all Sorts of Wounds in the Body, but the Foot also, and it cleareth any Wound from dead and proud Flesh.

Another Salve.

Take the Buds or the tender tops of the leaves of *Elder*, (or for want thereof, the inner Rind of the *Bark*) one handfull, and first shred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a Salve, and apply this to the Sore, binding a Cloth about it to keep it from falling off.

The Vertues of it.

This will Cure any Old or New Sore whatsoever, in any part of the Body, as galled-Backs, Spur-galls, Gravelling, Prickt, being dressed every day once, and it will Cure a *Fistula* if the Juice of it be injected into it unto the bottom.

An Oynment.

Take the White of a new laid Egg, and *Sallet-Oyl*, as much as will suffice, and beat them well together, and before you apply it unto the Wound, pour into the VVound burnt Butter, and then lay on your Medicine

dicines with Hurds Plaister-wife. And this will Cure any green Wound.

How to give a Horse a Vomit.

Vomits are given to Horses newly taken from Grass, to bring away their gross and Phlegmatick Humours, which do abound in their Stomach and Head, which if they be not taken away in due time, may impair greatly the health of the Horse. I never knew that Vomits were useful to a Horse till I met with a *French Farrier*, which I saw administered to Sundry Horses, which did work very kindly.

The Receipt is this.

Take two of the greatest Roots you can get of *Pollipodium* of the Oak, washed and scraped very clean, and tye it to his Snaffle, Trench or Bit, then let it be steeped in the Oyl of *Spike* all night, and in the Morning fasting put on his Bridle with the same Roots, and Ride him about with it about an hour fair and softly, and if he be troubled with any Rhumatick or Phlegmatick humour, or with any cold or filthy Matter, which may annoy his Stomach, this will force him to vent it at his Mouth and Nose, and it will cause him to Cough and Neez, where he will send forth a great abundance of filth and evil slimy stuff from off his Stomack and Head, as that in a very short time he will become very clean in his Body, for this will both refine his Blood, and exhaust all his watery Humours, which will make him sound a long time after it. And this is not only to be applied to a Horse newly taken from Grass, but to any other Horse that hath taken Cold, or to any Ketty, Foul, Foggy, or Purfive Horse whatsoever. This may seem strange here amongst us, but let any man make tryal, and he shall find it to be most admirable.

Purging Pills.

Take of Fresh *Butter* one pound, *Alloes* and *Fennegreek*, of each an ounce, *Life-Honey* and white-Sugar Candy powdred, of each four ounces, *Azarick* half an ounce, make all these into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the *Butter* and *Honey*, make Pills thereof and give them to your Horse, and if he be but a small and weak Horse, you must give him but two parts of three, but if he hath a strong Cold and Cough withal. Then

Take Fresh *Butter*, and of *Mc-Rosarum*, of each four ounces, of *Alloes* and *Sene*, of each an ounce, *Rubarb* and *Bay-berries*, of each three ounces,

ounces, *Coloquintida* and *Saffron*, of each two drams, *Cordial-Powder* one ounce, *Duke* or *Dutch* powder four ounces, make them all into fine Powder, and mix them well with two ounces of *Methridate*, and with your *Butter* and *Mel-Rosarum*, beat and pound them well together, and make them up into Pills, and give them your Horse. This Receipt will Purge him very well, though it heat him for some time, and let him be ordered as in other Physical Cures of the like Nature, and proportion your Pills according to the strength, greatness, and corpulency of your Horse.

A Plaster to dissolve and take away Evil Humours, which shall at any time fall down in the Legs of your Horse.

Take of Common *Honey* a pound, of *Turpentine* half a pound, of *Mastic* in fine Powder two ounces, of *Frankincense* and *Bole-armoniack* made into fine Powder, of each four ounces, of *Sanguis draconis* three ounces, six new laid Eggs, of the strongest *Wine-Vinegar* one pint, of the Flower of *Rice* seven ounces, mix all these together, and hereof make a Plaster, and lap the Legs of the Horse from the Feet to the upper Joynts, and do this but four or five times, and you shall find that it will perform a strange and rare Cure.

Of several sorts of Baths, and first of a Bath to dry up Humours.

Take *Sage*, *Rosemary*, of each a handful, and of the *Bark* of the Root of *Beech* three pound, and of the *Barks* of young *Elmes*, *Oaks* and *Ash* of each a handful, of *Nep*, *Penny-royal*, and of *Chestnuts*, the Rinds being taken away, of each a handful, three or four white Onions clean pilled and cut into small pieces or slices, *Red-Wine* three Pottles, strong white-*Wine Vinegar* two Pottles; boyl all these together, and cause him to be walked a quarter of an hour till he be warm, then Bath him with this Bath good and hot, and set him up warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mashes or white Water, and thus Bath him for three or four days together, and let him not be Ridden in any Water for eight or ten days after.

The Use or Vertues of Baths.

Baths are fomentations, which are the most comfortable things of a-ny to the Joynts and Limbs of a Horse, for they dissolve all ill Humours, and give heat and warmth unto all the Members that are benumbed with Cold, or for want of Blood, it comforteth and strengtheneth them, and giveth very great ease to the pained Sinews.

Besides, it asswageth Swellings, in or about any part of the Body; for Legs swelling stiff, or benumbed, or for any other Joynt pained or griev'd, or for any *String-halt, Cramp or Convulsion*. Which Bath to Cure all such Maladies is this.

Bath 1.

Take *Muscadine* and *Sallet-Oyl*, of each a pint, *Bay-Leaves* and *Rosmary*, of each two handfuls, let them boyl half an hour, and when you are to Bath your Horse therewith, rub and chafe the griev'd place with a wispe or Hair-Cloth a pretty while, then put the Foot into some broad Bowl or Pail, whereby to preserve the Liquor and Herbs, and Bath him thus a quarter of an hour, which ended, bind upon the place a piece of Sheeps or Lambs skin, with the VVoolly side to the Leg. and let him stand so twenty four hours, apply this five or six times, and it will be a perfect Cure.

Bath 2.

A Bath to Cure all Gourdy and Gowry Legs, which cometh either by Farcin, Scratches, or the like, &c.

Take a quart or more of Chamber-ly, and put into it a handful of *Bay-Salt*, a quarter of a pound of *Soap*, a pretty quantity of *Soer*, a handful or two of *Mistle-toe*, Chopped small, boyl them very well together, and Bath the place very well therewith, and in three or four days Bathing in Morning and Evening, it will not only take down the Swelling, but prevent the *Farcin*.

Bath 3.

Another Bath for the same purpose.

Take the Grounds of a Beer-Barrel, with the *Barn*, *Smallage*, *Furber-sew*, *Winter Savery*, *Cumfrey*, *Mallows*, *Rue*, *Set-well*, *Penny-royal*, *Worm-wood*, *Archangel*, of each a good handful, and of the *Leaves* and *Berries* of *Mistletoe* three or four good handfuls, sheeps *Tallow* one pound, tried *Hogs-grease* half a pound, three or four handfuls of *Rye* or *Wheat Bran*, boyl them all together, till the *Herbs* and *Mistletoe* be come soft, and be sure you have Liquor enough, and a little before you take it from the fire, put into it some *Hay*, with this Bath his Legs; first one, then the other, as was before shewed, and when you have Bathed that Leg sufficiently, make a Thumb-band of the *Hay* in the Bath, and rowl it about the Leg above the uppermost or middle Joynt, and pull off the *Herbs* between the Thumb-band and his Leg, which done, pour on the Liquor remaining upon the Thumb-bands: and so Bath him for

So many days once as you shall think requisite, and it will bring down the Swelling quite and make him sound.

Bath 4.

Another Bath very Excellent.

Take *Smallage*, *Ox-eye*, and *sheeps Suet*, of each alike, to a good quantity, chop them small together, and after stamp them in a stone-Mortar; then boyl them with Mans Urine, and Bath the grieved parts herewith warm, doing as before with Bowl or Pail: then with Thumb bands of soft Hay made, first wet in cold water, rap up the Member, as well above as below the grief, and use it as often as you shall see cause. This Bath is very good for Swelled Legs upon Travel, or for any other Lameness which cometh either by stroke, strain, or other Accident.

Bath 5.

Another Bath.

Take *Savin*, and the *Bark* and *Leaves* of the *Bay-tree* *Pellitory*, *Rosemary*, *Sage*, *Rue*, of each three ounces, boyl the se in a Gallon of white-Wine, untill half be consumed: And Bath your Horse as before is shewed.

To Bath a Horse in Salt water, is very wholsome, both for the Horses Skin and for any Disease in the Stomach.

Bath 6.

A Bath for a Horse that is Tired or over-Travelled.

Take of *Mallows*, of *Sage*, of each two or three handfuls, and a *Rose-Cake*, boyl them together in water till it be all consumed, then add to it a good quantity of Butter or *Sallet-Oyl*, and mix them together, and Bath all his fore-Legs therewith, and all the parts of his Body also, or to let him Blood, and with that Blood, Oyl and Vineger mixed together, presently to anoint his Body, helps most sorts of Infirmities.

Of Perfumes or Purges of the Head of all filthy and gross Matter.

Perfumes are necessary to be applied to Horses in Cases of *Colds*, *Glanders*, *Rhenms*, *Murs*, *Poxes*, *Catars*, &c. For they do not only break a Cold, but dissipate congealed humours which do annoy the Head, Brain and Stomach of the Horse, and sometimes they expel and cause him to vent at his Nose and Mouth, much Filth and Corruption, which both stop, clog, and pester his Head and Body, and sometimes they do scicate and dry up many bad Humours which are ingendred in the Head and Brain. The ingredients of which Simples wherewith we Perfume Horses are many. As

The Juice of *Onions* snuffed up the Nose draweth forth raw phlegmatick humours. The Juice of *Coleworts* squirted up his Nose, or the Juice of red *Beets*. The leaves of the Wind-flower stamped, and the Juice squirted up his Nose; or the Juice of *Dazies* purge the Head of filthy slimy humours. The Juice of *Sage* draweth forth thin phlegm. The Juice of the *Primrose* stamped, strained and squirted up his Nose, is good to purge the Brain. The Juice of the small *Celandine* purgeth the Head of foul and filthy humours; The Juice of the Leaves or Berries of *Ivy*, that grows upon Walls, doth infinitely purge the Head; *Fennel-Gyant* or *Ferula* snuffed up the Nose, white *Hellebore* or *Nerisy* Root beaten to powder, after it is dried and blown up into the Nose, purgeth the Head and Brain from gross and slimy humours, wild white *Hellebore* hath the same Vertues; The Juice of sweet *Majjrem* draweth forth much phlegm; The Juice of stinking *Gladdon* squirted up the Nose, draweth down to the Nose great store of filthy Excrements; *Mustard-seed* beaten to powder, and blowed up the Nose, purgeth the Head; The Juice of *Sneeze-wort* squirted up the Nose, bringeth from the Brain slimy phlegm; The Juice of the leaves of *Elder* purgeth the Head; The Juice of *Mercury* purgeth the Head of all gross and vicious humours; *Pellitory*, *Pimpernel*, *Rosemary*, the smoke taken up his Nostrils, or take a Feather and anoint it in *Oyl de-Ray*, and thrust it up his Nose, is good for any cold or obstruction in the Head.

The best Perfume of all.

But the best Perfume of all is to take the best *Olibanum*, *Storax*, *Fenjamin* and *Frankincense*, bruised grossly tog ther, and strowed upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and let him receive the smoke of it up his Nostrils through a tunnel, which will bring away abundance of stuff matter into water from the Head and Brain, inso much that it will be almost ready to extinguish the fire; It is a most excellent Comforter of the Brain, and brings a great cheerfulness to the heart, and rejoyceth the whole Body.

The Green Oyntment.

The *Green Oyntment*, which Cure Sore whether old or green, *Ulcers*, *Fistula's*, *Pollen's* or what else, for where this Oyntment cometh, no proud or dead flesh will grow, no Flies will come near the place, or for Horse or Mare-filly that is Selt or Sp'ad, anoint but the place, and they will neither swell nor fester, for it doth not only heal soundly, but speedily

speedily also; provided you lay nothing upon the Wound or Sorance, where the Ointment is administred, as neither Hurd, Lint, Plaisters or the like, unless you have occasion to taint a wound which is deep, neither that for any long time, or too often; and besides, the seldomer the wound is dressed, as once a day, or once in two days, it will heal the better, and faster, especially if it be brought into good forwardness of healing. And together with this Ointment you may do well; wash the Sorance with the Copperas water, which by reason it is always first to be used, you shall have it first, and the Green Ointment after it.

The making of the Copperas Water.

Take two quarts of fair water, and put it into a clean *Postnet*, and *Pipkin*. put to it half a pound of green *Copperas*, of *Salt* a handful, of ordinary *Honey* a spoonful, and two or three Branches of *Rosemary*, boyl all these till one half of the water be consumed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a *Doves Egg* of *Allom*, then take it from the fire and strain it into a Pan, and when it is cold put it into a Glass close stopp'd and keep it for your use. And when you are to dress any Sore, first wash it very clean with this Water, and if the Wound be deep inject it with a *Seringe*.

The Vertues of it.

This Water will of it self Cure any reasonable Sore or Wound (but the green Oyntment being applyed after it is washed) will heal any Old *Ulcer* or *Fistula* whatsoever, if they come to the bottom of them, and for green Wounds they have not their fellow; if you think good you may boyl it in *Verjuice* or *Chamber-lye*, one being a great searcher, cleaner and healer, the other a great dryer.

How to make the green Oyntment.

Take a clean Skillet or *Postnet*, and first put into it of *Rozin* the quantity of a *Wallnut*, which being Molten, put to it the like quantity of *Wax*, and when that is also Molten, put to them of tried *Hogs-grease* half a pound, and when that is Molten, put into it of common *English Honey* one spoonful, and when all these are Molten and well stirred together, then put in of ordinary *Turpentine* half a pound, and when that is dissolved, take it from the fire and put to it an ounce of *Verdegrease* beaten to fine powder, and so stir it altogether, but be careful it run not over, for that the *Verdegrease* will

will cause it to arise, then set it again upon the fire till it begin to simmer, then take it off, for if you let it boyle too much it will turn red, and lose its Vertue of healing, and become a *Cornifive*, then strain it through a Cloth into some Earthen Pot, and keep it for your use close covered.

The Vertues of it.

This is the most Excellent Oyntment that ever I knew, for *de-Grey* hath done such rare Cures with it, that he hath been offered ten pounds for it. For it cleanseth a VVound be it never so foul, or infected with dead, proud, spungy or naughty Flesh, it carnifieth and healeth abundantly, and withal so soundly, and firmly, as that it doth never more break forth, it draweth forth Thorns, Splinters, Nails, and all such things in the Flesh, and in a word it cureth all sorts of Sores and Wounds.

Of Purging or Scouring things in General.

07 Turn-sole boyled in water gently Purgeth the Body, *Felt-wort* or *Bald-mony*, *Alloes* or *Sea-houfleck* is the most convenient Medicine for the Stomach, that is the seed of *St. Peters-wort*, the seed of *Tussock* or *Park-leaves* do purge *Cholerick Humours*, *Dodder* that groweth upon *Savory*, *Hedge-hysope*, purgeth mightily waterish, gross, and slimy humours, *Scamony* or purging *Bind weed*, doth mightily purge, and it is very hurtful to the Body, if you do not mix it with *Allses*, *Coloquintida* a violent purger, and is not to be used but upon some desperate Diseases, and then not to be given unless it be mixed with some clammy thing whereby the vehemency thereof may be repressed, black *Hellebore* or *Bears-Foot*, *Hogs Fennel* purgeth by Siege both *Phlegm* and *Choler*, ther of the *Pollipodies* purgeth *Choler* and *Phlegm*.

The intrails of a *Carp* or *Barble* cut into pieces and given him in Wine or Ale, or *Rye* foddren that it burst not, and dried and given instead of *Provender*, an ounce of *Alloes* made up in Balls of Butter, and it is finely beaten to Powder, purgeth excellently, *Spurge* boyled in Ale and given him, *Hemp-seed*, *Fennel-greek*, *Cassia*, *Honey*, *Sallet-Oyl*, in Ale given him, the Powder of *Ajechoacan* boyled in Ale, or *Ale-mel* or *London-Treacle* and *Honey* brewed together and given him, or *Senggarick* and *Licoris* boyled in Ale and given him, or *Gentian* sliced and boyled in a quart of Beer till it come to a pint and given him.

Particular Scourings at large, and first of a Scouring for any Horse, Sick or Sound, and especially for Running or Hunting Horses, whose Grease must necessarily be Molten

Take twenty Raisins of the Sun with the stones pickt out, ten slit Figs slit round-wise, boyl them in a Pottle of running water till the water is consumed and thickned, then take the Powder of Licoris, Anniseeds, and Sugar-Candy finely searst, and mix it with the Raisins and Figs, stamping and working them together till they become a stiff Paste, then making round Balls thereof of a pretty bigness, rowl and cover them all over with Sweet Butter, and give as many of them to the Horse as you shall think Meet for his Strength, provided that the day before, you give him such Exercise as will raise up his Grease, and that *Immediately*, before you give him this Medicine you also warm him thoroughly, that the Humours being again stirred up, the Medicine may work the more effectually.

Another Scouring to Purge a Horse from all Grease, Glut or Filthiness within his Body, which I think may go for as good a Scouring as can be invented by Art.

Take of Anniseeds three ounces, of Cuminseeds six drams, of Carthamum a dram and a half, of Fennegreek-seed one ounce and two drams, of Brimstone one ounce and a half, beat all these to fine Powder and searlie them, then take a pint and two ounces of Sallet-Oyl, of Honey a pound and a half, and of white-Wine four pints, then with as much fine wheat Meal as will suffice, make all into a strong stiff Paste, and knead and work it well, this Paste keep in a Gally-pot close covered for your use; when your Horse hath been Hunted, and is at Night or in the Morning very thirsty, take a Ball of it as big as a Mans Fist, and dissolve it in a Gallon or two of cold Water, and it will make the Water look white as Milk, then give it him in the dark lest the Colour displease him; if he drink it, then feed him, but if he refuse it, let him fast till he take it, which assuredly he will do in twice or thrice offering, and when he hath once taken it, he will refuse all other drink for this, and you cannot give him too much nor too oft of it if he have Exercise it is an excellent thing for all Inward Infirmities whatsoever.

Another Excellent Scouring after any sore Heat, or for any Fat Horse after his exercise, with Directions how he is to take it, and how you are to order him after it, with Cautions what to do when you give any Scouring.

Take a quart of good Sack, and set it on the Fire in a Bason or Skillet, and when it is warm, take an ounce of the clearest *Rosin*, being bruised very small, and by degrees little by little put it into the Sack, and keep it stirring for fear of Clotting, and when it is well incorporated into the Sack, take it from the fire and put into it half a pint of the best *Sallet-Oyl*, and in the cooling, stir them all very well together, then put into it an ounce of brown *Sugar-Candy* beaten to powder, & being luke-warm, give it the Horse in the height of his Heat as soon as you come home from Exercise, then Rub him well and Cloth him warm, and let him fast two hours after it, and keep him stirring in the Stable, for that will make his Spirits work, for Rest doth but dull the Spirits. When you give him any Scouring, be sure that day to give him no cold water after it, for it is binding and knitting, and detaineth that foulness which the Scouring should take away.

Another Scouring when others will not work.

Take a quarter of a pound of sweet *Butter*, and so much of *Castile-Sope*, and half an ounce of *Alloes*, beat them together, and add two Spoonfulls of beaten *Hempseed*, and of *Rosin* half a Spoonfull, of *Sugar-candy* an ounce bruised, work them all into a Paste, and give it him in Balls immediately after his heat, and when you have warmed him, and stirred up the Grease and Foulness within him.

If you have a desire to see more variety of Purgations of all sorts, look back.

Of Loosening things in General.

Brank-urfin or *Seed*, *Hemp-seed*, *Fennegreek-seed*, the Juice of the white *Beets*, *Coleworts*, *Spinage*, *Mercury*, *Succory*, white *Sope* and *Spurge* brayed together and given him to drink, *Sallet-Oyl* given him in Sack or Ale, or *Annis-seeds*, *Lynseeds*, and *Piony* boyled in Beer, or the Bark of the Elder-tree bruised and mixed with old Ale and given him, or take of the Decoction of *Mallows*, *Sallet-Oyl* and fresh *Butter*, *Benedicta Laxativa*, given him Blood warm *Glister-wife*, or *Rye* th. own amongst his Provender, or *Mustardseed*, or to anoint your hand with *Butter* or *Hogs-Grease*, and pluck away his Ordure, and then put into his Fundament a good piece of the great end of a Candle, or give him in Ale ele

There is in my second part a very safe and easie Scouring.

ven Leaves of *Lawrel* stamped, the Seed of horned Poppy given him in Ale. All sorts of *Ducks* being boyled are Looseners of the Belly, *Margold Leaves*, *Burage*, *Bugloss*, the Leaves of *Hounds Tongue* boyled in Ale do mollify the Belly, Syrope of *Violets*, black *Hellebor* or *Bears Foot*, *Hogs-Fennel* Looseneth the Belly gently, *Sperage* or *Asparagus*.

Things good to Fatten a Horse in General.

Beans boyled in two Gallons of water till they swell or burst, and mix them with a Peck of *Wheat Bran*, and give it him in the manner of a Mash, and it will Fat suddenly, or *Coleworts* sodden and mixed with *Wheat Bran*, and give them instead of Provender, or to give him instead of his Provender the Grain called Buck, or to give him Parched *Wheat* mingled with Ale, or *Wheat Bran* mingled amongst his Provender, but be sure to keep him well dressed and cleanly lookt after, for without clean keeping his Meat will do him but little good, and to give him a little Meat at once for fear you Cloy him. Or take *Sage*, *Savin*, *Bay-berries*, *Earth-nuts*, *Bears-Grease* mingled with a quart of Wine or Ale and give it him, or to feed him a Month together with scalded *Bran*, or take *Cuminseed*, *Fennegreekseed*, *Siliris Montany*, *Nutmegs*, *Cloves*, *Ginger*, *Lynseed*, of each two ounces, quick *Brimstone* six ounces, made all into fine Powder, and give him an Egg-shell full of it every Night in his Provender, and white Water after it, and put into his Oats with his Powder a handful of *Nettleseed*, for that is a thing which will principally cause him to batten, and when he is glutted with this Meat, then give him Bread, if he leave his Bread, then give him Malt, or any Grain that he will eat with a good Appetite, or to give him many Mornings together half an ounce of *Brimstone* finely beaten with a Raw Egg and a penny weight of the Powder of *Mirrh* in a quart of Ale, or to give him three leaved *Grass* half green and half dry for many days together. or to give him *Pepper*, *Saffron*, *Anniseds*, *Turmeric*, *Treacle*, *Licoriz*, *Penny-royal* and *Archangel*, mingled in Milk with the Yelks of Eggs, *Barley* dried, or *Barley* boyled till it burst is a great Fattener, but most of these ways will not breed Fat that will continue, but the best way to make him Fat and to cause him to keep it, is to give him three Mornings together a pint of sweet Wine, and two spoonfuls of *Diapente* brewed together, for that will take away all Infection and Sicknes from the inward Parts, then to feed him well with Provender at least four times a day, viz. After his Water in the Morning, after his Water at Noon, after his Water in the Evening, and after his Water at nine a Clock at Night.

and if you find that he eat not his Provender well, then to change it to another, and to let him have most of that Food he loveth best, and there is no question but he will grow fat suddenly. But if you will have a more particular Account, then turn to the Mirrour of all Medicines, to make the Leanest Horse that may be, Fat, Sound, and fit either for Market or Travel, in the space of fourteen days, you may find before with several other such like Receipts ensuing.

An Explanation of severall hard words belonging to Chyrurgery.

What a Fracture is.

If there be a loosening in the Bone, it is called a *Fracture*.

What a wound is.

If it be in any Fleshy part, it is called a *Wound*.

What a Rupture is.

If it be in the Veins, then it is a *Rupture*:

What a Convulsion is.

If in the Sinews, then it is a *Cramp* or *Convulsion*.

What an Excoriation is.

If it be in the Skin, then it is called an *Excoriation*.

Of giving of Fire, and there are two ways of it, one Actual and the other Potential, the first is done by Medicine, either Corrosive, Putrificant or Caustick.

Cantery Actual.

The Actual Fire doth burn the Flesh by Instrument, which stoppeth Corruption of Members, and stancheth Blood, provided the Sinews, Cords and Ligaments be not toucht, the Instruments to Cauterize, are Gold, Silver, Copper or Iron.

Cantery Potential.

The Potential fire doth burn by Medicine, of which there are three sorts or degrees, namely by *Corrosive*, by *Caustick*, or *Putrification*.

The Corrosive.

The *Corrosives* are simple or compound, the simple *Corrosives* are *Roch-Allom*, burnt or unburnt, *Red Coral*, *Mercury* sublimed, *Verdegreal*, *Copperas* white and green, and these Corroding things are called *Precipitates*, which are eaters of dead Flesh. The compounds are *Unguent*

Apofolorum, unguentum Egyptiacum, and unguentum Coraceum with others.

Medicines Putrifiactive.

Medicines Putrifiactive are fuch Medicines, which are applied to Swellings, which are made for the moft part of Medicines Compounded, as *Poultreffes*, rofted *Sorrel*, white *Lilly-Roots* and the like.

What a Caustick is.

A *Caustick* is a great burner, for that being once put to the Skin, will in a fhort time make a Wound where there was none before, and thofe things are *Lye*, *Lime*, *Vitriol*, *Aqua fortis* and the like.

Corofives.

Corofives are weaker then *Putrifiactives*, and *Putrifiactives* are weaker then *Causticks*. *Corofives* work in the foft Flefh, *Putrifiactives* in the hard, and *Causticks* break the found Skin.

Thus you fee the ufe of thefe things, you may apply them at your pleasure, for thefe Cure all forts of *Farcies*, *Cankers*, *Fiftulaes*, *Leprosies*, *Mauingies*, *Scabs*, and fuch like poyfonous Infection.

Of the feveral forts of *Purgings*, which are five, by *Pills*, by *Portions*, by *Glisters*, by *Suppositories*, and by *Grafs*.

What Pills are.

Pills are Sollid or Subftantial *Stuff* fixed together in one Body, and being made into round Balls are caft down the Horfes Throat, which purge the Head and Brain from *Flegm* and other grofs Humours down into the Excrements.

What a Portion is.

Portions are when you give him liquid *Purgings* Powders diffolved in Wine or Ale, or that if it be any other liquid *Stuff*, now *Portions* cleanse the Stomach and Guts from fuch naughty Humours which *Glanders*, *Colds* and *Surfeits* have ingendred in the Body.

What Glisters are.

Glisters are given at the Fundament, and are made up of four things, that is to fay *Decoctions*, of *Drugs* of *Oyls*, and fuch like *Unctious Matter*, as *Butter* or *Greafe*, and fourthly, of divers *Salts* to provoke the

the Vertue Expulsive. Now they are of several Natures, some to cleanse and appease greifs and allay the sharpness of Humours, some to Bind and some to Loosen, and some to heal, as in Cases of *Ulcers* and Old Sores within the Body, &c.

What a Suppository is.

A Suppository is only a preparative to a Glisters, and but only to cleanse and make lose the great Guts which cometh to the Tuel, and they help the disease of the Guts, being of Nature more gentle then Glisters are, and may be applied when Glisters cannot.

Purging by Grasse.

Purging by Grasse, is either by green Corn, Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats, or Tares, which is a great Cleanser and Cooler of his Body.

What a Decoction is.

A Decoction is a Broth made of certain Herbs, as *Mallows*, *Mallows*, *Pellitory*, *Camomile*, and sometimes of white *Lilly-Roots* and other such like things.

Things good to Conglutinate and Knit things together, Inward or Outward.

Iris Ilirica beaten and sifted, and mingled with *Pepper*, *Honey*, and *Corrants*, and given him to drink in Wine and *Saller-Oyl*, Conglutineth any inward *Rupture*, or *Burstness*, *Dragant*, *Saffron*, the Fruit of the *Pine*, with the Yelks of Eggs given him to drink with Wine and *Saller-Oyl*, is good to Conglutinate any inward Member or Vein broken, the Roots and Seeds of *Asparagus* sod in Water and given him, and after three days give him *Opoponax* with *Honey* and *Myrrh*, and it will Conglutinate any inward *Ulcer* or *Rupture* whatsoever. The Bark of *Alp* beaten with Wine, and Plaster it, is a great Knitter of broken Bones, or the inward Bark of an Elm laid in running-water, and Bath the place therewith, or the Roots of *Rochet* boyled in water, and Plaister it, or Wild *Briony* stamped, and Plaistered also, *Hazel-tails* and the Seeds of red *Docks* made into Powder and given him to drink is good, *Bugle* or *Bugel* is a Knitter of Wounds Inward or Outward, so does *Lynx Paw*, or *Self-heal*, the distilled Water of sow-bread doth Knit any broken Sinew in the Body. *Bole-armoriack* beaten to powder, and finely sifted, and beaten with the white of an Egg and spread upon the Leg, and covered over with Flocks is very good for a Sinew strain, and is a great streng

strengtheners of the grieved place where a Bone hath been out of Joynt and put in again.

Burning Compositions.

The gentlest is *unguentum Apostolorum*, next to it is *Verjuice* and *Hogs-grease* beaten together, next to this is *Precipitate* and *Turpentine* mixt together, next to it is *Arsnick* allayed with any *Oyl* or healing Salve, next to it is *Mercury* sublimate likewise allayed with some cooling Salve, and the worst is *Lyme* and *Sope*, or *Lyme* and strong *Lye* beaten together, for they will corrode and mortifie the soundest part whatsoever.

To make Hair smooth, sleek and soft.

To do this, keep him warm at the Heart, for the least Inward Cold will make the Hair stare, then make him Sweat oft, for that will raise up the Dust and Sweat which makes his Coat foul, when he is in his greatest Sweat, with an old Sword Blade scrape off all the white Foam, Sweat and Filth that shall be raised up, and that will lay his Coat even and smooth. And when you let him Blood rub him all over with his own Blood, and so let it remain two or three days, and then Curry and Dress him well, and this will make his Coat shine like Glass.

How to Cast and overthrow a Horse.

When you intend to Cast your Horse, bring him upon some even smooth and soft place, or in the Barn upon some soft straw, then take a long Kope, and double it, and cast a Knot a Yard from the Bought, then put the Bought about his Neck, and the double Rope betwixt his fore-Legs, and about his hinder Pasterns, and underneath his Fet-locks, then put the ends of the Rope underneath, the Bought of his Neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends fast, and hold down his Head, under which you must be sure always to have good store of straw. Now if you would at any time Brand your Horse on the Buttock, or do any thing about his hinder Legs that he may not strike, take up his contrary fore-Leg; and when you do Brand your Horse, see that the Iron be red-hot, and that the Hair be both seared away, and the Flesh scorched in every place before you let him go, and so you shall be sure to lose no Labour.

To make an unruly Horse stand still to be trimmed, that will not be trimmed with Barnacles.



Take off one of his Stirrop-Leathers, and put it into his Mouth, and so over his Head as you do a Bridle, and girt up his Chaps very hard, and he will stand quietly to be trimmed.

To make a Horse follow his Master, and find him out and Challenge him amongst never so many People.

Take a pound of *Oat-Meal*, and put to it a quarter of a pound of *Honey*, and half a pound of *Lunace*, and make a Cake thereof, and put it into your Bosom next to your naked Skin, then run or labour your self till you Sweat, then rub all your Sweat upon your Cake, then keep him fasting a day and a night, and give it him to eat, and when he hath eaten it, turn him loose, and he shall not only follow you, but also hunt and seek you out when he hath lost you or doth miss you, and though you be environed with never so many, yet he will find you out and know you, and when he cometh to you spit into his Mouth, and anoint his Tongue with your Spittle, and thus doing he will never forsake you.

How to make a black Star or white hair black,

If you desire to make on a white Horse a black Star, you shall take a Scruple of *Ink*, and four Scruples of the Wood of *Oliander* beaten to Powder, incorporate this in as much Sheeps Suet as will suffice, and anoint the place therewith, and it will make any white Hair black, take the Decoction of *Fearn-Roots*, and *Sage* sod in *Lye*, and wash the place therewith, and it will breed black Hair, but you must wash the place very oft therewith. Or take the Rust of *Iron*, *Galls* and *Vine* and stamp them with *Oyl*, or else take *Somter Ink*, *Galls* and *Rust*, and beat them well together, and anoint the place well therewith, and it will make any white Hair to be black.

Certain Principles touching Simples.

As touching Simples, some are only to ease pain, as *Lynseed*, *Camelmile*, *soft-Grease*, *Suet* of all sorts, or any other *Oyl* that is hot in the first degree, and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with the like, the Medicine is called *Anodina* or *Lynogs*.

There are other Simples which are astonishing, benumbing or bringing asleep, as *Opium, Mandrake, Poppy, Hemlock*, and such like, which are gross and cold in the fourth degree, and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongst Leaches, called *Narcotica*.

The third sort of Simples are such as incarnate, or breed flesh, as *Frankincense, Flour, Saffron, Yolks of eggs*, and such like, which are hot in the second degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica*.

The fourth sort of Simples are corroding, fretting and burning, as *Arſnick, Resigallo, Mercury, Lime*, and such like, which are hot in the fourth degree; and whensoever they are applied Simple or Compound, then the Medicine is called *Corrosive*.

The fifth sort of Simples are those which be called Mollifying, and are four in Number. That is *Green Mallows, white Mallows, Violets* and *Brank Ursin*.

The last sort of Simples are those which are called *Cordials*, and are three in Number, viz. *Violets* and *Bugloss* of both kinds.

And thus much touching the Nature, Use, Property and Operation of Simples.

The END of the First Part.



A Table.

Of the Price, Value and Vertue of most of the Principall
Druggs, both Simple and Compound, belonging to Far-
ring, as they are frequently sold at the Druggists in Lon-
don, viz. *Roots, Barks, Woods, Flowers, Fruits, Seeds, Juices,*
Gums, Rosins, Simples from Plants, Animals, their Parts and
their Excrements, Minerals, Metals and Stones, together
with Chymical Oyls and Spirits, and Chymical Preparati-
ons, &c.

A Ngelica strengtheneth the heart, and is good against the
Pestilence and Poison. The price the pound is 0 s. 6 d.
Aristolochia longa brings away the Heam in Beasts,
(which is the After-birth in Women). The price the pound is

1 s. 0 d.

Aristolochia rotunda given in Malaga Wine, is good for the
Lungs and Ruptures. Both of them resists Poison. The price
the pound is

1 s. 0 d.

Bistort is good against Poison, Bruises, Fluxes, and Stalling of
blood. The price the pound is

2 s. 8 d.

Costus Amaius and Costus dulcis is good to bring away Wind,
and boyled in Satter-Oyl, is good for Pains and Grievs in the
Legs. They cost the pound

2 s. 8 d.

Elecampane is good for Coughs and short-windedness, given in-
wardly,



Dispende

100
100

4.
4

The TABLE.

wardly, and made into Ointments, is good against Scurfs, Scabs and Mange. The price the pound is 1s. 0d.

Gentian is good against Poison, and biting of venemous Beasts and mad Dogs, and to cleanse the Body from raw Humours. The Root made in the form of a Tent, is good to open sores, being put therein. The price the pound is 0s. 8d.

Hermadaills purge Flegm from the Foynts, and therefore are good for the Diseases of them. Their Vices you may correct with Long Pepper, Cinnamon or Mastick. The price the pound is 1s. 4d.

Heliebre black or Bears-foot is not so dangerous as the white.

The Roots of it boiled in Vinegar is excellent good against Scabs, Mange and Leprosie, a piece of the Root put into a hole made in the Ear of a Beast, troubled with a Cough, or that hath taken any Poyson, and drawn quite through the next day about that time helpeth them. It is a most excellent thing to rowel Cattel withal that hath the Garget; the price the pound is 1s. 0d.

It will eate a Hole through the Eare

Polypodum of the Oak is a great drier of superfluous humours from the Legs, being corrected with Fennel seeds, Anniseeds or Ginger. The price the pound is 0s. 8d.

Tormentil provokes sweat, and is good against poison. The price the pound is 0s. 10d.

Turnerick is good against the Yellows, and Saffron put to it makes it the better, it fattens by a certain hidden quality. The price the pound is 0s. 8d.

BARKS.

Cassia Lignea is of the Vertues of Cinnamon, you may finde the Vertue of it in the Table of Simples. The price the pound is 1s. 8d.

Pomgranate Bark binds, and is good for Fluxes, it strengthens the Stomach. The price the pound is 1s. 4d.

Tamarisk Bark is good for weak and swelled Foynts. The price the pound is 1s. 6d.

The TABLE.

WOODS.

Sanders white the pound is 2 s. 8 d.
 Saunders red the pound is 1 s. 0 d.
 They stop Defluitions from any Part, and help Inflammations, and cool the Heat of Feavers, the Yellow is the best.
 Lignum vitæ is good for Ulcers, Scabs and Leprosie, taken inwardly. The price the pound is 0 s. 2 d.

FLOWERS.

Camemel Flowers. assuage Smellings and Inflammations of the Bowels, and dissolve Wind. The price the pound is 1 s. 4 d.
 Meliolet Flowers are good for the Reins, the price the pound is 1 s. 0 d.
 Saffron drives out what humour soever offends the body, and drives back Inflammations, being applied outwardly, and is also good for the Plague and all such infectious diseases. The price of the best the ounce is 3 s. 4 d.

FRUITS.

Bay berries expel Wind and Mitigate Pain, and is good for Short-windedness of Breathy and Diseases of the Lungs. The pound is 0 s. 4 d.
 Gaules Bind, help Ulcers in the Mouth, and the falling out of the Fundament. The price the pound is 1 s. 4 d.
 Juniper-berries are hot in the third degree, and is an excellent Counter-poison, and is as great a Resister of the Plague as any, they are also very good to expel Wind. The price the pound is 0 s. 4 d.
 Myrtle-berries is dry in the third degree, they loosen evil humours. The price the pound is 1 s. 4 d.
 Long Pepper is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it heats the Stomach, and is good for all diseases of the Breast. The price the pound is 1 s. 9 d.

SEEDS.

Angelica-seeds are good for the Cough and the Lungs. The price the pound is 1 s. 0 d.

The TABLE.

Anniseeds heat and dry, ease pain, expel Wind, resist Poison, breed Milk and provoke Lust. The Price the pound is	0s. 6d.
Bardock seed doth cause a Horse to stale, bruised and boiled in some Ale and given. The price the pound is	1s. 0d.
Fennel-seed breaks wind, and causeth a Horse to stale, and encreaseth Milk in Mares. The price the pound is	1s. 0d.
Cardamum-seeds heat, they kill Wormes, cleanse the Reins, and cause also a Horse to stale. The price the pound is	4s. 0d.
Cumin-seeds heat and dry, they stop blood, expel Wind, and ease pain, and help the biting of the venomous Beasts, outwardly applied in Plaisters they are of a discussing Nature. The price the pound is	0s. 4d.
Fennegreek seeds are of a softning discussing Nature, they ease Inflammations internal or external. The price the pound is	0s. 4d.
Linseed hath the same Vertues with Fennegreek. The price the pound is	0s. 3d.
Common Nettle-seed provokes Lust, and is a great Fatner of a Horse, thrown in amongst his Provender. The price the pound is	1s. 4d.
Parsley-seed provokes a Horse to stale. The price the pound is	1s. 0d.
Peony-seeds help the Wild Mare. The price the pound is	1s. 4d.
Plantine-seeds good for the Plague, the price the pound is	1s. 0d.
Saxafrage seed provokes Urine, expels Wind and breaks the Stone. The price the pound is	2s. 0d.

SIMPLES out of PLANTS.

Agarick purgeth Phlegm and Choler, cleanseth the Breast and Lungs, Liver, Stomach and Reins. The price of the best the pound is	8s. 0d.
The Parnegs. Of it the pound is	2s. 0d.

Congealed JUICES, GUMS and ROSINS.

Aloes Succotrina is a most excellent Purge, it strengthens the Li-	ver
--	-----

The TABLE.

- ver, and helpeth the Yellows. The price of it the pound is
from 4s. to 6d.
- Alsafoetida** is a Gum hot in the third degree, and is good put into
the eares of a Horse according to Art for the Farcin. It clenseth
evil humours, provoketh lust, and expelleth Wind exceedingly.
The price the pound is 2 s. 0d.
- Bitumen** is a kind of Brimstone or fatness from the Sea, and is
good to mollifie the hardness of swellings; the price the pound is
5 s. 2d.
- Benjamin** is a very good Perfume for a Horses head that is stuf-
fed with a Cold. The price of the fine the pound is 5 s. 4 d.
The price of the course is 2 s. 0d.
- Camphire** easeth pains of the Head coming of heat, taketh away
Inflammations, and cooleth any place it is applied to. The price
the pound is 8 s. 0d.
- Euphorbium** comforteth Wounds. The price the pound is 1 s. 6d.
- Galbanum** is hot and dry, and discussing. The price the pound is
3 s. 4 d.
- Gum Ammoniack** softens, draws and heats, dissolved in Vine-
ger, strained and applied Plaster-wise, taketh away hardness in
the Flesh, and made into an Ointment with Sallet-Oyl, is good to
anoint the stiff and wearied Limbs of a Horse, an ounce of it
made into a Pill according to Art, loosneth the belly, and is good
for a Horse that stales blood. The price the pound is 1 s. 4 d.
- Gum Arabick** thickneth, cooleth and correcteth sharp humours
in the body, being dissolved in the white of an Egg well beaten,
helpeth burnings, and keepeth the place from blistering. The
price the pound is 1 s. 6d.
- Gum Draganth** and **Gum Dragon** is good for Coughs and Di-
stillations upon the Lungs, 'tis excellent good to be put into
Poultresses to sodder wounds, especially Nerves and Sinews that
be hurt. The price the pound is 2 s. 0d.
- Liquoris Juice** strengthens the lungs, and helps Coughs and Colas.
The price the pound is 1 s. 4d.

The TABLE.

Manna is a gentle Purger, you may give a quarter of a pound of it at a time dissolved in Ale; it is temperately hot, and cleanseth the throat and breast. The price the pound is from 2 s. to 5 s. 4 d.
Mastick taken inwardly strengibens the stomach, and stops the distillation of humours from the lungs. The price the pound according to its goodness is from 2 s. 8 d. to 5 s. 4 d.

Olibanum is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first; you may give an ounce of it at a time, it stops looseness and the shedding of the Seed. It is good also for Coughs, The price the pound is 5 s. 4 d.

Pitch common mollifies hard swellings, and brings them to supuration; it clenseth Ulcers, and filleth them with flesh, the price the pound is 0 s. 2 d.

Pitch of Burgundy is good applied as a Plaister, for all pains coming of bruises or dislocations, the price the pound is 0 s. 4 d.

Rozin, all sorts of them are good to fill up hollow Ulcers, and comforts the body oppressed with old Grievs, the price the pound is 0 s. 3 d.

Stone-pitch is very good to strengthen a weak back, or a Sinew-strain, applied as a charge thereto with other strengthening Gums. The price the pound is 0 s. 8 d.

Sanguis Draconis cools and binds exceedingly, the price in the lump the pound is 4 s. 0 d.

Storix is a sweet Gum, and is hot and dry, it softneth and is good for Colds and Sicknesse in the Head, the price the pound is 0 s. 8 d.

Tartar is the Excrements of Wine which sticks to the Vessel, it is hot and dry, and clenseth, the price the pound is 0 s. 4 d.
Tur-

The TABLE.

Turpentine common draweth cleaneſeth, ſkinneſh and comforteth, it cleaneſeth the Reins and murthering of the Yarde, being made in good big Balls with Flour, and given him. But you muſt firſt cleaneſe his Body with two or three Purges, the price the pound is 0s. 3d.

Tart the pound is 2 d. It is very good for a Cold, mixed with Erimſtone and the Yolk of an Egg, and put it into the Shell, and give it him whole. 0s. 2d.

ANIMALS their PARTS and EXCREMENTS.

Cantharides are Spaniſh Flies which will raiſe Bliſters at any found Part of the Body, being bruised and laid to it. The price the ounce is 0s. 3d.

Hares-horn Shavings reſiſt Poiſon and Plague, provoketh Urine, and ſtrengtheneth Nature very much. The price the pound whole is 0s. 8d.

The Shavings the pound is 1s. 0d.

Ivory Raſp, ſtrengthens the Heart and Stomach, and helps the Yellows. The price the pound is 0s. 4d.

Ivory burnt ſtrowed upon a galled back, or any raw place, drieth it up; the price the pound is 1s. 0d.

Wax ſoſtens, heats and fills Sores with Fleſh, being put into Ointments and uſed as a Salve; the price of the White the pound is 2s. 0d.

The price of the Yellow is 1s. 4d.

MINERALS, METALS and STONES.

Verdegreaſe is hot and dry, and is a Corroſive to eat away dead fleſh; the price the pound is 2s. 0d.

Roch Allum is hot and dry, and is good for Cankers in the mouth, mixed with other things, and is alſo a great drier up of evil humours, diſſolved in Water or Chamberly, the price the pound is 0s. 4d.

Bole-armoniack is a certain red earth, which is cold and dry, and drieth back evil humours; It is excellent good to ſtop blood either inwardly taken, or ſtrowed upon bleeding wounds, the price the pound is 0s. 2d.

Brim:

The TABLE.

- Brimstone** helps Coughs and rotten Phlegm, applied outwardly in Ointments, takes away all manner of Scabs and Itch, inwardly it helps the Cough, and also kills wormes in the Belly. The Price the pound is os. 2 d.
- White-Lead** is of a cold, dry, earthly quality, of a healing Nature, applied to the Place grieved, it helps any Inflammation and dries up humours. The price the pound is os. 4 d.
- Lythargr. of Gold and Silver** binds and dries much, fills up Ulcers with flesh, and heals them. The Gold is the best, the Gold the pound is o 9. 6 d.
- The Silver the pound is os. 4 d.
- Red-lead**, mixed with Sallet Oyl asswageth the Pole-evil of a Horse, being anointed well therewith. The price the pound is os. 3 d.
- Mercury precipitate** the pound is 8 s. 0 d.
- Sal Armoniack** is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it cleanseth. The price the pound is 1 s. 0 d.
- Sal Jemma**, is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry, it cleanseth and mundifieth. The price the pound is 1 s. 0 d.
- Salt Peter** refined in the Lump evaporateth; it comforteth the Sinews, and taketh away Tying and Weariness. The price in the Lump or Christallized, the pound is os. 20 d.
- Turia** is a certain Mineral that is cold in the first, and dry in the second degree, and is very good for defects in the eyes. The price the pound is 2 s. 8 d.
- Vitriol**, which we call Copperas, is of two kinds, viz. Vitriol Romanum, which we call green Copperas, and Vitriol Album, which we call white Copperas, they are both hot and dry, but the white is the stronger; they take away Scars and kill Scabs. The price of the White the pound is 2 s. 8 d.
- The price of the Green the pound is 4 s. 0 d.
- Vitriol Common** the pound, or Copperas Green and White the pound is 1 d. or 2 d.

The TABLE.

Simples that you may buy cheaper of the Druggists then you
can prepare them your self.

Elecampane Powder the pound is	1 s. 4 d.
Liquoris Powder the finest, the pound is	2 s. 0 d.
Liquoris powder the common the pound is	0 s. 8 d.
Red Saunders powder the pound is	0 s. 8 d.
Turmerick powder the pound is	0 s. 8 d.

O YLS.

Nerve-Oyl is very good to strengthen the Nerves and Sinews, the
price the pound is 1 s. 0 d.

Prices of several things bought of the Grocers.

Sugar-Candy white is good for sore Eyes, the price the pound is
1 s. 8 d.

Sugar-Candy brown is good for Colds and Coughs, the price the
pound is 0 s. 10 d.

London-Treacle is good to sweeten Horses Drinks, the price the
pound is 0 s. 3 d.

Chymical Preparations bought of the Druggists.

Mercurius dulcis sub. the ounce	0 s. 10 d.
Mercurius Precipitate the ounce is	3 s. 0 d.
Tartarum Vitriolatum the ounce	1 s. 4 d.

Chymical Prices of Oyls and Spirits, which do corrode and eat
off dead and proud flesh, and bony Excrefcencies.

Aqua fortis single, the pound is	2 s. 8 d.
Aqua fortis double, the pound is	5 s. 4 d.
Oyl of Anniseeds the ounce is	1 s. 0 d.
Oyl of Organum the ounce	2 s. 8 d.
Oyl of Tartar the ounce	1 s. 0 d.
Oyl of Vitriol the ounce	0 s. 4 d.



A Table.

T HE Shapes of a horse.	page 1	What time a Mare is to take horse	ib.
The Colours of a horse in verse	ib.	How long time a Mare goes with Foal, how	
The shapes of a horse another way.	ib. and 73	to order her before she is covered, and	
A Proverb amongst Husbandmen on the Colours of a horse	2	how to make her Conceive to have a Horse Colt or Mare Colt.	ib.
What things are good to strow amongst a horses Provender	2	The manner how to Cover her, and to know whether she stands to her Covering	6
Things to have always by you in a readiness	ib.	How many Mares for one Horse.	ib.
The Vertues of them declared	ib.	How to order a Mare after her Covering	ib.
To Commend a horse if you know him to be sound	3	How to help her if she cannot Foal	ib.
		How to order her after Foaling	7
		How long Foals are to run with their Dams	ib.
The Office of the Breeder.		The Time of Foaling looked upon to be very improper, because in the Winter-season.	8
Grounds to breed in, and Change of Grounds	3	When Mares are fit to take Horse	ib.
Choice of Stallions and Mares	4	To know the true Shape, Spirit and Height of a Foal, from his Shin-bone, from the space between his Knees and Withers, from his Spirit, and from his Hoofs	8, 9
The Age of Stallions and Mares	ib.	Weaning of Foals	ib.
Observations upon Covering	ib.		
Not to Cover after the Change	ib.		
Covering in the Wane	ib.		
Burning when another Horse covers her.	ib.		
Spaying of Mare Colts, and of Gelding of Colts	5		

A Table.

<i>Taming of Colts.</i>	ib.	<i>Ordering of travelling horses at home and</i>	ib.
<i>The time to break Colts</i>	ib.	<i>abroad</i>	ib.
<i>Coiling of the Stud, or making of election.</i>	ib.	<i>Of watering in the Morning, of feeding be-</i>	ib.
	ib.	<i>times, and of moderate travelling</i>	ib.
<i>Barren Mares</i>	10	<i>To get a horse a stomach</i>	16
<i>General Observations concerning Mares,</i>		<i>Not to stop a horses feet with Cow-dung</i>	ib.
<i>viz. Of covering, of bringing of Foals,</i>		<i>till they be cold</i>	ib.
<i>of making a Mare sink Foal, and to</i>		<i>Look to his Back, Girts and Shoes</i>	ib.
<i>make her stand to horse, of Stallions for</i>		<i>Not to eat nor drink when he is hot</i>	ib.
<i>Trotters, Mares to Horse</i>	10	<i>To labour him moderately when the Wea-</i>	ib.
<i>To put your Horse and Mare into an empty</i>		<i>ther is extream hot or cold</i>	ib.
<i>house, not to chase the Mares, the Wall-</i>		<i>Not to travel him too late</i>	ib.
<i>eye is an imperfect sight. Choice of</i>		<i>The Saddle not presently to be taken of</i>	ib.
<i>Mares, &c.</i>	11	<i>when he is hot</i>	ib.
<i>Election of horses for War, for Swiftnes,</i>		<i>Horse-bread very good food</i>	ib.
<i>for Travel, for Draught</i>	ib.	<i>River-water not so good as standing water</i>	17
<i>To know whether your Mare be with Foal</i>			
<i>or not</i>	12	<i>Swine and Pullen is naught to be nigh a</i>	ib.
<i>To make a Mare conceive a Male Foal.</i>	ib.	<i>Stable</i>	ib.
The Office of the Keeper.			
<i>Of the Horse in general, his choice for eve-</i>		<i>The light of the Stable to be towards the</i>	ib.
<i>ry several Use, his Ordering, Diet and</i>		<i>South and North</i>	ib.
<i>best Preservation for Health, both in</i>		<i>To be tied with two reins</i>	ib.
<i>travel and in rest.</i>	ib.	<i>To ride him on stony ways</i>	ib.
<i>The Nature of a horse in general</i>	ib.	<i>Wheat-straw and Oat-straw best for Lit-</i>	ib.
<i>Your Choice of a horse for the wars</i>	ib.	<i>ter</i>	ib.
<i>Celours of horses which is the best</i>	13	<i>Of dressing your horse.</i>	ib.
<i>Horses for a Princes Seat</i>	ib.	<i>Of the Stable</i>	ib.
<i>Horses for Travel</i>	ib.	<i>A mud-wall naught to be nigh a horse</i>	18
<i>Hunting horses</i>	ib.	<i>Chop straw good to throw amongst a hor-</i>	ib.
<i>Running horses</i>	ib.	<i>ses Provender</i>	ib.
<i>Coach-horses</i>	ib.	<i>Bottles of Hay to be tied hard</i>	ib.
<i>Pack-horses</i>	14	<i>To sprinkle Hay with water is good, and to</i>	ib.
<i>Horses for Cart and Plough</i>	ib.	<i>strow Fennegreek among his Provender</i>	ib.
<i>How to order these several horses, and first</i>			
<i>of the horse for the wars</i>	ib.	<i>Exercise good</i>	ib.
<i>Ordering a Horse for a Prince or a great</i>		<i>Grass good once a year to cleanse his blood</i>	ib.
<i>Ladies Seat</i>	15	<i>and cool his body</i>	ib.
		<i>A horse hath good store of blood after tra-</i>	ib.
		<i>vel</i>	ib.

A Table.

What you are to do in case of necessity, coming late to your Inn	ib.	mud-wall naught, Dung not so lie night a horses heels	ib.
To give him Mares milk to drink if he be poor	19	Paving of Stables approved to be better then Planked Stables for several reasons	ib.
The best times to water in the winter	ib.	The inconveniences of a Plank-Floor shewed	ib.
Not good to wash a horse if he be hot	ib.	Your care in the choice of a Groom	24
Tolight at every steep Hill	ib.	How a Rider ought to be qualified	ib.
How a fat horse is to have his meat and water	ib.	What manner of Person a Groom ought to be	ib.
Rubbing is good for a horse	ib.	To saddle and bridle a Colt	25
Boyled Barley is good	ib.	Of Mouthing	26
Fat picked after travel	ib.	Of Backing	ib.
Much rest naught	ib.	Helps at first Backing	27
Be careful to lock to your Saddle	ib.	What Lessons for what horse	ib.
A Horsemans Rule in verse	20	Helps and Corrections from his voice, from his Rod, from his Bit and Snaffle, from the Calves of his Legs, from his Stirrops and Stirrop-leathers, and from the Ground	ib.
Riding safely	ib.	Of large Rings	29
Trotters Oyl is good to help stiff Limbs	ib.	Of stopping	30
Legs bathed with cold water, good to prevent Scabs and Swellings	ib.	Advancing	ib.
Washing at the Stable-door very good if necessity requires	ib.	Retiring	ib.
Dressing upon travel and rest	ib.	Of biting	ib.
When to let blood	ib.	Of straight turnes and turnings	ib.
Ordering of hunting horses	ib.	The first freight turn	31
Ordering of running horses	21	The other freight turn	32
Ordering of Coach-horses	ib.	How to help an ill rein, and cure a runaway Jade	ib.
Ordering of the Pack and Cart horse	ib.	The Help	33
The Office of the Rider and Groom, and of things belonging to him, viz. His general and particular knowledge, in Handling, Sadding, Mouthing, Backing and Riding of the Great Horse, or Horse of Pleasure.	22	Another help for unconstant carriage	ib.
Of the Stable and what it ought to be built with, a Brick-stable preferred before stone, no Hog-sty nor Hen-roost ought to be nigh it, of the Manger, of a Pitched Floor, a		The Office of the Feeder.	34
		The Introduction to the work touching the time limited for a hunting horse	ib.
		Their Reasons	ib.
		Long time inconvenient	ib.

A Table.

The first Ordering of the Running-horse, according to the several Estates of their Bodies.	37	The Office of the Ambler.	
To have an eye to the particular Estate of a horses Body.	38	Observations in Ambling.	ib.
The first Fortnights feeding of a horse for a Match, that is fat, foul, or either newly taken from Grass or Soil.	ib.	Mens Opinions and Errors.	33
Four Considerations in giving of Heats.	41	Ambling by the Ploughed Field.	ib.
	ib.	Ambling by the Gallop.	ib.
The second Fortnights feeding.	ib.	Ambling by Weights.	34
The first Bread.	42	Ambling in hand, or not Ridden.	ib.
The use of the Muzzle.	ib.	Ambling by the help of Shoos.	ib.
The first Scouring.	44	Ambling by the help of fine Lister.	ib.
Ordering of him after his Scouring.	ib.	Ambling by the Hand only.	35
	ib.	Ambling by the Tramel.	36
The third Fortnights feeding.	45	Errors in the Tramel.	ib.
The second Bread.	ib.	The best way to A-ble an Horse.	37
The fourth and last fortnights feeding.	ib.	The Form of the Tramel.	ib.
	ib.	The true Use of the true Tramel.	39
The last and best bread.	ib.	When to alter the Tramel.	ib.
	ib.	When to Mount his Back.	60.
Certain Observations and Advantages for every Feeder to observe in Sundry Accidents.	49	When to Journey.	ib.
	ib.	The Office of the Buyer, Wherein is shewed all the Perfections and Imperfections that are or can be in a Horse.	61
Of Meat and Drink.	ib.		62
Observations for Lameness.	ib.	Observations and Advertisements for any man when he goes about to buy an horse.	ib.
Observations from the state of his Body.	ib.		ib.
	ib.	The end for which to buy.	ib.
From his Inclinations.	50	Election how divided.	ib.
From his outward Handling.	ib.	The General Rule.	ib.
Observations from the Privy Parts.	ib.	Of Breed.	63
	51	Of Colour.	ib.
Observations for the Limbs.	ib.	Pace, as Trotting.	ib.
Observations for Water.	52	Ambling.	64
Observations for the Ground to run on.	ib.	Racking.	ib.
	ib.	Galloping.	ib.
Observations from Sweat.	ib.		ib.
Observations from the Hair.	ib.		

An Alphabetical Table.

Gallopings.	ib.	a Horse. By his Teeth, by his Mouth,
Stature-	65	by his Hoofs, by his Tail, by his Eyes.
The Particular Rule.	ib.	by his Skin, by his Hair, by the Barrs in
How to stand to view his Shapes, viz. His		his Mouth 71, 72, 73
Eares, his Face, his Eyes, his Cheeks		The perfect shape of a Horse altogether
and Chops, his Nostrils and Muzzle,		ib.
his Teeth, his Breast, his Fore-thighs,		Rules to be observed of putting a Horse to
his Knees, his Legs, his Pasterns, his		Grass, and of taking him up again 74
Hoofs, the setting on of his Head, his		Of cleansing, or making a Horse clean 75
Crest and Mane, his Back, Ribs, Fillets,		General Notes concerning some Simples. ib.
Belly and Stones, his Bustock, his		Of Syrups, Powders, Pills, Electuaries and
hinder-Thighs, his Cambrels, his hinder-		Ointments ib.
Legs, his Tail. 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70		Of Oyls, Roots, Herbs Seeds, Rind or Bark
An uncontroulable way to know the Age of		75, 76

A Table of the Office of the Farrier, Alphabetically set down.

A.		Bread, to make another sort	ib.
Accopium a Drink, with the Vertues and		Bangle Eares how to help	131
Nature of it	134	Balls Cordial, to Cure any violent Cold,	
Aman a Confection, with the vertues of it	135, 136	Glanders, which prevents heart-sickness,	
		which purges away all molten Grease,	
		which recovers a lost Stomach, and makes	
		a lean horse fat suddenly	132
B		Baths of all sorts	147, 149, 149
Ames, how many a horse hath, and where		Burning Compositions	139
they are situated	79		
Blinding a horse, when the best time	80		
And letting with Observations upon it	96	C.	
Of Burning	97	Complexion of a Horse, which is the most	
Burning actual and potential	99	necessary Faces, that a Farrier can	
And made for a Horse to keep him in		judge of his infirmities	81
heart and strength of body, and to keep		Corrasives	97
him from faintness in his labour and		Cauterizing	ib.
exercise, he is never so sore	126	Cauterizing in what cause	123
		Cautery Potential	125, 126
		Corrasive	

An Alphabetical Table.

<i>Corrosive</i>	125 and 157	F	
<i>A Canstick</i>	125 and 157	<i>A Farriers Office, in what Point it doth consist</i>	76
<i>Cordial Powders to make</i>	136	<i>A Farrier ought to know principally five things</i>	99
<i>Charges of several sorts</i>	143	<i>A Farrier, what he ought to know before he begin to Purge</i>	106
<i>Copperas water to make</i>	151	<i>To Fast a lean horse in twelve or fifteen days</i>	133
<i>Conglutinating things</i>	158	<i>Another for the same purpose</i>	ib.
<i>To cast and overthrow a horse</i>	159	<i>Another for the same purpose</i>	134
<i>Diapente, a Drink, how to use it, and to shew you the Vertues of it</i>	86	<i>Of Feavers, and how to know every sort of them</i>	140, 141
<i>Diahexaple, a Drink with the vertues of it</i>	ib.	<i>Fatning things in general</i>	155
<i>A Drink to open a horses body, and to cleanse it</i>	88	G	
<i>Diatessaron made, or Horse Mithridate.</i>	ib.	<i>Of Glisters and their uses</i>	99
<i>Drinks given when you neither have Diahexaple, Diapente or Diatessaron.</i>	89	<i>Glisters for a horse colicive</i>	100
<i>Diseases of a horse known by the signes he shews from p. 89 to 94</i>	89 to 94	<i>A Glistre laxative</i>	101
<i>Drinks in general for all inward diseases of a horse that troubles the whole body.</i>	137, 138	<i>A Glistre restraining</i>	102
<i>Other general drinks for the cure of all inward sicknesses.</i>	139	<i>A Glistre for a fat horse that cannot be kept clean</i>	ib.
<i>A Drink comfortable</i>	142	<i>A Glistre in case of desperate sickness</i>	ib.
<i>A Drink operative</i>	143	<i>A Glistre for the Pestilence and all Feavers</i>	ib.
<i>Drugs, their Prizes, at the end of the First Part.</i>		<i>A Glistre for the Cholick</i>	ib.
E		<i>Advice given upon giving of Glisters, what are to be put into them</i>	103
<i>Of the Elements and their Nature</i>	79	<i>Gelding of horses, how and in what season</i>	123
<i>Eyes, a Caution</i>	99	<i>How to make the green Ointment</i>	124
<i>To make the black and red Egyptianum, which are both Corrosives; For their Natures are to corrode, and cast away all manner of proud and naughty flesh out of any old Sore or Ulcer</i>	136, 137	H	
<i>An Explanation of several hard words belonging to Chyrurgery.</i>	156	<i>Of the Four Humors, Blood, Phlegm, Choler, and Melancholy</i>	125
		<i>Health, twelve Causes of it</i>	126
		<i>Halting, where to know it, before or behind</i>	127
		<i>Of hoofs, and of the several kinds of them viz. Brittle and rugged hoofs, long hoofs, crooked hoofs, flat hoofs, hoofs with</i>	128

An Alphabetical Table.

broad Frushes, hoofs with narrow heels	114	Oyl of Oats with the Vertues of it	142
Of paring the perfect hoof and fore-foot.	ib.	Ointments, Salves, Powders and Waters	144, 145
Of paring the imperfect hoof, every one according to their kind, and first of the broken hoof, chap. 5. 6.	116	Ointment green to make	150, 151
Of paring the rough and bristle hoof. ch. 7.	117	Old horses made seemingly young	130
Of paring the long hoof. ch. 9.	ib.	P	
Of paring the crooked hoof. ch. 11.	118	Planets, their Names	8a
Of paring the flat hoof. ch. 13.	ib.	Physicking Observations	95, 97
Of paring the over-bellow hoof. ch. 15.	119	Purgations and their uses	105
Of paring the hoof that hath a broad Frush	ch. 17.	Physicking a horse, and how to order him after he hath it	108
Of paring the hoof that hath a narrow heel	ch. 19.	Pills of all sorts, and Purgations.	108 and 109
To make a horse that he shall not Neigh, either in Company, or when he is ridden	131	Putrifactives	126
Hair made smooth, sleek and soft	159	Powders Cordial how to make	136
Head Purged, vide Perfumes		A Powder made of Honey and Lime that will dry up any Wound or old Ulcer.	142
To make a horse follow his Master, and to challenge him amongst never so many People	160	Pills, purging	146
K		A Plaister to dissolve and take away evil humors, which shall at any time fall down into the legs of a Horse	147
Knitting things. See Conglutinating things		Perfumes and Purgers of the Head of all filthy and gross humors	149, 150
L		Purging and scouring things in general	152
Lameness, to know where it lies either before or behind	112	Purgings of all sorts, and they are five, viz. by Portions, by Glisters, by Suppositories, and by Grass	157, 158
Loosening things in general	154	Certain Principles concerning Simples	160
M		Prices of Drugs, vide Drugs	
The principal Members of a horse	76	R	
How to make a Mash	107	Rubarb, its Nature	103
N		Raking a horse	96
Needing-Powder, vide Perfumes for the Head		Roots	75
O		Rowling of Horses, and of the use thereof	127, 128, 129
Oyls	75	Riding, who first invented it	131
		(a)	Simples

An Alphabeucal Table.

S		Of Shooing the Hoof that hath the broad Frush	ib.
Simples, with Notes in general upon them.	75, 76	Of Shooing the Hoof that hath the narrow heel	ib.
Sinews of a Horse their Number	ib.	Of Paring and Shooing of hinder feet.	120
Signes of the Zodiack, and Government of them	80	Of Shooing the Hoof that hath a false quarter	ib.
Sickness dangerous, how it cometh	84	Shooing and Paring the Hoof that is Hoof bound	121
Signes to know this dangerous sickness.	85	Of making of Planch-Shoes	ib.
Sickness accidental	86	Of Paring and Shooing for enterfering	120
Sickness cured when it cometh, and to prevent it before it comes	ib.	Shoes with Calkins, Rings, Welts, and turning Vices, and of the Patten-shoe.	121
Of Sickness in general, and of the Signes from whence it proceeds	94	Stars white, black and red how to make.	130 and 160
Sorances, what they are in general, and Observations in the cure of them	97	A suppository for inward sickness	138
Swellings hard and soft, and how you are to use them in the cure of them	98	Salves, Unguents, Powders and Wines	144, 145
Of Sores	ib.	Scouring and Purging things in general.	152
Suppositories the several sorts of them.	144 and 145	Particular Scourings for running Horses whose Grease must necessarily be molten, as also for a fat horse	153, 154
Scourings what they are	107	Simples and their certain Principals	160
Scourings by Grass, by Sorrage, by Sallow and Elm, by Thistles, by Malt	ib.	T	
Scouring of a little stronger Nature.	108	To trim an unruly Horse	ib.
Of Shooing and Paring all manner of Hoofs, and in what Point the Art of it doth consist	113	V	
Shooing the perfect Hoofs and sore Feet, and how the Sho-Paring and Nail should be made	115	Of the Vital blood	77
Of Shooing the rough and brittle Hoof	117	Veins, their Number that you are to take blood from	ib.
Of Shooing the long Hoof	ib.	Veins opened, for what use	78
Of Shooing the crooked Hoof	118	Veins taken up	99
Of Shooing the Flat Hoof	ib.	Veins, for what cause they are taken up.	127
Of Shooing the over-hollow Hoof	119	Of Vomits	146



ERRORS that hath Escaped the Press in the First Part of the *Experienc'd Farrier.*

Page 3. line 4. for Cibil beels read Cib'd beels, p. 13 l. 16, for Franies r. Frains. p. 13. l. 17. for Tool r. Tail. p. 17, l. 28, for over r. ever, p. 20, where the Horse-man's Rule is on the top of the page, r. The Office of the Keeper, p. 38, l. 12. for over, r. ever, p. 51, l. 23. for Observations for the Wound to run on, r. Observations for the Ground to run on, p. 54, l. 27. for slaughting r. slaughting, p. 68, l. 14, for Lion r. Lyard, p. 66, l. 5. for pry-eyed r. Pig-eyed, p. 67, l. 24. for rub-grown, r. rub-grown, p. 72, l. 5, for Lanipus r. Lampus, p. 72, l. 32. for Griffle r. Griffel, p. 32, l. 16, for magly, mouth r. mayly mouth, p. 74, l. 21, for Iuy r. Ivory, p. 89, l. 16, for discovered r. discoloured, p. 91, l. 24, for fluting r. fluting, p. 93, l. 21, for crail r. crail, p. 93, l. 31, for je r. jet. p. 95, l. 5. for inward r. Glister, inward Portion or Glister, p. 100, l. 27, for Twel r. Twel, p. 102, l. 11, for leaser r. leaver, ib. p. 120, for leaser r. leaver, l. 18, for Pruners r. Pruners, ib. p. 124, for he mast r. he must, p. 112, l. 1, alter Hew, being Printed she wrong way, p. 115, l. 13, for Coffin r. Coffin, p. 121, l. 34, for undouble r. with double, p. 124, l. 12, for practice r. practice, p. 125, l. 34, for Casticks r. Casticks, p. 126, l. 31, for lip away r. clip away, p. 127, l. 2, for Yatter bread r. latter bread, p. 130, A Hand left out in the Margent against the Receipt for making a white Star, p. 134, l. 15, for Agnus Castoris r. Agnus Castus, p. 159, l. 23, for a long Kope, r. a long Rope, p. 134, l. 16, for Roots of Ireos or Flower de luce one quarter of a pound, r. Roots of Ireos or Flower de luce one ounce and a quarter,

F I N I S.

An Alphabetical Table.

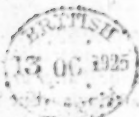
S		Of Shooing the Hoof that hath the broad Frush	ib.
Simple, with Notes in general upon them.	75, 76	Of Shooing the Hoof that hath the narrow heel	ib.
Sinews of a Horse their Number	ib.	Of Paring and Shooing of hinder feet.	120
Signes of the Zodiack, and Government of them	80	Of Shooing the Hoof that hath a false quarter	ib.
Sickness dangerous, how it cometh	84	Shooing and Paring the Hoof that is Hoof bound	121
Signes to know this dangerous sickness.	85	Of making of Planch-Shoes	ib.
Sickness accidental	86	Of Paring and Shooing for enterfering	120
Sickness cured when it cometh, and to pre- vent it before it comes	ib.	Shoes with Calkins, Rings, Welts, and turning Vices, and of the Pastern-shoe.	121
Of Sickness in general, and of the Signes from whence it proceeds	94	Stars white, black and red how to make.	130 and 160
Sorances, what they are in general, and Observations in the cure of them	97	A suppository for inward sickness	138
Swellings hard and soft, and how you are to use them in the cure of them	98	Salves, Unguents, Powders and Waters.	144, 145
Of Sores	ib.	Scouring and Purging things in general.	151
Suppositories the several sorts of them.	144 and 145	Particular Scourings for running Horses whose Grease must necessarily be molten, as also for a fat horse	153, 154
Scourings what they are.	107	Simple and their certain Principals	160
Scourings by Grass, by Sorrage, by Sallow and Elme, by Thistles, by Malt	ib.	T	
Scouring of a little stronger Nature.	108	To trim an unruly Horse	ib.
Of Shooing and Paring all manner of Hoofs, and in what Point the Art of it doth consist	113	V	
Shooing the perfect Hoofs and sore-Fet, and how the Shoe-Paring and Nail should be made	115	Of the Vital blood	77
Of Shooing the rough and brittle Hoof	117	Veins, their Number that you are to take blood from	ib.
Of Shooing the long Hoof	ib.	Veins opened, for what use	78
Of Shooing the crooked Hoof	118	Veins taken up	99
Of Shooing the Flat Hoof	ib.	Veins, for what cause they are taken up.	127
Of Shooing the over-hollow Hoof	119	Of Vomits	146



ERRORS that hath Escaped the Press in the First Part of the *Experienc'd Farrier.*

Page 3. line 4. for Cibil beels read Cib'd beels, p. 13. l. 16, for Franies r. Frains. p. 13. l. 17. for Tool r. Tail. p. 17. l. 28, for over r. ever. p. 20. where the Horse-mans Rule is on the top of the page, r. The Office of the Keeper, p. 33. l. 12. for over, r. ever. p. 51. l. 23. for Observations for the Wound to run on, r. Observations for the Ground to run on, p. 54. l. 27. for splaughing r. slaughtering. p. 63. l. 14, for Lion r. Lyard, p. 66. l. 5. for pry-eyed r. Pig-eyed, p. 67. l. 24. for rusb-grown, r. rusb-grown, p. 72. l. 5, for Lanipus r. Lampus, p. 72. l. 32, for Griffle r. Griffel. p. 32. l. 16, for magly, mouth r. mayly mouth, p. 36. l. 31, for Iuy r. Ivory, p. 89. l. 16, for discovered r. discoloured, p. 91. l. 24, for sealing r. flating, p. 53. l. 21, for eeding r. feeding, p. 93. l. 35, for ye r. yet. p. 95. l. 5, for inward or Glister, r. inward Portion or Glister, p. 100. l. 37, for Tuel r. Tuel, p. 102. l. 11, for leaser r. leaver, ib. p. 120, for leaser r. leaver, l. 18, for Prunes r. Pruens, ib. p. 124, for he mast r. he must, p. 112. l. 1, alter How, being Printed the wrong way, p. 115. l. 13, for Cossin r. Coffin, p. 121. l. 34, for undouble r. with double, p. 124. l. 12, for praffice r. so praffice, p. 125. l. 34, for Canstlicks r. Causticks, p. 126. l. 31, for lip away r. clip away, p. 127. l. 2, for Yasser bread r. latter bread, p. 130. A Hand left out in the Margent against the Receipt for making a white Star, p. 134. l. 15, for Agnus Casteris r. Agnus Castus, p. 159. l. 23, for a long Kope, r. a long Rope, p. 134. l. 16, for Roots of Ireos or Flower de luce one quarter of a pound, r. Roots of Ireos or Flower de luce one ounce and a quarter.

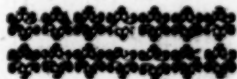
F I N I S.



THE
SECOND PART
OF THE
EXPERIENCED FARRIER.

SHEWING

- I. The Nature, Temperature and Vertue of most Simples, for the Cure of all inward and outward diseases, never yet Printed in this Nature before.
- II. You have things in general, set down one after another, for the Cure of all diseases, which you may use as your discretion serves.
- III. You have severally particular Receipts for the Cure of all diseases.
- IV. Where you find the Hand Pointing you shall find such Receipts that were never before Printed.
- V. You have the Gathering, Drying and Preserving of Simples and their Juices.
- VI. You have the way of making and keeping of all necessary Compounds.
- VII. You have hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.
- VIII. You have cold Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.
- IX. You have the Properties of Purging Medicaments.
- X. You have the Properties of altering Medicaments.
- XI. You have a Table of all the diseases of a Horse, either inwardly or outwardly, set down Alphabetically, where they do grow in any part of a Horses body, and how you may know them, and what was the cause that bred them.
- XII. And lastly, you have in the Margent of these said Diseases, the page quoted where to find the proper Cure for every of these diseases, with many other things contained in this Book, not here inserted.



L O N D O N,

Printed for Richard Northcot Adjoyning to St. Peters Alley, Cornhill; And at the
Anchor and Marriner near London-bridge. 1673.

THE SECOND PART

OF THE



Printed by J. G. Smith, at the British Museum, 1853.

LONDON



THE
*Nature, Temperature, and Vertue of
 most Simples, set down A phabetically.*

A.

A *GARICUM* is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, it expelleth Humours, Purgeth all Phlegm and Choler, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys.

Agripa is an Oyntment that is good against all Tumors.

Amoniacum is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second, it loosneth and dissolveth Humours.

Allom commonly called *Rock-Allom*, is hot and dry in the third degree, it is a dryer up of Humors, and is good for Sore Mouths and Old Cankers and Fistulaes, and killeth the Worms taken inwardly.

Alloes is hot, and that in the first and second degree, but dry in the third, it is extream bitter, yet without biting, it is the most Natural Purger of Man and Beast, that is, for it strengthens the heart and revives the Spirits, it is also of an Emplastick and Clammy quality, and sometimes binding, being externally applied.

Sweet *Almonds* when they be dry be moderately hot. but the bitter ones are hot and dry in the second degree, there is in both of them a certain Fat and Oyly substance which is drawn out of them by pressing of them. They provoke Urine, and is very good for the Lungs and Liver.

Antimonium or *Stribium* is cold and dry, it Bindeth, Mundifieth and Purgeth.

Aniseed are hot and dry in the third degree, saith *Gallen*, but others, that they are hot in the second degree, and much less then dry in the second degree; they are good to expell Wind, provoke Urine, stir up Lust, and is a great cleanser of the Breast from Phlegmatick Humours.

Aristolochia

Arisolochia, which we call *Birch wort* or *Harts wort*. Is hot and cleanseth, but if it be *Rotunda*, then it is so much the stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree, and draweth and Purgeth thin Water and Phlegm, and is good to open the Lungs, and is good against all manner of Poyson whatsoever, or the Biting of any venomous Beast.

Armoniack, both draweth cooleth and soltneith.

Arsnick of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree, it bindeth and eateth away proud and naught, Flesh, and is a very strong Corrosive.

Affsetida or *Devils Bit*, is a stinking Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the fourth degree: it cleanseth evil humors, it is good for the Yellows and Staggers in a Horse, a little piece of it being dissolved in Brandy and put it into his Eares.

Asphaltum, is Pitch that is mixt with Bitumen, it is hot and dry and comforteth any Swelling.

Aspenteo, is hot in the first, and dry in the second, it cleanseth and draweth, and is good to comfort the Stomach.

Ashes are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanseth mightily.

Asarabacca, is hot and dry with a purging quality, yet not without a certain kind of binding, the Roots are hot and dry, more then the leaves, they procure Urine.

The black *Aller Tree*, the inner Bark of it is of a purging and drying quality, it purgeth thick Phlegmatick humours, and also Chollerick downwards, and also by vomiting, which must be used with care.

Of *Aller* or *Alder-tree*, the leaves and Bark of it are cold and dry and Astringent, and is used against hot Swellings and Inflammations, especially of the Almonds and Kernels of the Throat, the Bark of it is used amongst poor Country Dyars, to dye Cloth, Caps, Hoose and such like.

The *Ash-tree*, the leaves and Bark of it are dry and moderately hot, the Seeds are hot and dry in the second degree, they stop the Belly, being boyled in Vineger and Water, the Seeds provoke Urine and stir up bodily Lust.

Aspodills are hot and dry in the third degree.

Aememes all the kinds of them (which are Wind-Flowers) are sharp, biting the Tongue, and are of a binding Faculty

Adders Tongue is dry in the third degree, and is good for Wounds in the Ercaft and bowels, and is good for Ulcers and Inflammations,

Arswart

Asmart or *Water-Pepper* is hot and dry, yet not so hot as *Pepper*, *Hydropiper* is good for Ulcers, cold Swellings, Bruises, and to lay under the Saddle, to make tired Horses go.

Allheal, all the kinds of them are dry with little or no heat, and are endued with a binding quality, they are good for green wounds being bruised and boiled in an Ointment; It is good for the Wormes, Gout, Cramp and Convulsions of the Sinews, provokes Urine, and is good for cold griefs of the Head, biting of mad dogs, Lethargy, Cholick, Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, Stone, and expelleth the dead birth.

Archangel or *dead Nettles* are hotter and drier then Nettles, approaching to the Temperature of Hore-hound, and is good for the Gout, bleeding at the Nose, Ulcers, old Sores, bruises and burnings, and to dissolve Tumors.

Alkmet, the root of it is cold and dry, and bindeth, and because it is bitter it cleanseth away cholerick humors, the leaves are not so forcible, yet they do bind and dry, and is good for the Stone, Yellows, Leprosie, venomous Beasts, Flux and Bruises by Falls, Wormes.

Angelica is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth and attenuateth, digesterh and procureth Sweat, and is good against Poison, Plague, Cold, Wind, Cough of the Lungs, Strangury, short-Windedness, stoppings of the Liver and Spleen, biting of mad Dogs, Ulcers and old pains.

Alexanders or *wild Parsley*, the seeds and roots are less hot and dry then the Garden Parsley, they cleanse and make thin, being hot and dry in the third degree. They are good to consume Wind, provoke Urine, and is good for the Strangury, and opens the obstructions of the Liver.

Amara dulcis, which is *woody Night-shade*, the fruit and leaves of it are in temperature hot and dry, and cleansing and wasting away, it is good to remove Witchcraft, tied about the Necks of Cattell, and is good to remove the obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, difficulty of breathing, bruises by falls, congealed blood, Dropsy, Yellows.

Water-Agrimony is hot and dry in the second degree; It is good to secure and open; It maketh thin, thick and gross humors, and to expel and drive them forth by Urine, and therefore is good for the Dropsy; It opens obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, kills Worms, Itch, Scabs, Flies and Wasps; it is good to strengthen the Lungs, and is good for a Cough and broken Wind in Cattell.

Alchoof or *Ground-Ivy* is hot and dry, and because it is bitter it scoureth and removeth stoppings out of the Entrails; It is good for inward wounds, pains and gripings by Wind, Choler, Spleen, Plague, Poison, old pains in the Joynts, sore Mouth and Throat, Ulcers in the Privities, Itch, Scabs, Web in the Eye, redness and Wateriness in them and deafness.

Amaranthus, which is called *Flower gentle*, is good for the Running of the Reins and inward bleeding.

Gaiden Arrach or *Orrach* is moist in the second degree, and cold in the first; It is a Loosener of the Belly, and fortifieth the expulsive faculty, and is good for swellings of the Throat being bruised and laid to it, and being taken inwardly is good for the Yellows.

Wild Arrach and stinking by smell, is good given inwardly for the Farcy, and is good for any disease of the Womb.

Avens called *Coleworts*, or *Herb-Bennet*, hath a drying and binding faculty, with a certain salt quality whereby they cleanse, the decoction of them looseth the belly, and is good for the diseases of the Chest and Breast: It is good for inward wounds, the heart, a cold Brain, Obstructions, Cholick, Fluxes, Ruptures, Plague, Poison.

Agarick cometh of the *Larch* tree, which is almost like a Pine tree, and the leaves and bark is in temperature like it, but not so strong. It purgeth away gross and plegmatick humors; it troubleth the stomach, therefore Ginger is to be mixed with it; it is hot in the first degree and dry in the second; it is good against short windedness, Cough of the Lungs, Consumption, comforteth the stomach, and is good against Wormes.

Agnus Castus, the leaves and roots of it are hot and dry in the third degree, they are of very thin parts, and waste and consume Wind.

B.

Balm is hot and dry in the second degree, and it mundifieth and cleanseeth, it cheers up the Heart, opens Obstructions of the Brain, and is a remedy against the stinging or biting of any venomous beast, Mad-dogs, the bloody Flux, Surfeit, short-windedness.

The *Barberry bush*, the leaves & berries are cold and dry in the second degree, and as *Gallen* affirmeth are of thin parts, and have a certain cutting quality, they are good to stop Lasks and bloody Fluxes, the inner Rind of the Tree is good to Purge the Body of Cholerick Humours, and is good

good for Agues, Scabs, Itch, Tetters, Jaundice, Boyls, Scaulding, and the Farcin.

Garden-Bazil is hot in the second degree, but it hath adjoynd with it a superfluous moisture, and therefore not very good to be taken inwardly, but being applied outwardly to the stinging of any venomous Beast, Wasps or Hornets taketh away the venom.

Wild-Bazil the seeds are hot and dry.

Bazil Valerian is dry in the second degree.

Bayberries are vehemently hot and dry and are good for all manner of Rhumes, shortness of Wind, especially for any disease of the Lungs, they are good against Poyson, Consumptions, Phlegm, helpeth tiredness. Cramps, Stone, stoppings of the Liver, the Yellows and Dropsie, and provokes Urine.

Beans are moderately cold and dry, and are very Windy, Ladies Bed-straw, is good for the Stone, and stays Inward and Outward bleeding.

White Beetes are in moisture and heat temperate, and is a loosener of the Belly, and is of a cleansing quality, and provoketh Urine.

Red Beets are of a binding quality, and therefore good to stop the bloody Flux.

Water Bitony is hot and dry and is good for Ulcers and Bruises:

Wild Running Bitony smelling like Marjorum, is hot and dry in the third degree, it bindeth Wounds and Conglutinateth, and is good for diseases of the Liver, for the Worms, Old Sores and Wounds, and is commonly called Centaury.

Beech-Tree the leaves of it doth cool, and the Kernels of the Nut is somewhat moist, the leaves are good for hot Swellings, and the Water that is found in the hollow places of it, will Cure Man or Beast of any Scurle, Scab, or running Tetters anointed therewith.

Blites are of a cold and moist Temperature, and are good to stay Fluxes of Blood.

Bilberries called by some *Whorts*, and *Whortle berries* are cold even in the latter end of the second degree, and dry also, and are of a binding quality; there is two sorts of them, a black & a red, the black are good for hot Agues, and to cool the heat of the Liver and Stomach, and do bind the Belly, the red are more binding, and stay any Fluxes of blood whatsoever, used outwardly or taken inwardly.

Byfoil or *Tway-blade* are often used for Wounds both green and old, and to Conglutinate and Knit Ruptures,

Birch-tree, the juice of the leaves is good to wash a sore Mouth or Throat, and is good to break the Stone in the Kidneys or Bladder.

Birds-foot, all the kinds of them are of a drying quality, and therefore very good to be used in wounds drinke, and to be applied outwardly for the same purpose; but the paler flowered *Birds-foot* is good to break the Stone in the Back and Kidneys, and helpeth the Rupture taken inwardly.

Bishops weed is hot and dry in the third degree, of a bitter taste, and something sharp withal; it provokes lust, causeth Urine, is good for the Wind, and for the biting of venomous Beasts.

Bistort or *Snake-weed* is cold and dry in the third degree, the leaves and roots are excellent good to resist Poison or Plague, and is good for all manner of Fluxes of blood whatsoever, and stayeth a Lask, is good for the Yellows, Ruptures or Burstnes.

One Blade is a very Cordial Herb, and will cause sweat, and is sovereign against the Plague, by expelling the Poison, and is an excellent Wound-herb for green and old wounds, and Sinews cut.

The *Bramble* or *black Bush*, the flowers and leaves of the unripe fruit do very much bind and dry, and is good for all kind of Fluxes, the buds, leaves and branches of it, while they are green, are of good use in Ulcers and putrid sores; the Root is good against the Stone in the Reins or Kidneys; the leaves of them are good for sore Mouths and Throats, or Quinsy, the powder of the dried leaves strewd on Cankers do wonderfully heal them.

Burrage and *Bugloss* is in a mean betwixt hot and cold, the leaves and roots are good against Pestilential Fevers, Poison of venomous Beasts, Yellows, Itch, Tettars, Wormes, Weakness, Corruption, Cough, sore Mouth or Throat.

Blow-bettle is naturally cold; dry and binding; the powder of the dried leaves is good taken inwardly, is good for broken Veins, and given with Plantine water expelleth Poison or the Plague, the Juice of it is good to fodder green Wounds together, and is good to heal Sores in the Mouth; And the Juice of the leaves dropped into the Eyes, taketh away the Inflammation of them.

Brank-ursine, *Peares-breech* and *Acanthus* is betwixt hot and cold, being somewhat moist, with a mollifying and digesting quality, as are these of the Mallow, and are good to put in Glisters to loosen the Bell; the Decoction taken inwardly is good for the Bloody Flux and Burstnes, and is good for Hectick Fevers.

White Briony is hot & dry in all parts in the third degree, both the white and the black are furious Martial Plants, and purge the Belly with great violence, and therefore you are to Correct it and then it is very good for all manner of Grievs in the Head, as also for the Joynts and sinews, Cramps and Convulsions, Dropsie, provoketh Urine, and is good for the stoness.

Brook-lyme or *Water pimpernel* is a hot and biting Martial Plant, and is of the same Nature as *Water Cresses*, and are good to cleanse the Blood, provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone.

Butchers broom is hot in the second and dry in the first, and is of a cleansing Nature, it openeth Obstructions, provoketh Urine, expelleth Gravel and the stone, is good for the strangury, Yellowes, and pain in the Head.

Broom and *Broom rape*, the Twigs, Flowers and seed of it are hot and dry in the second degree, they are of a thin Essence, and are of force to cleanse and open and especially the seed which is drier and not so full of superfluous moisture, it is good for the Dropsie, Cleaner of the Reins, Kidneys and Bladder from the Gravel and stone.

Bucks-horn Plantaine is of a drying and binding quality, it is good against Poyson, stone in the Reins and Kidneys, stoppeth a Lask, and is good for a bloody Urine and bloody Flux.

Bucks-horn is called *Harts-horn*, *Herb Ivy*, *Wort cresses* or *Swines cress*, their vertues are the same with *Bucks-horn Plantaine*.

Bugle is of a mean Temperature, and is good taken inwardly to dissolve Congealed Blood that is occasioned by Bruises or Falls, and is Effectual in all Wound Drinks, it is good for Fistulaes, Gangreens, the leaves of it being bruised and applied to them.

Blurnet is a dryer and a binder, yet it is meanly cool, it is a most precious Herb little inferiour to *Bitony*, it stancheth bleeding as well inwardly as outwardly, and is good to stay the Lask and bloody Flux, it is good for all Old Ulcers or Running Cankers and moist sores, to be used either by Juice or Decoction of the Herb or Root, the seed is also good for the same purposes aforesaid.

The *Butter-bur* or *Petasitis* is hot and dry in the second degree, and in thin parts, the Roots is good against the Plague and Pestilential Fevers, by provoking Sweat, the Powder of the Root given in Wine is good to resist the force of Poyson, it is good for Wheezing and difficulty of Breathing, kills flat and broad Worms.

Brian is hot and dry and dissolveth very much.

Burr-dock is dry and wasting, the root is something hot, the leaves are cooling and moderately drying, and is good for old Ulcers and Sores, the Juice of the leaves or roots is good against the biting of any venomous Beast, the seed of it is most excellent to provoke Urine, being beaten to powder, and drank in White-wine or Ale, and remedied the pain in the Bladder; It is good for Burnings, Cankers.

Burr-reeds are cold and dry of Complexion.

Vipers Bugloss, all the kinds of them are cold and dry of Complexion.

Sea Bind-weed is hot and dry in the second degree.

Bears-foot or *black Hell-bore* is hotter in taste then the white, and is in like manner hot and dry in the third degree; it is safer to be taken being purged by the Art of the Alchymist, then given raw; the roots are good against all melancholy diseases; as Quartan Agues and madness; it is good for the falling Sickness, Leprosie, Yellows, pains in the Hip; the root beaten to powder and strewed upon Ulcers or putrid sores, consumes the dead flesh, and instantly heals them. It will help Gangrenes in the beginning, 20 Grains is a sufficient dose for one time, and let it be corrected with half so much Cinnamon. It is good to Rowel Cattel withal, and it is good for many other uses.

Baldmony or *Felwort*, the roots are hot, cleansing and scouring, some say it is likewise binding withal.

Balsam is hot and dry in the second degree, and is good for new and green wounds.

Bishops-weed, *Herb-William*, *Ameos*, the seed is hot and dry in the latter end of the third degree; it is given against the biting of any venomous Beast; It causeth urine, it is good against poison, the plague, and all pestilential Fevers.

Sweet-Briar or *Eglantine balls* are binding, and are good for blood Fluxes, and is good to stop a Leak or Loosness.

Wild-Briar-balls are greater Binders, and are good to stop a Leak and bloody Flux, and for staling of blood, and is a great dryer up of evil humors.

Buck-thorn or *Laxative Ram*, the Berries as they are in taste bitter, so they are binding, and are also hot and dry in the second degree, and doth purge thick phlegm and cholerick humors.

The *Box-tree* is of a binding quality, and is good against the biting of mad dogs.

Balsam is a Gum that is hot and dry, it softeneth and draweth away moisture, and is excellent against all hard swellings whatsoever.

BRACCA is cold and dry in the second degree; it closeth things opened, it softens hardness, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all excretions.

Brimstone is hot and dry in the third degree, draweth and disperleth humors, killeth the Itch given inwardly, and outwardly applied it is good for Coughs and rotten phlegm; it is good likewise for the Wormes, being mixed with a little Salt in his Provender; it helps Lechargies snuffed up the Nose, being beaten to powder.

Bolearmoniack is a certain red earth which is cold and dry, which draweth and driveth back evil humours, and is also an excellent defence against Fluxes of blood, and all manner of Bleeding whatsoever, either taken inwardly, or outwardly applied.

Brine, or water and salt is of the same Nature as Salt is, it is good given inwardly to kill Wormes, or applie d outwardly to dry humors, and takes away swellings.

Bitumen is a kind of Brimstone or fatness from the Sea; it is hot and dry in the second degree, and is comfortable against any swelling.

C.

All *Cabbages* and *Coleworts* have a drying and binding faculty, with a certain salt quality, whereby they cleanse, and being boiled in broth opens the belly. but the second decoction binds; the Juice of them drunk is good against the poison of venomous beasts, they are good against a Consumption, obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, Stone, Swellings, Sores and Scabs; and the Juice being dropped into the Eyes with honey is good to clear them.

The *Sea-Colewort* is of a biting quality, the first decoction looseth, and is more cleansing then the other kind; the seed bruised and drunk killeth Wormes, the Juice of them cleanseth and healeth Sores, dissolveth Swellings, and taketh away Inflammations.

Calamin or *Mountain Mint* is of a serverit taste and biting hot, and of a thin substance, and dry after a sort in the third degree; it wasteth away thin humors, curteth and maketh thick humors thin, it is good for Ruptures, Convulsions, Cramps, shortness of breath, torments and pains in the stomach, helpeth the Yellowes, killeth Wormes given with Salt and Treacle, killeth Scabs either inwardly taken or outwardly applied and killeth the Worms in the Ears, the Juice being dropped therein.

Cumamel is hot and dry in the first degree, and of a thin part, and eateth moderately, and drieth little; it mollifyeth and dissolveth all cricks, and especially for the Liver; it is good for Swellings, Cholick, Stone, pains in the Belly, Cold Yellowes, Dropsey and Cramps.

Water

Water-Caltraps are of a cold Nature, and consisteth of a moist essence, being made into a Poultice are good for Inflammations, Swellings, Cankers, sore Mouths and Throats, they are good for the Farcin and Stone, especially the Nuts being dried, they resist Poison and this biting of venomous Beasts.

Wild Champions are referred to those of the Garden, they are good to stay inward bleeding taken inwardly, and outwardly it doth the like to wounds; it expelleth Urine and Gravel, and purgeth the Body of Choleric humours, and is good against the poison of venomous Beasts, the Plague, &c. and is good for old Sores, Fistulaes and Cankers, to cleanse and heal them.

Cardus Benedictus is good for pains in the Head, the Yellows and other Infirmities of the Gall, cleanseth the blood, helpeth the Itch, biting of mad dogs, and other venomous Beasts, and is good for Agues.

Wild Carrots are hot and dry in the second degree, expelleth Wind, provoketh Urine and causeth lust, they are good for the Dropsy, Cholick, Stone, for running sores and ulcers, the seed of them worketh the same effects as the roots do.

Caraway-seeds are hot and dry in the third degree, hath a moderate sharp quality, whereby it breaketh wind, provoketh urine; the seeds are good for Colics in the Head and Stomach.

Celandine is hot and dry in the third degree, the Juice of it put into the Eyes cleareth them from Films and Cloudiness which darkeneth the Sight; it is good in Old filthy creeping Ulcers to stay their Malignity of fretting and running, and to cause them to heal the more speedily: It heals also Tettars, Ringworms and Spreading Cankers, the powder of it mixed with Brimstone killeth the Mange, it is good taken inwardly for the Yellows, and openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall.

The lesser *Celandine* called *Pilewort* is hot and dry, and more biting and hotter then the greater and cometh nearest in Faculty in the Crow-foot, it is good taken inwardly for the Farcin and to be applied outwardly for the same disease.

The Ordinary *Centaury* Purgeth Choleric and gross Humors, openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, helpeth the Yellows, killeth Worms, is good for Cramps and Convulsions against venomous Beasts, it cleanseth foul Ulcers, and killeth Spreading Scabs: all the *Centaury*s are much of one and the same Nature, only take this Observation that in Diseases of Blood use the red, if of Choler, use the Yel-

low, but if of Phlegm or Water the White is best.

Winter Cherries, the leaves are cool and are used in Inflammations, but not opening as the Berries and Fruit are which draw down the Urine and expel the Gravel and stone out of the Reins, Kidneys and Bladder, it is also good for all Impostumes in them, likewise to cleanse them, and is good for bloody and foul Urine.

Chervil is of temperate heat and moderate dryness, but not so much as the Parsley. it warms the Stomach and is good to dissolve Congealed Blood in the body, it is good for the Stone, the wilde Chervil applied dissolveth Swellings in any part of the Body.

Sweet Chervil or *Sweet Cicely*, the Roots warmeth the Stomach oppressed with Wind and Phlegm, and is good for the Consumption of the Lungs, it is good against the Plague, the Juice of it is good to heal Ulcers.

Chest-nut-tree, the Fruit is dry and binding, and is neither hot nor cold, but in a mean between both, the inner Rind that covereth the Nut is of so binding a quality, that it will stop any Lask or Looseness whatsoever, and likewise the bloody Flux.

Earth Chest-nuts are hot and dry in quality, and also binding in quality, but the seed is hotter, they provoke Lust exceedingly, the seed provoketh Urine.

Chick weed is cold and moist and of a waterish substance, it cooleth without binding, and is good for all Swellings and Impostumes whatsoever, I ch, Scabs, Cramps, and is good for Ulcers and Sores in the Privy Parts.

Bastard Chick-weed is like to the other in Vertue and Operation.

Cinquesoyl or *Five-leaved Grass*, the Roots of it are dry in the third degree and without biting, for they have very little heat and sharpness, it is good given inwardly for Agues and to cool the heat of Pestilential Feavers, the Juice of it drunk for certain days together, Cureth the Quinsie and Yellows; it is good for the falling sickness, Cough of the Lungs, the Roots boyled in Vineger is good for all hard Swellings, Knots and Kerne's, and Lumps growing in any part of the Flesh, and all Inflammations, and *St. Antonies Fire*, and all sorts of running and foul Scabs, and is good for Ruptures or Burstings used with other things taken inwardly or outwardly applied, and is good likewise for to stay bleeding of Wounds inwardly taken or outwardly applied.

Garden-Clary or more properly *Clear eye*, is hot and dry in the third degree,

degree, the seed put into the eyes doth clear them of Motes, and takes out the red spots out of them; it is good for swellings, and draweth forth splinters and thornes out of the flesh; the powder of the root put up the Nose purgeth the Head and Brain of much Rheum and corruption; It is a great strengthner of the back, the Juice of it drinke in Ale or Beer expelleth the secundine.

Wilde Clary is hotter and drier then the *Garden Clary*, the seeds provoke lust, warms the stomach, scatters congealed blood in any part of the body, and helps dimness of sight, being put into the eye, and there let it remain till it drop out of it self, and it will cleanse the eyes from putrified matter, and by often using of it will take off a Film.

Cleavers or *Goose-grass* is moderately hot and dry, and somewhat of thin parts; it is good for the biting of any venomous beast, for the Yellows; it stayeth Lasks, bloody Fluxes and bleeding wounds, being bruised and laid to them, as also to close up green wounds; the powder of the herb dried and strewed upon old filthy Ulcers helpeth them, and being boiled with Hogs-grease helpeth all hard swellings about the Throat, being anointed therewith. It is a great cleanser of the blood and strengthner of the Liver.

Clowns wound-wort is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, and is a most excellent wound-herb for all green wounds, and is a stancher of blood, and will dry up fluxes and humors in old fretting Ulcers and Cankers that hinder the healing of them; A Syrup made of the Juice of it is inferiour to none for inward wounds, Ruptures of Veins, and pissing of blood.

Cocks-head, *red Fitching* or *Medick Fitch*, the green leaves bruised and laid as a Plaister disperleth knots or kernels in the flesh, and being dried and taken in Wine helpeth the Strangury, and being anointed with it provoketh Sweat; it is a good food for Cattel to make them give good store of milk, so is *Alder* and *Medick Fitch*.

Columbines are thought to be temperate, between heat and moisture, the leaves are used in Lotions for sore Mouths and Throats, the seed openeth the obstruction of the Liver, and is good for the Yellows.

Colts-foot, the leaves of it while it is green have a drying quality, and are somewhat cold, but the dried leaves are not so biting; they are good for wheezings and short-windedness, Agues, Inflammations and Swellings, *St. Antonies Fire* and burnings.

Comfrey is cold and dry, and of an earthly quality, the use of this is the same with *Clowns wound-wort*; the great *Comfrey* helpeth a bloody

bloody urine, and is good for all inward wounds, bruises, hurts and Ulcers of the lungs, is good for the falling or shedding of the seed, and is good made into an Ointment for all pains and old aches.

Coral-wort cleanseth the bladder, and provoketh urine, expels the Gravel and Stone, and easeth pains in the sides and bowels; it is good for inward wounds, especially for those in the Breast and Lungs, and is good for outward wounds made up in an Ointment; it stops Fluxes, and is good to dry up the watery humour that is in Ulcers, that hinder their Cure.

Corral bindeth and meanly cooleth, and is very effectual against issues of blood, and easeth the difficulty of staling.

Cosmary or *Alecof*, or *Balsam herb*, is hot and dry in the second degree, and provoketh urine as well as Maudlin; it purgeth choler and phlegm, and is good for Agues, and dries up all thin Rheums from the head and stomach.

Of *Cud-weed* or *Cotton-weed*, their kinds are of a binding and drying quality, and are good for defluations of Rheums from the head, and to stay all Fluxes of blood whatsoever; it helpeth the bloody Flux; and is good for inward and outward wounds, hurts and bruises, and is good for burstnes, the Wormes and old and filthy Ulcers.

Crabs-Claws is a great strengthner of the Reins; it is good for St. *Anthones* Fire, and all inflammations and swellings in wounds, and an Ointment made of them is good to heal them. It is a most excellent thing for bruised Kidneys, and upon that account pissing blood:

Winter-Cresses is hot and dry in the second degree, the seed causeth urine, and drives forth gravel, and helps the strangury; the Juice of them made up into the forme of an Ointment, with Wax, Oyl and Turpentine, cleanseth foul ulcers.

Black Cresses, the seed are of a fiery temperature, and doth exterate and make thin, they strengthen the brain, and is little inferiour to Mustard-seed, and are good to stay those Rheums that fall down from the Head upon the Lungs; It is good likewise for the Yellows and the pain in the Hip

Scarica-Cresses are hot and dry in the fourth degree, like to Garden-Cress, both in smell and taste; they are good to put into a Poultice to help all old pains and griefs in the Hips or Joynts, and other parts of the body that is hard to be cured.

Garden-Cresses are sharp and biting, and therefore it is hot and dry whilst it is young and tender, the seeds are much more biting then the **H**erb, and is hot and dry almost in the fourth degree, and is good for pains in the Hip and hard Swellings and Inflammation.

Dock-Cresses are of nature hot and somewhat obsterfive and cleansing, the Juice of them is good for Ulcerated Sores.

Water-Cresses are hot and dry, they cleanse the Blood and Humors, seive in all other uses in which Brook-Lyme is available, as to break the Stone, and to provoke Urine and cleanse Ulcers.

Cross-wort is of a binding and drying quality, and is a most Excellent Wound Herb both inwardly taken and outwardly applied, it sendeth forth Ph'egm out of the Stomach, and is good for Ruptures and Burstneis.

Crow-foot is a Fiery hot Herb not fit to be given inwardly unless it be corrected, it will draw a Llister as well as Cantharides.

Cuckow-pint or *Wake-Robin* is hot and dry in the third degree, it is good given against the Plague or Poyson bring mixed with Vineger, it is good for short-windedness and Cough of the Lungs, it is good to provoke Urine, is good for the Itch, Ulcers, and to take away the Pin and Web in the Eye.

Calamus is of a horheating quality saith *Dioscorides*, but *Gallen* & *Pliny* affirms that they have thin and subtil Parts both hot and dry, it provoketh Urine, expelleth Poyson, and is good for inward Bruises, and the Juice of it strained with Honey taketh away the dimness of the Eyes.

Corneslag is of force to waste, consume and dry, as also of a subtil and drying quality, being stamped with Frankincense and Wine draweth forth Splinters out of the Flesh, it is likewise good for hard Swellings.

Cowslips of *Jerusalem* is of the temperature of great Comfrey, and is somewhat more drying and binding.

Coloquintida is hot and dry in the latter end of the second degree, and therefore it Purgeth, Cleanseth and openeth, and performeth all those things that bitter things doth, but that the strong quality that it hath, is as *Gallen* saith, of more force then all the rest of the Operations, therefore it is not rashly to be used but upon some desperate Diseases.

Cranes-bill is cold and somewhat dry with some binding quality, it hath power to joyn and sodder together, and is therefore good for Burstneis and broken Bones.

The seed of *Garden-Cumin* is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath also a binding quality, and is good for the Wind, the Chest and Lungs, and all Raw Humors, and is good to put into Plaisters and Poul-tices for Swellings.

The seed of *Cockle* is hot and dry in the latter end of the second de-gree, and is good against the Yellows.

Camcock is hot in the third degree, it cutteth and maketh thin the Bark of the Root given in white-Wine causeth Urine, and breaketh the Stone, and drive it forth.

Cypres, the Fruit and Leaves are dry in the third degree, and Astrin-gent, the Nut being stamped and drunk in Wine stoppeth the Lask and bloody Flux.

Cassia Fistula or *Pudding Pipe*, the Pulpe is moist in the latter end the third degree, it gently Purgeth Cholerick Humors and slimy Phlegm.

Cockenele is given alone, and mixed with other things in malignan t diseases, as Pestilential Fevers, and the like.

Cynamon hath power to warm and is of thin Parts, it is also dry and Astringent, it breaketh Wind, provoketh Urine, and is good against the fretting pains of the Guts and entrails, proceeding of cold Causes.

Cloves are hot and dry in the third degree, they strengthen the Sto-mach, Liver and Heart, provoketh Urine, the Oyl of them taketh away the Pin and Web in the Eye.

China is thought to be moderately hot and dry, it strengthens the Liver, removes the Dropsie, Cures Malignant Ulcers and Scabs, and is good in a Consumption.

Copperas are of two sorts, green and white, they are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger, they are great dryers up of evil Humours, being Outwardly applied they kill likewise Scurfs and Scabs.

Cosm hath an heating and attenuating quality, it is good to help Strains, Convulsions and Cramps, killeth Worms, and is good against the biting of Vipers, and against windiness in the Stomach.

Calasonia or *Colosonia* doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth Conglutinate things that are separated.

Camphora is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree, and preserveth the Body from putrifaction and bindeth Humors, it is good against Poyson, Plague and Feavers.

Cantharides are certain *Spanish Flies* which are hot and dry in the third degree, they increase Lust taken inwardly, and being applicd outwardly

Outwardly to any part of the Body they will raise Blisters.

Cerdamonium is hot, and extenuateth Humors, and being mixt with Vineger killeth Scabs.

Castorum is hot and dry and purgeth much.

Cernisa is a white Ointment made of Oyl and white Lead; It is cold and dry in the second degree, and is a great healer and shealer of Scabs.

Cito or *Cisto* is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons or *Cithrons* are cold and moist in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

Camfery is cold and conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against Ruptures.

Costro or *Cossa*, being bitter, is hot and healeth Ulcers.

Cane-ried is hot and dry in the third degree.

D.

Daisies are cold and moist, being moist in the end of the second degree, and cold in the beginning of the same. They are good for Wounds in the Breast, and therefore fitting to be made into Oyls, Ointments and Plaisters, as also into Syrups; the great and wild ones is a very good Wound-herb, and the distilled water of them both is good to refresh the inward parts, and to allay the heat of choler; they are good for ulcers, swelling, kernels, bruises by falls, Ruptures, burstings and all Inflammation.

Dandelion, vulgarly called *Piss-a-beds*, is like in temperature with *Succory*, that is to say, of wilde *Inarve*; it is cold, but it drieth more, and doth withal cleanse and open, by reason of the biting quality it hath and therefore is good for the obstructions of the Liver, Gall, Spleen and Yellows; the distilled water of it is good to allay the heat of Pestilential Feavers, and to wash Sores.

Darnel is hot in the third degree, red Darnel drieth with sharpness. The meale of it is good to stay Gangrenes, Cankers and putrid sores; It killeth Ring-wormes and scall Scabs; if it be used with Salt and Radish-roots, with Brin-stone and Vineger, it dissolveth knots and kernels, and being boiled with Wine, Pigeons dung and Linseed, dissolveth those that are hard to be dissolved; Darnel-meal draweth forth Splinters and broken bones, being applied as a Poultice; the red Darnel boiled in Wine stayeth the Lask and bloody Flux, and all other Fluxes of blood.

D II is hot in the end of the second degree, and dry in the beginning

of the same, or in the end of the first degree; it provoketh urine, and is good against windiness; it is good to ease swellings and pains.

Devils-bit is somewhat bitter, and is of a hot and dry temperature, and that in the latter end of the second degree; it is good against the Plague and all Pestilential diseases; or Poisons, Feavers, and biting of venomous beasts; It is good for bruises either inward or outward; it is good to expel Wind, drive forth Wormes. The distilled Water of it is good for green wounds, old sores, and cleanseth the body inwardly and the Seed outwardly from Sores, Scuffs and Itches.

Ducke, all of them are generally cold a little and moderately, and some more. They do all of them dry, but not a'ter one manner, yet some are of opinion that they are dry in the third degree: The red Duck cleanseth the Liver, but the yellow is the best to take when the blood is afflicted with choler. The seeds of most of the kinds do stay Lasks and Fluxes of all sorts; they are good for the Itch and breaking out of the skin, if it be bathed therewith.

Dodder is of the nature of the Herb on which it groweth; is more dry then hot, and that in the second degree; It is a Purger of Choler and Phlegm from the Head, Obstructions of the Liver, Gall and Yellows.

Dogs-grass, *Quich-grass* or *Couch-grass*, opens Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, stopping of Urine, and easeth the pains of the belly, inflammations; and wasteth the stones in the Bladder, and ulcers thereof. Also being boiled the seed doth more provoke urine, and stayeth the Lask: it is a good remedy against all diseases coming of stoppage.

Doves-foot or *Cranes-bill*, is cold and somewhat dry, with some binding quality: it is good for the Wind, Cholick and Stone, the decoction thereof in Wine is a good Wound-drink for inward wounds, hurts or bruises; and is good to cleanse and heal outward sores, ulcers, fistulae and green wounds, and is excellent for Ruptures.

Ducks-meat is cold and moist in a sort in the second degree; it is good for inflammations and St. *Antonies* Fire.

Dragons is under *Mars*, and therefore the best way to use it is after it is distilled, and then the water of it cleanseth all internal parts of the body, and so it doth the external, from scuffs and scabs, and being dropped into the Eye taketh away the Pin and Web, and is good against Pestilence and poison.

Dogs-tooth is of a very hot temperament, and of an excrementitious nature.

The roots of all the *Daffodills* are hot and dry in the third degree.

Dyars

Dyers-weed is hot and dry of Temperature, the Root as also the whole Herb heats and dries in the third degree, it cuts, attenuates, opens and digests; It is good for the biting of venomous beasts and poison, taken inwardly or applied outwardly.

Bastard Dittany is hot and dry in the second degree, and of a warming, attenuating and opening quality, and is good for the Stone in the Kidneys and Bladder.

Drop-wort or *Filipendula* is hot and dry in the third degree, opening, cleansing and a little binding; All the kinds of them have the same faculty, unless it be the pernicious Drop-wort; they are good against pains in the bladder, and break the stone.

Dates of all sorts whatsoever are hard of digestion, and cause the Head-ach, the worse sort be those that are dry and binding, as the Egyptian Dates, but the soft, moist and sweet is the less hurtful.

E.

Elder is of a drying quality, glewing and moderately digesting; it purgeth choler and phlegm, both the inward Rind and the Berries and the Dropsey; the Bark of the Root worketh more powerfully than either of them; it is good against the biting of any venomous beasts, the Juice of it asswageth the hot Inflammations of the Eyes, and all manner of Burnings and Scaldings being laid to the grievous place.

Dwarf Elder called *Dane-wort* and *Wall wort*, it is of Temperature hot and dry in the third degree, it doth waste and consume by Purging of Choler and Phlegm and Water, and is more powerful than the common Elder, and hath all the properties of it.

The *Elm-Tree*, the Leaves and Bark of it is moderately hot, with cleansing faculty, the Leaves bruised and applied to a green wound it is good to Cure a Scurfe, Ruptures, broken Bones, Swellings and Burnings.

Endive and *Succerie* are cold and dry in the third degree, and with somewhat binding, it is a fine cooling and cleansing Plant; the Garden *Endive* is colder, and not so dry and cleansing; the Juice or the water of it is good to cool the excessive heat of the Stomach and Liver, or any inflammation in any part of the body, and being applied outwardly it is good for ulcers, hard swellings, and pestilential sores.

Elecampare is hot and dry in the third degree, especially when it is dry, for being green and full of Juice it is full of superfluous moisture which somewhat abateth the heat and dry quality thereof; it is good

for Colds and Coughs, and to warm a cold stomach, Wind, short wind-
edness, Wheezing, Stone in the Bladder, resisteth Poison, the Plague,
Cramps, Convulsions, Wormes, Cankers, Fistulae.

Eringo or *Sea-holly* breedeth seed exceedingly, and is hot and moist;
it is good for the Yellows, Dropsy, Cholick, provoketh Urine, ex-
pelleth the stone; the roots bruised and applied outwardly is good for
the Farcin, or taken inwardly for the same disease; it is good for broken
bones, and to draw thornes out of the flesh; the Juice dropped into the
Ears helpeth the Impostumes in them; the distilled water of it is good
for all the purposes aforesaid.

Eye-bright is hot and dry, but yet more hot then dry; the Juice or
the water of it is good to help all infirmities of the eyes that cause dim-
ness.

Elusa is a herb like a sponge, and is hot in the fourth degree; it dri-
eth and cleanseth exceedingly, and of some is called *Wolfe-milk*.

Euphorbium is a Gum that is hot in the fourth degree; it drieth, pur-
geth, cleanseth and exulcerateth.

Excrusion is that which we call *Oxiration*, it is a certain composi-
on of *Aceto* and *Water*, and is good to allay swellings and tumors.

Eggs, the Whites are cold and the Yolks are hot, and doth strength-
en and incarnate, the shells beaten to powder and given in Beer or Ale,
is very good to expel the Stone out of the Bladder.

F.

Fern, both the kinds of them, male and female, are hot and dry,
and somewhat binding, their Vertues are both alike; the roots of
them are good to kill Wormes, the green leaves purge the belly of
cholerick humors; an Ointment made of the roots bruised with Hogs-
grease is good for the wounds in the flesh, the powder of them is good
to dry up the moisture in malignant ulcers.

The *Water Ferne* or *Osmond Royal* is hot and dry, but lesser then the
former, and hath all the Vertues the other hath, but more effectually,
and is good for wounds or bruises, and the like; the decoction thereof
being drunk or boiled in an Ointment or Oyl, as a Balsam or Balm, is
very good for bruises or bones broken and out of Joynt; it is good for
the Cholick; for Ruptures. The decoction of the root in Wine pro-
voketh Urine exceedingly, and cleanseth the bladder and passages
thereof.

Featherfew heateth, it is hot in the third degree, and dry in the se-
cond; it expelleth the Secundine being drunk. It is good for a Cough,
(d) and

and to Cleanse the Reigns of the Bladder, and to expel the Stone out of it. It purgeth phlegm and choler, is good for the Head-ach and Wind-cholick, and performeth all things that bitter things can do.

Fennel-seed is hot in the third degree, and dry in the first; it openeth obstructions and stoppings of the Bladder, and maketh the Stone to avoid by Urine. It is good for all manner of gross humors, and is good for the Liver and Lungs, and is of the same nature as Anniseeds are.

Hogs Fennel, the kinds of the herbs, especially the yellow sap of the Root, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the beginning of the third; it is good against Wind in the Belly and Stomach; it loosneth the belly gently, and purgeth Siege both by phlegm and choler.

Fennel-Gyant is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second, and is Astringent and binding, and is good for the bloody Flux

Filipendula or *Dropwort*, vide *Dropwort*.

Green Figs serve to ripen Tumors, soften and consume hard swellings, and are good for Purfieness, Cough and diseases of the Lungs; the Decoction of the leaves, and the place washed with it, is a most excellent Remedy for the leprosie, scurfs, scabs or running sores,

Fuss-balls do dry, and are good to lay to a gall'd back.

The yellow *Water-Flag* or *Flower-de-luce*, and all the kinds of them, are very Astringent, cooling and drying, and helps all Lasks and Fluxes, whether of blood or humours; it helps all foul ulcers, the Juice being applied to them.

Flax-weed or *Toad-Flax*, all the kinds of them are of the same temperature with wild *Snap- Dragons*, whereof they are kinds; it provokes Urine, opens the obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, helpeth the Yellows, expelleth poison, driveth forth the dead Foal, and is good to cleanse foul and cankerous Ulcers and Fistulaes.

Flea-wort, it is cold and dry, the Fryed-seed taken stayeth the Flux and Lask of the belly; the seed is good for hot Agues and burning Feavers, and other inflammations; It is good for the diseases of the Breast and Lungs caused by heat; it is good for the Head-ach and all hot Imposthumes and breakings out of the Skin; it is good for old pains in the Joynts &c.

Flix-weed drieth without any manifest sharpness of heat; It is good for Lasks and bloody Fluxes, and for all Issues of blood whatsoever; it is good for broken bones to consolidate them together, it heals all sores and putrified ulcers.

Flower-de-luce is hot and dry in the third degree; it purgeth choler and tough phlegm, helpeth the Yellows and Dropley; it easeth the pains

pains in the belly, and is good for the Liver and Spleen; it is good for Cramps, all manner of Poison, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Cholick, and is good to comfort all cold Joynts and Sinews, and is good for Ulcers and Fistulaes.

Fluellin or *Lluellin* is of a binding quality, and is good for hot swellings, wounds, ulcers and cankers, and is good to stop a Lask and bloody Flux.

Fox-Gloves, in that they are bitter are hot and dry, with a certain cleansing quality: the Juice of it is good to heal green wounds and old Sores, to cleanse, dry and heal them: it purgeth the body of tough Phlegm, and is good to open obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, is good for the Farcin, and other breakings out in the Skin.

Fumitory is cold and somewhat dry of operation, and cleanseth by urine. It is good for the Liver and Spleen, Yellowes, Stavers, Plague, sore Mouths and Throat, and all manner of breakings out in the skin.

The *Furz-bush* or *Furzen bushes* are hot and dry of Complexion, and is good to open obstructions of the Liver and Spleen: the seeds are good to cleanse the Reins from Gravel or Stones, provokes urine, and is good against the Yellowes.

Frankincense hath power to heat and bind, saith *Dioscorides*, it is good for Wounds Old and New, and also for Ulcerst.

Flax or *Line* the seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and Mollifieth.

Fitches are hot in the first and dry in the second degree, and they do open and cleanse, see Obliban m.

Herb Frankincense the seeds and roots are hot and dry in the second degree, and are of a digesting, dissolving and Mundifying quality.

Felt-wort or *Baldmony* the Roots are hot, cleansing and Scouring, some say it is likewise binding and of a bitter Taste.

Fennegreek is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, and is a Loosener of the body, and is good for Colds.

G

Gentian Felt-wort or *Baldmony*, the Vertues of it cannot be better described then above It resists Poyson, Pestilence, strengthens the Stomach, the powder of the dried Root is good against the biting of a Mad Dog, or any other venomous Beast, opens Obstructions of the Liver, it is good taken outwardly against bruises by falls, provokes Urine exceedingly, is good for Cramps, it expectorates tough Phlegm, and kills Scabs, and all manner of fretting sores and ulcers, killeth worms, is good for the Farcey and Yellowes taken inwardly.

Garlick is very sharp, and hot and dry in the fourth degree, it causeth urine, is good against the biting of a mad dog, and any other venomous creature, purgeth the head from tough steam, killeth Wormes, helpeth the Lethargy, is a Preservative against the Plague, is good for foul Ulcers, breaketh Impostumes and other swellings, and for all those diseases the Onion is also effectual, but they are better applied outwardly then received inwardly, because they have their Vices as well as their Vertues.

Clove-Gilliflowers are so temperate, that no excess, neither in heat, cold, driness nor moisture can be perceived in them; they are great strengthners both of the brain and heart, and are very good for to be put into Cordials for hot Pestilential Feavers, and expel Poison.

Stock Gilliflowers are referred to the Wall-flower, although in vertue they are much inferiour.

Garden Germander is of thin parts, and hath a cutting faculty; it is hot and dry almost in the third degree; it opens and cleanseth, for it opens the obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and difficulty of urine; It is good against Poison, Ulcers, Cramps, Agues, falling-sickness, Head-ach, Yellows and Wormes.

Water Germander is hot and dry, and hath a bitter taste, harsh and earthly.

Stinking Gladwin is hot and dry in the third degree, it purgeth choler and phlegm, the powder or Juice of it put into the head draweth forth much corruption, and being given inwardly is good for Cramps: It is good for the Strangury, provoketh urine; the Roots are very good in wounds, and draweth forth Splinters or thornes out of the flesh the roots boiled in vinegar dissolveth any hard swelling or tumor; the Juice of the leaves and roots heal the Marge, and all other running and spreading Scabs.

Golden Rod is hot and dry in the second degree, and cleanseth with a certain astringion or binding quality, and is good for the Stone in the Reins and Kidneys; it is good taken for inward bruises, and outwardly applied for outward ones; it stayeth bleeding in any part of the body, and of wounds also, the fluxes of humors, the bloody flux, Ruptures. It is an excellent wound-herb, inferiour to none, either taken inwardly or outwardly applied, and is good for all sores and ulcers whatsoever, whether they be in the mouth or throat.

Gout-wort Cures all manner of pain in the Hip or Joynt-aches,

Gromel, the seed of it is hot and dry in the second degree; it is good

break the stone, and to avoid it out of the reins and bladder by urine and helpeth the strangury.

Winter-green is a very good wound herb, and is good taken inwardly, being bruised for Ulcers in the Kidneys or Neck of the Bladder; it stayeth also Fluxes whether of blood or humors, as the Lask, bloody Flux, bleeding wounds, and taketh away inflammations, and is good for foul ulcers, cankers and fistulaes.

Groundsel hath mixt faculties, it cooleth and digesteth; it is a universal Medicine coming from heat, whatsover they be; it is good against the Yellows, Falling-sickness, provokes urine, expels Gravel in the Reins and Kidneys, is good for griping in the bowels and cholick, and dissolveth any hard knobs and kernels in the body.

English Galingale hath a heating quality, and some do reckon it to be hot and dry in the second degree: the greater Galingale roots are hot and dry in the third degree, but the lesser are somewhat hotter; it is good for cold griefs in the stomach, strengthens the brain, and comforteth the Sinews.

Ginger heateth and drieth in the third degree, and is good for the stomach, answering the effects and qualities of long Pepper.

Glass-wort is hot and dry, the ashes of it are both drier and hotter, even to the fourth degree, and have a Costick and burning quality.

Green-weed or *bare Broom* are hot and dry in the second degree; they are thought to be in vertue equal with the Broom, the Dyars use it very much to dy withal.

Galls are dry in the third and cold in the second; they cleanse and mundifie, they keep back Rheums and such like Fluxes, and do li dry up the same, and are good to stop Lasks and bloody Fluxes.

Grains of Paradise are hot and dry in the third degree, they comfort the weak, cold and feeble stomach, and helpeth the Ague and Farcin.

Gum Lacke is hot in the second degree, and comforteth the heart and liver, and openeth obstructions, expelleth urine, and is good for the Dropsiey.

Fresh Grease is hot and moist in the first degree, and mollifieth, ripeneth and healeth Wounds, Imposthumes and Ulcers.

Galbanum is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it softneth, stoppeth and draweth away evil humours, and is good against Colds

H.

Hearts-ease is obscurely cold, but more evidently moist, and of a fat and slimy Juice, like that of the Mallow, for which cause it moisteneth

and suppleth, but not so much as that, it is good for the Inflammations of the Lungs and Breast, Scabs and Itch.

Hearts-tongue is of a binding drying faculty, strengthens the Liver, and is good for the Lask and bloody Flux, and is good against the biting of Serpents.

Hawk-weed, all the kinds of them are somewhat dry and somewhat binding, and is good for the heat of the Stomach, Fits of the Ague, the Wind, provoketh Urine, is good for the biting of venomous Beasts, the Dropsie, the Wind Cholick, and is good to digest thin Phlegm from the Chest and Lungs, it is good for Ulcers, Burnings, Inflammations, and St. *Anthones* Fire, and being made into a Poultice is good for Cramps and pains in the Joynts.

The *Hawthorn-Berries* are very binding, therefore are good to stop a Lask, the Berries dried and drunk in white-Wine is very good against the Stone and Dropsie, the seed bruised after it is cleared from the Down and drunk, is good for the tormenting pains of the Belly.

Hemp is hot, the seed consumeth Wind, it is good for the Yellows, openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, and is good for hot Inflammations, the seed looseneth the Belly, srowed amongst a Horses Provender, and allayeth the troublesome Humours of the Bowels.

Hedge-Hysop is drying, and is good Outwardly applied to pains in the Hips or Joynts, and is good to cleanse old and filthy Ulcers.

Herb-Robert is good for the Stone, and to stay all Inward Flowings of Blood, and is a great healer of green Wounds, and is good for Old Ulcers.

Herb True-love or *One-berry* is exceeding cold, and the Leaves or Berries is good to expell Poyson of all sorts, as also the Plague and Pestilence, is good for the Cholick, green Wounds, and to cleanse old and filthy Ulcers, and is good to discuss all Swellings in any part of the Body.

Hore-bound the white and the black are hot in the second, and dry in the third degree, it helpeth the Obstructions of the Liver, openeth and Purgeth, and is good against Colds, Consumptions, short-windedness, an expeller of Poyson, and a cleanser of old Sores and Ulcers, cleareth the Eye-sight, and snuffed up the Nostrils is good for the Yellows.

Horse-tail is of a binding Faculty, and doth moderately dry, and is good

Cure Wounds, nay, though the Sinews be cut asunder, and is good not only for all Inward Ulcers of the Bladder, but all Outward Sores, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Stone and Strangury, and is good for all Asks and bloody Fluxes, and Pissing of Blood, or bleeding at the Nose.

Houfseek or *Sengreen* are of a cooling Nature, and is good for all inward heats as well as outward, as in the Eyes and other parts of the Body, it cooleth all hot Inflammations, as St. *Antonies* Fire, Scaldings and Burnings, Cankers, Tetters, Ring-wormes, &c.

Hounds-tongue, but especially the Root is cold and dry, it is good for Coughs and short-windedness, the biting of Mad Dogs, and is good for green Wounds, and is good inwardly for the *Farcey*.

Holly-kolm or *Hulver-bush*, the Berries are hot and dry and of thin parts, they expell Wind, they purge the Body of gross and Phlegmatick Humours eaten not dried, but if they be dried and beaten to powder and eaten, they bind the Body and stop Fluxes and the Lask, the Bark of the Tree and Leaves are good in Fomentations for broken Bones and Members out of Joynt.

Heath-bush hath a digesting Faculty, the Flowers and leaves are good to lay upon the Biting of venomous Beasts, and the Bark and leaves may be used for the same Causes as *Turmerick* is.

Hearts horn is dry, yet it strengtheneth very much, and expelleth Urine.

Honey is hot and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth the Stomach and Intrails, stoppeth Humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

Hyacinths do little cleanse and bind, the seeds are dry in the third degree, but the Roots are dry and cold in the first.

I

St. Johns-wort is hot and dry, being of substance thin, and is a most excellent Herb for inward Bruises, or Hurts, or outward Wounds, it is good to open Obstructions, dissolve Swellings, and strengthen those parts that are weak and Feeble, it is good for bleedings inward or outward, for the biting of any venomous Creature, and is good to cast out the Stone in the Bladder by Urine.

Ivy that groweth upon Walls or upon Trees, it hath a certain thick and cold substance, and somewhat biting, the Flower of

of it is good for the bloody Flux and Lask; the leaves or flowers outwardly applied, is good for the Nerves and Sinews; the yellow Berries of them are good for the Yellows, and killeth the Wormes, is good for the Plague, provokes urine, breaks the stone; It is good for to cleanse foul ulcers, sores and green wounds, or for burnings and scaldings. The Juice of the berries and leaves squirted up the Nose, purgeth the Head from Rheum and cureth the Ulcers therein, and is good given for a Surfeit.

The *Juniper Bush* is hot and dry in the third degree, the Berries are also hot but not so dry; they are good against Poison, Plague, the biting of any venomous creature, provokes urine, is good for the Dropsy, strengthens the stomach, expels Wind; they are good for the Cough, shortness of breath, Consumptions, pains in the Belly, Ruptures, Cramps, and strengthens all the Members of the body; A Lye made of the Ashes of the Wood, and the Body bathed therewith is good for the Mange, and all manner of Scabs, the Berries break the Stone and brings a Horse to a stomach, and is good for the Falling-sickness.

Jack by the *Hedge* or *Sauce* alone is hot and dry, but much lesser then *Garlick*, the seed boyled in Wine is a good remedy against the Wind-Cholick, or Stone, the green Leaves are good to heal Ulcers.

Iris is a Root that is hot and dry, it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against Colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

Iron-rust is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and retaineth evil humors.

K

Knot-Grass all the kinds of them are cold in the second degree, and dry in the third, and are of a binding quality, it is good to cool the heat of the Stomach, and to stay any Flux of Blood or Humors, as Lask, bloody Flux, it is good for the falling of the seed, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Strangury, and expelleth the Gravel and Stone, it killeth Wormes (is good to cool all manner of Inflammations, and to expell the Poyson or Venom of any Venomous Creatures, it helpeth Gangreenes, Fistulaes, Cankers, and Ulcers, and is good for fresh and green wounds, and to strengthen broken Joynts and Ruptures.

Kidney-wort, or *Wall penny-royal*, or *Wall-penny-wort*, the distilled water of it given, is good to allay all hot inflammations of the Stomach and Liver, or Bowels, and being outwardly applied, is good for outward Heats, Inflammations, and *St. Antonies Fire*, and healeth Sore Kidneys,

corn and fretted by the Stone, provoketh Urine, is good for the Drop sic, it helpeth the bloody Flux, and Cureth green Wounds, and stayeth their Bleeding.

Knape-weed helpeth to stay bleeding at the Mouth and Nose, and other outward parts, and all inward bleedings of Veins, and also the Flux of the Belly and inward Bruises, it is good for Ruptures taken inwardly, or outwardly applied. it dryeth up the moisture of all Cankerous and Running Sores, and hea ing them up gently.

Knee-holm or *Butchers broom* the Roots which are chiefly used, are hot and meanly dry with a thinnels of Essence, the decoction of it provoketh Urine, breaketh the stone, and driveth forth gravel; it raiseth up tough phlegm that sticketh at the Chest and Lungs, and the Berries of it is good for the Yellows.

L.

Ladies-Mantle is good for Inflammations and to stay Bleedings, Fluxes of all sorts, and helpeth Ruptures and Bruises, it is one of the best Wound-herbs that is both inwardly taken and outwardly applied.

Lavender is hot in the first and dry in the second degree, it is good for all the Grievs of the Head and Brain, that proceed of a cold cause, it strengthens the Stomach, and freeth the Liver and Spleen from Obstructions, expelleth the dead Foal and Secundine, the Flowers distilled and so used, are good to cause Urine, and to ease the pain of the Cholick, it is good for the Falling Sicknes.

French Lavender hath a cold and earthly substance, by reason whereof it bindeth, it is of force to take away Obstructions, to extenuate and make thin, to cleanse and to strengthen not only all the Intrails, but the whole body also.

Sea Lavender is very Astringent or Binding the seed beaten to powder and given in wine or Beer helpeth the Cholick and Strangury, and stayeth all Fluxes of Blood.

Lavender-Cotton is hot and dry in the third degree, it resisteth Poyson, and helpeth the biting of any venomous Creature, the powder of it is good for the Mattering of the Yard, it killeth the Worms and Scabs.

Ladies-Smocks or *Cuckoo-Flowers*, all the sorts of them are hot and dry in the second degree they differ not much from the Water-Cresses, they provoke Urine, break the Stone, and warm a cold Stomach.

(c)

Lettice

Lettice is a cold and moist herb, but not in the extream degree of Cold; they loosen the belly being boiled. It is good for the pain of the bowels coming by choler, they are naught for short-windedness and the Lungs.

Water-Lilly, the seed of it hath a drying force, the leaves and flowers of it are cold and moist; and cool all inflammations both inward and outward; the seed as well as the fruit stayeth Fluxes of blood or humors either inward or outward, and is good for the mattering of the yard.

Lilly of the Valley, called *Convul Lilly* or *May-Lilly*, the distilled water of it helpeth all inflammations in the eyes, and the Pin and Web.

White Lillies, which are the *Garden Lillies* are hot, and partly of subtil substance; but the root is dry in the first degree, and hot in the second, they expel poison, and are very good in Pestilent Feavers. An Ointment made of the Roots with Hogs grease is good for Scabs, and unites Sinews when they are cut, and is a great Clesner of Ulcers, the Oyl of it is good to bring any Head-swelling to ripeness to break.

Licoris is very familiar to the body of Man or Beast. It hath a certain binding quality, which warmeth and cometh nearest of all to a mean temperature, and because it is sweet it is meanly moist. It is good for Cough, shortness of breath, and for all the Grievs of the Breast and Lungs; it is good for the Strangury, heat of urine, the fine powder of it blown into the Eye helpeth the Pin and Web.

Common Liver-wort is good for all the diseases of the Liver, both to cool and to cleanse it, and helpeth all inflammations in any part of the body; the Yellows, mattering of the Yard; it is good for Testicular Sores and Scabs.

Loose-strife or *Willow-herb* is good for all manner of bleedings, inward and outward, as bloody fluxes and bleeding wounds.

Louage is hot and dry in the third degree. It openeth and digresteth humors, provoketh urine, warmeth a cold stomach, is good for the pain in the belly coming by wind, resisteth poison, is good for the Quinsy, taketh away the redness of the Eyes.

Lung-wort, which is a kind of Moss growing on sundry sorts of Trees, is good for Coughs, diseases of the Lungs both in Man and Beast, and is a most excellent remedy boyled in Beer for broken-winded horses.

Leeks, *Scallions* or *Onions* are hot and dry, and do attenuate and make thin, and loosen all evil humours in the body.

Unslack Lime is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it drieth and corrodeth.

Lime

Lawrel and *Bays* are hot and dry, they cleanse and mundifie.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it is very-austine, cleansing and piercing.

Lithargirio is of two kinds, one of the colour of Gold, the other of Silver; it is dry and bindeth, softeneth, incarnateth, cooleth and closeth up wounds. The golden colour is the best.

M.

The Root *Madder* which the Physicians and Dyars use, is disputed whether it bind or open; as it is of an obscure binding force, so it is of nature and temperature cold and dry; it is of divers thin parts, by reason whereof the colour doth easily pierce; it is good for inward bruises or outward bruises; it is good for the bloody flux, provokes urine, cures the yellows, by opening the obstructions of the Liver and Spleen.

White Maiden-Hair, all the kinds of them are dry, and maketh thin, and is between heat and coldness; it is good for a Cough, shortness of breath, the yellows, diseases of the Spleen, stoppage of urine and stone, (in all which diseases the Wall-Rue is as effectual) stayeth both bleedings and fluxes of the Stomach and belly, being green it looseth the belly, and avoideth choler and phlegm from the Stomach and Liver, cleanseth the Lungs and blood, and being boiled with Chamomel, dissolves knots, allayeth swellings, and dryeth up moist ulcers; the Lye made thereof is good to cleanse the skin from scabs, and from dry and running sores.

Golden Maiden-Hair hath all the vertues of the former.

Of *Mallows* and *Marsh-Mallows*, either of them hath a certain heat and moisture, and the leaves and roots of them boiled in water with Parsley and Fennel roots openeth the belly, and are good for hot Agues, they are used in Glisters, the Juice of them given is good for the Falling Sickness; the leaves bruised with honey, and laid to the eyes taketh away the inflammation of them; it is good against poison: A Poultice made of them, and applied, is good for all hard tumors, inflammations, imposthumes and swellings; it is good for scaldings and burnings, and for St. Anthonies Fire. *Marsh-Mallows* are more effectual in all the diseases before-mentioned, and in Decoctions and Glisters, to ease all pains of the body, making the Passages slippery for the stone to descend.

Maple-tree, the decoction of the Leaves and Bark strengthens the Liver, and to open obstructions of it and the Spleen, and to ease the pains proceeding thence,

Wild-Marjorem doth cut attenuate and make thin: dry and heat, and that in the third degree, strengthens the Stomach, helps the Cough, Consumption of the Lungs, cleanse the body of Choler, expelleth Poyson, and is good for the biting of venomous Beasts, helps the Dropfie, Scabs, Mange, Yellows.

Sweet-Marjorem is excellent good for all the infirmities of the Head, squirted up the Nose, and taken inwardly is good for to comfort a cold Stomach, and the Diseases th:reunto belonging, and being outwardly applied is good for the Obstruction of the Liver, and being put into an Oynment, it warmeth and comforteth the outward parts, as the Joynts and Sinews, for Swellings, and for places out of Joynt.

Marigolds are hot almost in the second degree, especially when they be dry, and are much of the Nature of Saffron, the Juice of the Leaves mingled with Vineger, & anoint a hot swelling with it asswageth it, they comfort the Heart and Spirits, and expelleth any Pestilent or Malignant quality that may annoy them.

Mustard-wort the Root is hotter then Pepper, and therefore good in all cold Diseases, or Grieffs of the Stomach and body, it is good for Rhume, shortness of breath and expelleth the Stone by Urine, casts out the dead Foal; it is good for the Dropfie, Cramps, Falling sickness, Poyson provokes Sweat, it cleanse and healeth all green Wounds.

Sweet Mandlin, the Vertues of it is the same with Cost-mary, or Ale-cost, and therefore I refer you unto Costmary for satisfaction.

Medlars are cold, dry and binding, the Leaves are of the same nature, they are good to stop all Fluxes of Blood inwardly given, and the dried leaves beaten to powder and strowed upon bleeding wounds, stayeth the bleeding of them, and healeth them up quickly, the Stones of them made into powder and given in white-Wine, wherein Parsley Roots hath lain infusing all night doth break the Stone in the Kidnies, and help to expell it.

Melilote or *Kings-Claver* is hot and dry in the first degree, it hath a certain binding quality, besides a wasting and ripening quality, it is good for spreading Ulcers, it is used to be put into Glisters, the Flowers of it with Chamomel, to expell Wind, and into Poulitisses to asswage Swellings, with the Juice of it with Oyl, Wax, Rosin and Turpentine, is made a most Sovereign and drawing Emplaister, the Herb boyled in Wine breaketh the Stone.

French and *Dogs Mercury* are hot and dry in the second degree, and hath

hath a cleansing faculty; the Juice of it purgeth choler and watery humors, it is good for waterish Eyes; it cleanseth the Breast and Lungs from phlegm, the Juice put up the Nostrils purgeth the Head of *Catarhs* and *Rheums*, helpeth the Yellows; it helpeth all Running Scabs, Tettars, Ring-wormes, and being applied as a Poultice allayeth all Swellings and inflammations, and given in Glisters it evacuates from the Belly all offensive humors. The Dogs Mercury, though it is less used, may serve to the same purposes to purge waterish humors.

Of all the *Mints*, *Spearmint* or *Heart-Mint* is the most wholesome, it hath a heating, binding and drying quality. The Juice taken in Vineger stayeth inward bleeding, dissolveth Impostumes being laid to with Barley Meal, and applied with Salt, helpeth the biting of a mad Dog; it is good in all manner of breakings out of the skin, and is good against Poison.

Nip or *Cat Mint* hath the same faculties with the other.

Horse Mint is hot and dry, it dissolveth wind in the Stomach, helpeth the Cholick and short windedness; it is good against the biting of venomous Beasts; the Farcy taken inwardly, and squirted up the Nostrils, purgeth the Head of evil humors.

Mistletoe, the leaves and berries are hot and dry, and of subtil parts, the Bird-lime doth mollifie hard knobs, tumors and impostumes, ripeneth and discusseth them, and being mixed with equal parts of Rosin and Wax, heals old Ulcers and Sores; *Mistletoe* bruised, and the Juice put into the eares, healeth the impostumes in them in a few days.

The *Mistle-Toe* of the Oak being given Cures the *Falling-sickness*.

Money-wort or *Herb Two-phace*; it is moderately cold, it stays Lasks and bloody Fluxes, Bleedings inwardly or outwardly, and is good for all Wounds inward or outward.

Moon-wort is cold and drying more then *Adders tongue*, and is good for all manner of wounds both inward and outward; it stayeth all inward bleeding, as veins broken, bloody Fluxes, and the like; it consolateth all fractures and dislocations; it is good for Ruptures; it is reported that it will unlock Locks, and unshoe Horses that tread upon it.

Tree-Moss is cold and binding, and is the more binding according to the nature of the Tree it grows upon; that of the Oak is the most binding, and is good to stay Fluxes and inward bleedings. *Moss* boiled in Milk with the powder of Anniseeds, Elecampane and Licoris, is most excellent Medicine for a Cold or Cough.

Ground-Moss is dry and astringent, without any heat or cold; It breaketh the stone, and driveth it forth by urine, being boiled in white-wine and given, and being boiled in water and applied, easeth all inflammations and pains coming of a hot cause.

Mother-wort is hot and dry in the second degree, by reason of the cleansing and binding quality. It is a vety great Comforter of the heart, provoketh urine, cleanseth the Chest from cold phlegm, and killeth the Wormes in the Belly; it warmes and dries up the cold humors in the body, and helps the Cramp and Convulsions of the Sinews.

Mouse-ear is hot and dry, of a binding quality, it is good for the yellows, it is good for the stone and pains in the bowels, and is a very good herb for inward or outward wounds; it is good for the Dropsie, and stayeth the Fluxes of blood both outward and inward; the Juice of it is good to stay the spreading of all fretting cankers and ulcers whatsoever.

Mugg-wort is hot and dry in the second degree, and somewhat binding, it expels the dead foal, it breaks the stone, and is good for stoppage of urine; the root made up with Hogs-grease to an Ointment, taketh away Wens and hard Knobs.

The *Mulberry-tree*; the *Mulberry* is of different parts, the ripe berries by reason of their slippery moisture, doth cleanse and open the body, the unripe fruit is cold and dry in the second degree; the Bark, but chiefly the Root is hot and dry in the third degree; the unripe fruit being binding is good to stop Lasks and bloody Fluxes, the Bark of the Root killeth the broad Wormes in the belly; the Juice made of the berries is good for inflammations and sores in the Mouth or Throat.

Mullein doth dry, the leaves are of a digesting and cleansing quality, the root is good against Lasks and Fluxes of the belly, it is good for buritnes, cramps and convulsions, for old Coughs; the Decoction of the root in red wine, or in water wherein steel hath been quenched, doth stop the bloody Flux, it opens the obstructions of the bladder and reins, the powder of the dried flowers is good for the pain of the colick; the Decoction of the roots and leaves are good to dissolve tumors, inflammations or swellings; the seed bruised in wine draweth forth thornes and splinters.

Common Mustard-seed doth heat and make thin, and is a Loosener of the belly; it also draweth forth, and is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it cleanseth the blood, strengthens a weak stowach, and heats it if cold.

and is very good for the head; it draweth forth splinters and bone out of the flesh, provokes urine, resisteth poison; it is good applied outwardly, to fetch out cold or any other pain of the Body and Joints and is good for all scurfs or wild scabs.

Hedge Mustard is good for diseases of the Chest and Lungs, and for Coughs, shortness of Breath, Yellows, and is used commonly in Glisters, the seed is good against poison or venom.

Millet is cold in the first degree and dry in the third, and is of a thin substance, the meal of it mixed with Tar, and applied to the biting of any venomous beast is good to take out the venom.

The *Myrtle-tree* consists of contrary substances, a cold earthenness, it hath a subtil heat and drieth; the leaves, fruit and Juice doth bind outwardly applied and inwardly taken: stayeth all issues of blood.

Mastic is good to draw forth splinters and nails out of the flesh, it bindeth and strengthneth weak parts, and is good for old or new strains.

Malva is cold and moist: it stoppeth, softeneth and mitigateth pain.

Malva viscus is very dry, it softeneth, looseneth and mitigateth.

Mace is dry in the third degree, without heat, and only bindeth, it is a comforter of the heart and spirits.

Manna is of equal temper, hot and dry, it openeth, mollifyeth and incarnateth.

Mariaton or *Mariaton* is a hot Unguent against all cold humors; it helpeth the grief of the Sinews, purgeth cold watery matters, and ripeneth tumours.

Marrow, of what kinde soever, is cold and moist, and mollifieth ulcers; now the best marrow is that of a Hart or old Stag, the next that of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the last that of a Goat.

Myrrhe is a sovereign Gum, it is hot and dry in the second degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth and cleanseth wounds; it is good against all colds, it killeth wormes, and helpeth Purfiness, for though it doth cleanse much, yet it doth not exasperate the Arteries, also it doth incarnate; it helps all diseases of the Lungs, the cholick, stops fluxes.

Morcosita or *Marcusita* is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth and melteth humors.

The fruit of the *Myrtle-tree* is dry in the third degree, it doth bind good, and loosen evil humors.

N.

Narwort or *Whilow-grass* is good for imposthumes in the Joynts.

Nurse

Nepe or *Car-wint*, is good for the Head-ach, coming of cold causes, Catarrhs, Rheumes; it is good for windedness of the stomach and belly, Colds, Coughs, and shortness of breath; the Juice given inwardly is good for bruises. the decoction of it is good to bathe Scabs with.

Nettles are of temperature dry, a little hot scarce in the first degree, they are of thin and subtil parts; the seed provoketh urine, and expelleth Gravel and Stone out of the Reins and Bladder; It is good against the biting of venomous beasts, biting of mad dogs; the Juice of them is good to cleanse Sores, Fistulaes and Wounds; and such as are fretting, corroding and eating Scabs and Muggines; it is good for to strengthen those places that are out of Joynt, and is good for Aches and Distractions of humours upon the Sinews. The seed of them is a most excellent thing to fatten a horse being strowed amongst his Provender.

Common Night-shade is wholly used to cool hot inflammations, either inwardly or outwardly, and is no way dangerous to use as the other Night shades are. It is good to wash a sore Mouth with, as also all corroding and fretting Ulcers and Fistulaes; A Cloth wet in the Juice, and applied to any swelling taketh it away; have a care you take not the deadly Night shade for this; if you know it not, you may let them both alone.

The roots of *Narcissus* or *Daffadill* are hot and dry in the second degree, and are of such wonderful qualities in drying, that they glew together great wounds, either in the flesh, veins, sinews or tendons, they have also a certain cleansing and attractive faculty. It taketh away the aches and pains in the Joynts, and stamped with Hogs-grease and Leaven bringeth to maturation hard Impostumes, and stamped with Darnel-meal and honey, draweth forth thornes and scabs out of any part of the body; the Juice of the Root drunk is good for the Cough and Cholick.

Neesing-root or *Neesing-wort* is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath been taken for a wilde kind of Pellitory of the wall.

Navil-wort or *Penny-wort* of the Wall is of a moist substance, somewhat cold, and of a certain obscure, binding quality. It cooleth, repelleth and driveth back, scoureth, consumeth and wasteth away.

Nutmeg is hot and dry in the second degree, and somewhat astringent; it breaketh wind, and is good for all cold diseases of the body.

Nutshells burnt are hot and dry, and do skin and stop the flux of matter.

Nastarium is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it burneth, draweth, melteth, and killeth wormes.

Nitrum is of the same nature as Salt-Peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O

The leaves and Bark of the Oak and Acorn-Cups do bind and dry in the third degree, being somewhat cold withal; the powder of the Bark or Cups stayeth all manner of Fluxes and Lasks, and stayeth the mattering of the yard; the Acorns procure urine, expel poison; the distilled water of the Oaken Buds are good taken inwardly, or outwardly applied, to assuage inflammations, and stop all manner of Fluxes. It is good in Pestilent and hot Feavers; it cooleth the heat of the Liver, breaketh the Stone of the Kidneys; the water found in old hollow Oaks, is good to anoint foul scabs.

Oats are naturally dry, they do dry, bind, cleanse and comfort all the inward parts, and is the only Simple that agrees with the Composition of a Horses Body, and therefore the Oyl of them is the only absolute and perfect Medicine that can be administered for any inward Sicknes, you are taught how to make it in my first Part.

Oaken Apples are hot and piercing, and much of the nature of Galls.

One-berry-Herb, *True-love*, or *Herb-Paris*, is very cold, whereby it represseth the rage and force of poison, both the Berries and powder of the Herb.

One-blade, half a dram of the Powder of the Roots is a Sovereign Remedy against the Plague, and is a very good Wound-herb.

Orchi, which is called *Dogs-bones*, they are hot and moist of operation, and provoke lust very much, and kill wormes.

Onions are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and do attenuate and make thin, they help the biting of a mad dog and other venomous creatures used with Honey and Rue, they kill wormes; the Juice of them is good for Burnings and Scaldings.

Orpins are cold and dry, and of subtil parts, and is seldom used inwardly, but is used outwardly to cool all heat or inflammations upon any hurt or wound, and is good for scaldings and burnings, the Juice of it and Sallet-Oyl being beaten together, and anointed therewith; And the Juice of it mixed with honey, and given down his Throat, you shall find it a better and sooner Cure then a Dogs-turd.

Orpimento is a kind of Metal, of which the Artificial is called *Art-nick*

nick is hot in the third degree and dry in the second, it Bindeth, Corrodeeth, Burneth and Fretteeth, and is a Corrosive.

Opopon x is a Gum that is hot in the third and dry in the second degree, it softneth and stayeth Humors, and is good against all Colds.

Opium is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a Liquor made with Poppy, dried and mixed with Saffron, and doth astonish and provoke sleep.

Olibanum is hot and dry in the second degree, and warmeth, bindeth, closeth and incarnateth wounds.

Oyl of Olives or *Sallet-Oyl*, is of a very temperate Nature, and changeeth its quality according to the nature of the Simples mixed with it, it is a cleanser of the body by a gentle way of purging from Molten-grease, and expelleth Poison.

P.

Parsley is hot and dry but the seed is more hot and dry, which is hot in the second degree and dry almost in the third, the Root is of moderate heat, it provoketh Urine, and breaketh Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, and Looseneth the body by opening the Obstructions of the Liver, it breaketh the stone, expelleth poison and is good for the yellows.

Parsley-Piert or *Parsley Break-stone* is hot and dry, and of a cutting quality, it provokes urine, and breaks the stone, and helpeth the strangury.

Parsnip-Roots are moderately hot and more dry then moist, it provokes Lust though windy, provoketh urine, but the wilde Parsnip hath a more cutting, attenuating, cleansing and opening quality, and is of more use in Physick, it helpeth the biting of Venomous Creatures, or dissolveth wind in the stomach and bowels, the seed is of more use then the Root. Country people call them Madneps.

Cow-Parsnips, the seed of them are of a cutting quality, and is good for a Cough, short Windedness, falling sickness, yellows, the Root scraped upon a Fistula taketh away the hard skin growing thereon, the seed given cleanseth the Belly from tough Phlegm.

Pellitory of Spain is very hot and burning, and is the best purger of the Head that is from pains, the powder of it being blown up his Nostrils.

Pellitory of the Wall cleanseth and bindeth, it is good for an old and dry Cough, short-windedness, stone, gravel, wormes, and is put into Glisters to mitigate the pain coming by wind, it is good for the

Obstruction.

Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, it is good for a sore Throat, it alswageth hot swellings, Impostumes, burnings and scauldings by fire or water, or all other hot Tumors or Inflammations, it cleanseth foul rotten ulcers and scabs.

Penny-royal, both the sorts of it are of a drying Faculty and of subtil Parts, it maketh thin tough Phlegm, and warmeth any cold place where it is applied, it expelleth the dead Foal and secundine, it helpeth the biting of Venomous Creatures, it cleanseth foul Ulcers, it is good for Cramps, Convulsions of the Sinews, the Cough, Dropisie, and Yellows.

Peony Male and Female doth gently bind with a kind of sweetness, it is a little hot, but it is dry and of subtil parts, it is good for the Falling-sickness the Root being hung about the Neck and some of the Juice of it given inwardly, and is good for the night-Mare.

Pepper-wort or *Distander* is good for old pains and griefs in Joynts, and for scabs.

Perwinkle is hot in the second degree and somewhat dry and binding, it is good to stop Fluxes of Blood and all manner of bleeding inwardly and outwardly.

St. Peters-wort is of temperature hot and dry, and is of the same nature as *St. Johns-wort*, but somewhat weaker, it purgeth Cho'erick Humours, helpeth Old pains, and griefs, and burnings by Fire.

Pimpernel both the sorts of them are of a drying Faculty without biting, and somewhat of a drawing Faculty, in so much that it will draw forth splints out of the Flesh, and purgeth the Head put into the Nostrils, they are a great cleanser of Ulcers, and a sodderer up of wounds, it is good for the Plague and all Venom taken by Venomous Beasts, and Mad-Dogs, it opens the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, provoketh urine, expelleth the stone and gravel, the Juice of it cleareth the Sight.

Ground-Pine or *Chamepitys* is good for the strangury, and all the diseases of the Liver and Spleen, and gently openeth the body, casteth out the dead Foal; It is good for all pains in the Joynts, Dropsey, Yellows, Poison, Falling sickness, to cleanse foul ulcers, and to sodder up the lips of green wounds.

Water-Plantine is cold and dry of temperature, is good against burnings or scauldings, and is good to stay Fluxes of Blood.

Rib-wort Plantine is cold and dry in the second degree as are the other Plantines, their Vertues are referred to the kinds of Plantine.

Land Plantine is of a mixt temperature, for it hath in it a certain waterish coldness, with a little harshness and coldness, and is therefore cold and dry in the second degree, the Juice of it is good for all pains in the Bowels, and stayeth the distillation, Rhume in the Head, and is good for all manner of Fluxes of Blood inwardly taken or outwardly applied, it is good for shortness of Breath and Consumption of the Lungs, the seed is good for the Dropsy, Falling Sickness, Yellows, Stoppings of the Liver, the distilled water of it is good to cool the hot inflammation of the Eyes, and taketh away the Pin and Web; It is good for all manner of Burnings and Scaldings, is good for sore Mouths, and is good for all Ulcers and Cankers, it is good for all manner of Scabs, Tetters and running sores, and is a very good Wound-herb either inwardly taken or outwardly applied.

Polipody of the Oak, *Polipody* of Fern Indian *Polipody* are dry without biting, it purgeth Choler and Phlegm, and is good for the Cholick, it is good against a Cough, shortness of Breath, and distillations of thin Rhumes upon the Lungs.

Poppies of all sorts are cold, it is a great causer of sleep, it stayeth the Flux of the Belly, the leaves or heads made with a little Vineger and brought to a Poultice with Barley-meal and Hogs grease cooleth inflammations and *St. Antonies* Fire.

Prim or *Privet* the leaves and the roots of it are binding, and is good to wash sore Mouths, to cool Inflammations, and to dry up Fluxes, and is good for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and all Swellings and Impostumes, and is good against all Fluxes of the Belly and stomach, and bloody Flux.

Pepper is hot in the third degree. All the sorts of them heateth, provoketh Urine, digesteth, draweth, disperseth and cleanse the dimness of the sight, and is good to be put into Medicaments for the Eyes, it is an expeller of Poyson, and is good for all diseases of the Breast and Lungs.

Pitch is drawn from the *Pine-tree* by the force of Fire, and is the last running, and Tar is the first which is the thinner, it is hot and dry, and Tar more hot, and stone Pitch more drying, it conglutinateth and gathereth together.

Petroleum is a certain Oyl made of *Salt-Peter* and *Bitumen*, and is hot and dry in the second degree, healeth wounds, and comforteth weak Members.

Philonium, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum* and *Philonium Persicum*, and are excellent Compositions, and most comfortable in the loss of blood.

Pomegranat is cold and dry, provoketh urine, and is good for the stomach: the Rind, Seed or Flowers of them beaten to powder and given, stop the Lask and all Issues of blood.

Pomecitron, the Rind of it is good against all Poisons.

Q.

Queen of the Meadows, *Meadow-sweet*, or *Mead-sweet*, is cold, dry and binding, and is good for all manner of inward or outward bleedings; It helps the Cholick, stayeth the Flux of the Belly, healeth old Ulcers, Cankers and Fistulae; the distilled water of it is good for the inflammation of the Eyes.

R.

Radish, *Horse-Radish* and *Garden-Radish*, are hot in the third degree, and dry in the second; they drive forth the Gravel and Stone out of the Bladder by Urine.

Horse-Radish is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath a drying and cleansing quality; It killeth Wormes, and being buised and laid to old Griets taketh them away, and is a Provoker of Urine, and likewise good for the Dropsy.

Ragwort is called *St. James-Wort*, or *Stagger-wort*, is hot and dry in the second degree; It cleanseth, digesteth and discusseth; The Juice of it is good for Ulcers in the Mouth or Throat, for hard swellings, Imposthumations and Quinsy; it is good to stay Catarrhs, thin Rheums and Distillations from the Head into the Eyes, Nose or Lungs; the Juice is good to heal all green wounds, and to cleanse and heal all filthy ulcers in any part of the body; it is good for all pains and aches in any part of the body likewise.

Rattle-Grass, there is two sorts of it, the red and the yellow; the Red is good to heal up Fistulae and hollow Ulcers, and stay the Flux of humors to them, and other Fluxes of blood, being boiled in red Wine and given. The yellow Rattle-grass is good for a Cough, and dimness of Sight, the seed being put therein.

Rest-harrow or *Chammoack*, is hot in the third degree, it cutteth and maketh thin; it provoketh Urine and driveth forth the Stone, which the Bark of the Root doth very powerfully. It is good to open the obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is good for a Rupture.

The wilde Rochet is hot and dry in the third degree; it provoketh urine.

urine exceedingly expelleth poison, killeth the Wormes and other noisom Creatures that breed in the body.

Winter Rochet or *Cresses*, is hot and dry in the second degree, the seed of them provoketh Urine, helpeth the Stranguy, and expels Gravel and the stone; It is a good Wound-herb, inwardly given, or outwardly applied: It cleanseth and healeth foul ulcers and sores by the drying quality they have.

Roses of all sorts, the leaves and the flowers of them consist of divers parts, as binding, yet moist and watery, they come very near to a mean temperature; the white and the red are very binding, and those that are not full blown, do cool and bind more then those that are blown; they being dried and beaten to powder, stayeth the Lask and pissing of blood, the Red strengthens the heart and stomach, asswage inflammations, the mattering of the Yard and Fluxes of the Belly, the Beards of them are binding and cooling.

Rosa Solis or *Sun-dew*, the water of it distilled helps a salt Rheum distilling from the Lungs, Wheezing, shortness of Breath, the Cough, and to heal ulcers in the Lungs, comforteth the heart.

Rosemary is hot and dry in the second degree, and of a binding quality, and is good against all Fluxes of blood and cold diseases of the Head and Stomach; It is good for the Lethargy and Falling-Sickness; it opens the obstructions of the Liver, and is good for Windedness of the Belly; It is good for dim Eyes, Yellows, Cough, Consumption.

Garden Patience or *Monks Rhubarb*, is a kind of dock bearing the name of Rhubarb, for the purging quality therein; it purgeth choler and phlegm, the seed binds the belly and stayeth any Lask or bloody Flux, the distilled water of it is good to cleanse and heal foul ulcers, and to allay the inflammation of them.

Barbard Rhubarb hath all the properties of the *Monks Rhubarb*, but more effectually for inward and outward diseases; it Cureth the Yellows, the seed boiled in Wine helpeth the Farcin, the stone, provoketh urine, helpeth the dimness of the sight; it is a cleanser and cooler of the Blood.

The Properties of the *English Rhubarb* is the same with the other, but much more effectual, and hath all the Properties of the *Indian Rhubarb*, except the force of Purging, wherein it hath but half the strength; it purgeth the body from choler and phlegm, it cleanseth the stomach, liver and blood, opening obstructions, curing the Yellows,

Dropley,

Dropsey, cleanseth the Reins, being taken with *Venice Turpentine*.

Meadow Rue bruised is good for old sores; It is a Loolner of the body; it is good for the Yellowes and Plague.

Garden Rue is hot and dry in the latter end of the third degree, and the Wild in the fourth; it is of thin parts, it consumeth Wind, and digesteth gross and tough humors, provoketh urine, is good against Pison, the Plague, the pains and gripings of the belly. It is good for the Cough, Wind-cholick, Wormes, Dropsey, stops bleeding; it is good for the Farcin, Scabs, Tetters and Ring-wormes.

Rupture-wort is dry, closeth up and fasteneth; It is good for the Ruptures, Fluxes, mattering of the yard, strangury, stopping of urine, stone and gravel. It is good for all griping pains in the stomach and belly, obstructions of the Liver, Yellowes, Wormes, Wounds. It stayeth the effusions of Rheums from the Head, and drieth up the moisture of Fistulacs and Ulcers.

Reeds are hot and dry in the second degree, and are Drawers out of splints and thornes out of the flesh.

Rye is hotter then Wheat, and is more forcible in wasting and consuming away; It ripeneth imposthumes, boyles and other swellings.

All the *Rozins* are hot and dry; the Rozin of the Cedar-tree is the hottest, the Rozin of the Pitch tree is not so sharp and biting, and therefore not so hot; the Rozin of the Firr tree is in a mean between both; the liquid Rozin of the Pine is moister; The Rozins which are put in plaisters, which is our common Rozin, stoppeth, softneth, cleanseth, draweth and purgeth wounds; and is good against cold causes.

Risigallo is a Composition of old Sulphur, or *Orpiment* and *unslacked Lime*, and is a most strong Corrosive.

S.

Saffron is binding, it is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree; it strengthens the heart, is good for the Consumption of the Lungs and shortness of breath; it is an excellent thing in Epidemical diseases, as the Plague, and is good for the Yellowes.

Garden-Sage is hot and dry in the beginning of the third degree, on the latter end of the second. It is good for the Head and Brain, strengthens the Sinews, restoreth Health; It is good for a Cough, biting of Serpents, expelleth Wind, drieth the Dropsey, and is a Cleanser of the Blood. It is good to put into a Water to wash a
fore

fore Mouth withal, and is good for old Cankers and Sores.

Wood Sage is hot and dry, yet less then the common Sage, being both and dry in the second degree. It digesteth and discusseth Swellings and Knots in the flesh. It is good for Ulcers, Sores, Burstnes, green Wounds, and provoketh Urine.

Solomons Seal is binding. the Roots of it is good in Wounds and Hurts, to cleanse them, and to dry and restrain Fluxes of Humors and bloody Flux and Lask; It is good for Ruptures and Burstnes taken inwardly, or outwardly applied, and is good for inward and outward bruises.

Sanicle is bitter, and hath a certain binding quality, so that it cleanseth and strengthneth, and is hot and dry in the second degree, and in some Authors hot in the third; It is a most excellent Wound-herb, either outwardly applied, or inwardly given, and is good for Ulcers and Impostumes in any part of the body. It is good to stop a Lask and all Fluxes of blood, either inwardly or outwardly. It is good for the Ulceration of the Kidneys, and pains of the Bowels and Ruptures. It is good in binding, restraining, heating, drying and healing, as *Comfrey*, *Bugle*, *Self-heal*, or any other of the Confoundes, or Vulnerary Herbs whatsoever.

Sarasens Confound, or *Sarasens Wound wort*, is dry in the third degree, with some manifest heat; It is a good Wound-herb, and is good for the obstructions of the Liver and Gall, Yellows, Dropsy, for all Ulcers of the Reins, or other inward wounds and bruises, and for ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and pains in the stomach.

Sawce alone, vide *Jack in the Hedge*.

Winter Savory and *Summer Savory* is very good for the Cholick, the Summer-kind is the best; it expelleth wind in the stomach and bowels; it provoketh urine, it cutteth tough phlegm in the Chest and Lungs; the Juice dropped into the Eyes cleareth the Sight, if it proceed of thin cold humors, distilling from the brain, and being used in a Poultice is good for old aches and pains in the Hips and Joints coming of cold.

Savin is hot and dry in the third degree, of subtil parts; It cleanseth old ulcers, being dried and mixed with honey, it is good to break Carbuncles, Plague-Sores, Farcin, Wormes, Scabs, Itch and running sores, Cankers, Tetters, Ring-wormes; it kills the quick-foal, and cures the dead.

Common Saxafrage, the root and seed thereof is of a warm and hot

Composition, it cleanseth the Reins and Bladder, and dissolveth the Stone, and expells the Gravel by Urine, helps the Strangury, cleanseth the Stomach and Lungs from Phlegm.

Burnet Saxifrage, the Seed, Leaves and Roots of the great and the small are hot and dry in the third degree, and of thin and subtil parts, they have the same properties as Parsley hath in provoking Urine, and cures the pains of the Cholick, breaks and avoids the Stone by Urine, and is good against Venom, and is good for Cramps and Convulsions, the Juice of it dipped into Wounds dryeth up the moisture of them.

Scabius, three sorts there are of it, though there be many others, yet these be most Familiar, and the Vertues of these and the rest are much alike, it is hot and dry in the latter end of the second degree, or near hand in the third, and of thin and subtil parts, it is good for Coughs, Short-windedness, and all other diseases of the Breast and Lungs, ripening and digesting cold Phlegm and other tough Humors, it ripeneth also all inward Ulcers and Imposthumes, it is good for running and spreading Scabs, Tettens, and Ring-wormes.

English Scurvey-Grass is evidently hot and dry, very like in taste and quality to the Garden-Cresses, it openeth and cleanseth the blood, the Liver and Spleen, it openeth Obstructions, and Evacuath cold, clammy, and Phlegmatick Humors both from the Liver and Spleen, the Juice of it is good for foul Sores in the Mouth.

Self-heal is of the temperature of Bugle moderately hot dry, and something binding, it is a most excellent Herb for inward and outward wounds or bruises in any part of the body, it stayeth the Flux of Blood in any Wound, and cleanseth foul Ulcers and Sores.

The *Service-tree*, the Berries are cold and binding, it is good to stay bleedings of Wounds, Lasks and Fluxes of Blood.

Shepherds-Purse is cold, dry and very much binding, it helps all Fluxes of Blood, either caused by inward or outward Wounds, and also Flux of the Belly, and bloody Flux, or Pissing of Blood, is good for the Yellows, and being made into a Poultice helps Inflammations, and St. Antonies Fire, an Ointment being made thereof, is good for all wounds in the Head.

Smallage is hotter, dryer and much more Medicinable then Parsley, it openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, cleanseth the Blood, provokes Urine, helps the Yellows, Agues, the Juice is good for sore Mouths and Throats, cleanseth all the foul Ulcers and Cankers

being washed therewith; The Seed is good to expel Wind, kill Worms, the Roots are effectual to all the Purposes aforesaid, and is stronger then the herb.

Sope-wort or *Bruise-wort* is hot and dry, and a little scouring; the Juice is good to heal up green wounds; it provokes urine, expels the Gravel and Stone, and is good for the Dropsy.

The *Sorrels* are moderately cold, dry and binding; the common Sorrel is good to cool hot diseases, inflammations or heat of Blood, for it purifieth it, it killeth Wormes, and is a Cordial to the Heart, which the Seed doth more effectually, being more drying and binding, and therefore stayeth the humors of the bloody Flux, and Flux of the Stomach; It is good to resist Poison, expelleth the Gravel and Stone, helpeth the Yellows. The Juice of it with Vineger killeth the Itch, Scabs, Tettars, Ring-wormes and the like.

Wood-sorrel is cold and dry, like Sorrel, and serves for all the purposes that the other Sorrels do, and is more effectual in hindring the putrifaction of blood, and Ulcers in the Mouth and Body, and cooleth heats, inflammations and Pestilential Feavers, or other contagious Sickness.

Sow-Thistles are of a mixt temperature, for they consist of a waterish substance, cold and binding; the Milk of them is good for short windedness, and causeth the Stone and Gravel to be avoided by urine; it helpeth the Strangury, it causeth Milk in Cattel.

Southern-wood is hot and dry in the third degree; the Seed is an Antidote against all deadly Poison, and is good to kill Wormes; it is good to draw forth thornes out of the flesh; the Ashes of it drieth up old ulcers that are without inflammation.

Spignell provokes urine, helpeth the Strangury, and all Joint Aches, the powder of the Root with honey breaketh tough phlegm, and drieth up the phlegm that fasteneth upon the Lungs; the Roots are good against the biting and stinging of venomous beasts.

Spleen-worts are of thin parts, and are in a mean temper; it is good for the spleen, helpeth the strangury, wasteth the stone in the Bladder, and is good for the Yellows.

Straw-berry-leaves do cool and dry with a binding quality, they are good for all hot inflammations and swellings, applied outwardly, and being inwardly given, after they have been boi'd in Vineger, doth cool the Liver and Blood, and assuage all inflammations in the Reins, provokes urine, and allayeth the heat and sharpness thereof, stayeth the bloody

bloody flux. The Juice of the leaves are good to make a Lotion for a sore Mouth or Ulcers therein.

Succory and *Endive* are cold and dry in the second degree, and withal somewhat binding, they cleanse phlegmatick and waterish humors out of the stomach, opens the obstructions of the Liver, Gall and Spleen, is good for the yellows, heat of the Reins, Urine and Dropsey; the water or the Juice of the bruised leaves applied outwardly, allay swellings, inflammations and *St. Antonies* Fire, and to wash Pestilential sores.

Wild Succory agrees in nature and temperature with the *Garden Succory*, and as it is more bitter, so it doth more strengthen the Stomach and Liver.

Stone-crop, *Prick Madum*, or *small Housleek*, grows upon the ground with divers branches, with thick and whitish green leaves; it is cold in quality and somewhat binding, and therefore very good to stay defluxions that flow from the Eyes; it stops bleeding both inward and outward, helps Cankers and all fretting Sores and Ulcers; it abates the heat of Cholera, expels Poison, resisteth Pestilent Feavers, and is good for Agues, you may take it inwardly for all these diseases. It is good likewise for the Farcin.

Snap Dragon, all the sorts of them are hot and dry, and of subtil parts.

Star-wort is of a mean temperature in cooling and drying; it is good for the falling of the Gut by the inflammation of the Fundament, and is good for the Falling Sicknes.

White Sattin Flower, the seed of it is hot, dry and sharp of taste, the seed of it is good for the Falling Sicknes; There may be made of it an excellent Ointment of the leaves of it, and Sanicle stamped together, adding thereunto Oyl and Wax.

Sea Starre-wort is hot and dry in the third degree; the roots of it given in white-Wine, driveth forth by urine watery and gross humors, and therefore it is good for the Dropsey and Poison, and is good for all inward and outward wounds.

Staves-acre, the seed of it is extreme hot, almost in the fourth degree.

Sneese-wort, all the kinds of them are hot and dry in the third degree.

Star of Bethlehem, the kinds of them are temperate in heat and dryness, the roots of them roasted and applied with honey in the manner of a Poultice, healeth old eating Ulcers, and softeneth and discusseth hard humors.

Spinach is cold and moist almost in the second degree, but rather moist, it loosneth the belly, but maketh it windy.

Setwall, vide *Valerian*.

Sene is of a mean temperature, neither hot nor cold, yet inclining to heat, and dry almost in the third degree; It is of a purging faculty, and that in such sort that it is not troublesome, having withal a certain binding quality, which it leaveth after the Purging.

All *Spurges* are hot and dry almost in the fourth degree, of a sharp and biting quality, fretting and consuming; the milk and sap is in more special use then the fruit and leaves, the root is of least strength, the strongest is that of the Sea.

Sanders yellow and *white* are hot in the third degree, and dry in the second; they have an astringent and strengthening quality, and drive back humors, but not cordial as they are, and is not so hot as they are.

Scammony, the Juice doth mightily purge, and is the strongest Purger whatsoever, and is very hurtful to the stomach, if you mix it not with *Alloes* or some other things to correct the evil qualities of it.

The *Sicamore-tree*, the fruit of it is somewhat sweet of taste, and is of temperature moist after a sort and cold, as be the Mulberries. The Liquor that issueth out of the Bark of this Tree, in the beginning of the Spring, before the fruit appeareth, taken up with a Spoon or Sponge, and dried or made up into a Cake, and kept in a Gally-pot, mollifyeth and closeth wounds together, and dissolveth gross humors, and is good inwardly given, or applied outwardly against the biting of Serpents; it doth soon putrefie.

Storax or *Stirax* is a sweet Gum, which is of a heating, mollifying and concocting quality: it is an excellent Perfume for the Head, and draweth many evil humors from thence, as Colds and other Sicknesses in the Head.

Sanguis Draconis is supposed to come from the Dragon-tree, it hath an Astringent faculty, and is good to stay Fluxes of blood.

Sloes, vide *black Thorn*.

Scallions are hot and dry in the second degree, they are good for scabs and for the lungs.

Sassafras or *Ague-tree*, the boughs and branches thereof are hot and dry in the second degree; the Rind is hotter, the Root is the best part of it, it procureth the same effects as Cinnamon doth.

Snails with shells are of the same nature as *Snails* without shells
ate.

Snails without shells do conglutinate very much, and is good to put
in Medicines for Ruptures; the distilled water of them is good for a
Consumption.

Sandevoir is most excellent for diu or Rheumatick Eyes, being laid
asleep in running water.

Soap is hot, it draweth forth splinters and nails; it mollifieth, drieth,
cleanseth and purgeth.

Salnitro, some use for this *salt Peter*, it is hot and dry, and evapora-
teth; it comforteth Stewes, and taketh away tiredness and wear-
iness.

Salgemma is a kind of salt which is hot and dry, it cleanseth and
bindeth.

Sallows or *Willows* bindeth and drieth vehemently.

Salt is hot and dry in the second degree, cleanseth and killeth worms

Sagina or *Saggina*, or *Sorge*, of some called *Panicum Indicum*, is
only hot and dry.

Salmoniack is hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanseth.

Sarcocolla is a Gum of the kind of *Euphorbium*, and is hot and dry in
the second degree; it cleanseth, incarnateth and comforteth wounds.

Sevadulce is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree, it clean-
seth and openeth.

Serapino is a Gum of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the se-
cond degree; it mollifyeth, loosneth, and is good for Colds.

T.

Terre is drawn out of the Pine-tree, and is the first running, *Pitch*
is the second, it is hot and dry in the second degree; it is good against
colds or evil humors gathered together in the Breast, and draweth
wounds. It is outwardly applied with other Ingredients to the Scratch-
es, and is good to anoint a Horses Nose with, to keep the infection of
the Plague from him.

English Tobacco killeth Wormes, a little of it chopped small or beat-
en to powder, after it is very dry, and put amongst other Medicines. It
is good for the stone in the Kidneys to help the pain, and to expel the
Gravel; it is good boiled in Chamberly with brimstone, allom and
green Copperas, to kill the Mange or all manner of scabs; the oyl of
it is good for all manner of Aches, Cramps and Convulsions; a Pipe
filled with it and put into a Horses Fundament, which the wind of his
Body.

Body will draw it out, is a very good Glister for all manner of Wormes there, and to cleanse his Body.

The *Tamarisk-tree* hath a cleansing and cutting faculty, with a manifest dryness, it is somewhat binding, it is good for inward Bleedings, Cholicke, Yellows, biting of Venomous Beasts, the decoction of it with some Honey is good to stay Gangreens, and fretting Sores, and Ulcers, and to kill Nits and Lice being washed therewith, the Wood or Bark is good for all the purposes aforesaid, as well as the Branches, it is good given to a Horse to kill the Farcin.

Garden-Tansie that smells sweet, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the third, and that without smell is hot and dry and of a mean Temperature, it is good to consume Phlegmatick Humours, the decoction of the Common Tansie opens all stoppings, is good for the Strangury, it expells Wind, the seed is good for the Wormes, being boyled with Oyl is good for shrunk Sinews and Cramps.

Wild Tansie is cold and dry almost in the third degree, having a binding quality, it stayeth the Lask and all Fluxes whatsoever, it is good for Burstnes, and is good for all Joynt Aches or Pains, it is good for inward or outward Wounds, and to heal running Sores, it cooleth the hot Fits of the Ague be it never so violent, the distilled water of it dropped into the Eyes, or a Cloth wet therein, taketh away the heat and inflammation of them.

Of *Thistles* in General, all of them provoke Urine, the Juice of them will cause Hair to grow where it is fallen off.

Treacle-Mustard and *Mezridate Mustard* both purge the body upwards and downwards, it breaks inward Impostumes, it is a very good Antidote against Poyson, Venom and Putrifaction, it is also available in many Cases, the Common Mustard is used, but somewhat weaker.

The *Blackthorn* or *Slo-bush*, all the parts of it is cooling, and binding, and drying, and good to stay bleeding at the Mouth and Nose, stop the Lask of the Belly or Stomach, bloody Flux, and to ease the pains of the Bowels and Guts, that come by overmuch scouring, the Leaves are good to put into Lotions to wash a sore Mouth or Throat with, wherein are Swellings, Sores, and Kernels, and to stay the defluations of Rhumes to the Eyes or other parts, and to cool the heat of them.

Thorough-wax or *Thorough-leaf* is of a dry Complexion, and is good for all sorts of Bruises and Wounds inward and outward, and old Ulcers and Sores likewise, the decoction of the Herb or the powder of it taken inwardly, and the leaves bruised and applied outwardly, is good to Cure Ruptures and Burstings.

Thyme

Thyme is hot and dry in the third degree, it is a great strengthener of the Lungs, it purgeth the Body of Phlegm, and is good for short-windedness, an Oyntment made with it is good for hot Swellings, it comforteth the Stomach, and expells Wind.

Wilde Thyme or *Mother of Thyme* is of Temperature hot and dry in the third degree, it is of thin and subtil parts, cutting and much biting, provokes Urine, caseth the Gripping pains in the Belly coming by wind, it is good for Cramps, Ruptures and inflammations of the Liver, it is good for the Leathergy, Pissing of Blood, Coughing, strengthens the Stomach, expells Wind, and breaks the Stone.

Turmentil or *Serfoyl* is binding and therefore good to stay all Fluxes of Blood or Humors, whether at the Nose or Mouth, or any wound in the Veins or elsewhere, it resisteth Poyson, Plague, Pestilential Feavers, and contagious diseases, and expelleth the Venom from the Heart by Sweating, there is not found any Root more effectual to help any Flux of the Belly, Stomach, Spleen, or Blood, then this taken inwardly or applied outwardly, it opens the Obstructions of the Liver, helpeth the Yellows, it is good made into a Plaister to strengthen the Reins of the Back, it is good for Ruptures and Bruises by falls taken inwardly or applied outwardly, and 'tis a most excellent Wound-herb applied outwardly to rotten Sores and Ulcers any where of the Body, or for any inward wound, it dissolves hard knots and kernels any where about the Body.

Turne-sole or *Heliotropium* purgeth Choler and Phlegm boyled with water and given, and being boyled with Cummin helpeth the Stone of the Reins or Bladder, provoketh Urine, the Herb bruised and laid to any Old pain in the Joynts taketh it away, the Juice of it is good to take away Wens, and to dissolve hard kernels or knobs in the flesh.

Meadow Trefoyl or *Honey-suckles* is cold and dry, and are good to put into Glisters, it is good in a Poultice for inflammations and Swellings, the Juice dropped into the Eye taketh away the Pin and Web, and taketh away the Blood-shorten of them.

Heart-trefoyl is a great strengthener of the Heart, fortifieth it against Poyson and Pestilence, and defending it from the Noisome Vapors of the Spleen.

Pearl-Trefoyl it differs not from the Common sort, save only it hath a white spot in the Leaf like a Pearl, and is of great Vertue against the Pin and Web in the Eyes.

Tuscan or *Park-leaves*, the faculties are such as *St. Peters-wort*, which declares it to be hot and dry; it purgeth humors, it is good for burnings by Fire; it is a very good VVound herb, either inwardly given or outwardly applied.

Tartar is the Excrement of Wine which sticks to the Vessel, and is hot and dry in the third degree, and only cleanseth.

Turpentine is hot in the second and dry in the first, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinateth things together, and is good for the Mattering of the Yard given inwardly, being made up by Art into Balls.

Thuris Cortex is dry in the second degree and bindeth.

Trifora Magna is a certain Composition which will provoke sweat, helpeth Griets in the stomach, and taketh away all cold Rhumes.

Tutia Preparata is a certain Mineral that is cold in the first and dry in the second degree, and is very good for sore Eyes.

Turmerick is hot in the third degree, and openeth Obstructions, it is good against the Yellows, and Old Distempers of the the Liver and Spleen, and Fattens by a certain hidden quality.

Tastil Wilde is cold in the third and dry in the first degree, and comforteth and bindeth.

V.

Garden Valerium is hot but not much, provoketh Urine, being dried and given, helpeth the strangury, it is good for short-windedness, the Roots of it being boyled with Licoris, Raisins and Anniseeds, helpeth to open the Passages, and expectorates the Phlegm easily; it is good for the Plague, and those that are bitten and stung by any venomous creature; it expelleth wind, and being boiled in white-Wine and dropped into the Eyes, taketh away the dimness of sight, or any Pain and Web; it healeth any inward sores and wounds, and also all outward wounds and hurts, and draweth out splinters and thornes out of the flesh, the herb being bruised and laid to the place grieved.

Wild Valerian some hold, that being dried and beaten to powder, purgeth upwards and downwards.

Both the *Vervaines* are very dry, and do meanly bind and cool; it is an excellent herb for the Womb, and all the cold griefs belonging thereunto, as Plantain doth the hot. It is hot, dry and bitter, opening obstructions, cleansing and healing; it is good for the Yellow, Dropsy, the defects of the Reins and Lungs, and all inward pains and torments of the body; it is good against the Plague, and the venom of

venomous beasts, against Agues, the Wormes, the diseases of the Liver and Spleen, and all diseases of the Stomach and Lungs, Coughs, Shortness of Breath, and to cleanse the bladder from all evil humors that engender the stone, it healeth all wounds both inward and outward, stayeth bleeding, and healeth Old Ulcers in any part of the Body being used with Honey, it is good for Swellings used with Hogs grease, the distilled water of the Herb or Juice dropped into the Eyes, cleanse them from Films.

The Branches of the *Vine* and the leaves do cool and mightily bind, and stayeth bleeding in any part of the Body, and are good to stop a Lask and bloody Flux, the leaves are put into Lotions for sore Mouths, and being put into a Poultice with Barley-Meal cools inflammations of Wounds.

All the *Violets* are cold and moist while they are fresh and green, and will cool any heat and disorder in the body, either inwardly given or outwardly applied, Impostumes also, and hot Swellings, they purge the Body of Cholerick humors, the powder of the Purple-Flower healeth the Quinsie, and Falling-sickness, it is good for the Liver, Yellows, and hot Agues.

The sorts of *Vipers-grass*, are hot and moist as are the *Goats-beards* it is very good for the Plague, poyson of Venomous Creatures, Falling-sickness.

Of *Wall or Vipers bugloss*, the several sorts of them are cold and dry of Complexion, it is good against the biting of Vipers or any other Venomous Beasts, and also against Poyson or any poysonous Herbs, the Roots comfort the Heart, tempers the Blood, allays the hot Fits of Agues.

Vinager especially if it be of *Wine*, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first and dry in the third degree, it Cuts Phlegm.

Vermilion is a certain Mettal drawn from Quick-sulphur, and Quick-silver, it draweth, healeth, incarnates, bindeth, and comforteth Ulcers.

Verdegrease is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a Corrasive that eateth away dead and proud Flesh, and is good to be put into Ointments for green Wounds or for the Scratches.

Green and White Vitriol may be taken inwardly, a few drops of it with other things for the Farcin, and outwardly applied to take away Wens, or hard Kernels, or to eat away a Quitter-bone, or Splint, or to take off Warts from the hands; if you will stay the eating of it, or that you will have

have it eat no further then where you lay it, wet all round where you lay it with water, you must take it out of the Glasse with a Feather or a piece of Silk tied to a stick, for it will eat both Linnen and Woollen. The white is the strongest, but the green is most safe for any use.

Vitriola Calcanthum is reckoned amongst Metals, and is a kind of Inkey earth, it draweth and fretteth.

Vitriola Herba is an Herb that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for *Pellitory of the Wall*.

W.

Wall-flower or *Winter Gilliflower*, all the kinds of them are of a cleansing faculty, and of thin parts. The yellow kind works more powerfully, and are of more use in Physick; it cleanseth the blood, and freeth the Liver from obstructions, expelleth the Secundine and dead Foal, stayeth inflammations and swellings, comforteth and strengthneth any weak part out of Joynt. cleanseth the Eyes from Films, and cleanseth also filthy Ulcers in the Mouth, and is a good remedy for all Aches and pains in the Joynts and Sinews, and is good for the Frcin

The *Wallnut-Tree*, the Bark of it doth bind and dry very much, and the leaves are much of the same temperature, they kill the Wormes in the Belly, with other things put to them; they help the biting of a mad dog, or the venom or poison of any creature; the kernels of them when they are old are very astringent, and will stop a Lask; the Oyl of the kernels taken inwardly helpeth the Cholick, and expels Wind; the distilled water of the green husks, before they be ripe, is good to cool the heat of Agues, as also to resist the infection of the Plague, being applied to the sores; it cooleth also the heat of green wounds and old ulcers, being bathed therewith.

Wald, Weld, or *Dyers weed*, is hot and dry of temperature, also the whole herb heats and dries in the third degree: it cuts, attenuates, resolvet, opens, disgests; it is good taken inwardly, or applied outwardly against the venom of venomous Beasts, as also for the Plague or Pestilence, and is good for green wounds

Wheat is hot and dry in the first degree; it hath a certain c'army stopping quality; the oyl of it pressed out between two thick Plates of Iron, healeth all Tettars and Ring-wormes, used warm. The green Corn chewed and applied to the place bitten by a mad dog healeth it. Sliced Wheat-bread, soaked in red Rose-water or Spring-water, and applied to the eyes that are hot, red and inflamed, or blood-shotten, helpeth them. And hot bread applied to the kernels of the Throat, healeth

healeth the kernels thereof; the Flower of it mixed with the Juice of Henbane stayeth the Flux of humours to the Joints, and being boiled in Vineger helpeth the shrinking of the Sinews, the flower of it mixed with the Yolk of an Egg, Honey and Turpentine, doth draw, cleanse and heal any Bile, Plague-sore, or foul Ulcer, the decoction of Wheat-bran is good to bath those places that are bursten by a Rupture, and the said Bran boiled in Vineger, helpeth all swellings and inflammations, it helpeth the biting of Vipers and all other venomous creatures, Wafers put in water and given, stayeth the Lask and bloody Flux.

The *Willow-tree*, the Leaves, Flowers, Seed and Bark, are cold and dry in the second degree, and binding; they are used to stay bleeding of wounds, and all other Fluxes of blood; it helpeth to stay all thin, wet and sharp distillations upon the Lungs; the Leaves bruised with some Pepper is good for the Wind cholick. The water of the Willow-tree received of a branch cut, is good for dimness of sight, for Films, and to stay the Rheums that fall into them, provokes urine being stopp'd; the Flowers of it boiled in White wine hath an admirable faculty in drying up of humors. The Bark worketh the same effect.

Wood is dry and without sharpness, the wild *Wood* drieth more and is more sharp and biting; it is so dry and binding that it is hardly fit to be given inwardly; an Ointment made thereof stancheth bleeding, and is good in such Ulcers as are bound with moisture, for it takes away the corroding and fretting humors; it cools inflammations, quenches St. Anthories Fire, and stayeth effusions of blood to any part of the body.

Wood-bind or *Honey-suckles* are cleansing, consuming and digesting; the Flowers are good for the Lungs, provokes Urine, helps Cramps, Convulsions, Palsies, and whatsoever grief comes of Cold or Stopping; the Flowers are more effectual then the Leaves; and the Seed is as effectual as the Leaves.

Pond-Weed doth bind and cool like as doth *Knot grass*, but his effluence is thicker then that; it is good against consuming and eating Ulcers, and all hot inflammations.

Wormwood is hot and dry in the first degree, just as hot as the blood; it remedies Choler, provokes Urine, helps Surseits, Swellings in the Belly, and is the best Herb for the Yellows that is, Take of the Flowers of Wormwood, Rosemary and black Thorn, of each a like quantity, half that quantity of Saffron boiled in Beer or Ale, and this now and then used will keep a Horse in perfect Health; *Wormwood* is good against Poison, Quinsy, biting and stinging of venomous creatures,

Colick, Wormes, and to keep Clothes from the Moths: it helps the Spleen, strengthens the Heart, and heats the Stomach.

Willow-herb, vide *Loose-strife*.

Wall-wort or *Dane-wort*, vide *Dwarf Elder*.

Woodroffe is of Temperature like unto our *Ladies Bedstraw*, but not so strong, being in a mean between heat and driness; it prevaileth in wounds as *Cruciata* and other vulneary herbs doth.

The leaves and berries of the *Wasering-Tree* are cold and dry, and of a binding quality; the decoction of the Leaves is good to Scringe a sore Mouth with, and is good for the diseases of the Gums, and fastneth loo'e Teeth.

Wormes do conglutinate and comforteth Sinews.

White Lead is a great drier and shealer of Scabs, and is good put in to Medicines, for Scratches, and for Sellanders and Mallenders.

Y.

Tarrow, called also *Nose-bleed*, *Milfoyl* and *Thousand-leaf*, it cleanseth and is meanly cold, but it most of all bindeth; an Ointment of it Cureth Wounds, and is good for Inflammations; it is good for the bloody Flux. The Ointment is good not only for Wounds, but Ulcers likewise and Fistulaes, especially such as are bound with moisture. The Herbe being washed with the decoction, stayeth the shedding of it; taken inwardly is good for the mattering of the Yard, and the Juice of it is most excellent, or the decoction of it injected into the Yard with a Syringe, to stop the extreme flowing of the Seed, although the issue doth cause inflammation and swelling of the secret parts, and though the spermatick matter do come down in great quantity, as hath been very well proved.

Water-Tarrow is of a dry Faculty, by reason it taketh away hot inflammations and Swellings.

Z.

Zucche which are called *Gourds*, are cold and moist in the second degree, and allayeth all manner of inflammations, or hot Swellings.



THE EXPERIENCED FARRIER.

The Second Part.

General things good for the Joynts and Sinews.

THings good in General for any Joynt or Sinew that hath in them any Ach, Numbness, Weakness, or Swelling, coming of any cold or hot Cause. If it be a hot Cause, you must apply cooling things, and if a cold Cause, hot things to it.

The Oyl that is pressed out of *Almonds* is a great Mittigater of pain and all manner of Aches, *Aquavita*, *Archangel*, *Albeal*, *Balsum*, *Mugandy Pitch* spread upon *Leather*, and laid to the place grieved, draweth forth all manner of pain. *Burnet*, *Brandy*, *Bay-leaves*, *Brank-sme*, the Oyl of *Chamomel*, the bruised Roots of *Comfrey*, *Cow-slips*, *Sick-weed*, *Centaurry*, *Cow-parsnips*, *Germander*, *Hawk-weed*, *Mallows*, *Marsh-Mallows*, *Mug-wort*, *Mullen*, *Penney-royal*, *Purslain*, the great *Saved-Dock*, *Saxafrage*, *English Tobacco*, *Garden-Tansie*, *Wild Monaster of Thyme*, *Sow-Fennel*, *Flower de-luce*, *Turpentine*, *Rag-weed*, stamped very small and boyled with some *Hogs-grease* to the Consumption of the Juice, and at the end of the boyling it, add to it *Mastick* and *Olive-oil*, and anoint the place with it. *Pepper*, *Saffron*, *Garlick*, *Rose-mary*, *Frankincense*, *Mirr*, *Sciatica*. *Cresses*.

Particular Receipts for Aches.

Take *Accopium* and mix it well with *Sack*, and chafe it very well in with your hand, and if it be of a cold Cause it will take it away at three or four times doing.

Another.

Take *Brandy* or *Aquavita*, and Chafe and Bath the place grieved very well with it, and dry it in with a hot Fire-shovel, then take a Rag, and dip in the *Brandy* or *Aquavita*, and strew the inside of it all over with *Pepper* finely beaten and searfed, and bind it to the place grieved, and swath it up with a dry Rowler, and do it thus once every day till he become sound.

Another.

Take of sweet Butter half a pound, of *Aquavita* a gill, of Saffron half a dram, *Pepper* finely beaten and searfed three drams, three Heads of Garlick bruised, mix them altogether, and let them stew on the fire, and not boyl, till it come to a Salve. This being Chafed in very warm to the place grieved, and a brown Paper wet in the same, and bind to it, with a dry Cloth upon that, and so used Morning and Evening, will cure it.

Things good in General for St. Antonies Fire.

The Juice of Housleek tempered with white-Lead, the Juice of the green Leaves of Garden. Night-shade mixed with Barley-Meal, is good for it and all hot Inflammations. Allum put to the Juice of white Beetes, the Roots of Cinquefoil boyled in Vineger, the distilled water of Colts-Foot with Elder Flowers and Night-shade, and applied, Crabs-claws, the Juice of Wall-penny-wort, with the Leaves and Flowers of Featherfew is good for it, and all hot Inflammations and Swellings, the Roots of Bugloss mixed with Sallet-oyl and Barly Meal, water sengreen, or fresh water souldier, Ducks Meat, the Juice of Rue, &c. But because it is a Disease very rare to be found in Horses, you shall have as strange a Cure.

A particular Receipt for St. Antonies Fire.

After you have cast him, slit the Skin of the fore-head, of the Horse under the fore-top, and open the same round about with your Corner, rounding it about an Inch every way, which done, take a Worm, which you shall find in a Fullers Teasel, and blow it in alive with a Quill into the place, and have a care you kill not the Worm in stitching up the Skin again, for in twenty days the Worm will dye, and in that time the Horse will be thoroughly cured. If you would know the Nature of the Disease, you may find it hereafter, in a Table set down Alphabetically, shewing where the Diseases of a Horse do grow, and the causes of them.

Things

Things good in General for the Anticor or Heart-Sickness.

To let Blood, if you know he wants it, and to give him a Purgation of Sack, Sallet Oyl, and Sugar Candy, or Sugar and Cinnamon given him in Sack or Diapente, or Dr-Scipkens Water.

A Particular Receipt for the Anticor or Heart-sickness.

After the Swelling appears, and you have taken a good quantity of Blood on both sides of the Neck, give him the Drink of Diapente with Beer or Ale, which you may find in my first Part, putting therein one ounce of brown Sugar Candy, and half an ounce of London-Treacle, which will drive the Sickness and Grief from his Heart; which done, anoint the Swelling with this Oyntment.

Oyntment.

Take Hogs Grease, Boars Grease, and Basilicon, of each three ounces, incorporate them well together, and anoint and rub the Swelling every day, till it become soft, then open it, and let forth the Corruption and wash the Sore with the Copperas Water, which you may find in my first Part. And Taint it with your green Oyntment, which you may find as aforesaid, and it will be soon whole.

Things good in General for an upper or Nether Attaint, or any hurt by Over-reaching.

Before you apply your Salve, lay the place bare without hollowness, and wash it with Beer and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt, and then what will cure a Mallender or Sellander will cure this.

Particular Receipts good for an upper Attaint.

Take Venice-Turpentine one ounce, and Brandy three spoonfuls, beat them well together till they come to a Salve, and anoint the sore very well therewith, and heat it well in with a hot Iron, and do this three or four times, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take of Sanguis Draconis three quarters of an ounce, Bolt-armonick one ounce, Sallet Oyl as much, Mastick three ounces, Sewer as much, and as much Hogs-grease, melt and mix all these together, and lay it to the Swelling, and it will take it away.

Another.

Take one or two Handfuls of *Saxafrage*, and all the Sewet of a Loyn of Mutton, and a Pint of white Wine, chop the Herb, and Mince the Sewet very small, and boyl them all very well together, then take a good quantity of Horfe-dung newly made that goes to grafs, and mix with the other Ingredients, and work it to a Salve, and apply it Plaister-wise hot to the place, renewing it every day so long as you think convenient, and this is a very excellent Cure.

Another for the Neiter Attaint.

Take a Piece of Fillettings, and bind it about the Pastern Joynt, pretty hard, which will cause the blister or swelling the better to appear; then let out the corrupt Jelly with your Incision knife, and crush it all out, then heal it up with your Copperas water, and anoint it with the green Ointment,

Things good in general for the Stavers, Head-ach or Frenzie.

Amara dulcis, the Root hung about his Neck, *All-heal*, *Bay-berris*, *Flea-wort*, *Beetes*, *Briony*, a great Purger, *Cardus Benedictus*; To ke him blood, *Cowslips* or *Peagles*, the Juice of *Sow-Fennel* or *Hogs-Fennel* squirted up the Nose, *Lavender*, *Hore-hound*, *Nept* or *Carmin*, *Houfe-leek* or *Sengreen*, *Sellandine* put into his eares, or *Assaferida* dissolved in *Brandy* and put into his eares, or *Gronndsel* and *Aqua-vite* stamped and put into his eares, *Oyl of bitter Almonds*, *Oxe-gall*, *Graines of Castoreum*, *Verjuice* and *Salt* put into his eares, *Turnerick*, *Myrrh*, *Ivory*, *Hartshorn*, *Saffron*, *Diapente*, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Stavers.

After you have taken blood from him, take the quantity of a Hazell nut of sweet Butter and Salt, dissolve it in a Sawcer full of white Wine Vinegar, then take Lint or fine Flax dipt therein, and so stop both his eares therewith, and stich them up, and let it remain there about twelve houres, and he will be Cured.

Another.

Take of bitter *Almonds* an ounce and a half, of the *Gall* of an Ox two drams, of black *Elleboro* made into fine powder a half-penniworth, of *Graines*, *Castoreum*, *Vinegar*, and of *Varnish*, of each five drams, boyl all these together till the Vinegar be consumed, then strain it and put it into his eares, and do as you did before,

Another

Another.

Aquavitæ and Garlick so much as will suffice, and stamp them together and put into his ears, doing as before.

Another.

Take the Seeds of Cresses, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Pursly, of Dill, (the seeds only of these Herbs) and take also Pepper, and Saffron, of each two drams, make them all into fine Powder, and put to them of Barley-water two quarts, boyling hot from the fire, and let it infuse therein three hours, and strain it and give him one quart thereof, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and the next day give him the other quart fasting, and let him drink no cold water for four or five days after, but only white water, unless sometimes a sweet Mash, and this will cure him. You must Note that in this Disease of the Stavers you must be sure to let him Blood, before you give him any Medicine.

Things good in General for the Yellows.

Agrimony, Water-Agrimony, the Bark of the black Elder tree, Hops, Fennel, Smallage, Endive Succory-roots, Garden-Arrach, Orach, Asarabacca, Ash-tree, the Juice of Coleworts, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree or Berry, Bay-berries, Burr-dock Roots, Wood-Bitony, Bistort or Snake-weed, Red Beetes, Burrage or Bugloss, Butchers-broom, Calamint or Montanie Mint, Chamomel, Cardus Benedictus, Celandine, the Juice of Cinquesoyl, the Juice of Cleavers, the Seed of Columbines and Saffron boyled together and given him, Dandelion, Dodder of Thyme, Eringo, Flax-weed, or Load-Flax, the Juice of the Flower de-luce Fumitory, the Fuzz Bush, Garlick, Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, the seed of Germander, Groundsel, the Roots of black Hellebor, the yellow Berries of Ivy, Liver-wort, Maddar, Maiden-hair, Wall Rue, the seed both of the Male and Female, Mercury, Wild Marjorem, Worm-wood, Mouse-eare, Hedge-Mustardseed, Cow-Parsnips, the roots of Penny-royal, the seed of Plantine, Bastard, Rurharb or the great round leaved Dock, Rupture-wort, Sarasens Consond or Sarasens Wound-wort, Shepherds Purse, the seeds and Roots of Sorrel, Spleen-wort, Tamarisk, Termentil or Setsoyl, Vervain, Violet Ground-pine, Mirrh, Ivory or Harts-horn, long-Pepper, Licoris, Anniseeds, Ganders or Geese dung, Mistle-toe, white-Thorn, the Roots of Parsley, Pimpernel, Chick-weed, Sheeps-dung steeped in Beer, you are

art to let him Blood in the first place.

Particular Receipts for the Yellows.

Take of Turmerick, Bur dock roots, long Pepper, of each about hal an ounce, Anniseeds and Licoris in fine Powder and searced, of each a spoonful, Selandine the Leaves and Roots one handful, chopt small, and strain the Selandine, and put them into a quart of strong Beer, and boyl them a litle on the Fire, and in the Cooling sweeten it with London Treacle, and put into it a good Piece of Butter, and give it him Blood-warm, and give him white water, and he will do well.

Another.

Take of the best Live honey, half a pound of Saffron and Fennegreek made into fine powder as much as will suffice, incorporate these with your honey to a stiff Paste, and so make thereof three Pills, and dipping them in Sallet-oyl give him them; and ride him or walk him gently an hour, and set him up warm.

Another.

After you have let him Blood, take a quart of Ale, and put an ounce of Saffron, and an ounce of Turmerick into it, being first made into fine Powder, and with the Juice of Selandine so much as will suffice, and give it him blood-warm.

Things good in general for the Falling-evil, Planet-struck, Night-Mare or Palsie.

Fifteen of the Seeds of the single Piony given him in soure Wine; to hang a Flint-stone over his head, or some old Sythe or old Iron, or to give him exercise before and after water, and to mix Hemp-seed in his Provender, and to enforce him to sweat.

Particular Receipts for the Night-Mare.

Take a handful of Salt, half a Pint of Sallet-oyl, brown Sugar-candy four ounces, mix them all very well together, and warm them on the Fire, and give it him blood-warm two Mornings together, and it will cure him.

Another.

Give him this purging Pill, take of Tarr three spoonfuls, offweet Butter

ter the like quantity, beat them well together with the powder of Li-
coris, Anniseeds and Sugar-candy, till it be like Paste. Then make them
into round Balls, and put into each Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick,
and so give it him, observing to warm him before and after, and let him
be fasting likewise two or three houres before and after.

Things good in general for Cramps, or Convulsion of the Sinews.

Rhubarb taken inwardly, the Seed of Bastard St. Johns wort given,
the Oyl drawn from sweet Marjorem, and anoint him with it, and all
manner of Aches coming of a cold cause, Calamint given inwardly,
Scurvy, Elecampane, Mustard-wort, or the Herb Gerard given inward-
ly, The roots of Valerian given, Southern-wood, or the Seeds of the
Ladies Thistle given, Juniper-berries given, Bay-berries, China-roots,
Frank-Ursine taken inwardly, or applied outwardly, the leaves of the
Murdock bruised, and laid to the place grieved, Oyl of Chamomel, Cen-
tury applied to it, Costus, the Juice of Chick-weed made up with
Hogs-grease, and anoint the place grieved with it is very good, or to
force him to sweat by Clothes, or to bury him in a Horse-dung-hill only
with his Head out.

Particular Receipts for the Cramp.

Chafe and rub the Member contracted, with Vinegar and common
Oyl, and then wrap it all over with wet Hay or rotten Litter, or else
with wet Woollen Cloths, either of which is a present remedy.

Another.

After you have Sweated him well in a Horse Dung-hill, anoint him
with this Oyntment, take of Hogs Grease one pound, of Turpentine a
quarter of a pound, of Pepper half a dram, of new Wax half a pound,
Sallet Oyl one pound, boyl them altogether and anoint him with it.

Another.

Take Pimpernel, Primrose-leaves, Chamomel, Crow-Foot, Mal-
low, Fennel, Rosemary, of each six handfuls steeped fourty eight hours
in fair water, and boyl them in it till they be tender, and Bath him there-
with four days together, Morning and Evening, and apply the herbs to
the place with a Thumb-band of Hay wet in the same Liquor, and anoint
the said Member every day about Noon, with *Petroclum*, *Nervul*, and
Oyl of *Spike* mixed together.

Another.

Take two quarts of strong Ale, and of black Soap two pounds, and
boyl them together till they look like Tarr, with some Brandy, and an-
oint the place grieved therewith.

Things

The Experienced Farrier.

Things good in General for all Colds or Coughs wet and dry, or for any Consumption or Putrifaction of the Lungs.

Agrimony, Bay-berries, Elecampain, Licoris, Anniseeds, Long pepper, Moss of an Oken-pale or Timber Stick boyled in Milk, Briony, a great purger which must be Corrected, the Gum of the Cherry-tree dissolved in Ale, Colts-Foot, Hawks-weed, Horehound, Juniper berries, Pelitory of the Wall, Penney-royal boyled in Milk, Ground-pine, the Juice of Purslane, the Juice of Jack by the Hedge, Scabias, Vervan, Fennel-seeds, Fennegreek, Cardamum, Cumin, Ciliris Montany, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Lynseed, Briunstone, Germander is good for all moist Colds. Hempseed, Raisins of the Sun, Sallet-oyl, Garlick, Tarr given him in an Egg-shell, Sellendine, Mustard and Allum boyled in Milk or Beer, Rubarb, Cassia, Mirrh, Herb-grass, Carrawayseeds, Marjoram, Currants, Millolet, Lyons-foot, Ladies-Mantle, Opoponax, Galbanum, Storax. A Hedge-hog dried in an Oven and beaten to Powder, and mixed with his Provender, or Groundsel shred small with the Powder of Anniseeds boyled in Beer, Hysope, Water and Salt brayed together and given him, is good for a new Cold, or Oyl de-Bay, Anniseeds and Licoris of each alike made into fine powder, and sowed in a Linnen Cloth and fastened to his Bit, and to ride him upon it, is good to break a new Cold, Bay Berries dried and beaten to powder and given in Beer, the seed of Brank Cresses, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Root of Centaury boyled in Beer and sweetned with Treacle, the Root of Mullin or long-wort, Ferula, Rosemary, bitter Almonds, Grains of Paradise, lung-wort or Wood-liver wort, or take a Hen Egg after the Meat is taken out, and fill it up with Butter and Salt and put it down his Throat for three Mornings together, is very good for an Old Cough.

Particular Receipts for Colds.

Take the Moss that is growing upon an Oken Pale or Timber Stick one handful or better, and boyl it very well in three pints of new Milk with a green Root of Elecampain cut into thin and small slices with some Licoris, and let it boyl till the Milk be half consumed, then strain it and press it throughly. and as it is cooling put into it a good piece of sweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle so much as will suffice, and so give it him Blood warm. This is good also for the Head-ach, Frenzy, Stavers

Poſe, Cold, Cough wet or dry, ſhortneſs of Breath, rotten Lungs, Glanders, Lax, Loofneſs, Bloody Flux. or the like diſeaſes. You may boil them in Ale or Beer, I mean the Ingredients you make up your drink with. Let him have this drink three Mornings together, and it will Cure both his Cold and Cough wet and dry.

Another to take away any Cold, Poze or Ratling in the Head, how violent ſoever, without giving any inward Medicine.

Take a ſmall quantity of freſh or ſweet Butter, and of Brimſtone made into fine Powder, work them together till they be one entire body, and of a deep yellow gold colour, then take two long Goofe-wing Feathers, and anoint them herewith to the very quils on either ſide, which done, rowl them into more of the powder of Brimſtone, and ſo put them up into either Noſtril one, and at the But-end of the Quil put a ſtrong pack-thread, which muſt be faſtned over his Pole, like to the Head-ſtall of a Bridle, and ride him moderately after it about an hour, and this will provoke him to ſnort and ſnuffle out of his Noſe and Head much of congealed Filth which is in his head, then Tie him to the Rack for an hour after, and this will purge his Head very clean, then draw forth the Feathers and he will do well, keeping him warm, and giving him Maſhes or white Water for four or five days together. This you may ſafely uſe to a Horſe, that is ready to hunt or run for any great Wager, and the day is ſo near that you durſt not give him any inward drench.

Another very good, though ſhort.

Take of Tyme one handful, boyl it in a quart of ſtrong Ale till it come to a Pint, then ſtrain it, add thereunto of ordinary Treacle two ſpoonfuls, and give it him blood-warm.

Another for a new taken Cold.

Take Water and Salt and brew them well together, and give it him blood-warm.

Another for a Cold newly taken:

Take a Hens Egg, and make a little hole on the top to take out the White and Yolk; then take Tarr and Butter of each alike, and put it into the Egg after you have workt it very well together, and give it him three Mornings together.

Another which will Cure along taken Cold, yea, though it be accompanied with a dry Cough and shortness of Breath or Purisiveness, and it hath done Cures that hath been held very impossible to have been effected.

Take of the Conserve of Elecampane three quarters of an ounce, and dissolve it in a pint and a half of sweet Sack, and give it him in the Morning fasting, and ride him gently a little after, and thus do several times till you find the infirmity to decrease:

The kinds of this Conserve, and how to make it.

There are two kinds thereof, one is called particularly a Preserve, and the other an absolute Conserve. The first is Simple, the other Compound, both very Sovereign, but the Conserve is the best. They will keep a whole year close stopped: The Simple you must preserve as you do all other green Roots, and keep it close in a Gally-pot, in its own Syrup, and when you use it, beat it in a Mortar together with its Syrup and refined Sugar made first into fine Powder. Now your Compound or Conserve is thus made, first let your Roots of Elecampane be neatly Candied, and made very dry and hard, and get the youngest Roots you can, which must be kept also in a Gally-pot, or Glass, close stopped, in a dry and warm place, where they may not give again, and when you use it, beat so much of it in a Mortar as you shall use, with the Syrup of Colts-foot, and the powder of refined Sugar, still working it till you have brought it to a perfect Conserve, and give it him in sweet Sack. The first of these two, which is the Simple, for it helpeth any ordinary Cold or stopping, it comforteth the Lungs, enlargeth his Wind, purgeth the head from all filthy matter, and dissolveth many other Obstructions as well in the body as the head. But the Compound or Conserve worketh better effects in the body of the Horse, especially if the Malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any Taint in the Lungs, Liver or inward parts: This Conserve in time by the frequent use thereof will Cure all dry Coughs which are held to be incurable.

The Experienced Farrier.

11

able. But if you have not these Conerves take this other Receipt.

Another.

Take of the Syrup of Colts-foot one ounce, of Elecampane Roots dried, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each half an ounce, all made into fine powder, an ounce of brown Sugar candy, which must be divided into two parts, then take sweet Butter so much as will suffice, and so make this up into three Balls good and stiff, which done, roul them in your other moiety of your powdred Sugar candy, and so give it him fasting, and ride him gently for half an houre, and so set him up warm, and let him fast three houres after it, and let him drink no cold water, unless it be with exercise, and sprinkle his Hay with water, and his Oats with Beer or Ale.

A Fume for a Horse that is stopped in the Head, and that he voideth Filth and Stinking matter out of his Nose.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Colts-foot made into powder, of each two drams, with *Venice-Turpentine*, work them into a stiff paste, and make them into small Cakes the bredth of a six pence, and dry them a little, and put one of these Cakes into a Chafing-dish of coals, covered with a Tunnel, and so fume him, and this not only during his Physick, but at other times after.

For a New Cold give him this Caudle.

Take the Yolks of four new laid Eggs, and beat them well together, and dissolve them with a quart of good Ale, then take three Nutmegs with a little Anniseeds and Licoris made all into fine powder, and as much pepper in fine powder as you can put upon a six-pence, and put these in also with a piece of sweet Butter, and two or three spoonfuls of ordinary Treacle, and of brown Sugar-candy four ounces, warm them all upon the Fire till the Treacle and Butter be molten, and give it him blood-warm four or five mornings together, and this is an infallible Cure.

The Experienced Farrier.

Another, which Cures any Cold or dry Cough, shortness of Breath, Purges or broken-Winded.

Take of Tarr and sweet Butter of each three Spoonfuls, and work them well together with the fine Powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard Paste: then make it into three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and so give him them, and warm him before and after he hath received them, and be sure that he be fasting before he takes them, and let him fast three hours after them.

Another for the same Purpose.

Take of the white Fat or Lard of Bacon a piece four Fingers long, and almost two Fingers thick both ways, then with your Knife make many holes in it, and stop it with as many Cloves of Garlick as you can conveniently get into it, then rowling it in the Powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, Sugar-candy, and Brimstone, of equal proportions alike, and give it him in a Morning fasting, twice a Week, till you find amendment, and Ride him after it, and sprinkle his Hay with Water.

Another.

Take a Red Herring, and take out the Bones, and rowl it up in Tarr, and give it him down his Throat, and it will Cure him.

Another.

Take the Juice of Licoras, London-Treacle, Anniseeds, Turmerick, Fennegreek, and long Pepper, of each an ounce, beat the hard Simples into Powder, then put to them two ounces of *English* Honey, and as much of Sugar-candy, and incorporate all together, and make thereof Balls as big as Pullers Eggs, and give him two or three in a Morning fasting, and give him two new laid Eggs after them, and at Noon give him a Mash, keep him warm and do this twice or thrice.

Another for a desperate dry Cough.

Take a pint of burnt Saek, Sallet-oyl and red Wine-Vinegar, of both a quarter of a pint, of Fennegreek, Turmerick, long Pepper and Licoras, of each a spoonful in Powder, and give it him half at one Nostril and half at another, and do this twice a Week, and Ride him after it.

and let him fast two houres, and keep his Head and Breast warm.

Another for a Horse that hath a Rattling Cold in his Head.

Take a quarter of a pint of Mustard made with white-Wine Vinegar, and put to it more when it is made, another quarter of a pint, to make it Liquid, then put to it an Egg well beaten, and two spoonfuls of Sallet-oil, then let it be luke-warm, and work it very well together till it foams again, and give it him in three parts, one down his Mouth, and the other two at each Nostril.

Another for a Cold long Settled.

Take three Heads of Garlick and to st them in Embers, then mix them with three spoonfuls of Tarr, as much Powder-Sugar, and half a pound of Hogs-grease, then with Anniseeds, Licoras, Elecampain, Fennegreek and Cumineseeds made into Paste and give as much at once as a Ducks Egg.

Another for a dry Cough or Rotten Lungs.

Take Elecampain, the Floure of Brimstone, Licoras, Fennel-seeds, Lymseed, of each an ounce, and of Clarified Honey one pound, work the Powders and those together, and to a pint of sweet Wine put two ounces of these, and give it him Morning and Evening, Ride him after it, and let him fast one hour after Riding.

A Cordial Powder for any ordinary Cold, and to prepare a Horse before Travel, and to preserve him from mischief after Travel.

Take of English Licoras, Elecampain Roots, of each an ounce, of Sugar-candy an ounce and a half, and beat them into fine Powder and keare them. Keep it in a Box, and when you use it for a Cold, give him an ounce in a pint of Sack, if it be in Travel, then give it in sweet Wine or strong Ale, but if in Ale, then take a quart, and give it both before Travel, and in your Inn, or at home immediately after Travel.

Another to break a festered Cold or dry up Glanders, and to heal the Ulcers and Canker in the Nose.

Take a pint of Verjuice, and put to it so much strong Mustard made with white-Wine Vinegar as will make it strong, then take an ounce of

Roch. Allom in Powder, and as you give this to the Horse, as you fill the Horn, put in some of the Allom, and give him part at both Nostrils, but especially at that Nostril that runneth most, and ride him after it, and set him up warm, and give no cold water but with exercise. Thus do divers Mornings.

If you would see the manner of making these Cordial Balls, which Cure any violent Cold or Glanders, or for other diseases, look in my first Part for Cordial-Balls. pag: 132.

Another for a Cold and Surfeit.

Take two handfuls of Mallows, one of Sellandine, one of herb of Grace or Rue, one pint of Hemp-seed beaten in a Mortar very fine, chop the herbs, and boyl them in two quarts of water, to one quart, then put into it a piece of Butter, and give it him luke-warm, and order him as a Horse should be ordered after drenching.

Another for a Cold or for any inward disease.

Take two spoonfuls of Bay-salt, two spoonfuls of English honey, two spoonfuls of Tarr, as much black Soap as a Nutmeg, as much Diapente as will lie upon six pence, and as much Turnericke beaten to powder, as will work altogether until the Salt be molten, then fill two Egg-shells with it, and give it him, cracking the shells a little first, and ride him a little after it, and let him fast two or three houres after it, then let him eat Hay, after you have first given him a Mash.

Another.

Take a quart of white Wine Vineger, four Heads of Garlick pilled clean, five new-laid Eggs, set it in a dunghil twenty four houres; then take out the Eggs and wipe them clean, and strain the Vineger from the Garlick, and put to it two spoonfuls of Honey, three ounces of Treacle of Jeane. These being thus mixed, give him of it every Morning two Horn-fulls of it, and one Egg so long as it lasts.

Another.

Take an ounce of Elecampane beaten to powder, a spoonful of Treacle, a spoonful of English Honey; put all these into a quart of new Milk, blood-warm. This use twice a week till the Cold is gone.

Another

The Experienced Farrier.

Another.

Take a quart of New Milk. and a handul of Sellandine with the roots, Seethe the Milk, and cut the Sellandine as small as you can, then boyl them a little while together, and put into it a good piece of sweet Butter, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take an ounce of Rubarb, half an ounce of Cassia, half an ounce of Mirrh, one penny-worth of *English* Treacle, make them up into three balls with fresh Butter, and alter rowl them in Bran, and give him when fasting.

Another for a Cough or Glanders.

Take a little handful of Box, cut it very small, then take an ounce of Licoris beaten, an ounce of Anniseeds beaten, boyl them all in a quart of Ale or Beer to a pint and a quarter, then put a quarter of a pint of good Sallet-oyl, and a quarter of a pint of Treacle, and give him all at once, and ride him moderately a mile or better, keep him warm covered four or five days, and give him a Mash two houres after he drink, and after five days you may ride him moderately, and if you see he requires the same drink again, give it him.

Another.

Take a handful of Rue, and shred it very small, and boyl it in a quart of new Milk, till a quarter-part be boyled away, then put into two spoonfuls of Anniseeds beaten very small, and the like quantity of Licoris, and two spoonfuls of Treacle, and give it him luke-warm. put first a piece of sweet Butter into it. Let him fast two houres before it. Then give him a Mash of good sweet Malt, and after that day.

Recipe for a dry Husking Cough, which will make him throw out the Filth at his Nostrils.

Take a whole Head of Garlick, and peel all the Cloves clean, then put them into a linnen Cloth, and boyl them in a quart of Milk till they become tender; Then take out the Garlick, and squeeze out the substance with the Milk, and put it a cooling. then put to it a pound of honey, and half a pound of fresh Butter, and give it him blood-warm.

Another.

Another.

If he run at Grass, and hath got a Cold, and you are minded to Drench him, take him up over Night for fear of catching Cold, and give him the Drink the next Morning, and keep him in the House that day, and if it be warm Weather turn him out the next, and take him up at night, then the next day after turn him out both night and day.

The Drink is this.

Take Bay-berries, Fennegreek, Elecampain Roots, long Pepper, Licoras, Anniseeds, Cumineseeds, about two ounces of them all beaten very well, and boyld a little in a quart of strong Beer; then sweeten it with Treacle, and put a good piece of Butter into it, and give it him luke warm.

Things good in General for Broken-Winded Horses.

To sprinkle water upon all the Hay he eats is good, maiden-hair Tree, Ash, Licoras, Fennegreek, Anniseeds, Cumin, Pepper, bitter Almonds, Borage, Aristolochia, Galingale, Cardium, Nutmegs, Saffron, Colicquintida, Cardus Benedictus, Fluellin, Dragons Light-wort, Angelica Mullet, Mullen or Horse-Lung-wort, Nettleseed, the Ashes of a Hedge Hog strowed amongst his Provender, Bay-berries, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, Water, Agrimony, Briony, Lung-wort, which grows upon rotten Oak or Beech Trees, or to let him drink ten days together of the Water wherein Licoras hath been sodden, mixt with Wine, or to let him drink of the water wherein hath been boyled Cardus Benedictus, Dragon Elecampain, Pénerial, Light-wort, and Angelica. To keep his Bladder and Provender wet is good.

Particular Receipts for a Broken-Winded Horse.

Take the Guts of a Hedge-hog, and dry them and beat them to Powder, and give him two or three spoonfuls thereof in a pint of Wine or strong Ale, then the rest mix with Anniseeds, Licoras and sweet Butter, and make round Balls or Pills thereof, and give him two or three after his drink, and let him fast two or three hours after.

Another very good.

Take wheat-Meal, the powder of Lung-wort, *alias* Mullet, Gentiana, Anniseeds, Cumineseeds, of each three drams, make them into Powder, and make them into Paste with Honey and sweet Butter.

each a like quantity, & put to it the yolks of two new laid Eggs; make this Paste into Balls, and every Morning fasting give him three or four of them rowled up in the powder of Elecampane, and the powder of Licoris, of each alike. These Pills preserve the wind of a Horse-mare yellously, and keeps him always in breath.

Another.

Take the Excrements of a sucking Child, and put unto it a pint of white Wine, let it boyl till the one half be consumed, and so give it him blood-warm; This will cause him to forsake his blowing for 15 days, so as when he beginneth again to blow give him the same Medicine, and so keep him with this from time to time, as you shall find cause, and by this means you shall have his Wind good. Put not too much of the Excrement in, for it will make him very sick.

Another, which is the best of all.

Take the leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen, *alias* Horse Lung-wort, and dry them, and make them into fine powder, and make them up in Balls with ordinary honey, the bigness of a Pidgeons Egg, and give him three at a time 14 or 15 days together, or longer, as you shall see cause, and let him not drink any cold water during the time, and let his exercise be moderate, and his Hay sprinkled with Water, and his Oats wet with good Ale or Beer, and in short time he will be well and sound again.

Things good in general for shortness of Breath, Parsinefs, or Preservers of the Wind.

Saffron, Wood bittony, Butter burr, Co'ts-foot, Elecampane, Fen-nel, Anniseeds, the Juice of Sow-Fennel dissolved in Wine, and put into an Egg and given him, Hore-hound, Juniper-berries, Lung-wort, that groweth upon Oaks or Beeches, which is a kind of Mo's with grayish tough leaves, Horse Lung-wort, the Roots of Marsh-mallows, the Roots of Master-wort, Hedge-mustard-seed, the Seeds of Cow-Parfnips, Pellitory of the Wall, the Juice or Seeds of Purslain, *Rosa Silu* or Sun dew, *Scabeus*, the Milk of Sow-Thistles given in Wine or Beer, Vervain, Antimony, Southern-wood, the Kernels of Grapes, the blood of a sucking Pig, *Venus* hair *Ireos*, Ash-skies, Fennegreek, Raisins, Pepper, Almonds, Burrage, Nettle-seeds, Aristolochia, Cila-quintida, Powder of Gentian, Nutmegs, Cloves, Gallinal, Graines of Paradise,

Paradise, Caraway seeds, white Wine and Yolks of Eggs, the Juice of Water croffes, Frankincense, a Snake boiled and the Broth given him, Agarick, Cardamum, Lightwort, Angelica, the green bark of Elder-Tree, red Mints, red Fennel, Primrole-leaves, Brimstone, Salt Nitre, Balin, Violet-leaves, Hyfop, the Lungs of a Fox boiled or laid in Rose-water, or dry them and beat them to powder, and give him them in Beer, or strow them amongst his Provender, Bay-berries, white Hawthorn leaves, the Guts of a hedge Hog dried and beaten to powder, and boiled in Beer and given, or mixed amongst his Provender with Anniseeds and Licoris, or wet his Hay with water, and his Oats with Ale or Beer, Oyl of Frankincense, Fern-Roots, Night shade, Calfia, Mithridate, Diacartamus, Sene, Aloes.

Particular Receipts for shortness of Breath or Pursiveness, or Preservers of the Wind.

Take Anniseed, Licoris and Sugar candy, all beaten into very fine powder, and take four spoonful thereof, and brew it well in a Pint of white-Wine, and half a pint of Sallet-oyl, and use this ever after your Horses Travel, and a day before he is Travell'd.

Another.

Take Wheat-flower four pounds, Elecampane and Gentian, of each anounce, Anniseeds, Fennegreek, Cumin, Brimstone and Licoris, of each half a pound, make them all into very fine powder and searced, then put into it of common *English* honey half a pound, and so much white-Wine as will make all these into a Cataplasme. Boyl them till they become so thick, that they are fit to make into Balls, and give him three or four at a time, for six or eight Mornings together, use it often, for it will keep him in health, and make him sound of his body, wind and courage. But if you do perceive a Taint in his Wind, then

Take a close earthen pot and put thereunto three pints of the strongest Wine-vinegar, and four new-laid Eggs unbroken, and four Heads of Garlick clean pill'd and bruised, then cover the Pot very close, and bury it in a dunghil thirteen houres, then take it up, and take forth the Eggs, and use it as you do the same Receipt before-recited.

Things good in general for the Glanders,

Cumin-seeds, Grains of Paradise, Fennegreek, Diahexaple, Sallet-oyl,

Oyl, Aqua-vitæ, the Bark of E lder, Sugar-candy, Garlick, Urine, white Wine, Bay Salt, Licoris, Anniseeds, Hogs greafe boiled in water, and take the fat off, Ginger, Yolks of Eggs, Saffron, Gloves, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Moss boiled in Milk, Cardimonium, Spikenard or Lavender, Gallingle, Honey Euphorbium, Pepper, Brimstone, Spikenard of Spain, Myrrh, *Iris Ilirica*, Smallage, Penneroyal, Aristolochia. Salt-water, Oyl of Oats, Tanners Oyl, *Auripigmentum* and *Tus-silaginis* beaten into powder, four drams of each beaten with Turpentine, and make them into little Cakes, then put them upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and a Tunnel put over it, so let him take the Perfume of it up his Nose. Agarick, Gentian, Bay-berries, Hore hound, *Gumma Gniatum*, Amber, Coral Arkaner, Black-berries, the dust of Oaken Bark, Bramble-leaves, Knot-grass, wild Daxie-roots, Muscadine Figs, Elecampane, Treacle, Box leaves, Coals of Athen wood quenched in Ale, and poured down his Nose.

Particular Receipts for the Glanders.

The first thing that is to be done in this disease is to let him blood, then for four or five days together instead of his Oats to give him scalded Bran, which will dry up his moist and bad humors abounding in him, and prepare him the sooner for his Cure. Take honey as much as will suffice, and mingle it with his Oats, rubbing the Oats and the Honey together betwixt your hands, so as the Honey may be very well mixed with your Oats, continue him with this manner of feeding Morning and Evening, till you find him leave running at the Nose. This Receipt *de Grey* declares he hath Cured very many Horses with.

Another.

Take Sallet Oyl and white-Wine Vineger, of each six spoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into both his Nostrils if they both run, and continue this three Mornings together, and presently after you have given him this Medicine, you are to put up into that Nostril that runs a long Goose feather dipped in *Oyl de Bay*, stirring it up and down in his Nostrils, which will cause him to sneeze and snuff forth the vicious corruption which remaineth in his head, keep him all the time warm, and let his drink be sweet Mash.

Another.

Take new made Chamberly, and of the best and strongest white Wine-vineger, of each half a pint, then take of Mustard-seed two or three spoonfuls, and make Mustard thereof with Vineger, and let it be very well ground, that done put your Vineger and Chamberly to the Mustard, and stir them well together; then take of Tarr and Bay-salt, of each alike, incorporate them well together, and convey so much thereof as three egg-shells will hold, the meat first taken forth, and having first prepared these things, let the Horse be taken forth of the Stable, (being kept that night to a very spare diet) and ride him first till he begin to sweat, then give him the three Egg-shells filled with the said Tar and Salt, and throw down presently after it a Horn-full of the Chamberly, Vineger and Mustard, and a half-Horn of it at each Nostril, then ride him again as you did before, then cloath him warm and litter him well, and let him stand upon the Trench until three or four of the Clock; then give him a warm Mash, and order him as you do Horses in Physick. Give him this Medicine every other or third day three or four times, and you shall find it an infallible Cure. Before you use this Medicine you must prepare his body with Bran prepared, and after with a Glyster, and your Goose-feathers.

Another.

Take better then two handfuls of the Cankerous Moss, which groweth upon an old Oaken Pale, and boyl it in two quarts of Milk to one, then strain it, and squeeze the Moss well, and give it him luke-warm to drink; then take two Goose-feathers, and take as much sweet Butter as contains a Wall nut, and with the powder of brimstone finely beaten and searced, work them well together with your Knife, till the Butter be brought to a high gold colour; Then take two feathers, the longest you can get in a Gooses wing; and first at the quills end with a Needle fasten two long threads, then with your Salve anoint your feathers all over, which done rowl them well in the powder of Brimstone, and thrust them up into his head, then fasten the thread on the top of the Horses head, and ride him abroad for an houre or two, airing him in this manner morning and evening; and when he hath stood a pretty while in the Stable, after you have brought him home again, untie the threads, and draw forth the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This dis-

ease cometh not suddenly, but grows out of long process of time, and therefore the Cure must be done by leisure; therefore you must continue the Medicine as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at the least thrice a week, if it be for four or five months together, and be sure it will in the end yield your desire.

Another which will Cure any high running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine.

Take Elecampane Roots, and boyl them in Milk till they be soft, that you may bring them to pap, then with a Horn give them to the Horse with the Milk luke-warm, being no more then will make the Roots liquid, and having anointed your Goose-feathers, use them and ride him as you did before.

Another.

Take of *Agri-pigmentum*, and of *Tussil-g'nis*, beaten into powder, of each four drams, then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a Paste, then make them up into little Cakes as broad as a Groat, and dry them. Then lay two or three of them on a Chafing-dish of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the smoke may come up onely at the end thereof, and so without any loss ascend up into the Horses Head through his Nostrils, then ride him till he begin to sweat, this do once every morning, before water, till the running be stopped, which will be in a very short space, considering the greatness of this disease.

Another.

After you have purged him two days before give him this drink; Take of Tanners Owes new made, wherein never came Hides, one pint of Sallet-oyl four spoonfuls, two Heads of Garlick pilled and bruised, Featherfew and Sellandine, of each one handful chopped very small, Anniseeds and Licoris, and Bay-berries, all finely pulverized, of each one spoonful, boyl all these a little, and give it him blood-warm twice a week fasting, and being thus four times drenched, will be perfectly cured, which seldom or never fails. The best Receipt for this disease is in my First Part.

Another.

Take Cummin-seeds, Grains and Fennegreek in powder, of each half an ounce, of Diahexaple a quarter of an ounce, beat this in a Mortar,

D d 3.

with

with a quarter of a pint of Verjuice, three spoonfuls of Sallet-oyle, and two spoonfuls of *Aquavite*, then put altogether to a quart of old Ale, with a good slice of sweet Butter, and set it on the fire till it be ready to boyl, then being luke-warm give it him part at his Mouth and part at both Nostrials: then ride him pretty roundly for an hour, and set up warm, let him fast an hour, and if you perceive Sicknes to grow, give him a pint of new Milk.

Another to stay it for a time being Incurable.

Take the green Bark of Elder, and beat it in a Morter, and strain it till you have a pint thereof. Then put that Juice to a pint of Old Ale, and warm it on the fire with a good lump of sweet Butter, and an ounce of Sugar-candy, and so give it luke-warm, ride him after it, and and let him fast an hour, and keep him warm, do thus divers Mornings. If you are minded to take a general Receipt to cure all Colds, Glanders, Heart-sicknes, and to purge away Molten greafe, look in the first Part, for Balls Cordial to cure any, &c.

Things good in General, given inwardly to a Hide-bound Horse.

White-wine, Sallet-oyle, Venice-Turpentine, Mithridate, Loaf-Sugar, Cassia prepared, Milk of sweet Almonds, Verjuice given him, Mulcadine, strong Ale, Grunsel, Rue, Smallage, Rosemary, Bitony, Gum-Dracagant, Garlick, sweet Butter boyled to a pint and given him three several Mornings together, the pint being divided into three parts, and keep him very warm, and feed him with Mashies and white Water, for Fennell-seeds, Anniseeds, Licoris, Bay berries, Elecampain, Fennegreek, Turmerick, all made into fine Powder, infused in Ale and Sallet-oyle, given him four Mornings together, or Hogs-grease, Dragon-wort, Incense, Syrop of Roses dissolved in Tisan and given him Blood-warm, with moderate Exercise till he Sweat.

General Outward Applications.

To let him Blood either on both sides the Neck, or on both the Side-Veins, then to take fair water, Mallows, Smallage, Rose-plary, Bay-leaves boyled in Water till they be soft, and Bath his Body with it warm, and after he is dryed, anoint him with this Oyntment, Hogs-grease, Camomile, Mallows, Grunsel, Smallage, chopped small and boyled in the greafe, and anoint his Body with it, which will loosen his Skin, or rub him against the Hair all over, and lay upon him a Sack well Soaked in water, and when it is well drained a while, lay it upon him

and over that so many Cloths as will bring him to a Sweat, which will be the best Cause to restore him, but let him not Sweat above an hour at most, and cool him by degrees.

Particular Receipts for a Hide-bound Horse.

After you have let him blood, to give him three or four Mornings together a quart of new Milk, with two spoonfuls of Honey, and one ounce of London-Treacle, and let his food be warm Grains and Salt, or sodden Barley, or sweet Mashies.

Another.

First, let him blood in the Neck-vein, then give him this drink, Take two handfuls of Sellandine if it be in the Summer, the leaves and stalks will serve; but if it be in the Winter, take leaves, stalks, roots and all, chop them small, then take a handful of Wormwood, and a handful of Rue, chop them likewise, put them all into three quarts of Ale or Beer, and boyl them to a quart, then strain and squeeze the Herbs, and dissolve into it three ounces of Treacle, and give it him luke-warm, and for a week together, once a day, rub the Horses body all over with Oyl and Beer, or Butter and Beer against the hair, and feed him with warm Mashies of Malt and Water, and for his Provender let him have Barly sodden till it begin to break, provided you keep it not until it grower.

Another.

Take Anniseeds, Licoris, Fennel-seeds, Bay-berries, Elecampane dried, Fennegreek, Turmerick of each alike, made into fine powder, give him two spoonfuls of this powder mixed in Ale or Beer one quart, with two spoonfuls of Sallet-Oyl, and give it him four Mornings together, and the first Morning you are to give him two spoonfuls of the powder, and the other three Mornings but one, keep him warm, and order him as a sick Horse, and he will certainly be Cured.

Things good for a Tyred Horse in general, either taken inwardly, or Applied outwardly.

Elecampane, Cinnamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Graines, Cloves, Anni-seeds,

niseeds, Fennel-seeds, Sage, Rosemary, Mint, Rue, Camomil, Tyme, either of them, or all of them boiled in Beer and given him inwardly, or apply outwardly to his back Arsmurt laid under his Saddle, or his Back rubbed therewith. or to take up the skin on each side the spurveines, and make some holes in it, and rub some of the powder of Glais in them, and if he hath any life in him, this will make him go; but be sure at your Journeys end to wash it out with the powder of Jet and Turpentine, for it will else corrode; or else with Chamberly and a little Salt, or to take three or four round pebble stones, and put into his ear, and Tie them fast in, and the noise of them will make him go, or to make a hole in the Flap of his ear, and thrust a long stick full of Nicks through the same, and to saw and fret him with it, and while he hath any life left him he will go, or to tie a bunch of Pennerial to his bit, and it will keep him from tyring.

Particular Receipts for a Tyred Horse.

Take half an ounce of Elecampane powdred, and give it him in a quart of Ale, and tie his Head to the Rack, and Provender him well at night.

Another.

Take the powder of Bay-berries, and mix it with Hogs-grease, and bath his Limbs very well with it, doth wonderfully refresh him.

Of Purgations and their Uses, *vide* my First Part.

Scourings in general and in particular, *vide* my First Part.

Things good in general for a hot Stomach.

Bilberries, Barberries given him inwardly, or to wash his tongue with vinegar, or to give him cold water mingled with vinegar, or to give him Milk and Wine mingled together with some *Mel Rosatum*.

Things good in general for a cold Stomach.

Bay-berries, Angelica, Caraway-seeds, Garden Chervil, Clary, Mace, Cinnamon, Grains of Paradise, Saffron, Pepper, Cloves, Ginger,

Particular Receipts for the Stomach.

If his Stomach be cold, give him Wine and Oyl mixt together, divers Mornings together, or other Farriers give Wine, Rue, Sage and Oyl boyled together, or to add to the former Compound, white Pep-

per and Mirrh, or to give him pill'd Onions. Chopt, and Rochet seed boyled in Wine, but to conclude for general forsaking and loathing of Meat, proceeding from hot or cold, then give him Blades of Coin in a good quantity.

Things good for a Blood Spaven.

To Cure it, first shave away the hair on both sides the Swelling so far as it goes, then take up the Thigh Vein and let it bleed well; which done tie the Vein above the Orifice, and let the Vein bleed from below what it will; whereby the blood which was assembled about the Spaven place, is by this means sent away: Then with your Fleam, or Incision-Knife, make two Incisions in the lower part of the Swelling, and after prick two or three holes in each side of the Hoof where the Spaven is, that so the Medicine may take the better effect, and when the blood and water hath vented away so much, as it will do, bind round about it Plaister-wise the whites of Eggs and Bolearmoniack very well beaten together, either upon Hurds or Linnen-Cloth, and make it fast about the Hoof, so keep on the Plaister; the next day take it off and wash and Bath the Sorrance with this Bath. *Viz.* Take Mallows, and the tops of Nettles, and boyl them in water till they be soft, and therewith Bath him. Then take Mallow Roots, Brancha Ursina, Oyl, Wax, and white-Wine, so much as will suffice, and boyl them, and bind this warm to the Sorrance round about the Hoof, and sow a Cloth about it, and so let it remain three days more, and every Morning stroak it downwards with your hand gently, to the end the bloody Humour may issue forth, the fourth day Bath and wash it clean with the former Bath. That done, take Carana, and Stone Pitch of each an ounce, and of Brimstone a quarter of an ounce, made into very fine powder, melt these on the fire together, and when it is almost ready to take off, put into it half an ounce of Venice-Turpentine, and make a Plaister thereof, spreading it upon Leather, and apply it to the place warm, round about the Hoof, and let it remain till it fall away of its own accord, but if it come off too soon, make another Plaister of the same Ingredients and lay to it, which is the best Cure I could ever know for this Malady.

Another for it.

When the Swelling doth appear upon the inward part of the Hoof, take up the Thigh Vein, and let it bleed from the nether part of the Leg, till it will bleed no longer, and after give fire to the Spaven both

long ways and cross ways, and then apply a restraining charge to the place.

Things good to Cure a Bone Spaven.

Take up the Veins that feed it (whether Spaven or Curb) as well below as above, then give it fire, then charge the place with Pitch made hot, and clip Flax upon it, then four days after you must dulcifie the Sorrance with the Oyl Pampilion, and fresh Butter Molten together upon a gentle fire, and when the Scar shall be fallen away, apply unto it a kind of stuff which is called Blauco or white, made of Jessoe, and so continue it untill it be whole.

Another.

Take the Root of Elecampain well censed, and lap it in a Paper and roast it soft, and after you have rubbed it and chafed it well, clap it on and bind it on hard, but not so hot as to scald away the hair, and at twice dressing it will take it away, or if you anoint the place with Oyl of Origanum Morning and Evening it will take it away. This is good for Curb, Spaven, Ring-bone, or any Bony Excreffion.

Another.

Upon the top of the Excreffion, make a slit with your Knife the length of a Barly-Corn or more, then with a fine Cornet, raise the Skin from the Bone, and hollow it round the Excreffion, and no more then dip some Lint in the Oyl of Origanum, and thrust it into the hole and cover the knob, and so let it bridle till you see it rot, and that Nature casteth out both the Medicine and Core.

Another for it, which will not only take that away, but also a Splint, Curb, Ring-bone, or any Bony Excreffion.

First clip away the hair as far as the Excreffion goeth, and a little more, then take a piece of Allum'd Leather, made as big as the place you have Cured, then take a little Shoo-Makers Wax and spread round about the very edge, or verge of the same, leaving all the Inward part empty and not touched with the Wax; Then take the Herb Spear-grass, or Spear-wort, which hath the Vertue to raise Blisters, and bruising it, lay some thereof upon the Leather in the empty place, and bind it fast thereon, suffering it so to lye (if it be in the Summer time, when the Herb hath his full strength) near half a day; but if it be in the Winter,

Winter, then it is not amiss (to renew the strength of the Herb) if you add to it a drop or two of the Oyl of Origanum, and let it lie half a day fully, and be sure to tie up his Head, for fear of biting it away; when you take away the Herb, rub the place well, and anoint it with Train-Oyl warm, or else lay on a Diminium Plaister. But because this disease is not easily to be Cured, unless you see some skilful Farrier do it before you. I shall shew you therefore for the prevention thereof (when you find a Swelling begin to arise) what you shall use.

Take Natural Balsom, and having first shaved away the hair, anoint the place with it for two or three days, and after you shall repress the humours with this Charge. Take three ounces of the Oyl of Roses, Bolearmoniack one ounce, Wheat-Flower half an ounce, and the white of an Egg; make all these into one Body, and every day after you have anointed it with Balsom, lay on the said Charge,

Things good in General for to take away a Splint.

Oyl of Vitriol, Urslackt Lime, Oyl of Origanum, an Elecampane Root roasted and laid to it, Oyl of Peter, Spear-grass, Alias Spear wort, Verdegrease, Oyl de-bay, Powder of Mercury, Powder of Arsnick, Crow-foot, laid to it.

Particular Receipts to Cure a Splint.

After you have washed the place and shaved away the hair, as you must do in the Cure of all Splints and Bony Excessions. Knock and rub it with your Blood-staff, or a Hazel-stick, then prick it with your Fleam; Then take Vervain and Salt of each a handful, pound them together to an Oyntment and apply it to the place, and bind it up with a Rowler, and stitch it on fast, and let it so remain twenty four houres, and then unbind it and it is cured.

Another.

Take Nerve Oyl one ounce, Cantharides the weight of six pence, and as much of the Oyl of Vipers, boyl them easily, then anoint the Splint. with this cross the hair and heat it in with a hot Iron, then tie up the Horses Head up to the Rack for twenty four hours, then squeeze out the Corruption, and do this twice or thrice.

For a Splint, and to dry up Wind Galls.

First, heat the Sorraice with a hot pressing Iron, then vent it in several places with your Fleam, then take a spoonful of Salt, half a spoonful of Nerve Oyl, a penny weight of Verdegrease, and the white of an Egg, beat all to a Salve, and dipping Flax Hurds therein, apply it to grief.

Another to take off a Splint.

Take of the Oyl of Vitriol, and dip a stick or feather into the Glais, and touch the place with it, and it will eat it away. If you find it eat too much, you may stop it by bathing it with cold water; or if you boyl some green Copperas in water, and wash the sore with it, it will not only cleanse the Sore from any piece of the remaining Splint, but soon heal it up likewise.

To take away a Splint and leave no Scar behind.

Take a red Hazel-stick about the bigness of your Thumb, about a quarter of a yard long, and after you have beaten and knockt the Splint very well with it, then take and cut one end of it very smooth, and stick a Needle into the pith of it, leaving so much of the point of it out as will prick through the skin, pricking it full of holes; then take some of the Oyl of *Peter*, and rub all over it, and bath it in with a hot Fire-shovel, and do thus four or five days together, and it will cure it.

Another.

First, wash the place with warm water, and shave away the hair, then slit a hole in the skin more then the length of a Barley corn, and then convey into the hole so much Arsnick in the fourth part of a Hazel-Nut, and bound on with a Bolster and Rowler of Linnen and made fast with a Needle and Thread, and so let it remain for three whole days and nights, in which time the Arsnick will eat and corrode clean away the Splint, then to kill the Fire anoint the place with sweet fresh Butter eight or ten days after, being first molten, and it will be whole.

Another.

Take the Root of Elecampane, well washed and cleansed, and lap it in a brown paper, wet it and roast it in the hot Embers, as you do a Warden; then after you have rubbed and chaf'd the excression, bind it fast on, but not so hot as to scald away the hair, this will consume it away in two or three dressings; or if you anoint the Splint with the Oyl of Organum, morning and evening, it will take it away, but not presently.

Observation.

You must stay the falling down of new humours to the place troubled, by binding Plaisters, as Pitch, Rozin, Mastick, red Lead, Oyl, Bole-armoniack, and such like, then to draw forth matter, which is gathered with drawing Simples, as Wax, Turpentine, and such like; And lastly, to dry up the Relicks with drying powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyfter-shells, Soot and such like; and also you must know, that all Splints, Spavens or Knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning, or after the full of the Moon.

Another Receipt to take off a Splint, which though it seem difficult, yet de Grey declares that he hath taken off more then 100 Splints.

Take two Heads of Garlick and peel them, and cut them small, and do neither stamp nor bruise them; then take the like quantity of salt, and mix with them, and divide them into two equal parts, and put them into two fine linnen clouts, and bind them upon the ends of two sticks, about a foot in length, of the fashion of two short wooden foyls, but not so long, being not above twelve inches a piece; Take then your blood stick, and rub, knock and beat the Splint therewith very well, to soften it, then prick it through the skin with your blood-staffe and Fleam, then take of the Oyl of Nuts one pint, and put it into a small Pipkin, and set it upon the Fire with a Chafing-dish of coals, and make it boiling hot, and when it is ready to boyl put in your short sticks or foyles, which hath the Garlick and Salt fastned unto them, and first with the foyl, and then with the other, (I mean by turnes) apply them hot to the Splint, and between whiles rub and stroak the Splint downwards with your Thumb, whereby to bring forth the blood, till having with the foyls very well mollified the said Splint, you may the more easily crush forth the blood whereof the Splint is engendred and formed, and thus it is cured, only you must remember to anoint the place two or three times after with sweet or fresh butter.

Things good in general for a Curb.

Oyl of Vitriol, Arsnick, Verdegrease, an Elecampane Root roasted and laid to it, an Onyon Roasted with unslackt Lime and laid to it, Mercury, Turpentine, Neryal, green Copperas, Tartar.

Particular Receipts to Cure a Curb.

First, shave away the hair, then bind the Hoof strait above the Joyat,

Joynt, then with a fir all stick beat, rub and chafe the Curb, like as you do in the Cure of a Splint, then pierce the skin with your Fleam in two or three places, and so with your Thumb thrust forth, and crush out the corrupt blood, and after convey so deep as you can get into every hole, the bigness of two Barley cornes of Arsnick, and so bind up the place, and let it remain for the space of 24 houres, then open the place, and anoint it every day with fresh Butter till it be whole; Oyl of Vitriol used as you do to take away a Splint, will take off a Curb also,

Note, that whatsoever Cureth the Splint or Spaven Cureth the Curb also.

Another Receipt.

Take white-Wine Lees one pint, a Porringer full of Wheat-flower, of Camin in fine powder half an ounce, mix all these well together, and being made warm upon the Fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it once for three or four days together; and when the swelling is almost gone, draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the Burning with Pitch and Rosin molten together, which must be applied warm, to the end the Charge may stick on the better, then presently clap on flocks, and let it remain until it fall away of it self, and let it come in no wet or water for the space of fourteen days.

Another.

Take a Bar of Iron, heat it red hot, and hold it near to the place till it become warm, then with your Fleam prick six or seven holes through the skin, and anoint the Sorrance with Nerval; then take a Spoonful of Salt, and a penny-weight of Verdegreafe in fine powder, with the white of an Egg, incorporate them well together, and wet some Flax in this Medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in a short time he will be perfectly Cured. Or to Calcinate Tartar, and dissolve it in water, and congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Soap like an Oyntment, and dress it therewith, and this will in fourty houres heal any Mules, Pains and Scratches whatsoever,

Things good for the Mules, *vide* Scratches.

Things good for the Pains, *vide* Scratches.

Things good for Cib'd heels, *vide* Scratches.

Things good for Crepances and Rats tails, *vide* Scratches.

Wl at Cures the Scratches Cures all these diseases.

Things

Things good in general for the Scratches.

These things boiled in Hogs-grease and Train-Oyl, viz. Tarr, white Lead, Bole-armoniack, Verdegrease, green Copperas, Allum, Brimstone, Briar-apples all beaten to powder; the powder of Galls, Rue, Rosemary, Gun-powder, burnt Oyster-shells, Turpentine, Ginger, and Herrings chopped small, Elecampane, &c. or Lyme, Honey, Bay Salt, Urine, Vinegar, the Sperm of Frogs, Pepper, Garlick, Mustard, Plantain, Rib-wort, Sage, Tobacco, Elder, Mans-dung, Burr-dock roots and Snails is good for them.

Observation.

You are to take notice, that in all the Cures of the Scratches you must keep his Legs from wet during the Cure, and likewise you must clip away his hair from off his heels very close, or else that will poison his leg. And likewise before you dress him with any of the Receipts following, you must scrape off his Scabs first, and wash off the blood that follows them with Chamberly and Salt, or Brine.

When you have dress'd him with any of the Receipts following wash it clean off with scalding Chamberly and Salt, or scalding Brine, before you dress him again.

Particular Receipts for the Scratches.

Take brimstone, and make it into fine powder, and mix it with sweet Butter, and anoint him therewith once a day.

Another.

Take unslackt Lyme, Salt and Soot, of each alike, all made into fine powder, boiled in the strongest white-Wine vinegar you can get, till it be as thick as a Poultice, then soften it with tried Hogs grease, and so work it to an Ointment, and anoint the places grieved till they be cured.

Another.

Take the tender tops of Elder-buds, and the berries of the Brambles while they be red, and before they be ripe, of each a handful, boil them in two quarts of Wort, and put unto it the quantity of an Egg full of Allum, and wash the Sorrance very hot twice a day.

Another.

Take Verdegrease and make it into fine powder, and work that and common honey together, till they come to an Ointment, and anoint the Sorrance with it, and it will cure them.

Another.

Take tried Hogs-grease and Gun-powder, of each as much as will suffice, incorporate your Gun-powder very well with it, after it is well beaten to powder, and anoint the places grieved with it once a day.

Another.



Another.

Take Honey, Verdegreafe, Brimstone bruised small, green Copperas and Bay-salt, of each a like quantity, boyl all these with a double quantity of Hogs-grease, and put to it a big Root of Elecampane bruised in red Wine-vineger, apply this to the Sore very hot, and supple them by bathing them with new Milk from the Cow.

Another.

Take a hundred and twelve Snailles, and put them in a Linnen-bag, then put to them a handful of Bay-salt, and hang them against the heat of the Fire, and catch the Oyl that shall drop from them, and keep it close in a Glasse, and chafe it into his legs when he is dry, and three or four Dressings will Cure him. This must be made in May.

Another.

Take the spawn of Frogs, and distil it, and keep the water close stopped in a Glasse for your use, and wash and bath the places with it every day warm, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take Honey and Pepper made into very fine Powder, and boyl them together, and anoint the Sorrhance therewith, and they will soon heal and dry up.

Another for them being held incurable.

First, let him bleed in the Shackle-veins, the Spur-veins, and the fore-toe veins, only letting it be three days between the bleeding of the one Toe and the other, then with a Thumb-Rope of Hay, rub the Sores till they be raw and bleed, then take a quart of old Urine, and a quart of strong Brine, and put to them half a pound of Allom, and boyl it to a quart. With this hot wash the Sores well, then take the Sperme of Frogs (in March) and put it into an earthen pot, and in a weekes time it will look like Oyl, then take the Oyl and the round things you see in the Sperme, and spread it on a Cloth, and bind it to the Sores, and do this divers times.

Another.

A piece of bread sod in Vineger to a Poultilis, and laid to them, will draw out the cores, then take half an ounce of Verdegreafe, as much Brimstone in quantity and bigness, not in weight, and as much Honey

will fill an Egg-shell, boyl them together till they look black, and anoint the sore places with it, and this will heal them and cure them ; or Seeth three or four ounces of Brimstone in a quart of white-Wine Vineger, till a fourth part be wasted, and with a clout put upon the end of a stick wash the sore legs therewith as hot as your Horſe can endure it, the hair being first cut close, and the sore places and chops of his heels made as clean and dry as you can.

Another.

Take two ounces of green Copperas, and beat it to powder, then take half a pound of *English* honey, and half a pound of black Soap, an ounce of burnt Oyster-shells, an ounce of beaten Brimstone, boyl them altogether to a Salve, and anoint your Horſes heels with it cold.

Another.

Take two quarts of strong Ale, a Pint of old Malaga sack, a Handful of dried Rosemary beaten to powder, a handful of dried red Sage, two handfuls of dried Bay-leaves, and half a pound of Allom boyl them altogether till it be half consumed, then strain it, and when you use it anoint your Horſes feet with it every day warm till they be whole ; keep him in the Stable during the Cure.

The Mirrour of all Medicines for the Scratches, which never yet failed to Cure them, though their legs were as big as two legs, and though they run never so much at the heels, provided you follow these Directions ; First, to draw blood from him, and a week after to give him these Balls, which will purge away the evil humors into his body.

The Purge.

If he be a strong bodied Horſe, and of a good stature, you may give him an ounce and a half of the best Aloes you can get, and pound it to a very fine powder, then put some Butter to it, and work and mix it very well together with your Knife, then divide it into three parts, and cover every part of them over again with fresh Butter, and make them as big as a good Wash-Ball, then fasting in the Morning give him them upon the point of a stick, and ride him a little after it to warm them in his body, which will make them work the better, then bring him into the Stable and keep him warm, and let him fast two or three hours after it ; then give him his Mash of Malt, and let him eat a little Hay, and to ride him softly after that. After you have given him his

Balls, put down a Hornful or two of warm Beer after them. If you finde him purge too much, so that it takes him quite off his Stomach, give him two or three wilde Bryar-Balls beaten to powder in a quart of warm Beer, and it will soon stay him; or for want of them, boyl some Cinnamon, Pepper, Nutmegs, Ginger and Bay-berries in it. But if you finde that he will not purge at all, which is very unlikely; then ride him to some green corn that is not eared, (or for want of that some four Grals) and let him feed thereon about a quarter of an hour, then ride him gently home, and set him up warm, and you shall finde him purge very kindly without any danger.

The Receipt for the Scratches.

After you have thus purged him, clip off the hair as close from his heels as you can, then scrape off all the scabs till they bleed, and wash them with Brine, or Chamberly and Salt scalding hot. Then take a quarter of a pound of Brimstone, half a quarter of a pound of green Copperas beaten to powder, a quarter of a pound of Goose-grease, a penniworth of Tarr, boyl all these together in a very large Pipkin, or else they will boil over; let them boil about a quarter of an hour, then take a Rag and Tie it to a stick, and dip it into it, and put it all over the raw places scalding hot, and dress it every other day, making his feet first clean by washing off the stuff with scalding Brine, or Chamberly and Salt, and the Scabs picked off, and in three or four dressings it will cure them, be they never so bad, provided you keep him out of the Water during his Cure. If you finde his legs not very much swelled you need not purge him.

Another very good, but not so certain, but more proper for the killing and healing of all manner of Scabs growing about a Horses legs.

After you have clipped off the hair of his legs very close, and rubbed off the Scabs with a Thumb-rope of Hay, and washed them with scalding Chamberly and Salt, or with scalding Brine, then when he is dry anoint him with this Ointment. If when you come to use this Ointment, you mix with it as you use it, some Oyl of Turpentine, it will be much the better. Take a pound of tried Hogs-grease, with a quarter

of a pint of Train-Oyl, and boyl these things in it very well after they are beaten to fine powder, viz. Dyars galls five, of Verdegrease, Bole-armoniack, green Copperas, Allom. Brimstone, two wilde Briar-Balls, a Red-berring chopped small, three or four Sprigs of Rosemary, and as many of Rue, mix them as equally as you can (I mean the rest of the Ingredients,) only Brimstone excepted, which you should have most of, about half a pound weight of all of them together is enough. After your Hogs-grease is melted, and the rest of the Ingredients boiled for some time in it, then put in two or three penniworth of Tarr, and boil that with it, which will take away the ill Sent of all the rest of the Ingredients; when you have well boil'd it, strain it out into a Pot, and keep it for your use.

When you dress his legs with it, anoint him well with it over night, and rub it off with a Thumb-rope of Hay the next morning very easily, for this Ointment will sheal them off extraordinarily, then wash it with scalding Brine, and at night anoint him again with the same Ointment, keep him dry during the Cure.

Things good in general for Foundering.

First, pare all his Soles so thinn that you may see the quick, then let him bleed at every Toe, and let them bleed well; then stop the Vein with Tallow and Rozin, and having Tackt hollow Shooes on his feet, stop them with Brann, Tarr and Tallow as boiling hot as may be, and renew it once in two days for a week together, then exercise him much, and his feet will come to their use and nimbleness, or after he is pared thin and let blood at his Toes, stop his Feet with Cowes-dung, Kitchins Fee, Tarr and Soot boiled together, and poured boyling hot into them. If you Travel your Horse you must stop him with it cold, and add unto it the white of an Egg or two, for that will take away the heat of the former days Journey. Or to stop his Feet with Tow dipt in an Ointment made of Turpentine, Sallet-Oyl, Verdegrease, Wax and Hogs-grease; if he benewly Foundred, give him with a Horn a Pint of fair Water with a handful of Salt in it, but if you stay three or four days, or longer, then give him of Hellebore a spoonful

of Saffron a penny-worth, of Assaetida, and of Soap of Venice two drams, a little of the Seed of Bay, all made into powder and given him in a pint of Vineger blood-warm, and cover him with a wet Cloth, and Cloath him warm and tie him up to the Rack, that he neither lie down nor Vomit, and let him Sweat an hour and cool him by degrees.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Foundred Horse.

For a Horse Foundred in his Feet, let him bleed in the Neck, Breast, and Spur-Veins, and take two quarts of Blood from him, with which make this Charge as followeth, Take the Blood and put into it eight new laid Eggs, shells and all, beat them well together, and put to it half a pound of Bolcarmoniack beaten to powder, strong white-Wine Vineger one pint, Sanguis draconis three ounces in fine powder, make this up with Wheat-Meal good and thick, with this Charge his Back, Reins, Breast, Thighs, Fetlocks, and Soles, and spread two Cloaths Plaister-wise, good and thick, and apply them to the Coffin of his Feet, and bind the fore-Legs about the Knees good and streight, with broad Filleting or Lifts; then ride him two houres upon a hard way, which if it be Paved or Pitcht it is the better, his Feet being pared reasonable near before hand, and when you do bring him into the Stable, let his Feet be stopped with this Charge. Take Rye or Wheat-bran, Ox or Cows-dung, Sheeps Suet, or Turpentine, (which must be put in last) Mince your Sheeps Suet small, melt and heat all these upon the fire stirring them very well, then put in your Bran to make it into a stiff Paste, then put in your Turpentine and incorporate them all very well together, and stop your Horses Feet with it, which being thus charged and stopped three or four days together, ridden and kept warm, and not suffered to drink cold water, but either Mashs or white water, he will be sound in four or six days. If it be a dry Foundered by standing too long in the Stable, then pare him somewhat near, and let him Bleed well in the Toe Veins. Then take Eggs and roast them blew hard, and together with the powder of Cumin stop his Feet therewith so hot as they may be taken out of the Embers, and put over the Soles a piece of Leather with Splints cross, to keep the Eggs from coming out.

Take then a great Onion peel and stamp it, and let it infuse twenty four houres before in the strongest white-Wine vineger you can get, and give it the Horse presently, after you have stopped the Horses Feet, and cover him up warm and let him stand upon the Trench three hours, and then give him meat and white water.

Another

Another for a Foundering a Month or more.

You must take out the Soles of his Feet, and have in a readinesse these things, viz. Take the tender tops of Hyſop three handfuls, pound them together in a Mortar to ſtench his bleeding, then have this Receipt in a readinesse.

Take Snails in the ſhells, and take them forth and reſerve them, then take a handfull of Bay-ſalt, and two or three handfuls of the tender tops of the angrieſt Nettles you can find, beat them with your Snails and Salt to a Salve, then take out the Sole, and ſtench the bleeding with your Hyſop, and when it leaveth bleeding apply this Medicine to it, and bind it up with Cloaths, and let it remain twenty four houres, then open it and heal it up with your green Oyntment, which you may find in my firſt Part, and in two days you ſhall ſee a new Sole coming. But if he be but Hoof-bound, then take Turpentine and Sheeps Suet, of each half a pound, Wax a little, Sallet-oyl half a pint, boyl altogether, but put in the Turpentine laſt, and as they boyl keep them with a continual ſtirring, and anoint his Hoofs once a day well.

For an ordinary Heat in his Feet.

Take Wheat-bran, and Hogs-greaſe, and make them into a Poultice, and apply it as well to the Coffins as the Soles, and it will be well again.

Another for a Founder or Frettizewet or dry.

Fiſt, pare thin, open the Heels wide, and take good ſtore of blood from the Toes or Shackle Veins (which ſome hold good) then tack on a ſhooe ſomewhat hollow, broad at the Heels, and the inſide of the Web, from the firſt Nail to the Heel turned inwards towards the Frog, yet not to touch any part thereof, or the Hoof, ſo as he may tread on the out-Verge of the ſhooe, and not on the inward. Then take Burgundy Pitch, and rowling it in a little fine Cotten Wooll or Bombaſt, with hot Iron melt it into the Foot, betwixt the ſhooe and the Toe, till the Orifice where the Blood was taken be filled up; then take a pound of Hogs-greaſe and melt it, and mix it with Wheat bran, till it be as thick as a Poultice, then boyling hot ſtop up his Feet with it, then cover it with a piece of an old ſhooe, and ſplint it up, and ſo let him ſtand for three or four days, then if occaſion ſerve you may renew it, or otherwiſe the Cure is wrought.

Observations on the Cure.

First, You shall not need to remove or stir his shooes, then after twenty four houres rub off the Charge from his Back.

It. Take away his Garters after twelve hours, and rub his Knees and Hoofs with your hand, and with Wisps to take away the Numbness.

It. If you cannot get Wheat-Meal, take Oat-Meal.

It. If he will not bleed in the Veins before named, then-bleed him in the Neck Vein.

Lastly, If you take him in hand to Cure within twenty four hours after he is foundered, he will be Cured in twenty four hours, but if he go longer the cure will be the longer in doing.

Now if he be foundred through streightness of his shooe, which is not a Founder but a Fretting, which is a degree less then Foundering. Then let him Bleed on the Toes, and stop the place with bruised Sage, and tack his shooe on again and stop it with Hogs-grease and Bran boyled together, as hot as possible you can, and do this twice in a fortnight, and give him rest and it will help him.

An odd kind of Receipt to Cure a Foundred Horse.

Ride him so hard as to Sweat, then ride him up to the Knees in Water, and there let him stand about half an hour, which will cause the humour to ascend out of his Feet into his Body, then an hour after you come home, give him a thorough Scouring, and ride him gently after it, and to bring him home and Cloath him up warm, and this will carry it out of his Body again, *Probatum* by Mr. Goodman. Give him the Purge as aforesaid.

Things good in General for the Mullender and Sellender.

You are always in these diseases, first to Wash and Shave away the hair and rub the Sorance with a Wisp till it be raw, before you apply any thing to it.

What Cures the Scratches will Cure this Disease.

Gun-powder bruised in Hogs-grease, and anoint the grief thereof with, a soft rowed Herring out of the Pickle, beaten with Soap and Ale and laid to it, renewing it for three days together, and pluck out the Scabs before you lay it on again, Hens dung and Gilly-Flower
beate

beaten together, or Soap and Lyme laid to it, or the Dung of a Man, or Sulphur Vitriol, Salt-nitre, Sal-geme mixt with Oyl de-Bay, or green Copperas, Allom and Tobacco boyled in Urine, or Oyl of Turpentine, Oyl of Hemp-seed, Mustard, Verdegrease, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of these Diseases.

Take Glovers shreds which he cutteth from his white Leather, and boyl them in white-Wine Vineger till they be soft, and bind this to it hot, and if you find that in once or twice dressing it take not away the Scurfe or Scab, renew it daily till it doth, for by this means the Roots of the bristly hairs which grow in it, which feedeth the Mallender, will be taken away by this Receipt, which will cause it soon to be Cured.

Another.

To anoint the Sorance with the Oyl of Turpentine, will both kill and heal it and make it marvelous sound. And this will likewise Cure the Scratches.

Another.

Take an ounce of Gun-powder, bruise it to dust and mix it well with Hogs-grease and Allom, and chafe it in well two or three dressings will Cure it.

Another.

Take Verdegrease and soft grease and grind them well together to an Oyntment, put it in a Box by it self. Then take Wax, Hogs-grease, and Turpentine. of each alike, and being melted together, put that Salve into another Box; and when you come to dress the Sore, after you have taken off the Scab and made it raw, anoint it with your green Salve of Verdegrease and fresh grease, only for two or three days. It is a sharp Salve and will kill the Cankerous humour, then when you see the Sore look fair, you shall take two parts of the yellow Salve, and one part of the green Salve, and mix them together, anoint the Sore therewith till it be whole, making it stronger and weaker as you shall find occasion.

Another.

Take of the strongest white-Wine Vineger, and boyl it, and so boyling hot, rub the Mallender therewith twice every day until it do bleed, that done, put upon it the powder of Verdegrease good and thick, and so bind it on with a Clout, and let it so remain till a Crust come thereon, and when you shall find the Crust to be dry, and withal to Chop, anoint the grieved places with tryed Hogs-grease, and that will cause the Crust to fall off.

Another.

Another.

After you have rubbed off the Scabs and washed it well with scalding Chamber-ly and Salt, anoint it with this Salve made of green Copperas, Galls, Verdegrease, Gun-powder, and Allum, all made into fine powder, and made up in Hogs-grease and Tarr.

Things good in general to eat away proud Flesh.

Ink, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Lithergy, Vitriol, unslackt Lime, Roch Allom, Galls, Soot, Verdegrease, green Copperas, white Copperas precipitate, the Juice of Borage, Scabius, Fumitory, a little Oyl and Vinegar boyled with a soft fire, and put to it Tarr, and it will eat away any dead flesh, Oyl of Vitriol, black Hellebore, the Root of it beaten to powder.

An Excellent Ointment to eat away all dead Flesh, and to heal the same.

Take of common honey two ounces, Roch-Allom, Verdegrease and Vineger, of each an ounce; Sublimate two drams, let all be made into fine Powder, and boil it a few Warmths, keeping it still stirring, and then take it from the Fire, and keep it in a Gally-pot close stopped for your use. Apply it upon Lint or fine Hurds to the Sorrance once a day, and it Cureth speedily and soundly, but before you dress the Sore, you cleanse, wash and inject the wound with this water.

A Water to wash and cleanse a Sore or Wound, before you use the Ointment above.

Take red Sage, Plantain, Rib-wort, Yarrow, Bramble leaves, Rosemary, Hyssop, and Honey-suckle leaves, of each one half a handful, boyl them in white-Wine one pint, and as much of Smiths or Cole-Trough water; then add thereto in the boiling of common honey one spoonful, and as much Allom as a Wall-nut, and a bright black piece of a Sea-coal, the bigness of an Egg unbroken, then let it boil till half be consumed, then strain it hard and wash the sore therewith, and if the wound be deep, inject of this Water with a Syringe into it every day when you dress him, and by this doing you shall cleanse the wound, and take away all bad and dead flesh, and heal it up soundly.

A Receipt for a Puncture or green Wound.

If it be in the Foot, or any other part of the body, if you can come well unto it, or if it be an Imposthumation unbroken, scald it first with

with this Medicine. Then wash it with the water above.

Medicine.

Take red Tarr a penny-worth, of the reddest and best, of Hogs-gre: se halt a pound, of green Copperas and Bay-Salt of each a hand. ul, both made into fine powder, boyl all these very well, and with a Clout fastned upon a stick, apply it scaulding hot four Mornings together, for this scaulding doth so kill the Malice of the Fistula, that it can never break to annoy the Horse any further. It Cureth the Impostumes and foul Ulcers, being thus applied.

Things good to take a Wen or any other Excreffion arising in the Flesh, or hard Swellings.

Balm used with Salt, taketh away the hard Swellings in the Throat, or Wens, or Kernels therein. The Decoction of the lesser Sellendine wonderfully cureth all hard Wens, or Tumors applied to them. The seed of Darnel Pigeons dung, Sallet-oyl and the powder of Lynseed boyled to the form of a Plaster, consumeth them, the seed of Turne-Sole laid upon them, Archangel, or rather the Hedge-nettle stamped with Vineger and applied as a Poultess, taketh away any hard Swelling, and also fiery hot Inflammations. To tie a double thread about it to eat it off, then with your Incision Knife cut it a cross in four equal parts or quarters to the very bottom, but beware you touch not either Vein or Sinew, then with Oyl of Vitriol eat it away, or with Mercury, or else burn them off with your hot Iron, then Heal the place with your green Oyntment.

Things good to Cure an Anberry, which is a great Spungy Wart full of Blood.

To tie it about with a thread or hair so hard as you can pull it, and in few days it will fall away of it self, then strew upon it the powder of Verdegrease to kill it at the Root, and heal it up again with your green Oyntment. But if it be so flat that you cannot bind any about it, then take it away with your Incision Knife close to the Skin, or else burn it off with a hot Iron, and then first kill the fire with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, and heal it up as before prescribed, but if it grow in such a Sinewy place that it cannot be conveniently cut away

with a hot Iron, then eat it out with the Oyl of Vitriol, and heal it up as you do other Wounds.

Head Purged, *Vide* Perfumes in the first Part.

Things good for to put in Oynments and Salves for the Cure of all manner of Wounds in General.

The Juice of ordinary Centaury is good to cleanse Old Sores and to heal up Wounds, the Juice of the leaves of Cleavers do close up the Lips of green Wounds, or the powder of the Seed of the Herb doth the same, Clowns Wound-wort, Coral-wort, Cole-worts, the powder of the Root of Sow-Fennel, or Hogs-Fennel, Fox-gloves, Golden-rod, Winter-green, True-love or one Berry, Hounds tongue, St. John-wort, Kidney-wort, Knap-weed, Ladies Mantle is the best Wound-Herb that is, and is good for inward and outward Wounds, Loose-strife. The dried leaves of Medlars strewed upon a Wound, healeth it quickly, Money-wort, the Herb two pence. The Juice of Nettles is good to wash a Wound with, and if it be bound to it but three days you need no other Medicine, Pimpernel, Ground-pine, Plantine, Ragwort, Wild Sage, Sarafens Confound, Solomons Seal, Sanicle Burnet, Saxafrage, Scabius, Self-heal, Southern-wood, the Juice of Wild Tansie, Tutian, Vervain, Blew-bottle, Elder, Couch-grass, or Dogs-grass, Daffadill, Crains-bill, Comfery, doth so Conglutinate things together, that it is reported that it will solder Meal together, it is cut into pieces being put into the pot, Celandine-broom, Turpentine, Mastick, Frankincense, Balsom, the leaves of Elm, Flix-weed is good for Ulcers and Wounds, Bysoyl, Costmary, Cow-slips, Cross-wort, Yarrow is good for Fistulaes, and Ulcers.

Particular Receipts for Salves or Oynments, for Wounds Old or New.

Take Common Honey and Verdegreafe finely pulverized, of each as much as will suffice, boyl them together till the Medicine wax red, and this will heal up an Old or green Sore in short space.

Another.

Take Turpentine, black Soap, Hogs-grease, green Treat and Pitch a like quantity, mix and boyl them together, and apply it warm, either Plaister-wise or Tent-wise,

Another.

Take a quarter of a pound of Butter, of Tarr and black Soap of each half as much, and a little Turpentine, boyl all but the Soap together,

and when you take it off the fire, put in the Soap with this Oyntment, dress any cut and it will heal it, or Hogs-grease and Venice-Turpentine melt together.

Another.

Take eight drams of Venice-Turpentine, four drams of New Virgins wax, melt them in a Pewter Vessel, and stir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and put into them half a pint of white-Wine, and when it is cold, pick holes in it, and let the white-Wine run out, then anoint your hands with Oyl of Roses, and work the Wax and Turpentine well together, then put them into the Pewter-Vessel again, and put to them half an ounce of the Gum of the Fir-tree, and three drams of the Juice of Bitony, then seeth them well together, till the Juice of Bitony be wasted, and put to it three drams of womens Milk, or the Milk of a red Cow, and seeth them once again until the Milk be wasted, and so keep it for your use in a Gally-pot.

Another.

Take Worm-wood, Marjorum, Pimpernel, Calamint, Olibanum, beat them all into powder, and boyl them in Wax and Barrows-grease till they be as thick as an Oyntment or Salve, with this dress any Wound, and it will heal it.

Others.

The powder of Honey and Lyme, or Turpentine simply of it self, will dry up and skin any Wound. If your Horse be goared upon a Stake, then pour into the wound Butter scalding hot, and let him lie after he is cut, so long as you think the Oyntment is gone down to the bottom, and do thus once a day till it be whole. If you desire to keep a wound open, put in the powder of green Copperas, but if to heal it up speedily, then wheat Flower and Honey well beaten together will do it.

If you will see more of Oyntments, Salves, Powders, and Waters, look in the first Part.

Observations upon dressing of Wounds.

If he hath a wound in his Head newly made, or in any other part that is full of Sinews, Bones or Gristles, wash it well with white-wine warmed, & keep it while you are in dressing covered warm with wet Cloaths, then search the bottom of the wound with a probe, and let it take as little wind and air as you can, and having found the bottom of it, stop the wound close with a Clout till your Salve be ready. If the wound be a cut, make a handsom Rowl of soft Tow, so long and so big as may fill the bottom of the wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the mouth of the wound, then make another rowl somewhat bigger, to fill up the rest of the wound, even the hard Mouth, and anoint them with such Oyntment as you shall think fit for the Cure, luke-warm,

only observe this, that if the Wound be large, stitch the Wound a little together with Crimſon Silk, it will heal the ſooner and make the Scar leſs. But if the hurt be like a hole made with ſome prick, then make a ſtiff taint either of Toe or Lint, ſo long as will reach the bottom, and anoint it with your Oyntments, and bolſter the ſame with a little Toe, and clap a ſticking Plaſter over it made of Pitch, Roſin, Maſtick, and Turpentine, melted together. If the Mouth of the Wound be not wide enough to let out the Matter, if it be in ſuch a place as you may do it without hurting the Sinews, give it a ſlit from the Mouth downwards, that ſo the Matter may have the freer paſſage out, and be ſure to keep in the taint by one means or other, and that it be not drowned within the Wound, and to tie ſome thread at the upper end thereof, that it may be taken out at pleaſure. Now if the hole be deep and in ſuch a place as you cannot cut it, then make your tent full as big as the hole, of a dry Sponge that was never wet, ſo long as it may reach the bottom, and the tent being made ſomewhat full with continual turning and wrying of it, you ſhall eaſily get it down, and dreſs the Wound twice a day, and cleanſe it every time with white-Wine luke-warm, for the Sponge anointed with the Oyntment, will both draw and ſuck up all the evil Matter, and make it very fair within, and as it beginneth to heal every day, tent it leſſer and leſſer, until it be ready to cloſe up, and never leave tenting it ſo long as it will receive a tent, be it it never ſo ſhort; for haſty healing of Wounds breedeth Fiſtulaes, which properly be old Sores; and therefore muſt be healed like Fiſtulaes. Now if the wound proceed from ſome Ancient Impoſturation, then take two or three great Onions, and taking out the Cores, put therein a little bay-Salt, and a little whole Saffron, and roaſt them in hot Embers, then Plaſter-wiſe lay them hot to the Wound, renewing it once a day till it be whole. Now if the upper Skin of the Wound be putriſied to take it away, lay a Plaſter of Cows dung to it ſod in Milk, and there let it remain for twenty four hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the Wound.

Things good to Cure a Galled or Swelled Back in General.

Take the white of an Egg and beat it to an Oyl, then take white Flower, Honey, and Bolearmoniack, finely beaten, and mix them well together, and ſpread it upon a piece of thin Leather, and lay it over the place galled, and it will not come off till it be well. Or take the

Soe

Soot of the Chimney and mix it with Cream till it become a Salve, and make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the Gall and Swelling, and it will Cure him. Or take some two or three Spoonfuls of *Aquaviva*, and put to it some Sope and boyl them well together, and anoint the place well with it, as hot as it can be well applied to the Swelling, and it will take it down: or Loam boyled in Vineger to a Poultefs, and apply to it very hot taketh it down.

Or take a Loaf of wheaten Bread and cut a slice of it, and toast it very well, and when it is toasted, spread it all over with Honey on both sides, and prick it full of holes, and toast it till the Honey is well soaked into it, and the toast is become dry, then put it into a Morter and beat it to powder, and keep it for your use, when you use it, strew it upon the Galled place, and it will dry it up in a short space.

To take away any Swelling, and to heal any Galled Back whatsoever.

Take only the Oyl of Turpentine, and lay it upon the raw Back Morning and Evening with a Feather, and it will heal it up, and so used on a Swelled Back, it will either sink it or break it.

Another for a Galled Back.

Take three parts of Sheeps dung newly made, and one part of Rye, or Wheat Flower, and dry the Flower and mix it well with the Sheeps dung, kneading it into a Paste, and make it into a Cake and bake it, and apply the powder warm unto the place, and it will heal it very well.

Another.

Take water and Salt and boyl them well together and wash the place therewith. Then take Pepper made into fine powder and strew upon the place and it will heal it in a very short time.

Another.

Take the leaves of Ars-smart, and wash them, and lay them all over the place, and though you ride him every day, yet the will heal very fast, but if he remain in the Stable, put the water of the leaves upon it.

Another which Cureth not only Galled Backs, but any other Wound whatsoever.

Take Rosin and common Pitch, of each six ounces, Mastick, and *Indigo*, of each one ounce, Turpentine, Galbanum, Bolcarmonjack, of each

each three ounces, melt and incorporate all these together upon a gentle fire, and as they begin to cool make them up in Rows, and when you use it, spread it upon a Cloth or Leather somewhat thin, but if you use it without either Cloth or Leather, to any outward part that is not yet broken; then lay it on much thicker then you use to do Plaister-wis, and whilst it is warm, clap Flocks of the same Colour upon it. This is a most excellent defensive Plaister for the staying, and drying up of all evil humours, and also very Sovereign for asswaging of Swellings.

Another for a sore Back.

Take the Juice of Celandine, and Life-Honey, of each two spoonfuls, beat them with the Yolk of an Egg, and as much Allum and Wheat-flower as will serve to bring it to a Salve, dress the Sore with this once a day, and it draweth and healeth. Now though these Medicines are enough, yet because Farriers hold divers Opinions; and think what they know to be the best. I shall give you a Catalogue of their Receipts in General.

The powder of Bryer leaves, Rye-flower, the powder of burnt Oyster-shells, the white of an Egg, Honey, Barly, Straw burnt and Soot will dry up and heal a sore Back. The powder of Honey and unslackt Lime will skin any Gall, provided the Sore be first washt with Vineger and Onions boyled in water and laid hot to a swoln Horse's Back, will asswage the Swelling, and the Yolk of an Egg, Salt and Vineger will heal it up when it is broken, provided you wash the Sore with Ale, wherein Rosemary hath been sod. The Soot or grim of a pot will dry and skin a galled Back.

Things good for Bruises, or Swellings, in General.

Water-Bitony, Honey suckle-leaves, Knot-grass, Archangel, plantine, Rib wort, Yarrow, Burfa-pastoris, Bugle, Chervil, Mallows, Solomons Scal, Sarasens Confound, Sarasens wound-wort, Scabius, Self-heal, Sanicle, Sope-wort, Thorough-wax, Rosin, Turpentine, Honey, Galbanum, St. Johns-wort, Pitch.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of Bruises or Swellings.

First, Ripen it with Hay boyled in Chamber-lye, or with rotten Litter laid upon it, then let out the Corruption, then fill the hollownes with the powder of Rosin and lay a Plaister of Shoo-makers VVax over it, and thus do once a day while it be whole, if it be slow of skinning or healing up, strew on the powder of unslackt Lime, and Bolearmohy mixt together,

together, and if any proud Flesh arise, take it down either with burnt Allum, or Verdegreafe in powder.

Another.

Take Ale or Beer Yest, and Verjuice, and putting a little fine Hay thereunto, boyl them well together, then bind the Hay to the swelling, and pour on the Liquor, and do thus three or four days together, and it will take away the swelling, or rotten Litter and Hay boyled in Urine will take it way.

Things good in General to Cure Swelled Legs.

Nerve-Oyl, black Soap, and Bores-grease melted together, and anoint the place with it, or to Bath his Legs in Butter and Beer, or in Vineger and Butter melted together, or with sheeps-foot Oyl, or with Train Oyl, or with Piss and salt Peter boyled together, and to rowl his Legs with Hay-Ropes wet in the same Liquor, from the Pastern to the knee, but not bind them too hard, or to Bath him with the water wherein hath been boyled Sage, Mallows, and Rose Cakes, and Butter, and Sallet-oil put into it, or to take Frankincense, Rosin, Fresh-grease, of each alike, boyled and strained and used once a day, as you see occasion, or to wash his Legs with the coldest Fountain Water you can get, or to let him stand every day till the swelling be asswaged in running water up to the Knees, or else take Primrose-leaves, Violet-leaves, Strawberry leaves, of each a handful, boyl them in new Milk till they are soft, then put into it of Nerve, of Petroleum, and of Pumpillion, of each an ounce, and anoint him with it for five or six days together, or take pitch, Virgins wax, Rosin, the Juice of Hyssope, Galbanum, Mirrh, Secondary Bdellium Arabicum Populeon and Storax, according to your discretion, and boyl them in Deers Suet, and when it is cold put into it Colmarmoniack and Costus beaten into fine powder, and incorporate them well together into the other ingredients, and boyl them all over again, and when it is almost cold, work them up into Rowls, and when you use it, spread it upon a Plaister, and wrap it about the Swelling, and let it stay there till it drop off of it self, this is good for a Surfeit.

To asswage the Swelling of a Horses Legs, that is very much Swelled by reason of the Scratches.

Take a quart of Chamber-ly or more, as you shall think fit, and put into it a handful of Bay-salt, a quarter of a pound of Sope, a pretty quantity of Soot, a good handful of Mistle-toe chopped, boyl

boyl them all very well together, and Bath his Legs with it very warme two or three times a day, and wrap a Cloth wet in the same and lap about it, and this will asswage them. If you will have more Receipts for swelled Legs, see the first Part for Plaisters and Baths for Swelled Legs.

Things good to Cure a Horse that is Spurr-gall'd, or Shackle-gall'd, or Lock-gall'd.

Salt and Urine mixt together, or Salt and Water, and Bath the place with it takes out the Venom, warme Vineger is likewise good, or else bind unto the place, the tender Crops of Nettles stamped, Oyl of Turpentine is good, or Allom and green Copperas boyled in water, and wash the place with it, the leaves of Briony stamped and bruised with Vineger and applied to the place, Honey and Verdegrease boyled together till it look red, and anoint the place with it twice a day, and strow upon it some chopt Flox to keep on the Salve, is very good for Shackle-galls, and chiefly for the Scratches.

Things good in General to Cure the Diseases of the Eyes, as Watery-Eyes, Blood-shotten Eyes, Dim-Eyes, Moon-Eyes, Wart in the Eye, Inflammation in the Eye, Pearl, Pin, Web, or Haw.

The Juice of Cabbages and Cole-worts boyled with Honey and dropped into the Eye, cleareth the Sight and consumeth any Felm, as also the Canker that groweth therein, the Juice of Celendine put into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web in the Eye, and cleareth the Sight, the Juice of ordinary Centaury cleareth the Sight, the Juice of ground Ivy, *alias* Ale Hoof is good for Moon-Eyes, and to clear the Sight, the Juice of Housleek is good to allay the fiery heat of the Eyes, and is good likewise for Rhumatick and Watery-Eyes, the Juice of Germander put into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web and all dimness of Sight, so doth the Juice of Eye-bright, so doth the Juice of Horehound with Honey. The seed of Clary powdered and finely Searced and mixt with Honey, taketh away dimness of Sight, and is good for Watery-Eyes likewise, so doth the Juice of Dragon, Ale-Hoof, Celandine and Daisies stamped and strained, and white Sugar, and white Rose-water put to it, taketh away all manner of Inflammations, Spots, Webs, Itch, sinaring and any grief whatsoever in the eyes, nay, though the Sight be in a manner gone. The leaves of common Ivy laid asleepe in water for twenty

four houres, helpeth sore and sinarting waterish Eyes, the Juice of Endive cleareth the Sight, the distilled water of Groundsel, the Juice of Melilote cleareth the Sight, the distilled water of the Lilly of the Valley is good for Inflammations of the Eyes, or for Pin and Web, the powder of Licoris blown into the Eye, is good likewise for the same, with Rhumetick distillations in them, the distilled water of Loose-Strife is good for hurts and blows in the Eyes, and for blindness, the distilled water of Lovage taketh away the redness and dimness of them, sweet Marjorum stamped with fine Flower and laid to them, is good for Inflammations in them, the Juice of Mercury is good for waterish Eyes, the Juice of Pimpernel with a little Honey cooleth the Inflammations of them, and taketh away the Pin and Web, the Juice of Purslain is good to take away the redness of the Eye, the Juice of the Yellow Rattle-grass with Honey put into the Eyes, or the whole seed put into them, draweth forth any skin, dimness, or Felm from the Sight, the distilled water of red Roses, is good for the heat and redness in the Eyes, and to stay and dry up the Rhume and wateriness in them, the Juice of Rue, Fennel, Honey, and the Gall of a Cock put thereto is good, the Juice of Strawberry leaves lick't into the eye is good, or take Strawberries and put them into a Glass well stopped, and set it in a Horse dunghil for twelve or fourteen days, and then distil it, is good for inflamed eyes, or to take away any felm or skin that groweth over them. The distilled water of wild Tansie, or the Juice of it, taketh away the heat and inflammation in them, Medow trefoil or Honey-suckle leaves is good for a Pin and Web, the distilled water of Vervain is good to clear the sight, and to take away the felm; the Juice of Violet-leaves is good to take away the Inflammation of them, either applied outwardly, or put into them, Spring-water is good to bath an inflamed eye with the water that is gathered from the Willow-tree when it Flowreth, the Bark being slit and a fitting Vessel to receive it, is very good for redness and dimness of Sight, and for Felms that cover the Eye, and to stay the Rhume that falls into them, the Juice of Mustard-seed is good for dimness of Sight, the Juice of an Onion with Honey cleareth the Eye, and doth remove the Pin and Web, and amendeth the Blood-swollen Eye, the Juice of the Black Thistle is good for the same, the Flowers or Roots of Valerian boyled in white-Wine, cleareth the Sight, Egg-shells burned between two Tiles and beaten to powder, after the inward Felm is taken away, is good for dimness of Sight, Lapis Calaminaris, Plantine-water, white-

Wine squirted into his Eyes, cleareth them, so does Aloes, Camphire powder, white Vitriol or white Copperas blown into his Eye after it is beaten to powder and searced very fine, taketh away the Pin and Web, or any Felm whatsoever, the Ashes of the Root of black Sallow Sugar-Candy, and grated Ginger and Salt made up in Butter and little Balls, and put one into his Eye once a day taketh away the Felm of it, Bine-Bole or Bolearmoniack with white Sugar-Candy blown into the Eye, stoppeth any Rhume that falleth into the Eyes, Alabaſter beaten very fine and searced and blown into the Eye, taketh away any Felm whatsoever, so doth the powder of a black Flint burnt, Sanguis draconis taketh away a Felm, so doth the Bone of the Cuttle Fiſh beaten to powder and blown into the Eye, and is likewise good for Blood-shorten Eyes, May-Butter, Rosemary, Yellow-Rofin, and Cellandine stamped and fried and kept in a Box, is a Jewel for the Eyes, burnt Allum blown into the Eyes, is good for to take off a Felm, an Egg-shell filled with Pepper, and burnt and beaten to powder and blown into the Eyes, taketh away the Pin and Web, or any other dimness, the powder of Sandevour and the powder of white Salt burnt, is good likewise for the same, so is the Powder of Pummiſtone blown into the Eye, the powder of the inner Sole of a ſhoose burnt to Ashes and beaten to powder, is good to stop the Rhumatick Eye, the powder of two Tiles rubbed together and blown into the Eye, taketh away a Felm, Worm-wood with the Gall of a Bull beaten together, is good for a dim Sight, or take the Roots or leaves of Prim-rose clean washed and boyled in running Water the space of an hour, and put some white Copperas to it, then strain it, and let it stand, and there will appear an Oyl upon the Water, and anoint his Brows, Temples, and Eyes with it, and it will take off a Felm, Mans dung burnt in a Fire-shovel to a Cole, and beaten to powder and blown into his Eyes, taketh away a Felm, or take a handful of the Angereſt young Nettles, and stamp them well, and put them in a Linnen Rag and dip it in Beer, then squeeze out the Juice, and put a little Salt to it, and lick that into the Eye, and that will take away the Felm, the Sward of a Gammon of Bacon beaten to powder and blown into the Eye, taketh off a Felm, Sal Armoniack, or Lapis Tulia doth the like prepared, the Gall of a Hare, and Live-honey alike, put into the Eye, doth the same, the Haw every Smith can cut out.

Eye-lids Swelled Outward.

If you meet with a Horse (which is very rare to do) whose Eye-lids are

are so Swelled, that the inside of them are turned outward, and look very red, and as it were full of Bladders, and yet the Ball of the Eye very sound and good, then you need do nothing to him but to keep him warm with a Hood made fit for his Head, of some Linnen Cloth, and to anoint them twice a day with white Sugar-Candy, Honey, and white Rose-water, and in two or three days time they will turn into their places again, then take Blood from him, which is partly the occasion (and cold Rhumes together settling in the Head) of this Disease; do not clip nor meddle with the Bladders, or any part of the Eye, lest you do not only put out his Eyes, but endanger his Life, or at best make him but Blear-ey'd.

Particular Receipts for the Eyes.

Take Rose-leaves, Smallage, Maiden-hair, Euface, Endive, Succory, Red-Fennel, Hill-wort, and Cellandine, of each half a quarter of a pound, being washed clean, lay them in white Wine a steep a whole day, and then distill them. And the first water will be like Gold, the second like Silver, and the third like Balm, this water hath recovered lost Sight for some years.

Another to take off a Felm, or Pin and Web.

Take white Copperas and beat it to powder, and sift it through a very fine Sieve, with the same quantity of white Sugar-Candy beaten, and blow it into his Eye once a day, and as you see it amend once in two or three days.

Another to take off a Felm.

Take Alabafter and beat and searce it very fine, and blow it into his Eye once or twice a day, and it will take it off.

Another for the same.

Take Bay-Salt, or for want of that Common-Salt, and bruise it very small and mix it well with fresh Butter, then make it up into small Balls, as big as a Hazel-nut, and open his Eye-lid and put one of them in, holding your hand over it till it be all melted, and thus doing once a day will take off any Felm.

Another to take away the Rhume from his Eyes and to clear it.

Take Butter and Salt, of each alike, and mix them well together with your Knife, then take a piece as big as a small wall-nut and put it in

to his ear, (on that side that is offended) and let it remain there for four or five ho' res, and this will dry up the Rheum and clear his Eye. You must tie or lowe his ear close, or else he will shake it out.

Another to stay the Rheum in a Horses Eye.

Take fine Bole, or Bole-armoniack, and blow it into his eyes, and it will drive back the Rheum; but if he will not suffer you to blow it into his eye, mix it with Butter and some white Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and make it up into little Balls, and put one of them into his eye once or twice a day, as you shall see occasion.

Another to take off a Felm.

Take the blackest Flint you can get, and burn it, then beat it to powder, and Sift it through a fine Sieve, then mix it with a little Ginger sifted very fine likewise, and blow it into his eye as you see occasion.

Another for sore Eyes, dim Eyes and Moon-Eyes.

Take Lapis Calaminaris, half anounce, and heat it red hot, and quench it in a quarter of a pint of Plantain water, or white-Wine, do this eight or nine times, then beat it to powder, and put it to the water, then add half a dram of Aloes, and a spoonful of Camphire in powder, and let them dissolve, drop this into the eye.

Another for the same.

Take a pint of Snow-water, and dissolve into it two or three drams of white Vitriol, and with it wash his eye three or four times a day, and it helpeth.

Another for a white Film or Skin over the Eye.

Take the Root of the black Sallow, and burn it to ashes, then put to it the like quantity of white Sugar candy, and grated Ginger finely scarced, and blow it into his Eye morning and evening.

Another for any Soreness in the Eyes, as Pearl, Pin, or Web, or Bruise.

Take a new laid Egg, and roast it very hard, then cleave it in sunder long-wise, and take out the yolk, then fill the empty holes with white Vitriol finely beaten, and close the Egg again, and roast it the second time, till the Vitriol be molten; Lastly, beat the Egg, Shell and all, in a Mortar, and strain it, and with that moisture dress the eye. If in stead of the Vitriol you fill the holes with Myrrh finely

finely searced, and hang the Egg up that it may drop, and with that moisture dress the Eye, it is every way as good, only it is a little stronger.

Another which is Infallible for the Curing of a Pin, Web, Pearl or Spot in a Horses Eye.

Take an Egg, and make a hole in the top, put out half the White, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roste it very hard, so as you may beat it into fine powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet Cloth, then Morning and Evening after you have washed his Eye with the Juice of ground Ivy, or Eye-bright water, blow this powder therein.

To Cure a Wart in a horses Eye, which is upon the edge or inside of the Eye-lids.

Take burnt Allum, and the same quantity of white Copperas unburnt, both being beaten very small, and lay some of this powder on the Head of the Wart once a day, and it will consume it.

Another for soul Eyes, Sore Eyes, or Sight almost lost.

Take Thacchamahaca Mastick, Rosin and Pitch of each a like quantity, and being molten with Flax of the Colour of the Horse, lay it as defensive on each side his Temples, as big as a twenty shilling Piece, then underneath his Eyes upon the Cheek Bone (with a round Iron) burn three or four holes, and anoint them with sweet Butter, then take a handful of Cellandine, and wash it clean in white-Wine, but let it touch no water, then bruise it and strain it, and to the quantity of Juice, put the third part of Womans Milk, and a pretty quantity of white Sugar-Candy, sear'd through a piece of Lawn, and lick it into his Eye Morning and Evening. Thus do for the worst of sore Eyes, but if the offence be not extreme, then you may forbear both the defensive and the burning, and use only the Medicine.

Things good in General for the Cure of any Halting coming by strain or stroke, either before or behind, from the Shoulder or Hip down to the Hoof.

If it be in the Shoulder, to let Blood and apply things to it as you do
other



other strains. A Poultice made of Pellitory of the Wall, and Mallows boyled in strong Beer Tilt, with Bran and Bean-Flower and Sallet-Oyl put thereto, and applied warm, is good to restore any Sinew-strain to strength in a short time, the Decoction of the Herb Scabius applied is good for any shrunk Sinew or Vein, or Tanfie boyled in Oyl is good for it, Oyl of Turpentine, Brandy, Aquavita, Oyl of Spike, Nerve Oyl, Sallet-oil, Bears-grease, Oyl of Swallows, Bolearmoniack is good for Sinew-strains, so is Arsmart, Brook-Lime, steeped together, good for Old Strains, Glovers-specks boyled in Ale, and applied hot to the place is good, Oyl of Organum, Oyl of Excecer, Oyl of Peter, Oyl of St-Johns wort, Oyl of Roses, Mirtles, Sanguis draconis, Pickle of Brine from Olives, Train Oyl, Mallows, Oat-meal and Bran bruised together and boyled with Urine, and laid to it Poultice-wife, Dialthea and Nerve Oyl mingled together, Pompilion, Nerve-Oyl, and black Soap mingled together upon the fire and anointed therewith, Brandy and Soap boyled together is good, or white-Wine Vinegar and fresh Butter boyled together, with as much Bran as will bring it to a Poultice, and laid to it Morning and Evening, is good, or Mallows and Chick-weed boyled together in Ale.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of all manner of Haltings, coming by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the Shoulder or Hip down to the Hoof.

Markhams Master Medicine for a Back-sinew-strain, or any Strain Shrinking or Numbness of Sinews.

Take a fat sucking Mastive-Whelp, slay it and Bowel it, then stop the Body as full as it can hold with gray Snails, and black Snails, then roast it at a reasonable fire, when it begins to warm, bast it with six ounces of Oyl of Spike made yellow with Saffron, and six ounces of Oyl of Wax: then save the droppings, and what moisture soever falls from it, whilst any drop will fall, keep it for your use. With this anoint the strain, and work it in very hot, holding a hot Fire-shovel before it, thus do both Morning and Evening till amendment.

Another in Nature of a Charge for a Back-sinew-strain.

Take five quarts of Ale, and a quarter of a Peck of Glovers-specks

and boyl them till it come to a quart, then apply hot to the grief, and remove it not in five or six days.

Another for a Strain in any Part, New or Old.

Take of Sheeps Suet a pound, of Sheeps dung two handfuls, chopt Hay a handfull, Wheat-Bran a pint, sweet Soap a quarter of a pound, boyl all these in a quart of strong Ale till it come to a Poultefs, then take it from the fire and put in half a pint of white-Wine Vineger, and a quarter of a pint of Brandy, and apply it hot to the grief, and give him Moderate Exercise.

Another for a Strain or Sinew-Bruise.

Take Cumminseeds and bruise them gross, then boyl it with the Oyl of Camomile, and put to it so much yellow Wax as will bring it to Cerrot, and spread it upon a Cloth or Leather, and apply it hot to the grief.

Another for Old Strains or Old Cramps.

Take Brandy, Oyl de-Bay, Oyl of Swallows, Bolearmoniack, Hogs-grease, black-Soap, of each half a pound, boyl them till the Brandy be incorporate, then take of Camomile, Rue, Red-sage, and Messeldine, of each a handfull, dry them and bring them to powder, and mix it with the Oyntment, and bring all to a Salve. With this anoint the grief, and hold a hot Bar of Iron before it. Chafing it well in, and do thus once a day, and in nine days the Cure hath been effected.

A sudden Cure for a Knock or Bruise on the Sinews.

Take a live Cat, wild or tame, and cut off her Head and Tail, then cleave her down the Chine, and clap her hot Bowels and all to the Bruise, and remove it not for two days.

Another for a Strain newly done, to help it in twenty four hours.

Take the Grounds of Ale or Beer, a quart, as much Parsley chopt gross as you can gripe, boyl them till the Herb be soft, then put to it a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and put it into a pint of Wine Vineger, and if it be thin, thicken it with Wheat-Bran, and lay it upon Hurds, and Poultefs-wife as hot as he can indure it lay it to, and remove it once in twelve hours, and give him moderate Exercise.

Another

Another, which is Markhams own Balm, which he says hath never failed him in any Strain in the Shoulder, or other Parts, hid or apparent, or for any Wind-gall or Swelling.

Take ten ounces of Piece-grease, and melt it on the fire, then take it off, and put into it four ounces of the Oyl of Spike, one ounce of the Oyl of *Origanum*, an ounce and a half of the Oyl of *Exeter*, and three ounces of the Oyl of *St. Johns wort*, stir them well together, and put them up into a Gally pot. With this Ointment (or indeed precious Balm) hot, anoint the grieved place, and rub and chafe it in very much, holding a hot Fire-shovel before it, and anoint it once in two days, but rub and chafe it in twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate exercise.

Another for Sinews that are extended, over-strained, and so weakned, that the Member is useless.

Take of *Cantharides*, *Euphorbium* and *Mercury*, of each a like quantity, and of the Oyl de *Bay* double as much as of all the rest; bring the hard Simples to powder, and beat all to a Salve, apply this to the grief (being desperate) and though it make a sore, it will give strength and straightness to the Sinews. For the fore you may cure it either with Populeon, fresh Butter or Deers Grease warm.

Another of the same Nature, but more gentle.

Take Turpentine two ounces, Verdegrease three ounces, Hogs-grease six ounces, boil them till the Verdegrease be dissolved, then take Rosin, Bees wax, of each two ounces, mix all together, then apply it to the grieved place hot.

Another, which is a Charge for a New Strain or Grief, proceeding from heat.

Take the Whites of Eggs, and beat them with a pint of Vineger, the Oyl of Roses and Myrtles, of each an ounce, Bole-armoniack four ounces, as much *Sanguis Draconis*, and with as much Bean flower or Wheat flower, (but Bean is the best) as will thicken it, bring it to a Salve, and spreading it on Hurds, lay it about the grieved place, and renew it not untill it be dry.

Signes to know where the Grief lies.

You may know where the Grief lies, by pinching every several member

Member, and where he most complaineth, there is his most grief,

For a New Strain.

Take white-Wine Vinegar, Bolearmoniaek, the whites of Eggs, and Bean-flower, and having beaten them to a perfect Salve, lay it very hot to the sore place, and it will Cure it.

Another for an Old Strain.

Take Vineger and Butter, and melt them together with Wheate Bran, make it into a Poultefs, and lay it as hot as may be to the place grieved, and it will take away the grief.

Another for a Back-sinew-Strain.

Take Venice-Turpentine and Brandy beaten together to a Salve, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and heat it in with a Fire-shovel, and in two or three times doing it will take it away.

Another for an Old Strain or Lameness.

Take Boars-grease, Bolearmoniack, black Soap, and Nerve-Oyle bleach a like quantity, boyl them well together, and apply it hot to the grief, chafing it very well, and heating it in with a hot Fire-shovel, and thus do it once a day till the Pain go away.

Another for any Grief, Pain, Numbness, Weakness, or Swelling in Joynts that cometh of a Cold Cause.

Take Brandy and Bath the place therewith very warm, heating it in with a hot Fire-shovel, then wet a Linnen Cloth in the said Brandy, and cover the wet Cloth all over with Pepper finely beaten, very thick, and so fold it about the grieved place, then Rowl it on fast with a dry Rowler, and let him rest, and do this once a day till you see amendment.

An Excellent Charge which never yet failed for any Sinew-strain from the Shoulder, or the Hips down to the Foot, nay, though it be in the Coffin Joynt, which is the hardest of Strains to Cure.

Take of Burgundy Pitch, and of Frankincense, of each a quar of a pound, as much Stone Pitch, or for want of that Common black Pitch, as containing the quantity of a Wall-nut, a quarter of a pound of Rosin and the like quantity of Bolearmoniack finely beaten to powder, melt

all these together till they be througly dissolved, incorporating them well together, if you add two or three penny-worth of Mastick to them, it will be the better, but if you have none of it, it will do without it.

How to use it.

When it is almost cold that it will not scald the Skin, lay it on the grieved place with a Lath or any other such like thing, then lay all over the Charge some Flox, Wooll, Deers Hair, or such like things, then heat the Charge again, and daub it all over the Flox somewhat better then you did the former, then cover it all over again with some Flox as you did before, and if he be a Stable Horse, keep him out of the Water by watering him in the House, but if it be in Summer, you may Charge him abroad; If the strain be in the Coffin Joynt, you must let him bleed in the Toe, which every common Smith can do, then stop the bleeding of it by some Flax or Toe, dipt in the white of an Egg, beaten with Bolearmoniack. Use it as before shewed, laying it all over the Hoof Heels, and Foot-lock-Joynt, and especially at the setting on of the Hoof.

How to know when it is well made.

If it be well made, you may know it by this Sign. *viz.* If you drop it upon a piece of white Paper and let it lie until it be cold, then take and break it asunder, and if it Crumble in the breaking, it is too hard, but if it break clear without Crumbling, it is well made, and if you find it too soft, and that it will not keep on the Horses Foot, then put in a little more Rosin and Bolearmoniack into it, and if you find it too hard, put in a little Tallow or Sallet-Oyl, but Tallow is the best. If it be in hot Weather you must make it the harder, and especially if he run abroad, and if it be in cold Weather, you must make it the softer. If you desire to see more Charges for these Uses, look in my first Part.

For Swelled or Garded Legs, whether by Grease or other Accident.

If your Horses Legs be Swelled, only because the Grease is fallen into them, and there is no other outward Ulcer, neither will the Bathing with cold Fountain water, and other ordinary helps assuage them, then take a Pottle of Wine Lees, or else the Grounds of strong Ale or Beer, and boyl it with a pound of Hogs-grease, then with as much Wheat.

Wheat-Bran as will thicken it, make thereof a Poultefs, and having made him a Hose of Wollen Cloth, fill it with this Poultefs as hot as he can suffer it, then close up the Hose and let it abide two days, the third day open the Hose at the top, but stir not the Poultefs, but put in hot Molten Grease to it whilst it will receive any, for that will renew the strength thereof, then close it as you did before, and let him stand two or three days longer, then open the Leg and rub it down, and if you find occasion, you may apply another, if not, the Cure is wrought.

Now, if besides the Swelling, he hath Ulcers, Chops and Sores, then apply the Poultefs as before shewed: and after a week Application, take a quart of Old Urine, and put to it half a handful of Salt, as much Allum, and half an ounce of white Copperas, boyl them together, and with it wash the Sore once or twice a day, then after a little drying, anoint them with the Oyntment called Ægyptiacum, and it made of Vineger eight ounces, of Honey twelve ounces, of Verdes greafe two ounces, of Allum one ounce and a half, and boyled to the height, till it come to a red Salve, and it will both kill the Malignant Humours, and heal and dry up the Sores.

Answer for Swelled Legs, whether by Grease, Goutiness, Wind or Travel.

First, Bath them well with the Pickle or Brine which comes from Olives, being made hot; then take a pint of Train Oyl, as much Nerve Oyl, and as much Oyl de-bay, a quarter of a pound of Allum, half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, half a pound of Hogs-grease, put all these to a Pottle of Urine, and with a handful or two of Mallows, Oat-meal bruised, and Bran, boyl them to a Poultefs, and very hot apply it to the grief: Do this once in two days.

Things good for a Horse that hath a wrench in his Back.

To shave away the Hair, but then you must not lay it on too hot, and lay any strengthening Charge to it, which you may find many sorts of them in my first Part. But more particularly take this, Take of Bolearmoniack, Comfrey, *Alia*, Comolida Major, Galbanum, Sal-Armoniack, Sanguis draconis, his own Blood, Burgundy-pitch,

li 2

Mastick,

Take 2. ounces of Venice Turpentine & work it well wth 3. or 4. whites of new laid Eggs & a spoonfull of Salt, & rub it full of

Mastick, Olibanum, of each alike, stamp them well together with Wheat-Meal, Vineger, and the White of an Egg, and lay it upon the place grieved, then clap upon the top of it all along the Chine and Back, a sheeps skin newly taken off from his Back, and change it every day, and in three or four days it will be well, but let the Charge lie on till it fall away of it self. Or to Bath his Back with Brandy well warmed, and the powder of Bolearmoniack mixt together is very good. But if your Horse be Naturally weak in the Back, or swayed in the Back, these two Diseases are not absolutely Cured, but Cole-worts boyled in Sallet-Oyl, and put Bean-Meal into it, and Charge the Back with it will strengthen it, look as aforesaid.

To Cure the Lampas.

Take a roasted Onion very hot, and put it upon a Clout, or upon Hurds, and with it rub the Lampas very much, and do this two or three times in a day till it be whole, but the best Cure is to burn it away, which every Common Smith can do.

Things good to Cure the Camery or Frowice.

To let him Blood in the two greatest Veins under his Tongue, and to wash the Sore with Vineger and Salt, or to burn the Pimples on the Head, and to wash them with Ale and Salt till they Bleed.

To Cure the Barbes.

Clip them away with a pair of Scissers and let them bleed, then prick them in the Palate of the Mouth with your Fleam, and wash the place with Wine-Vineger, Bolearmoniack and Salt, and see that no Hay-dust stick upon the place Cliped, and he will be well again.

Several Receipts for the Canker in the Mouth, Nose, or in any other Part of the Body.

For the Canker in the Mouth or Nose, take white-Wine half a pint, Roch-Allum, the quantity of a Wall-nut, Bay-salt half a spoonful, English-Honey one spoonful, Red-sage, Rue, Rib-wort, Bramble-leaves, of each a like much. boyl these in the white-Wine so much as will suffice, till a quarter be consumed, and inject this water into the forrance, or if it be in the Mouth, wash the place with a Clout fastned to a stick, and dress him therewith twice a day, or oftener as you shall see fit till it be whole.

Another

Another for the Nose or Mouth, or any other place.

Take the Juice of Plantine, as much Vineger, and the same weight of the powder of Allum, and with it anoint the sore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it and Cure it.

Another.

Take of Ginger and Allum, of each alike, made into fine powder, mixing them well together till they be very thick like a Salve, and after you have washed it well with Allum-water or Vineger, anoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing it will be killed.

Things good in General for it.

The Herb Fluellen stamped, and the Juice given inwardly, or applied outwardly, healeth the most spreading and eating Cankers and Ulcers, and fretting Sores, Sage, Plantine, Rosemary, Honey, Allum, Verdegrease, Green and white Copperas, Brimstone, Tansie, Bay-Salt, Bramble leaves, Elder, Ginger, the Roots of Asphodil, quick-Silver, Artnick Agrimony, made up with Hogs-grease, Cureth Old Cankers, and inveterate Ulcers, Allum, Honey, and Verdegrease mixed together is good, the Decoction of white Beetes in water is good for running Sores, Ulcers and Cankers in the Head, Legs, or other parts of the body, the Decoction of the leaves of the Bur-dock.

Things good to kill Worms in General.

Alheal, Alcanet, Water Agrimony, the leaves of Bistort, or Snake-weed, the powder of the Root of Butter Bur, the seed of Sea-Colewort, bruised and given in Beer, the powder of ordinary small Centaury, the powder of the Root call'd Devils-bit, Elecampain, the powder of Fern-Roots, the Juice of Flix-weed, Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmory, Germander Hops, beaten to powder and given him, the powder of Hore-hound, Knot grass, Ground-sel, Savin, Brimstone, Allum, Salt, Mother-wort, the Bark of the Root of the Mulberry-Tree, Nettle-seeds, the powder of the leaves of the Peach tree, the powder of Plantine, Horse-Radish, Wild-Rotchet, Rupture-wort, Southern-wood, Vervain, the Bark of the Wall-nut tree, or the powder of the green shells, Worm-wood dried and beaten and given, Tansie seed, the white Beete sodden with Garlick, Mercury Calcin'd, Aloes, black Soap, Tanners Ouzc, his own Hair chopped small and given him in his Provender,

vender, Rue, Soot, the warm Guts of a new slain Hen or Chicken rowled up in Salt and Brimstone, and given him, Elder-berries sodden in Milk, Chalk, Fennegreek, Bay-berries, Turmerick, Worm-seed, Garlick, Hens dung, Saffron, Mint, Sage, Rozin, Juniper-berries, the green Branches of Sallow or Willow given him, Reeds, so much of *Sublimatum* as will lie upon two pence, workt up in Butter and given him, Stone-crop, Quick-silver crude or mortified, with the Juice of Lemons.

Particular Receipts for the Bots or Wormes.

Some add Colts
instead of Honey
or Saffron
Take a quart of new Milk, and as much honey as will make it extraordinarily sweet, then give it him in the Morning luke-warm, having fasted all the night before, and let him fast after it two houres; then take a Pint of Beer, and dissolve into it a good spoonful or more of Black Sope, and being well mixed together give it him, then ride and chafe him a little, and let him fast another houre, and the Wormes will avoid.

Another more easie.

Take Savin chopped and stamped small, a good handful warmed in a quart of Beer, and given him luke-warm, or a quart of Brine given him is very good.

Another.

Take as much Precipitate, *alias*, red Mercury calcin'd, as will lie upon a Silver two-pence, and work it into a piece of sweet Butter, the bigness of a small Wall-nut in the manner of a Pill, then lape it all over again with Butter, and make it as big as a small egg, and give it him fasting in a Morning, taking forth his tongue, and putting it upon the end of a stick, put it down his Throat, and ride him a little after it, and give him no water that night, and let him fast two houres, and then let him feed as at other times. With this Medicine you may kill all manner of Bots, Trunchions and Wormes, of what kind soever, but you must be very careful you exceed not the quantity prescribed, for it is a very strong poison.

Another.

Take the tender tops of Broom, and of Savin, of each half a handful, chop them very small, and work them up in o Pills with fresh or sweet Butter.

Butter, and having kept him over-night fasting, give him three of these Pills the next Morning early, and let him fast two houres after it, and give him no water that Night; or take Rozin and Brimstone beaten not very fine, and strowed amongst his Provender, and given him fasting, long before he drinks, is very good.

To a Mare with Foal things are dangerous to give her.

You shall need therefore but only to rake her, and to let her blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own blood, for that will not only kill, but help all inward maladi's.

Another.

Take a quart of Milk warm from the Cow, and put half a pint of honey to it, and give it him the first day; The next day take Rue and Rosemary each half a handful, stamp them well together, then let it infuse together with the powder of Brimstone and Soot, so much as will suffice, four houres in Wort or Ale a quart, then strain it and give it him blood-worm, then ride him gently an hour or two, and set him up warm, and let him Hay an hour before you give him drink, and let it be white Water, and give him no Hay before you give him his said drink, and let his drink be either a Mash or white Water.

Things good in general to stench bleeding, either inward or outward, or of any Sinew, Cut or Wound, or of bleeding at the Nose.

The leases of Snake-weed or Bistort strowed upon the Wound after it is beaten to powder, the Juice of Cleavers applied to a bleeding wound will stop it, the green leases of Cud weed or Cotten-weed bruised and laid to the wound, the decoction of the Herb called Golden Rod outwardly applied, the smoother Horse-tail is good, either inwardly taken or outwardly applied, Ladies Mantle, the dried leases of Medlars strowed upon the wound, being beaten to powder, stoppeth the bleeding of the Juice of Mint given in vinegar stayeth bleeding inwardly, Money-wort or the Herb two-pence stayeth bleeding inwardly, so doth Mallow-wort, or the Oaken Moss of a Pale or Speare; Mouse-ear stayeth the Flux of blood inward or outward; the powder of the leases of each tree strowed upon the wound, Plantain, Queen of the Medowe, Nettles dried before they be ripe and beaten to powder, and strowed upon the Wound, the Juice of Sorrel, Stone-crop, a piece of a Fuzee, or a Mullipus laid to any bleeding wound stoppeth it presently;
The

The Herb Tutfan or Park-leaves, the Leaves or Bark of the Willow-tree is good for the bleeding of Wounds, or at the Nose, or Fluxes of Blood, the powder of the blew Bottle taken inwardly, the Juice of Clowns Wound-wort taken inwardly with Comfery, or applied outwardly, the Down of a Hares or Cony Skins, or Woollen Cloth burnt to Ashes and strewed upon the Wound, Primrose leaves or Wild Tanfie bruised, an old Felt burnt and beaten to powder, Bolearmoniack beaten to powder given inwardly, or applied outwardly, stancheth bleeding. To stop bleeding at the Nose, tye him hard upon his fore Legs about twelve Inches above his Knees, and just beneath his Elbows, and keep the Nape of his Neck as cold as may be with wet Hay or Cloths, and it will stanch him presently.

The best Receipt to stop Bleeding at the Nostrils.

The Juice of the Roots or Leaves of Nettles squirted up his Nostrils, stayeth the bleeding at the Nose. But the best thing of all to stop bleeding at the Nose, is to take a Hank of black thred and hang it cross a stick, and set one end of it on fire, and strow a little white-Wine Vineger on it, to keep it from burning too fast, and let him receive the smoak up his Nostrils, and it will stop it in a very short time, when nothing else will do. New Horse Dung tempered with Chalk and strong Vineger laid to a Bleeding Wound will stop it, burnt Silk is good likewise for it, so is the Juice of Coriander, or bruised Sage, or Hoggs dung, or a Clod of Earth, or bruised Hysope, or the soft crops of Haw-thorn bruised, or to boyl two ounces of the Horses blood, and beat it to powder, and strow upon the Wound, and to stop bleeding at the Nose, the Juice of Coriander squirted up it stayeth it, or the Juice of Periwinkle, the Coam of a Smiths Forge laid to the Wound stayeth bleeding, or Shepherds Pouch distilled and an ounce given fasting, stayeth any inward bleeding, whether natural or unnatural, or Burla-Pastoris bruised and applied to the place.

Particular Receipts to stop Bleeding.

Take the powder of the Stone Emachile and blow it up into his Nose and lay it to the Vein or Wound that Bleeds, and it stancheth them.

Another.

Take the Root of Rubarb and bruise it in a Morter, and stop it into the Nostril that bleeds, and it stayeth it.

Another

Another for the Bleeding at the Nose.

Take Bittony and stamp it in a Morter with Bay-salt or other white salt with Wine-Vineger, and put it into his Nostril that bleeds, and it stayeth it.

Loosning things in General, *Vide* the first Part.

Binding Things in General which is good to stop a Looseness, Lask or Flux of Blood

Shoes, or the inner Rind of the black Bush, wild Bryar Balls, or the inner Rind of it, Dock Roots, or the seeds of Docks boyled in Beer, the inner skin that covereth the Chest-nut, Cud-weed, or Cotten weed, the Root of the Water-flagg, or Flower de-luce, the seed of Flea-wort fryed and given, the seed of Flix-weed given in water where steel hath been quenched, the powder of stinking Gladwin is good for the Flux, Winter green, the dryed shells of Hazel-nuts, or the red skin that is over the Kernel, the berries of Holly-holm or Halver-Bush beaten to powder and given, Knape-weed, Knot-grass, Ladies Mantle, the seeds or Roots of Water Lilly, Loose-strife, or Willow Herb, Honey-wort, or the Herb Two pence, Moon wort, the Oaken Moss of a Pale or spear, Mulberries, the Root of Mullen, the leaves and Bark of the Oak and Acorn Cups, the leaves of the Pear-Tree or soure Pears, Periwinkle, Queen of the Meadows, red Roses, Sanicle, the powder of Services when they are mellow, Shepherds purse, wilde Tansie, the Bark of the VVall-nut tree, or the Kernels of the VVall nut, when they are old, Yarrow, VVormwood. the Juice of Rue mixed with clarified hon y with red VVine, or Bean-flower and Bole-armoniack boiled in milk, or red VVine and Bay-salt bruised together, Cinnamon and Nutmegs boiled in red VVine, Tanners Park, Dragon-water a pint of it sweetned with Treacle, Mirrh, Mastick, Storax, the Rind of Pomgranate, Allom, for a Foal give him a pint of Verjuice to drink.

Particular Receipts to stay a Lask or Looseness.

Take Bean-flower and Bole-armoniack, of each three ounces, mix them with red wine or stale beer, and give it him blood-warm.

Another.

Take two or three wild Briar-balls, if they be not very large, and beat

beat them to powder and boyl them in a quart of Beer with a little of the powder of Bolearmoniack, and give it him Blood warm, and it is a certain Cure.

Another for a violent Scouring.

Take the Intrails of a Pullet, or great Chickin, all but the Gizard, and mix with them of Spikenard one ounce, and make him swallow it, and this will infallibly stay his Scouring, yea, though it be a Bloody Flux.

Another which will stay a Lask be it never so violent.

Take a penny worth of Allum powdred, Bolearmoniack powdred an ounce, put them in a quart of Milk, keeping them stirring till the Milk doth become all of a Curd, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take a quart of Red Wine, and put into it an ounce and a half of Bolearmoniack in fine powder, and two ounces and a half of the Conserve of Sloes, mix them together and boyl them pretty well, then take it off and put into it a spoonful of the powder of Cynamon, brewed altogether, and give it him, and let him fast two hours after it, and let him eat no washed Meat. Hay is wholsom, so is Bread and Oates, if they be well mixt with Beans or Wheat, but not otherwise.

Another.

Take a handful of the Herb Shepherds purse, and boyl in a quart of strong Ale, and when it is luke warm take the Seeds of Woodrose stamp and put therein, and give it him.

Things good in General for a Bloody Flux.

Cuminseeds, Knot-grass, Plantine, the leaves or seeds of Agrimony, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree or Berries, or red Beets, Bistort or Snake-weed, and Turmentil is very excellent for it, Brank-urline, Beares-breech, Bucks-horn, Plantine, Burnet, the Roots of Cinquefoyl or five Leaved-grass, the Juice of Clownes wound-wort, red Darnel, the powder of the yellow Water Flag or Flower-deluce, the Flower of Ivy, Kidney-wort, Sage, Worm-wood, Shepherds pouch, Red Robin, the seeds of Sorrel or Roots, wild Tanisie, Bolearmoniack, Mirrh, Southern wood, Parsley, Rue, Spittle-wort, Cassia, Cynamon, Chalk, Vineger, Burfa Pastoris, Tanners Bark, Red wine, Sloes, Ant-

mart,

mart, Self-heal, Pauls-bittony, Milfoyl, the Blood of a Hare made into powder, the powder of Mens Bones, the powder of white Dogs-turd, the Pisse of a Hart, or of Harts or Goats horns burned, the Jaw-bone of a Pike beaten to powder, red Saunders.

Particular Receipts for the Bloody Flux.

Take an ounce of Saffron, two ounces of Myrrh, three ounces of Southern-wood, of Parsley an ounce, of Rue three ounces, of Spittlewort and Hyssop, of each two ounces, of Cassia which is like Cynamon, one ounce, beat all these into fine powder, and with Chalk and strong Vineger work them to a Paste, of which Paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and dissolve some of them in a pint & a half of Barly Milk, or for want of that, that Juice which is called Crima or Ptisane, and give it him to drink, and it doth not only Cure the Bloody Flux, but being given with a quart of warm water, healeth all grief and pain either in the Belly or Bladder, which cometh for want of staling.

Another.

Take Red-Wine three pints, half a handful of the Herb called Bursa Pastoris, or Shepherds purse, and as much Tanners Bark taken out of the fat and dried, boyl them in the Wine till somewhat more then a pint be consumed, then strain it hard and give it him luke-warm to drink, if you add to it a little Cynamon it will be the better, or to dissolve in to a pint of Red-wine, four ounces of the Conserve of Sloes, and give it him to drink, either of the Medicines are sufficient.

Things good in General for the falling of the Fundament.

To anoint it with Oyl of Roses or warm Red-wine, if it be not inflamed, and put it up again, but if it be, bath it with a Spunge dipt in the Decoction of Mallows, Chamomel, Lynseed and Fennegreek, and anoint it with the Oyl of Chamomel and Dill, mingled together, to asswage the Swelling, and put it up again with your warm hand, and bath the Tuel about with Red-wine, wherein hath been sodden Acatium Galls, Acornecups and the paring of Quinces, then throw upon it the powder of Bolearmoniack or Frankincense.

Particular Receipts for the falling of the Fundament.

Take Garden-Cresses, and having dried them to powder, with your hand put up the Fundament, and then strow the powder thereon, alter it lay a little honey thereon, and then strow more of the powder, mixt with the powder of Cumin, and it helpeth.

Another.

Take white Salt made into very fine powder, strow a litt'e upon the Gut, then take a piece of Lard, and first having boiled Mallow-leaves till they be soft, and beat the leaves well with the Lard, and when it is well beaten make it up like to a Suppository, and apply it to the place every day once till it be whole.

Things good in general for the biting of a mad Dog.

To let blood first, Angelica, Balm, Wood-bittony, Cardus Benedictus, the Juice of Elder, all taken inwardly; An Ointment made of the Juice of the Fig-tree leaves and Hogs-grease is good to anoint the sore, Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, Hounds-tongue, Mint bruised and laid to the sore is good, Pimpernel given inwardly, or applied outwardly, Plantain, the Bark of the Wall-nut tree taken with Onions, Salt and Honey is good, the tops of Rue, Box-leaves, Primrose-roots, of each alike, powdered together, and boiled in New-milk with London-Treacle is good, Hob-goblin, Dan-wort, Saller-Oyl, the powder of Diapente given inwardly, and lay a live Pidgeon cleaved in the midst hot to the wound, and it will draw out the venom, and heal the sore with Turpentine and Hogs grease melted together, the leaves of Aristolochia bruised will take away the poison, Yarrow, Calamint and Southern wood made into a Salve.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the biting of a mad Dog.

Take Hob-goblin, Periwinkle and Box-leaves, of each half a handful, first mince them small, and stamp them very small in a Stone-Mortar, and with milk or beer administer it both at the change and full of the Moon.

The best of Cures for the biting of a mad Dog.

Take the herb which groweth in dry and barren hills, called, The Star of the Earth; you must give it three days together; the first time you must gather three of these herbs with all the whole roots, and wash
and

and wipe them clean, then pound them well, losing no part of them, and give it him in Beer, and be careful that he hath all the Herbs and Roots, you may make them up in sweet Butter, which will do as well; The second day give him five of these Herbs and Roots, and the third day seven, and he will be assuredly Cured, for it Cureth all manner of Catarrh of all sorts whatsoever; It cured a whole Kennel of Hounds of a Gentleman, one Beagle excepted, which they did not suspect to be bitten. It Cured a Gentleman's Son, who was so far gone with it that his Head began to be addle, and to talk idly, yet it Cured him perfectly, and though he was then but a Child, yet he lived to be a proper man. Look for another afterwards.

Another.

Take Goats dung, and of Flesh that hath layn long in the Salt, with the Herb Dane-wort, of each half a pound, and 40 Wall-nuts stamp altogether, and lay part thereof to the Sore, and it will suck out the venom, and heal up the wound; but upon the first dressing give him Wine and Treacle together to drink.

Another.

Give him two or three spoonfuls of the powder of *Diapente*, in a quart of good Ale or Beer, and to cauterize and burn the Sore, and to heal it with a healing Salve.

Things good in general to expel all manner of Poison, either by Serpent, Spider, or any venomous Beast.

Bay-berries, Burrage, the powder of the blew-Bottle, the powder of the Root of the Butter-burr, water Caltrops, Dragons, the seed of Fennel, Garlick, *English* or foreign Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, Clove-Gilliflowers, Angelica, Germander, Hawk-weed, the leaves or the berries of the Herb called True-love, or one Berry, Hops, Horehound, Juniper-berries, Lavender-Cotton, the white Lilly, Lovage, wild Marjorem, Mustard-seed, Ground pine or Chamepylis, the Seeds of Garden-Rue, Sorrel, Southern wood, Stone-crop, the Juice of Turmentil or Set-foyle, Heart-trefoyl, Vipers Bugloss, the Root of Valerian, Holy-Thistle, Birth-wort, the Root of Spider-wort, the Seed of Turpeps, the Juice of Bastard-wild-poppy, Moon-wort, Calamus, white Helibore or Neefing-root, Bittony, Elecampane, Mallows, Cinque-foyl, Master-wort or Herb Gerard, the seed of *Hercules*, All-heal, Parsley-seed, Ameos, or Bishops-weed, Wormwood, Pomcitron, the seed of

Oringes, Pepper, the Ashes of Reeds given him to drink, Mug-wort, or great Tanfic, and Wine and Camomel stamp together.

Particular Receipts to expel Poyson.

Take a pint of Sallet Oyl, and mix with it some Dragon and Angelica water, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take Calamus, Bittony, Angelica, Dragons, and Elecampane and Bay-berries, about two ounces of all of them together very finely beaten, and boyl them in a quart of Ale, and give it him is very Excellent.

Another.

Take Rue, Mug-wort, Germander and Worm-wood, chopt small and boyled in a quart of Beer and give it him.

A Receipt for the Biting of a mad Dog or any other venomous Beast.

Presently after the Biting let him Blood, then take Sage and Rue of each a large handful, one ounce of Venice-Treacle, three or four Heads of Garlick bruised, of scraped Tinne or Tinnefoyl the bigness of a Nutmeg, a gallon of strong Ale, put all these Ingredients into it, and put them into an Earthen pot stopped close with course Paste, then boyl it in a Kettle of water till it be half Consumed, give the Beast five or six Spoonfuls of it three days before the full, and three days after, but for necessity at any time as soon as you can.

Things good in General for the Plague or Pestilence.

Red-Lead, Bezor, the seeds of the Thorny Apple, Gun-powder, Eistort or Snake-weed, one Blade, Burrage, the powder of the blew-bottle, the Roots of the Butter-burr beaten to powder, the Juice of Celandine, Cuckoe-pint dried and beaten to powder, the Leaves or Roots of Devils bit boyled in Wine, Elecampane, Garlick, True-love or one Berry, the Berries of Ivy, Juniper berries, Pimpernel, the seeds of Garden Rue, Saffron, Sage, the Roots of the Star-thistle, Stone-crop,

Angelica, the Roots of Valerian, Diapente mixed with Sack and sweetened with Treacle, Urine mixed with Hens-dung, Gentian, Aristolochia, Myrrh, scrapings of Ivory, Bay-berries, Pepper, Germander, Turmentil, the seeds or leaves of Southern wood stamped and given in white-Wine, or Ale with Boleamoniack or Balm, Bittony or Naphe, the Juice

Blood not
your horse in
this disease,
for if you do
it will cer-
tainly kill him

The Skull of a
dead man dri-
ed and beaten
to powder, and
given in Sack
is most excel-
lent.

Juice of Marigolds Scabius, Dragons water, Mug-wort, Featherfew, Yarrow, Tansie, Bryar-leaves, or Elder-leaves, the Root of the white Lilly given three Mornings together boyled in Beer, causeth the Poyson of the Pestilence to break forth into Blisters in the outward part of the Skin, the Root of Winter-green is good, Calathian Violet, Vipers-grass, Rue, Ameos, or Bishops-weed. To preserve a Horse from the Infection of the Plague, is to anoint his Nose with Vineger, wherein hath been steeped Assafetida, during the Infection.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Plague or Pestilence.

Take Devil-bit, Gun powder, Bistort, or Snake weed, Angelica, Bay-berries, Elecampane all beaten to powder, and give it him two Mornings together, and order him as you do other sick Horses.

Another.

Give him two spoonfuls of Diapente with a pint of white-Wine, or a quart of strong Beer sweetned with Treacle and give it him. If you desire more Receipts, you may Compound them, as your discretion shall think fit out of my General things for the plague.

Things good in General for Pissing and Staling of Blood.

Agrimony, Wood-bittony, Bucks horn, plantine, wild Bryar-Balls, the whole Chest-nut dried and beaten to powder, the powder of the Root of the Earth Chest-nut, the Root of Cinquesoyl or five Leaved-grass, Clowns Wound-wort, Comfery, the powder of an Herb called Crabs-claws, the Herb or seed of Flix-weed given wherein Steel hath been quenched, Fluellen or Lluellen, Golden Rod, the smother Tail of the rougher Horse-tail, the Juice of Houfleece, Spear-mint, Money-wort, Mouse-eare dried, green Mulberries, red-Robin, Shepherds purse, Bolearmoniack, Hobgoblin, Blood-wort, plantine, the Juice of purslain; the powder of Gum Tragacanth and Arabeck, the red Rattle-grass boyled in red-Wine, red Roses, the seeds of Rushes, the Juice or the powder of Sanicle.

Hob goblin is a stone much like an Oyster-shell, which you may find upon coarse stony Lands.

The

The Seeds of Sorrel or Roots, wild Tansie, wild Tyme or Mother of Tyme, Turmentil or Set-foyl, the Kernels of old Wall-nuts, the powder o Rinde of dried Pomegranates, Pollipodium of the Wall, Knot-grass, Camfery, Tragarant, Storax, Pine-apple, Kernels, Daffodil and Wheat-flower, Goats-milk and Sallet-Oyl, or Licoris and Anniseed rowled in honey and given him, Barley boyled in the Juice of Gum-folly, the Barley to eat and the Liquor to drink, the yellow Willow herb, Bugle, herb Two-pence, water Sengreen, Marsh-mallows, the Root of Queen of the Meadow, Knipper-wort, the tender tops of the Bramble-bush or Flowers, the berries of the Haw-thorn tree, the Juice of Sloes, Moss of an Oaken pale or stick boiled in Beer, Coral is a most excellent thing to stop all Issues of blood, a live Frog given him.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Horse that Pisses or Stales Blood.

Take Knot-grass, Shepherds' purse, Blood-wort of the Hedge, Pollipodium of the Wall, Camphery, Garden Blood-wort, of each a handful, shred them small and put them into a quart of Beer and boyl them, then put to them a little salt Leaven and Soot, mix altogether and give it him.

Another which never yet failed, whether it be a Strain, or some other inward Distemper, and will stop any violent Scouring, being boyled in Beer and given.

Take two or three wild Bryer-Apples, if they be small, and beat them to very fine powder, taking out the sticks that are in them, and boyl them in a quart of Beer and give it him fasting, so long as you find him stale Blood. If you put to it the powder of Hogbolin, (which is a stone of the fashion of an Oyster-shell, you may find it in Plough d and Barren Lands) it will be the better, and it will certainly cure him. Take heed you blood him not, for if you do you indanger his life.

Another

Take a good handful of Arsmirt and chop it very small, and boyl it well in a quart of good Beer, and when it is cool enough give it him so long as you find him stale Blood, with the powder of Bolearmoniac and you shall find it work a Cure in two or three times giving at farthest.

It will Cure him at twice or thrice given at first.

Those Balls are to be Gathered when they be ripe, which is about the latter end of November

Thi

Things good in General for the Cure of the Poll-Evil.

To sink it at the first rising, anoint it very well with Red-lead and Sallet Oyl, and chafe it in very well twice a day with your hand and keep her warm, and it will sink it, and if you find it will not sink, ripen it with wine-Vineger, and the Loam of a Wall, straws and all, boyled together, and let out the Corruption with a hot Iron, and tent it with Flax dipt in Hogs-grease, and after four days tent it with a dry Spunge dipt in Turpentine, Saffron, and the Yolks of Eggs. But if it be turned to a Fistula, then take of unslackt Lyme and Arnick, the Juice of Garlick and Onions, Wall-wort and Holly, and boyl them till they become an Oyntment, then wash the Sore with the water wherein green Copperas and Allum hath been boyled, and fill the whole full of the Oyntment, by dipping a tent therein twice a day, or to take of Orpiment, unslackt Lyme, Verdegrease, the Juice of Pellitory, Cellandine, black Ink, Honey and strong Vineger boyled together thick, and made into Rowls, and put it into the Sore, and if the Fistula be killed the Matter will be white and thick, then dry it up with the powder of Spavin, of Honey and Lyme baked together, or anoint it with Tarr, fresh Hogs-grease and Sallet Oyl melted together, or tent it with red Lead, and black Soap mingled together, and to sink it before it breaks, lay a Charge to it of Shoo-makers Wax spread upon Allum'd Leather, or what other Charge you think most convenient. You may find variety of them in any first Part if you look for Charges.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Poll-Evil.

After you have shaved away the Hair from the Swelling, then lay on a plaister of black Shoo-makers Wax, with some Mastick melted in it, and spread it upon Allumed Leather, and let it lie till it hath ripened or broke the Impostume, then take a pint of wine-Vineger, and when it is boyling hot, mix with it as much Lome with the Straws in it, and apply it as hot as the Horse will suffer it, and renew it once a day till it be whole.

Another.

Take an ounce of Quick-silver and kill it in fasting spittle, and mix it with the quantity of a Hens Egg, with Hogs-grease and Brimstone finely beaten to powder, incorporate these very well together, and anoint the Swelling very well with it, then take red Tarr one penny-worth,

of Hogs-grease half a pound, and of green Copperas and Bay-salt, of each a handful, both made into fine powder, boyl them very well, and boyling hot apply it to the place with a Clout tyed on the end of a stick, being lately anointed with the Quick-silver, Hogs-grease, and Brimstone, and by so scalding it three or four mornings together, you may after that but only warm the Tarr and apply it and it will be Cured, for this Scalding doth so kill the Malice of the Fistula, that it will never break forth any more, and this will Cure any other Fistulaes or foul Ulcers whatsoever.

Another.

After you have so slit the Sore that the Corruption may run forth, and you have eaten or cut away the proud and dead Flesh, and washt it and made it very sweet and clean with Allomed water, poure into it some Oyl of Turpentine, and thus dressing it every day, you shall soon find it grow well, for this Oyl will not only search it at the bottome, but it will also cleanse and heal it. It will likewise heal any raw Back pinched by the Saddle, or any Swelling it will likewise sink.

Another.

Take Euforbium and Mastick, mix them well together, and seeth them well with French Sope, and make a tent and put it into it, and it will consume the evil moisture.

Things good for the Pains Vide Scratches, for what Cures the Scratches Cures these.

Things good in General to kill the Canker in any Part of the Body.

Green Copperas, white Copperas, Bay salt, unslackt lyme, Sope and Quick-silver well mixt together, Turpentine, Hogs-grease, Arsenick, Verdegrease, Allom, Garlick, Rue, Savin, Tar, Ginger, Pepper, Orpiment, Oyl of Vitriol, Elecampane, Fluellen, Tanfic, Cuckoe point, Snap-dragon, Bur-dock Roots, &c.

Particular Receipts to Cure the Canker of the Body.

Take Savin, Bay salt and Rue stamp with Barrows-grease, and anoint the Sore therewith, and when the ill Humors are killed (which you shall know by the whiteness) then heal it with Tar, Oyl and Honey mixt together.

Another.

Take Vineger, Ginger and Allom, and mix them well together, and anoint it therewith, and it will kill the Poison and heal the Ulcer.

Another.

Another for a Canker, foul Ulcer, Leprosie, and to make Hair grow.

Take a quart of Tar and put to it half a pound of Boares-grease, an ounce of green Copperas, a quarter of a pound of Salt Peter, two ounces of Wax, a quart of Honey, a quarter of a pound of Rozin, two ounces of Verdegrease, a quart of Lynseed Oyl, seeth them till half be consumed; then strain it and keep it close in a pot, then when you have occasion to use it, take of it warm, and apply it to the Sore, it doth both heal, draw, and make Hair to grow.

Things good in General to Cure a Fistula or Canker, or any other running Sore what soever.

Wild Champions, Doves Foot, or Cranes Bill, the powder of the Root of Sow-Fennel put upon them, the Juice or water of Flix-weed or Toad-flax put into them, the Juice of Cole-worts, the Juice of Flea-wort mixed with Hogs-grease cleanseth them, the Juice of the Flower de-luce, Fluellen or Luellen, Golden Rod, the Juice or the distilled water of Winter-green, the Root of the black Hellebore beaten to powder and strowed upon them, consumeth the dead Flesh Instantly. the leaves of True-love or One-berry, Knape-weed, Knot grass, Ladys-Mantle, Money-wort or the Herb Two-pence, the Juice of the Leaves or Roots of Nettles is good to wash all rotten and stinking Sores, Fistulaes and Gangrenes, and such as are fretting, eating or corroding scabs or manginels in any part of the body, the Root of Cow-Parsons scraped upon the hard skin of a Fistula will take it away, the Juice of Pellitory of the Wall, Pimpernel, Ground-Pine or Chamepitys, the Juice of Plantine, Queen of the Meadows, the Juice of Rag-wort, the Rag-weed, the red Rattle-grass, Winter Rochet or Winter Cress; the Juice of wild Sage, the Juice of Sarazens Wound-wort. It is good for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, be it never so foul and stinking, and so is Sanicle, the powder of Savin is good to cleanse them, but it keeps them from healing, the Juice of Scabius, the Juice of Garden-fuccory, Self heal is good to cleanse Sores, and is good for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, so is the Juice of Smallage put to Honey of Roses, the Juice of Sorrel or Wood Sorrel is good for Ulcers and Cankers, the Juice of the Tamarisk-tree, Vervain, the Juice of the Leaves of the Wall-mut tree, or the water of them distilled in Ale is good to cleanse and Cure foul running Sores, Wheat-flower mixed with the yolk of an Egg, Honey and Turpentine doth draw and heal any Boyle, Plague Sore, or any running foul Ulcer, Roch Allum and Bay-salt burned to powder and beaten together, and mixed with Cummin and hony, keep it for your use, & apply it either Tentwise or Plaisterwise, which will heal any old Sore,

This water
will Cure
any Fistula
whatsoever, if
it come to the
bottom, and
heal it up
with your
green Oint-
ment.

A Canker
Cured.

The Oyl of Turpentine is good likewise for the same purpose, Allum, the Juice of Beetes, Calafoma or Calosonia, the Ashes of Garlick strewed upon them, the powder of Cellandine or Verdegreafe, Vineger and Honey mingled together upon the fire, but if you intend to make it stronger, put to it some Mercury. Sublimate and Arsnick beaten to powder, but the other may be applied to the Mouth and he receive no danger, or white-Wine Vineger, Mercury, Precipitate, Camphire, green Treacle, Sage, Yarrow, and Ribwort with Honey and Hogs-grease boyled together till half be consumed, and strain it and wash the Wound with the Liquor, or take four quarts of Cole trough water, boyl it and skin it, then boyl it over again after you have strained it with white-Copperas, Allum and Verdegreafe, of each a pound, beaten to powder, and when it is clear put it into a Glass for your use. The powder which remaineth at the bottom, keep by it self, for it will heal up any Old Sore, or take Roman Vitriol, Rock-Allum and Rose-water boiled till they become as hard as a stone, & strow this powder upon it is excellent good, but to break a Fistula, take Brook-lyme, Mallows, Arsmart, of each alike, boyled in Chamber-lye till they be soft, and apply it to the Swelling, and renew it not in two or three days. But to Cure a Canker, take red Grape-leaves, Bramble-leaves, Honey-suckle-leaves, Allum, Cullumbine-leaves, Sage-leaves, boyled in water and wash the Sore till it bleed, or Verdegreafe, Butter and Salt melted scalding hot and poure it into the Fistula, and use it till all the Flesh look red, then tent it with Verdegreafe, Allum, Wheat-flower, and the yelks of Eggs beaten and mingled together, and skin it with Barm and Soot mixed together, or Loam wall and Wine-Vineger put hot upon the Sore, is good to ripen and heal it, or Butter, Rozin, and Frankincense, made boylng hot and poured into the Wound, and for a Fistula in the Head, dip a lock of Wooll in the Juice of the Housleek and put it in o his Eare, and put Hurds upon it and tie it close, and this will break it, or Salt mixed with Butter, or Water and Salt put into his Eare will do the like.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Fistula.

After you have searched it to the bottom with a Probe of Lead, or some other thing which will bend wheresoever the Concavity of the Sor-rance leadeth it, and when you have found the bottom, let it be opened downwards, if it may be possibly done to the end the Corruption may the better Issue out, then tent it two or three days with tryed Hogs-grease to cause the whole to be the wider, then inject this water follow-
ing.

Take

Take of Sublimate, and of Precipitate, of each as much as will lie upon a three-pence, of Allum, and of white Copperas, of each three ounces, burn all these in an Earthen pot, but first rub the bottom with a little Oyl to keep it from burning, this done burn them together, then take two quarts of fair clear water, boyl it first by it self, and scum it in the boyling, then take it from the fire and put in as much of this powder as will lie upon a shilling at twice, and thus it is made; but if you would have it stronger, then take fair water and Smiths water of each alike, and of white-Wine Vineger a third part, and with the Ashes of Ashen-wood, make lie of them with the water and Vineger, and so make your water with this powder and Lie in the former Ingredients, according as before is taught you, inject this water with a Syringe into the Sorrhance, and in a short time it will both kill the Fistula and heal it up, and is an approved and infallible Cure,

Another.

Take a pint of the best Honey, an ounce of Verdegrease beaten to powder, and boyl them together three quarters of an hour, then strain it into a Gally pot and keep it for your use. This is a very precious Oyntment to rent a Fistula, or Poll evil, for it searcheth it to the bottom and catcheth away all dead and evil Flesh, which causeth it to heal the better.

Things good in General for all manner of Feavers. If you desire to know all sorts of Feavers, look in my first Part. But first to shew you what a Feaver is.

What a Feaver is.

A Feaver is an unnatural and intemperate heat, which beginneth at the heart, and dilateth it self through all the Arteries and Veins of the whole Body of the Horse, hindering all his natural Motions: howsoever some Farriers are pleased to make them more sorts then will question their Physical and learned distinctions, for I could never conclude them but in few, Quotidian, Tertian, Quartan and Pestilent, and yet all these be of one Nature, albeit some more Malignant then others be, only a Heſtique Feaver is of a different Nature from the former, and so also a Pestilent Feaver may be. Now as touching Feavers that may come in the Spring, Summer, Autumn, or Winter, I cannot see why they should be Feavers different in Nature from these other, for there are not any

any of these but may come to a Horse in any of these Seasons.

Things good for them in General which you are to use according to your Discretion.

To let blood, the distilled water of the Branches, Leaves, Flowers, or Fruit of the Bramble is very good, the Leaves or Roots of Burrage or Bugloss is very good for Pestilential Feavers, to defend the Heart and to Mitigate heat in them, the seeds or leaves of the Blew-bottle is likewise good for the same, so is the Root of the Butter-bur, the Juice of Cinquefoyl is good for all Inflammations and Feavers, the distilled water of Dandelion; the inner Juice of the Pomcitron or Lemmons are good, Cochenile is good in Pestilential Feavers, a Manchet steeped in Muscadine and given him, or in Sallet Oyl, Mashcs of Malt and warm water, three or four yolks of Eggs given him in eight spoonfuls of *Aquavite*, and stir him till his shaking Fit be over is good, so is Muskadine and Sugar-candy brewed together, Worm-wood, Pepper, Grains, powder of dried Rue, boyled in Ale and sweetned with Treacle and Sugar-candy is good, so is Stone crop bruised and infused in Ale and given him, Germander, Gumgragant and dried Roses put into a quart of Ale, with Sallet Oyl and Honey given him luke-warm is good, Aloes, Garlick, Licoras, and Anniseeds mixed in white-Wine and given him, Rue, long-Pepper, Bay-berries, Smallage boyled in Beer, Saffron and Treacle mingled together, or a handful of Thyme boyled in Beer till it be tender, then strain it and put to it Sugar Candy, Anniseeds and Treacle, and give it him blood warm, but for a He@ick Feaver, boyl Sage, Yarrow, Rib-wort, Plantine, Bramble-leaves, Honey-suckle-leaves, of each a handful with Common Honey a spoonful in two quarts of running-water till half be consumed, then put to it a good piece of Allum, and two spoonfuls of Vineger, and when it is dissolved, drain the Water from the Herbs, and keep it for your use, and wash his Mouth therewith often, for his tongue will be raw, then give him this drink, take of Aloes an ounce, powdred Garlick half an ounce, of Anniseeds and Licoras an ounce make into powder, bruise your Garlick and put to it three ounces of brown Sugar Candy, and add to it a pint of white-Wine, and give it him Blood warm, and Ride him afterwards, give him this drink every other day for three Mornings together.

Things good in General to be given Inwardly for the Cure of the Farcy.
Hounds-tongue, Knot-grass, Horse-mint and Spare-mint, Ragwort,

wort, seed of Bastard Rhubarb, Savin, Scabius, Stone-crop, Tamariske, Oyl of Vitriol, five or six drops of it in his drink is good for it, stinking Gladdon Dodder, Callamint, Water-Hemp or Water-Agrimony, Hearts-ease, Hops, black Hellebore or Beares foot, Fumitory, the dried Bark of the black Aller-tree, the Root of Asarabica is not only good for it, but likewise for all Cankers or Old putrid Ulcers and Fistulaes upon the Body, the inner Rind of the Barberry tree, the inner Rind of the Elder-tree or Berries, Burrage, Briony a great Purger, which must be corrected, Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, the Juice of Houfleeck or Stone-crop, Liver-wort, the seed of Male and Female, Mercury, Chick-weed, Turmerick, Bay-berries, Fennegreek, Nutgalls, the inner Rind of the Wall nut tree, the Juice of Cinquefoyl put into his Eares, or the Juice of Rue and Aquavita, or Assafetida and brandy put into them, the Juice of ground Ivy given inwardly, the Juice of Cellandine.

Things good in General to be applied Outwardly to kill the Knots of the Farcy.

After you have Blooded him well, take of Oyl of Bay and Eusorbinum mixed together, and anoint the Knots with it, or to Bath the place with the Stale of a Cow or Ox, and with the Herb called Lyons foot, boyled together, or Tallow and Horse-dung melted together, or to burn the Knots with a hot Iron, or to wash the Sore with Salt, Vineger, Allum, Verdegreate, green Copperas and Gun-powder boyled together in Chamber-lye, or take a penny worth of Tar, two handfuls of Pigeons dung, two handfuls of white Mercury, two penny worth, and make it into Salve, and anoint him with it. Soot, Bay-salt, and black Sope is likewise good, so is Rue, Brimstone, Arsmart, Hemlock, Nettles, Clay-clays, Houfleeck, Brandy, Oyl of Turpentine, Aquavita, Pepper, Ginger, Mistle-toe, the powder of Unslack-lyme, &c. used at your Pleasure.

Particular Receipts both Inwardly given and Outwardly applied for the Cure of the Farcin.

Take nine Leaves of the Pot-Herb called Beetes, of the smallest but soundest Leaves, and nine grains of Bay salt, beat these very well together to a salve, and put this Medicine into his Eares by equal port ones, in the Morning before Sun rise, and stitch them up and let him stand with Meat before him, and let his Drink be white Water. Unstitch them not in twenty four houres, then take forth the wooll and stuff and he is Cured.

Another.

Another.

If the Farcin be in the fore-parts of the Horse, take two ounces of Arsnick, and put it into a piece of new Cloth, and bind it up with a piece of new pack-thread, and fasten it unto his Mayn, and if it be in his hinder-parts as well as his fore-parts, then hang it upon his Tail, and the more you ride and exercise him the better, and though the common way is to keep him with a spare diet, I like not of it, for you cannot keep him too well, for the lower you keep him, the more doth the disease get the upper hand of him.

Another to anoint the Farcy Knots with.

Take black Hellebore, and add to the Herb some of its Juice, then put to it old Boars Grease, and boil it till the Juice be quite boiled away in it, whereby to bring it to an Ointment, with which anoint the Knots or Buttons of the Farcin with, but shave or clip away the hair before you do anoint it.

Another for it when it first appears, before it begins to be raw.

Take of Chamber-ly, Soot and Bay-Salt, and boil them very well together, then at night wash the Places infected with a rag, upon the end of a stick very hot, but not so hot as to scald away the hair; then in the morning anoint it with Tarr and black Sope, boyled together very hot, but not so hot as to scald away the hair. This done four or five times together will cure it.

Another which De-Grey says he hath Cured 100 Horses with.

Take of Rue the leaves and tender tops only, without any the least stalks a good handful, first chop them small, then stamp them in a Mortar to an Ointment, then put to it one Spoonful of the purest tried Hogs-grease you can get, and work them together to a Salve, then stop into either ear the whole quantity by equal proportions, and put a little wool upon the Medicine to cause him to keep it in the better, and so stitch up his eares, and let it be in about 24 houres, and then unstitch them, and take forth the Wool, and he is Cured.

Another, which if he hath it given him twice it will Cure him.

J.W. Take the inner Rind of Elder, the inner Rind of the Wall-nut-tree, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree, of all of them an equal quantity, and not exceeding above a handful of all of them together; Boil them

them in a quart of strong Beer a little while, then take out the Barks, and add to it the powder of Turmeric, Fennegreek, and two Nut-galls beaten to powder, with the powder of Grains, about an ounce of all of them, boil them in the same Beer about as long as you did before, then sweeten it with Treacle, and give it him luke-warm in the Morning fasting, and let him fast two or three hours after it, and order him as you do a sick horse; if you put into it a little handful of stone-crop it will be the better; You must wash the buds of the Farcy night and morning with this water. Take half a pound of green Copperas, and boyl it a little while in a quart of Chamberly; before you boyl it you must put in a good quantity of Salt or Brine.

Another.

After you have kept him slenderly fed all night, give him the next Morning fasting, half a pint of the Juice of Housleek and half a Pint of Sallet Oyl mingled together, and let him Fast till night, and then give him Hay and no water till the next Morning, and that warm too. This Drink used twice will Cure almost any Farcy.

Things good in general to Cure the Running or Rotten Frush.

To take off the Shoo and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, then put it on again being widened; then take Soot and Salt, bruise them well together in a Dish, and mix therewith the Whites of three Eggs, and dip Tow therein, and stop all the Foot with it, renewing it seven days together, or to wash it with urine three or four times a day; or take a quart of urine, and boil in it a quarter of a pound of Allom with some green Copperas, and strain it out, and keep it for your use; and after you have washed the Sore with it, strow on it the dowder of green Nettles and Pepper, and it will dry it up. When you pip Tow in any thing, you must pliat it in that it may not fall off, and during the Cure to let him come into no wet, and at the seven days end leave stopping him, and ride him abroad, and bring him in very clean into the Stable, for dirty setting up breeds this infirmity.

Things good in general for the over flowing of the Gall, which is a yellowness of the Skin, and a Costiveness of the Body.

Saffron boiled in milk is good, or Ale, Saffron and Anniseeds mixt together, or Cellandine Roots chopt, bruised and boiled in Beer, or for want of Cellandine, Rue, and give it him luke warm.

Things good for Gangrenes inward or outward.

The Leaves, Fruit or Roots of Briony; but it is a great Purger which must be corrected; the Leaves of Bugle bruised and applied, or the Juice of it to wash the place; the Meal of Darnel is good to stay them, Cankers, or any other eating and fretting Sores, VVater-Cresses, Mallows, Elder-leaves, Brook-lime, mouldy Hay and Bran boiled in the dregs of strong Beer, and laid to very hot, is good to stay its spreading, if any thing will do it.

What the Spleen is.

It is a long, narrow, flat and spongy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, joyning with the Liver and Gall; it is the Receptacle of Melancholy and the dregs of the Blood, and it is as subject to infirmity as any inward part whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, Knobs, and Swellings, it is through the Spunginess apt to suck in all manner of Filth, and to dilate and spread the same all over the Body, the appearance thereof is on the left side under the short Ribs, where you shall perceive some small Swelling, which Swelling gives great grief to the Midriff, and taketh away more of his digestion then his appetite, and being suffered to continue, it maketh faint the Heart, and grows in the end to a hard Knob and stony substance. Now if I mistake not this Spleen is no other then the Milt, and I have known four or five Horfes dye of it out of one Stable, and it hath been lookt upon no other then the Plague, which if they had had things proper for the distemper they might have lived.

Things good in General for the Spleen, either inwardly taken or outwardly applied.

A Decoction of the Herb Archangel in wine applied to the place grieved, hot, Barly-Meal boyled with Melilot and Chamomel flowers, with some Lynseed, Fennegreek, and Rue applied warm, the Juice of Chamomel given inwardly, or to make him Sweat, and then give him a quart of white-wine, wherein hath been boiled the Leaves of Tamarisk, and a good quantity of Cummin seeds beaten to powder, and give it warm. or to pour into his left Nostril every day after he hath Sweat the Juice of Myrobalans mixt with wine and water to the quantity of a pint, or take Cummin-seed and Honey, of each six ounces of Lacerpitum as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a pint, and put all these into three quarts

quarts of water, and let it stand so all night, and give him a quart thereof next Morning fasting, or Garlick, Nitrum, Hore-hound and Worm-wood sodden in sharp wine, and given, and to bathe his left side with warm water, and to rub it hard.

Things good in general to Cure the Colt-evil.

The Juice of Rue mixed with Honey, and boiled in Hogs-grease, Bay-leaves, with the powder of Fennegreek added thereto, and anoint the sheath with it. The powder of the herb Avit, and the leaves of Bitony stamped with white-Wine to a moist salve, and anoint the Sore therewith; to wash the sheath clean with luke-warm vinegar, and to draw out the yard and wash that also, and to ride him twice every day into some deep running water, tossing him to and fro to allay the heat of Members till the swelling be vanished; and if you swim him now and then, it will not be amiss; but the way to Cure a Horse is to give him a Mare, and to swim him after it; to bath his Cods with the Juice of Houfleeck, or with the water wherein Knee-holm hath been sod; if it stops the urine, then give him new Ale and a little black Soap in it to drink, or to wash his Cods with Butter and Vineger made warm, or with the Juice of Hemlock, or else take Bean-flower, Vineger and Bole-armoniack, and mix them together; lay it Plaister-wise to his Sheath and Cods, or to make him a Plaister of Wine lees, Houfleeck and Bran mixt together, and laid to his Sheath and Cods.

Things good to Cure the Masturing of the Yard.

Take Roch Allum one ounce, and white-Wine one pint, boyl them till the Allum be dissolved, then blood warm inject this Portion with a Syringe, putting it up into his Yard so far as may be, four or five times a day, till it be well. This is so perfect that you shall not need any other.

Things good in General for shedding of Seed, which is no other then the running of the Reins in Men.

Amaranthus that bears a white Flower, the Juice of Bistort added to the Juice of Plantine outwardly applied, Comfrey, to ride him into some cold water up to the Belly, then cover him warm and give him Red-wine and Hogs-dung,
M m 2 or

or Red-wine and Acatium, but the best of all is to take Venice-Turpentine, and being washt, beat it very well with half so much Sugar, and then make Balls as Big as a Hennes-Egg, and give it him five Mornings or more if the Flux of seed is not stayd.

Things good in General for the Cure of the Falling of the Yard.

To wash his Yard with Sea-water, or Water and Salt, and if that will not prevail, prick all the outmost skin of his Yard with a sharp Needle very slightly, and wash all the pricks with strong Vineger, and this will not only make him draw up his Yard again, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this Cure will put it up again, or to put Honey and Salt into his Yard made liquid, or else a quick Fly or a Grain of Frankincense, or a Clove of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, and Bath his Back with Oyl, Wine, and Nitre made warm and minged together. But the best Cure is first to wash all his Yard with white Wine warmed, and annoint it with Oyl of Roses and honey mixed together, and so put it up into his Sheath, and with a little Bolster of Canvas keep it from falling down, and dress him thus in twenty four hours, until he be recovered, and let his Back be kept very warm as is possible, both with Cloth and a Charge of Plaister made of Bolcarmoniack, Eggs, Wheat-Flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentine and Vinegar, or else lay next his Back a wet Sack, or wet Hay, and a dry Cloth over it, and that will keep his Back exceeding warm.

What is good for the Cure of the Particular Diseases in Mares, Barrenness, Consumption, Rage of Love, Casting Foals, bardness to Foal, and how to make a Mare Cast her Foal.

If you have your Mare Barren, boyl good store of the Herb Agnus in the water that she drinketh, or to stamp a good handful of Leeks with four or five spoonfuls of wine, then put twelve Flies called Cantharides, and strain them altogether with a sufficient quantity of water to serve the Mare two days together, by pouring the same into her Nature with a Glister-pipe made for the purpose, and at the end of three days offer the horse to her, and if he covers her, wash her Nature twice together with cold water; or to take of Nitrum, Sparrows-dung and Tutpentine, of each a like quantity, wrought together and made like a Snppository, and put that into her Nature, and it will cause her to desire

fire the Horse, and also to conceive. If you will have her fruitful, boil good store of Mother-wort in the water which she drinketh; If she lose her belly, which sheweth a Consumption of the Womb, give her a quart of Brine to drink, Mug-wort being boiled therein. If your Mare, through good keeping, forsake her food, give her for two or three days together a Ball of Butter and *Agnus Castus* chopt together. If you will have her cast her Foal, take a handful of Bittony, and boil it in a quart of Ale, and it will deliver her presently. If she cannot Foal, take the Herb Horse-mint, either dry it or stamp it, and take the powder or the Juice, and mix it with strong Ale, and give it her, and it will help her. And if your Mare is subject to cast her Foals, as many are, keep her at Grass very warm, and once in a week give her a good warm Mash of Drink, this secretly knitteth beyond expectation.

Things good in general for the Cure of a Consumption.

Wood-bittony, Hore-hound, Juniper-berries, Leeks mixed with Salt-Oyl and Sack, with some Frankincense, Agarick, Bay-berries, Brank Urfine, China Dandelion; but the best is to scour him well, and put him to Grass; or take a Sheeps-head with the wooll on, wash it clean, and boyl it in a Gallon of fair water until the flesh come from the bones, then strain it, and put into the Broth half a pound of Refined Loaf-Sugar, of Cinnamon, Conserve of Roses, Conserve of Barberries, Conserve of Cherries, of each three ounces, and give him a quart every Morning fasting; use this till four or more Sheeps heads be spent, and let his drink be either sweet Mashies or white water. Take no blood from him in this disease, but rather labour to cherish the blood he hath, neither be too busie in administering unto him Purges, but Cordials, as *Diapente*, *Diateffaron*, *Duke Powder*, *Cordial Powder*, and such like Restoratives, and to give him good Meat, and good Mashies, and to change his Meat sometimes to make him eat his Meat the better.

Things good in general for the Lungs.

Physick Nuts is good for rotten Lungs, Lung-wort or wood Liver-wort beaten to powder and given in Beer, is good for the Inflammations and Ulcers of the Lungs, the powder of stinking Gladdon, given him in Beer, with a little Mastick, is good for them. The decoction of Hyssop made with Figs, Water, Honey and Rue helpeth the inflammations of the Lungs, the old Cough or shortness of Breath, Featherfew, Penny

Penny-royal given with Honey cleareth the Breast from all gross and thick humors, and cleanseth the Lungs, Calamint is good for the Whee-
 sing of them; Common Hore-hound cleanseth them, and is good for
 the ulceration of them, so doth Bitony; Scabius scoureth the Chest
 and Lungs, Mullen or Lungwort is good, Comfrey, Cowslips of *Jeru-
 salem*, Cinquefoyl is good for the Liver and Lungs, *Chervel* boiled
 is good for the Consumption of the Lungs, Cummin-seeds, Brank-ur-
 fin, Rue Licoris, Bay-berries, Cassia, Water Agrimony, Alehoof, the
 leaves of the Fig-tree, Lung-wort which grows upon Oaks or Beeches,
 which is a kind of Moss with broad grayish tough leaves, Maiden hair,
 Wild Marjorem, Hedge Mustard-seed, *Rosa Solis* or Sun-dew; the
 Juice of Sanicle, Vervain, Wood-bind or Honey-suckles, Cresses, Al-
 monds, Muglos, Garlick boiled in milk, Tartar, which is the thickest of
 white-Wine Lees dried and made into powder, Elecampane, Sugar-
 candy, Diapente, or take a pint of sweet Sack, Honey, Myrrh, Saffron,
 Cassia and Cinnamon, of each alike, made into fine powder, and mix
 two spoonfuls of it with your Sack, and give it him warm fifteen days
 together, and feed him with Mashes and white water. But if his Lungs
 be rotten, then take the Juice of Purslain half a pint, and mix with it
 Oyl of Roses, and put to it Tragantium steeped in Cows milk, and
 give it him seven Mornings together, and this will ripen the Impostume,
 which you may know by his stinking breath, then give him this powder,
 take of Cassia made into fine powder, seven Raisins of the Sun stoned,
 boiled in a Pint of Muscadine, and give it him blood-warm.

Particular Receipts for the Lungs.

Take of Horse Lung-wort, *alias* Mullet, it groweth in every place
 with broad hoary soft leaves, which do feel like Velvet, shred it, stamp
 it and strain it; Then take of Fennegreek a good spoonful and of
 Maddar as much, made into fine powder, and give this to him in a quart
 of good Ale or Beer, and give this to him every other day, for twelve
 or fourteen days, and sprinkle his Hay with water, and let his Oats be
 washed in good Ale, and let his drink be white water, and sometimes
 sweet Mashes.

Another.

Take a Snake and cut off the Head and Tail, and Flea it, and after
 cut the same into pieces the length of your Finger, and roast it as you
 would an Eel upon a Spit, and let it baste it self, and keep the Oyl of it
 in

in a Glas for your use, when you use it anoint the Breast, and his four short ribs which be against the Lungs; but first clip away the Hair, for that will take too much of the Oyl up, and thus do often for some time, and it will recover his Lungs again, and make him perfectly sound.

Things good in general for the Consumption of the Liver.

There is no absolute Cure for it, but to preserve it give him half a Pint of Sack, with the same quantity of the blood of a young Pig-luke-warm to drink, or to give him three days together no other food then warm Wort and baked Oats, and let him be kept fasting the Night before he Receives his Medicine, or to put into his Wort which he drinketh, two or three spoonfuls of the powder of Agrimony, red Rose-leaves, *Saccarum*, *Rosaceum*, *Diacaton*, *Ab-latis*, *Disanetlon*, *Licoras*, and of the Liver of a Wolf, or to give him Sulphur and Myrrh beaten into fine powder, mixed with a new laid Egg, and given him in half a Pint of Malmsey, and separate him from other hories, for this disease is infectious.

Things good in general to preserve the Liver, and to open the obstructions of the Liver and Spleen.

Amara dulcis, Alheal, Agrimony openeth and cleanseth the Liver, Water Agrimony openeth the obstructions of the Liver, and mollifieth hardness of the Spleen, Alexander or wild Parsley, Angelica, Asarabacca, the decoction of Avena, the Bark or the root of the Bay-tree, openeth the obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and other inward diseases, the Juice of the white Beet openeth them, Wood-bitony, Butchers Broom or Knee-holly, the leaves of Calamint, Centaury, Columbines, Dandelion, Liver-wort, the leaves or bark of the Maple tree, Pimpernel, Ground-pine or Chamepitys, Agaricum, Almonds, Fumitory, Chamomel, Wormwood, Licoras, Anniseeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Gentian, Succory, Endive and Lupine, all these are very comfortable for the Liver, and are to be seethed in water that he drinketh, Aloes dissolved, Ireos stamped, savoury Lung-wort, or Oyl and Wine mixt together; but the best of all is a Wolfes Liver dried and beaten to Powder, and given him in Beer, or strowed amongst his Provender, or Parsley and Harts-horn, or Fennel and Parsley-roots scraped or boyled in water, and given him with Licoras and Sorrel, or Pollipodium of the Oake beaten to powder, & strowed amongst his Provender, or take Hyfop, Cowslip-leaves, Silver-wort or Lung-wort.

alias

altas, Mullen, Harts-horn, of each a handful ; then take Gentian, Aristolochia rotunda, Fennegreek, Enula campana dried and long Pepper, of each alike, and when they are all powdered and seared, take a spoonful of all of them ; chop the herbs and mingle them with this powder, and put a spoonful of live honey to it, and boil all of them in strong Ale till half of them be consumed, and give it him blood-warm, Groundfel preserveth it greatly.

Of the Infirmities in general of the Hoofs, as false Quarters, loose Hoofs, casting of the Hoofs, Hoof-bownd, Hoof-running, Hoof-bristle, Hoof hurt, Hoof soft, Hoof hard, and generally to preserve Hoofs.

False Quarters.

To take off the Shooe, and to take away so much of the Hoof on that side the Sorance is, that when the Shoo is set on again, the Chink may be wholly uncovered, then open the Chink to the Quick with your Drawing-iron, and fill up your Rift with a Rowl of Hurds dipt in this Ointment ; Take Turpentine, Wax and Sheep Sewet, of each alike melted together, and dip your Hurds therein, and stop the Rift therewith, renewing it once a day till it be whole ; and thus the Rift being closed on the top with this Ointment, draweth the place betwixt the Hoof and the Hair with a hot iron overthwart that place, which will make it grow and shoot downwards, and ride him with no other Shooe till his Foot be hardened and become sound.

What is good to Cure a loose Hoof.

If the Hoof be loose, let it be of what cause soever, you are first to open it in the sole of the Foot, so as the humor may have free passage downwards, and put a restrictive charge about it, as you have some in my First Part, then to heal it up with Turpentine and Hogs-Grease melted together ; or take three spoonfuls of Tar, and a quarter of a pound of Rozin, and half a handful of Tanie, and half a handful of Rue, and half a Handful of red Mints, and half a Handful of Southernwood brayed altogether in a Mortar, and add to it half a pound of Butter, and a penniworth of Virgins Wax, and melt them on the Fire till they come to be a thick Salve, then spread it upon a Cloth, and lay it to it seven days together till it be whole ; or to anoint it with *Burgundy* pitch, and it will fasten it ; or take Bittony, Rosemary, Rue, Bole armoniack, Frankincense boiled together and laid over it ; or to take

take Tar, Brimstone in fine powder, Wheat bran, and the urine of a Man child, boiled all to a Poultice, and apply it hot to the Hoof, and it will fasten it, or to stop it with the Brains of a Pig, or to stop it with Flax dipt in the Whites of Eggs, or wash it with Vineger, and fill it with Tartar and Salt, and then anoint it with Olibanum, Mastick and Pitch of Greece, of each alike, and a little *Sanguis Draconis*, new Wax and Sheeps Suet, and melt it together, and anoint it with it, and if the new Hoof come cut away the old.

Of Casting the Hoof.

Take Aqua fortis the strongest you can get, and first with a Rape or Drawing-iron File or draw away the old Hoof somewhat near, then touch the Hoof so prepared with your Aqua fortis, three or four several dressings and no more, then anoint the Foot with the Unguent for Horses Feet, viz. Take Hogs-grease three pounds, Patch grease two pounds, Venice-Turpentine one pound, new Wax half a pound, Sallet Oyl one pound, melt and mix all these upon the Fire, and anoint the Coffin of the Hoof up to the top, and this will bring a new Hoof.

Another.

Take Turpentine half a pound, Tar half a pint, new Wax half a pound, Sallet Oyl one pint, melt all these except the Turpentine together, till they be well mixed; and a little before you take it from the Fire put in your Turpentine, and stir it till it be cold, but beforehand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick Sole made fit for his Hoof, but wide enough, that it may be Tied about his Pastern, and dress his Hoof with this Medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it, and so put on the said Buskin, and fasten it to the Pastern Joynt, or a little above, but so as the Buskin do not trouble the Foot, renewing the Medicine every day till it be whole, and is good likewise for a Hoof-bound Horse; and as the Hoof beginneth to come, and if you find it grow harder and thicker in one place then another, or crumbleth, or groweth out of fashion, take your Rape and File it into good fashion again; and when you find it so well that you may turn him out, put him into some moist Pasture or Medow, which will cause the hoof to become tough.

Of the Hoof-bound.

First, pluck off the Shooes, and shooe him up again with half-Moon or Lunet-shooes; then ease with your Drawing-Iron or Rape, the

quarters of the hoofs on both sides of the Feet, from the Cronet down to the end or bottom of the hoofs, so deep till you perceive as it were a dew to come forth, and if you make two Rases it will be the better, and enlarge the hoofs the more, that done, anoint the hoofs next to the hair about the Cronet with this Ointment.

Take of Turpentine one pound, of Wax and of Sheep or Deers Sewer, of each half a pound, of Tarr and of Sallet Oyl, of each half a Pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when you are ready to take it up put in your Turpentine, and stir it well together till it be cold, anoint his hoofs once a day till you find amendment, and ride him once a day upon soft ground for the space of a Moneth; then take off his Half-Moon Shooes, and pare his Soles, Frushes and Heels, so thin, till you may see a dew come forth, and the blood ready to start, then tack on his Shooes, and stop all his feet as well within as without with this Charge.

Take of Cow or Ox-dung, and of Wheat bran, of each so much as will suffice, of tried Hogs-grease, and of the Kidney of a Loyn of Mutton, of each one pound, of Turpentine and Tarr of each half a pound, melt all these together (the Turpentine excepted) which must be put in when it is almost ready to take from the Fire, keeping it stirring to mix the Ingredients. Let this Charge be laid on hot, and renew it nine days together, to the end the Sole may arise, but if this will not do rake out the Sole clean, and after you have stanch'd the bleeding with the tender tops of Hyssop stamped in a Mortar, apply then the Oyl of Snails to it, and red Nettles, the Oyl is thus made; Take fourty, fifty or more Snails, and put them into a bag with Bay Sa't, and when they are hung some time nigh the Fire, there will drop an Oyl from them, and use that with red Nettles once a day for three-days, and heal up the Feet with your green Ointment, which you may find in my First Part, which will bring a new hoof again, which then shoo him with Laveles again, and turn him forth to Grass.

If you fear that your Horse is subject to be Hoof-bound, anoint his Calfs all over with Neats-foot Oyl, especially at the setting on of the hoof, or with Turpentine, and to stop his feet underneath with Cows dung. Or take the Fat of Bacon half a pound, of white Sope three ounces,

ounces, Palm a handful, and five or six sprigs of the tender tops of Rue, chop and stamp all these together very well, then fry them and lay them to reasonable hot, and let him come in no wet till he be well, and being thus dressed every day once, his hoof will in a short time be sound and easie to him again.

Things good in general to preserve Hoofs, and to make them grow.

To pare him well when you shoo him, which ought to be when the Moon is three days in the increase, Turpentine, Hogs-grease and Bees Wax melted together, and anoint the Coffin with it, or Myrrh, Allom, the Juice of Garlick, Rue, Asses-dung or Cows dung, Pitch, Rozin, Sallet-Oyl, Dogs grease, Olibanum, Dialthea, Sheeps Sewer, boyled together, and anoint his hoofs with it, or Chalk and white Lead mingled together, or Bark-dust and honey mingled together, or Yarrow, Allom and Wormwood boiled in Oyl, or to boyl Beans till they burst temper them with honey, and anoint his Feet with them, or to wash them with warm Vineger, and anoint them with Hore-hound, Wormwood and Grease melted together, standing upon his own wet Litter, is good to keep them moist, and make them to grow.

Particular Receipts to make a Horses Hoof grow, and to Toughen it.

Take Allom and the Juice of Garlick, of each seven ounces a piece, and of old Hogs-grease two pounds, and a handful of Asses or Cows dung, boyl and mix them well together, and stop his feet with it, and anoint the Cronets of his Hoofs, the Medicine being pretty hot.

Another for brittle Hoofs.

Take Turpentine, Sheeps Sewer, unwrought Wax and Hogs-grease, of each half a pound, Sallet-Oyl half a Pint, and of Dogs grease a pound, boyl them all together, and keep them in a Gally-pot for your use, and when you use it, anoint his Hoofs very well two or three times a day with it, especially at the setting on of the hair, and to stop them with Cows-dung and Dogs-grease melted together.

A most Excellent Receipt for Brittle-hoofed Horses, to make their Hooves grow so in a Fortnights time, that they will carry a Shoo that would not carry it before.

Take a Gallon of fresh Hogs-grease, half a Bushel of damask Roses clean pickt, and when you have melted your Hogs-grease, and that it is boyling hot, put in your damask Roses into it, and stir them well about till they be all wet, then take them off the fire and put them into an Earthen pot close covered, and put it into the Oven after you have drawn your Bread, and there let it stand till it be cold, then take it out and put it into a new Horse dunghill that is very hot, and there let it be for three Weeks, then take it out and melt it again and strain the Roses from the Liquor, and keep it in an Earthen pot close covered for your use.

How to use it.

When you dress your Horse, take a spoonful of Tar, and three Balls of Horse-dung warmed in a pint of that Oyl, then take off his Shoos and bind up his Feet with a pair of Buskins of Leather with a thick Sole, and pour in the Liquor and let him stand a Week so, but apply fresh shift to him every day poured into the Buskins, but take away none of the old Medicine, then tack on his Shoos again, and stop his Feet, and anointing them with the former Medicine, after his Bags are off you may water him twice a day as at other times, and when his Feet be clean pickt and dry you may use the Medicine as you did before. In my First Part you may have a better Direction to make the Buskin.

Things good to soften a Hoof that is too hard.

Take an ounce of Soap, two ounces of unslackt Lyme, with as much strong Lye as will make it soft, and stop his Feet daily with it till they come to a convenient softness. Or hot glowing Embers put upon the Hoof will soften it.

Things good to harden Hoofs if they be too soft.

To burn an old Shoo Sole and seethe it in Vineger, and Bath his Feet with it twice a day will harden them, or take of the powder of Galls, Bran and Salt of each a handful boyled in a Pottle of strong Vineger, and therewith Bath the Hoofs and it will harden them, the powder of Honey and Lyme, the powder of burnt Oyler shells, the powder of a burnt

burnt Felt and Boot mixed together with Cream is good.

Things good for the Malt-long.

Things good for the Malt-long of the hoofs, which will run in water with humors about the Cronet, which are certain knobs there. If it be in the Summer take black Snails and Burr-dock-roots, and beat them well together, and lay them unto the sore, and renew them once in twenty four houres: but if it be in the Winter take the scraings of a Pan or Cauldron, and put to it a handful of the inner Rind of the Elder-tree, and having beaten them well together in a Mortar, lay them to the Sore, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it, or take Garlick, Pepper and Honey, of each alike stamped together, and laid on it.

For any Hurt upon the Hoof, or for all manner of Hurts in general.

To stop the Hoof with Honey and Vineger mingled together for the space of three or four days at least, and then lay on the leaves of Tararisk bruised with them till it be whole, or to stop the hoof with Sheeps-grease and horse-dung mixt together, and renew it once a day till it be well, or take Pitch and Rozin, of each two ounces, Brimstone fine powder an ounce, melt them together on the Fire, and add to them an ounce of Turpentine to it, and as it cooleth make it up into balls, and when you use it put it in to the wound pretty hot, and about the Sorrance, and clap Hurds upon it, and over that a piece of Leather, and so splint it on, and in twice or thrice dressing he will be cured, two ounces of Turpentine melted down with some Wax healeth any Wound or Gall, House-snails scethed in Butter will draw out any Thorn or Nail being often renewed, or take Sope and Salt of each alike, and work them into an Ointment, and after you have washed the wound with Beer and Salt, or Chamberly and Salt, and dried it again with a linen Rag, bind on the Medicine and let it remain on for twenty four houres, which will take out the venom: then take Train oyl one Spoonful or two, and as much white Lead into fine Powder, and work them to a thick Salve, and apply it to the Sorrance Plaister-wise till it be whole, which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up sooner, or more kindly or natural for the breeding of a new hoof then this.

Things good in general, to draw out either Stub, Thorn or Iron, either out of the Foot or any other part of the body.

Black Sope laid to the Sore all night will make it appear, the roots

of Reeds stamped and mixt with Honey and laid to it draweth out any Stub or Nail, so will also black Snails stamped and wrought with Butter, the Root of stinking Gladdon roasted and laid to it, the Root of the Sword-flag stamped with the powder of Frankincense and wine is good, Daffadill stamped with Meal of Darnil and Honey, Clary stamped and laid asleepe in warm water, and the slimy substance taken and applied Plaster-wise doth the like, Dittony bruised and applied, Primrose-leaves, Galbanum, Agrimony stamped with Hogs-grease; if a C'oth be wetted in the distilled water of Haw thorn and applied will draw forth any Thorn and Splint, the seeds and leaves of Mullen boyled in Wine, the Juice of Scabius and Southern-wood bruised and laid to it, Sope and Chalk mixed together, and when it is out pour into it scaulding hot Turpentine, and when that is cold, pour on the powder of Sulphur, or black Snails and Soap bruised together and apply it to the Grief, and bolster up his Foot or the Sore with Hurds, and keep it from all wet and filthiness.

What is good for the Cords in General.

To Bath his Legs with the Grounds of Ale, and to Rope them up with Hay wet in the same for a Fortnight or more together, or take Mustard, Aquavita and Sallet Oyl, and boyl them together and make a Plaister of it and apply it to the place grieved. But the best and sure Cure of all is to make a slit upon the very top of his Nose, and with your Cornet take up his two great Sinews which you shall there find, and so cut them in sunder, and so heal it up again with some healing Salve, and this will do him no harm but good, for it will give him the use of his Legs so perfectly, as that he will seldom or never after trip any more, and this can any ordinary Smith do. More of this afterward, and but a little altered.

To Cure the String-bait.

Take up the middle Vein upon the Thigh, and underneath the same, then under the said Vein there lies a string, which string must be cut away, and then annoint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well and go well, you may find it more at large a terwards.

Great doyers in General of Old Sores, and of all manner of moist Humours whatsoever.

Allom burnt, Unslackt Lyme, the Ashes of an old shoe burnt, Oyster-

Oyster-shells burnt will dry up any sore, be they never so moist, the Juice of Elder, the powder of the leaves of Brambles, or the inner Rind, the powder of the Root of the Butcher-Bar, the powder of Fern Roots, the powder of Sow-Fennel, the distilled water of Throatwort, the whole Plant, Root and all, will dry up the hollow moisture of corroding Ulcers, the Ashes of Southern-wood, the Ashes of Nut-shells burnt, Chamberly, green Copperas, Brimstone, Mastick, Frankincense, Cloves, Myrrh beaten to powder, and laid upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, then take some Lint, and receive the Smoak of it into it, and lay it upon the sore, but wash it first with Chamberly, Soot and Cream tempered together; Aquavita and Sope boiled together, Rye-flower, the White of an Egg beaten to an Oyl with honey, Bole-Armoniack and Meal mixt amongst it, and make a Plaister of it, is good to heal up any new-gall'd back, Barley-straw burnt and Soot, the powder of Honey and unslackt Lime will heal any Gall, being first washed with Vineger, the Soot or Grim of a brass Pot, the Powder of the bone of a Crab Fish, the Powder of Galls, the Grease of Snakes roasted with the heads and tails off is a great drier, the bark of a Willow-tree burnt to ashes is a great drier and binder, dry Figs beaten to powder with Allom, Mustard and Vineger, or Oyl and soft Grease beaten to a Salve, with Vitriol. Galls and Allom; the powder of Pomegranates, Salt and Vineger doth dry very much, or take a Toast of Wheaten bread, spread all over with honey, and roasted dry, and beaten in a Mortar to powder, and strowed upon any Gall, and it will dry it up soon, or take Egg-shells burned black and beaten to powder, with old shooes burned to a Coal and Charcoal, quick Lime and green Copperas burned in an earthen pot until it be red hot, then take of each of these alike, and knead them well together till they come to a Paste, and bake it well, and beat it into fine Powder, and strow it upon the sore, and before you dress it, wash it with strong Vineger or Chamberly, and it will be well; or bathe the sore with hot melted Butter, and strow upon it the powder of Rozin for a day or two, then take of thick Cream and Soot, and work it to a Paste, and apply it to the place Plaister-wise.

A Plaister to dry up superfluous moisture, and to bind Parts loosned.

Take Bitumen one pound, of the purest part of Frankincense 3 ounces, of Bdellium Arabicum one ounce, of Deers Sewet one pound, of Populeum one ounce, of Galbanum one ounce of the drops of Storax one ounce, of common wax one pound, of Rozin Cabial half a pound,

of

of *Viscus Italicus* one ounce and a half, of *Apoxima* one ounce, of the Juice of Hyſop one ounce, of the drops of Armoniack one ounce, of Pitch half a pound, let them be well molten together, and incorporated, and make a Plaiſter thereof.

Another Plaiſter to dry up any Swelling, Wind-gall, Splint or Bladder, in or about the Joynts.

Take of Virgin-Wax half a pound, of Roſin one pound and a quarter, of Galbanum one ounce and a half, of Bitumen half a pound, of Myrrh ſecundary one pound, of Armoniack three ounces, of Coſtus three ounces, boyl all theſe together in an earthen pot, ſaving the Armoniack and Coſtus, which being firſt Ground like fine Flower, muſt be added unto the other things, after that they have been boiled and cooled, and then boiled together again, and well ſtirred, ſo as they may be incorporated together. and made all one ſubſtance, and then applying as occaſion ſhall be adminiſtred.

Things good to diſſolve Humours.

To bath the Sorrance well with hot melted butter, then ſtrew upon it the powder of Roſin for a day or two, then take Cream and Soot, and work them to a thick Paſte, and apply it to the Sorrance, and it will dry up the humour and ſkin, and heal the ſore. Wormwood, Sage, Roſemary, and the Bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, and Linſeed boiled in Oyl, and make a bath thereof, and lay it to the grieved place, and it will diſſolve any humours that are bound and gathered together.

A pound of Figs ſtamped with Salt till they come to a Salve, diſſolveth all manner of humors, by opening the pores and giving a large Paſſage. Look for more Receipts in my Firſt Part.

Things good to ſtop Humors.

The Flower of Wheat mixed with the Juice of Henbane ſtayeth the Flux of humors. The Flowers of the Willow-tree boiled in White-wine and given inwardly, drieth up evil humors; Wormwood, Sage, Bole-Armoniack, Canphopia, a kind of Gum, Cardimonium is good.

Things good to drive back Humors.

Vineger, Salt and Bole-Armoniack beaten together, and ſpread about the ſore driveth it back, or White-lead and ſallet Oyl beaten together, or Red-lead and ſallet Oyl, or elſe *Unguentum Album Camphorat*

phoratum and such like, but to take away the evil Humours of the Legs, take of Common Honey, Turpentine, Mastick, Frankincense, Bolca-
moniack made into powder, Sanguis draconis, New-laid Eggs, white-
Wine Vinegar, the Flower of Rice mixed altogether, and make a Plai-
ster of it and lap it round about the Leg from the Feet to the upper
Houghs, do this four or five times.

Humours made thin.

Garlick maketh thin, thick and gross Humours, and cutteth such as
are tough and clammy, French Mercury a Decoction made of it,
gun min-seeds.

Humours Purged.

A Conserve made of Musk, Roses are a great Purger of waterish
Humours, Sene purgeth cholerick and Phlegmarick humours, also
gross and Melancholike.

*Things good in General for the shedding of the Hair from the Main
or Tail.*

To annoint the Main and Crost with black Soap, and then to make a
strong Lye of Ash-Ashes, or else of Urine and Ashes, and wash it all o-
ver with it, but if there should grow on the Horses Tail a canker, which
will consume away both the flesh and bone, then lay some Oyl of Vi-
triol upon it and it will kill it, if you find it eat too much, 'tis but wet-
ting it with cold water and it will stop it, or take of green copperas,
allom, and white copperas boyled in Running-water till half be consu-
med, and wash it with it till it be whole; but if the Hair fall away,
then take Southern-wood and burn it to Ashes and mix it with com-
mon Oyl, and annoint it with it and it will presently bring Hair again;
if it be in the Main let him bleed, but if it be both in the Main and
Tail, then take Quick-silver and dried Hogs-grease the Quick-silver be-
ing first mortified with fasting spittle, incorporate them very well toge-
ther till the Hogs-grease be of a perfect Ash-colour, and annoint the
Sorrance therewith every day once, heating it in with a hot Fire-sho-
vel, and three or four days thus dressing him he will be well.

Things good in General to take away hair in any part of the Body.

The Gum that grows on the body of Ivy rubbed therewith, for it is
O O of

of so hot a quality that it doth obscurely burn; the Juice of Fumitory of that which groweth amongst Barly with Gum-Arabick.

Particular Receipts to take off Hair in any part of the Body.

Dissolve in Water eight ounces of Lyme, and then boyl it till a quarter be consumed, then add to it an ounce of Orpiment, and lay a Plaster of it to any part of the Horse, and it will in few houres bring away the Hair.

Another.

Take Rust and Orpiment boyled in Running water, and wash the place with it very hot and it will soon bring the Hair away.

To make Hair black.

The Leaves of the Bramble boyled in Lye and anoint any place with it maketh it black, or the leaves and berries of the Wayfaring-tree boyled in Lye.

To make Hair Yellow.

To wash the Hair with the Lye of the Ashes of the Barberry-tree.

Things good in General to make Hair grow very soon, very thick, and very long.

The Roots of the Elme boyled very well in water, and wash the place therewith, the Juice of Thistles put on the place, the Juice of Red Beets, the Juice of Onions, Tar, Hogs-grease, Dogs-grease, the Ashes of green Willow, Nut-shells, Soap, Bears-grease, *Aquaviva*, Oyl of Turpentine.

Particular Receipts to bring Hair, and to cause it to grow long.

Take the dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the blood of a Hog, the Allum being first made into fine powder, boyl them together and annoint the place with it every day, and it will make the Hair come again apace.

Another.

To wash the place with the water wherein the Roots of *Althæa* hath been boyled, and after dry it gently with your hand increaseth Hair much.

Others.

Others.

To wash the place with the urine of a young Boy, then take Lye made of unslackt Lyme, Ceruse and Lytergy, and with it wash the Hair off, and it will make it come soon, long and thick, or to wash the place with Oyl mingled with the Ashes of Nut-shells burnt, or else Snails-shells burnt, or Nettle-seeds bruised with Honey, Water, and Salt, or the Root of the white Lilly beaten and sod in Oyl, and annoint the place therewith, or the Juice of Radishes or Tar, Sallet-oyl and Honey boyled together, or the Soot of a Caldron mixed with Honey and Oyl, &c.

Another.

Take a quarter of a pound of Soap, and as much Beares-grease, and a quarter of a pint of *Agnavine*, boyl these together and apply it to the bald places, and in a Fort-night it will bring Hair again.

Another which is the best of all.

Take green Wall-nut shells and burn them to powder, and mix it with Honey, Sallet-oyl and Wine, and annoint the place therewith, and it will increase Hair wonderfully and very soon.

Things good in General for to ripen all Impostumes, Inflammations hot or cold, or for any Swelling in any part of the Body.

Wheaten Bran boyled in Vineger, Leaven made of Wheat, D. flodill stamped with Bores-grease and Leaven of Rye-bread, is good to ripen hard Impostumes, Brank-creffes, Sow-thistles Hawk-weed, the Juice of Thorn Apples boyled in Hog-grease to an Oyntment, the leaves of Arsmart bruised and laid to any impostume in the Joynts for the space of an hour or two taketh away the pain; the Juice of Houfleeck is good against the burning Inflammations, the Juice of Wall-penny-wort is likewise good for any hot inflammation or Tumors, all the sorts of Pimpernel is good to Cure Inflammations and Swellings, the Leaves and Flowers of Feather-few is good for all hot inflammations and Swellings, the Leaves of Mullen boyled in Water and laid to the Eyes cureth and easeth the pains of them, Walter-Caltrops used in the Nature of a Poultice is good, Water-sengreen, or Fresh-water-souldier,

Duck-meat, is good for all hot Inflammations and Swellings, the fruit of the Pompion boyled in Milk is good for the Inflammations of the inward parts, the green leaves of Elder pounded with Deers Suet allayeth all hot inflammations, Straw-berry-leaves, Bay-leaves, Apples are good for all inflammations and hot Swellings, Figs stamped and made into the form of a Plaister with white Meal and the powder of Fennegreek and Lynseed, and the Roots of Marsh-Mallows applied warm doth soften and ripen Impostumes, and all hot and angry Swellings and Tumors, and if you add thereto the Roots of Lillies it ripeneth and breaketh venomous Impostumes.

Observation.

To all cold Swellings or Impostumes you may apply hot Simples to them, and to all hot Swellings and Inflammations, you must put cold Simples to them; if the Swelling doth impostumate, you may know it by the heat, and when you have made it fit to be opened, open it with a red Hot Iron.

Particular Receipts to Ripen Impostumes or Swellings.

Take Mallow-roots, and white Lilly-roots, of each alike, bruise them and put to them Hogs-grease and Lynseed-Meal, and boyl them till they be soft, and Plaister wise apply it to the grief, and it will ripen it, break it and heal it presently.

Another.

Take Southern-wood and dry it to powder, and with Barley-Meal and the yolke of an Egg make it into a Salve and lay it to the impostume, and it will ripen it, break it and heal it.

Another.

Take of Sanguis Draconis, of Gum Arabick, of New Wax, of Masticke, of Pitch of Greece, of Incence, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melt them together, then strain them and make a Plaister thereof and lay it to the imposthume without removing, and it will both ripen, break and heal it.

Another.

Take Wheat bran two handfuls, and so much Wine, Ale, or Beer, as one quart, with which to thicken it put to it of Hogs-grease half a pound,

pound, boyl them together till the Liquor be quite consumed, and apply it hot to the place, renewing it every day once till it break of it self, or be so soft to be opened, then let forth the Corruption with a hot Iron, and taint it with Flax dipt in this Salve, take of Turpentine and of Hogs-grease of each alike, and of Rozin and Wax a much greater quantity, melt them together and dip the Taint in it, and put it into the Wound, renewing it every day once till it be whole. This is to ripen Inflammations, Pustles and Kernels which do grow under the Chaul of a Horse, but if it be an inflammation in any other part of the body, then take four quarts of the Grounds of a Beer-Barrel, of Smallage, Penny-royal, Winter-Savory, Cumfrey, Rue, and of the leaves and berries of Missel-tow, of each two handfuls, chop them small and put them to the Grounds, and put to it a pound of Sheeps Sewet or Deers Sewet tried, and three or four handfuls of Rye, or Wheat-bran, so much as will serve to boyl it to a Poultefs, and when it is boyled, apply it to the place it will break it or at least soften it that it may be opened, if it be hard when you put your Poultefs thereunto it will send it back.

Things good in General for Impostumated Ears.

If it be not broke, Water and Salt put into the Eare, or Butter and Salt will break it, or to apply to this Swelling, Lynseed beaten, and put to it Honey and Hogs-grease melted together, and when it breaks, Taint it with Flax dipt in Salve made of Turpentine, Metrofatum, and Sallet-Oyl, but if he hath pain in his Eare, dip some black Wooll into the Oyl of Camomile and put into it, but if it be broken, dip it in the Oyl of Roses, Honey and Venice-Turpentine, the Juice of Ivy growing on a Pale or Wall, put into the Eares stayeth the running of them, though it be of long continuance, and helpeth Old Ulcers, and Imposthumes bred there, but if you think it too sharp you may mix it with the Oyl of Roses.

Particular Receipts for Impostumated Eares.

Take of Pepper beaten and searced, and tryed Hogs-grease one spoonful, the Juice of Rue one handful, white-wine Vineger two spoonfuls, and if the Swelling, Impostumation, or Inflammation be in the Eares, Face, Head, or Throat of the Horse, if you take either black Wooll, fine Lint, Flax or Hurds, and dip it into this Medicine, and so stop both his Eares therewith, and then stitch them up that it get not forth, renewing it

it once in two days, till the Swelling be clean gone, he will be certainly Cured. But if the grief be in any other part of the body, then with this Ointment you shall anoint the grieved or swollen place once or twice a day till it depart; but if the Swelling be near about the Cods or privy Parts, then bathe the place well with cold water, and after it is made dry again, with a Cloth anoint it with the said Ointment every day once or twice, and it is a present Cure; It Cureth also the Ulcer and Canker in the Nose, and is a sure Cure for the *Vives*.

Things good in-general for the Strangles.

To anoint and chafe the Swelling well with Bacon-grease or Hogs grease and that will ripen and break it. Or so soon as you find the swelling begin to rise between his Chaps, take a wax Candle and burn it therewith, till the Skin arise from the flesh, then lay unto it wet Hay, or wet Litter, and that will ripen it and make it break; then lay a Plaster unto it only of Shoemakers wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, you may know it by voiding the corruption at his Nose; then twice or thrice every day perfume his Head by burning under his Nostrils Frankincense or Mastick, or else by putting a hot Coal into wet Hay, and let him receive the smoke thereof up his Nostrils, or else to blow the powder of *Enforbium* with a Quill into his Nose; and so Note, that whatsoever Cureth the *Vives* cureth the Strangles; or with a small round hot iron thrust a hole through the skin, on both sides the Weefand, and then after it beginneth to matter, to mix Butter, Tanners water and salt together, and every day anoint the sore therewith till it be whole; to anoint the Swelling with Oyl of Turpentine is good.

A particular Receipt for the Strangle.

Take Basilicon, old Bores-grease and Dialthea, of each four ounces, of Oyl de Bay one ounce, incorporate all these very well together, then anoint the place very well after you have clipped away the Hair, and bind it up with a piece of Sheep-skin with the Wool, next to the Inflammation, that the warmth thereof may the better help to ripen the Pustils, which being ripened, let forth the corruption with a small hot Iron, and taint it for three or four days together with Basilicon onely, and afterwards heal it up with your black *Egyptiacum*, taught you in my first Part, and let him eat good sweet Hay and Bran in stead of Oats, and let his drink be white water.

A Receipt for a Sprain Shoulder; And if you desire to see more variety of Receipts, look for Sinew-strains.

Take Oyl de Bay, Dialth-a, fresh Butter, Oyl of Turpentins, of each two ounces, boyl and mix them well together, and when they be well incorporate anoint the grieved place therewith, so hot as he can well suffer it without scalding, and anoint him thus twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate exercise by walking him a foot-pace gently up and down, and this is a certain and approved Remedy.

Things good in general to Cure the Sit-fast, or hard Knobs growing under the Saddle.

Take a long Nail with the Point turned inwards, and catch hold of the edge of the dead skin or horn which will rise from the sound skin, and with a sharp knife cut away all the dead and hard skin from the sound flesh, and heal it up by pouring hot butter into it Morning and Evening, and when the flesh is made even, dry and skin it either with the powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Cream mixt together, or to wash the Wound either with urine or white-Wine, and dry it up with the powder of Oyfter-shells burnt, or of bole Armoniack; or take the green leaves of Cabbage, and stamp them with Hogs greale, & work them to an Ointment, and lay it to his back, then put on the Saddle and mount his back, to the end that the Ointment may the better enter, or sink into his back, and in few days it will cure him.

Things good in general for a Navel-gall.

To anoint it with the Oyl of Turpentine, will not only cleanse it, but heal it also; but if you find any dead or proud flesh arise in it, either cut or eat it away before you use any Medicine, with either burnt Allom, or the powder of Verdegrease; or after you have washed and cleaned the sore with your Copperas water, or with warm vinegar, strow this powder on it; Take of honey a quartern, and as much unslackt Lime as will thicken the honey, and make it into a Paste, and bake it so hard as that you can beat it to powder, and strow it on the Sorrance.

Particular Receipts for the Navel-gall.

Take Oyl de bay, Costus, Fox-grease, Oyl of Savin, of each an ounce; then take one hundred of great Garden-wormes, and scoure them with Salt and white-Wine, and put all the Ingredients together into an earthen pot very well stopp'd, and boil it well, then
add

add thereto of Sallet-Oyl one ounce and a half, and boil it over again till it come to a perfect Ointment, then strain it into a Gally-or, and keep it for your use, only warm it, and so dress the Sorrance therewith with Lint or Hurds, and it will soon be whole.

Another.

After you have washed the fore with old urine and salt, and anoint it with an Ointment made of Bitony, powder of Brimstone, Elcbore, Pitch and old Hogs-grease stamped together and melted.

What is good for the Cure of the Palsy.

To let him blood on his Neck-vein and Temple-veins, on the contrary side to that way he wryeth his Neck, then anoint his back all over with Oyl of *Petroleum*, and with a wet Hay-Rope swaddle his Neck all over even from his Breast to his cares; Then for three Mornings together give him a Pint of old Muscadine, with two spoonfuls of this Powder to drink; Take of Opoponax two ounces, of Storax three ounces, of Gentian three ounces, of Manna-succory three ounces, of Myrrh one scruple, and of long Pepper two scruples, beaten all into fine powder.

Things good in general to Cure the Lethargy or sleeping Evil.

To keep him waking with great noise, and let him blood in the Neck and Palate of the Mouth, and to give him water wherein hath been boiled Chamomel, Mother-wort, Wheat, Bran, Salt and Vineger, to perfume his head, and to anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Mustard mixt together, or to put Parsley-seed or Fennel-seed in to his water to provoke him to urine.

Things good in general for the Frenzie and Madnes in a Horse.

To let him blood in all the lower Parts of his Body, to draw the blood from his head; as namely, in his shackle-veins, the spur-veins, the Plat-veins and the Thigh-veins, and let him blood very much; then give him this drink; Take the Root of wilde Cucumber, and where that cannot be gotten take a handful of Rue or Mint, and a handful of black Elcbore, and boyl them in Beer, and give it him luke warm; or to give him the root of *Virga Pastoris* stamped in water, or to give him Mans Dung in Wine three Mornings together, or to make him swallow down Hens Dung.

Things

Things good in general for the Quitter-bone.

To open it, and put some Oyl of Vitriol into it, and that will so eat about the bone, so that you may thrust it out; this is a very safe, and as good a Medicine as any you have. If you finde it eat too much, you may stop the eating of it with cold water, or with your Copperas water in my first Part, which will not only keep it sweet and clean, but also keep proud Fleesh from growing in it. or you may heal it up with a Salve made of Turpentine and Hogs-grease, and always before you dress it to wash it with the said water, or Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and steeped in white-Wine twenty eight houres, and apply it to it, and it will eat so about it that you may pull it away with your fingers, and do likewise a ter the bone or gristle is taken out, heal it up with your copperas water and your green Ointment, and let him not come into the water during the time of cure.

Particular Receipts for the cure of a Quitter-bone,

Tent it a day or two with Hogs-grease and Verdegrease ground together, then take scalding hot grease poured into the hole, and lay a Plaister of Pitch and Tarre mixt over it for twenty four houres, and if the bone rise not, do the same again and it will rise, then take it out with your Nippers, and heal it up with some of your Salve, which you best like on, which you may find in my First Part.

Another.

Take of common Honey and Verdegrease in fine powder, as much of each as will suffice, boil it till it be red, and taint the wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the wound open, lest it heal up above, before it be well healed up at bottom.

Another.

Take of Arsnick the quantity of a small Bean made into fine powder, and put it to the bottom of the Sorranee, and stop the Mouth of it with hurds, and bind a clout over it very fast that he bite it not off, for it will poison him, and after it hath remained on for twenty four

Pp

houres.

houres, open it and it will look black therein, it is a sign that it hath done his work; then to allay the fire and to restore the flesh, is to taint it with Turpentine and Hogs-grease melted together, and to cover the taint with a Plaister made of Rozin, Pitch, Wax and Turpentine melted together, and thus dress him daily till you have got out the Core or sharp Gristle, for till that be out the Sorrance will not heal, or to heal it up with your green Oyntment.

Things good in General for the Cure of a Ring-bone.

To wash the place with Vineger after you have shaved away the Hair, then use green Vitriol, Euforbium, Cantharides, Verdegrease, Oyl de-bay, Venice-Turpentine, Oyl of Turpentine, the powder of Tartar and Salt Arsnick, unslackt Lyme, the powder of Vitriol, Pepper, Ginger.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Ring-bone.

Scarifie the place about the Ring-bone with a Lancet, then take a great Onion and pick out the Core, then put into it Verdegrease and unslackt Lyme, then cover the hole and rost the Onion soft, then bruise it in a Mortar, and so very hot lay it to it four days together and it will cure it.

Another.

Take unslackt Lyme and burn it well, which you may know by its lightness, make into fine powder and lay it upon the place Swelled all along of a good thickness, and bind a Lynnen Cloth upon it very fast, and so put him into the water and let him stand there a pretty while, then take him forth and unbind his Foot and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the Lyme doth kill the Ring-bone even unto the Root thereof, *De-gray* declares that he hath cured with this Receipt about one hundred Horses; but when you are to dress your Horse you are to bring him close to the water, and so soon as you have dressed him you are to put him presently therein.

Another.

After you have Washed, Shaved, and Scarified the place, then take grey Sope and Arsnick pulverised, of each the quantity of a Wall-nut, which being very well mixed, spread it upon the Sorrance, so far as the Ring-

Ring-bone goeth, and having thus spread it, apply upon it a few Hurd, and bind a clean Linnen Cloth upon it, and remove it not in twenty four houres, then take it away and stir not the Scab, but only annoint it with fresh Butter till it fall away of it self, and so heal it up with some healing Salve, whereof you have plenty in the First part. And this Medicine will cure either Bone-Spavin, Splint or Curb, let him come in no water during his cure.

Things good to Cure the red-water.

Take of the Root of the Herb called *Emanuel* alias *Bonus Henricus*, or Good King Henry, or all Good, boyl the Roots in water and give it him, or Mustard-seed beaten small, a good handful given him in White-wine Vineger two or three times together one after another, keeping his Belly rubbed with a good long stick by two men, one taking one end of it and another another.

Things good in General to provoke Urine, or to cause a Horse to Stale.

Wild Bryar-balls beaten to powder is very good, Alheal, Water-Agrimony, Birds-Foot, Parsley-roots or seeds, Mustard-seed, Alexander or Horse-parsley, or Wild-parsley which is sold in Apothecaries shops, for Macedonian-parsley, Burdock-seeds is a great provoker of Urine, Asarabacca, the Kernels within the Husks of Athen Keys, Brook-Lyme, Pimpernel, Water-creffes, Butchers-broom, the Root of the Butter-Bur, the Juice of the leaves of Bur-docks, Champions, Wild Carrots, the Berries and Fruit of the Winter-cherries, the Juice of Garden-chervil, the Juice of Cucko-point boyled in Ale or Beer, the seed of Cucumbers, Dandelion, Dodder of Thyme, Dogs-grass, Elder, Elecampane, Eringo or Sea-holly, the Root of Fern, Fennel-seeds, Filipenduler, drop-wort, Flax-weed or Toad flax, the Flower de luce, Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, the seeds of Germander, the seeds of stinking Gladwin, Golden-rod, Gromel, Groundsel, Hartichoke-weed, Hawk-weed, Herb Robert, Hops, the smoother, not the rougher, Horsetail; St. Johns-wort, the Berries or leaves of Ivy, Garlick, Radish-roots, Horse-Radish-roots, the seeds of Rochet, Kidney-wort, Knot-grass, Juniper-berries, the Flowers of Lavender steeped in white-Wine, Ladies-smocks or Cuckoo-Flowers, Lovage, Maiden-hair, Wall-Rue, the Roots of Master-wort, Mother-wort, Mug-wort, Nettle-seeds, dried Acorns beaten to powder and given, Parsley, Pierr, or Parsley-break-stone,

stone, the powder of the Bark of Rest-Harrow, Burnet, Smallage, the Roots of Spignel, the seeds of the Star-thistle, Lady-thistle, great Turnsole boyled in water with Cummin, the water that is gathered from the Willow-tree when it Flowreth, the Bark being slit to let it out, Honey-suckle-leaves, Worm-wood, Saffron, the roots of Valerian with Fennel-seeds, Haws bruised and laid asleepe in Beer or Ale, Egg-shells dried and beaten to powder and given in Ale or Beer, the Juice of Colewort, Southern-wood, Mallows, stamped and given him in Ale, Cherry-stone Kernels, Madder. But for a Horse that can neither Stale nor Dung; take the Root of Male-brake or Fern, the Male is to be known, for if you cut it you will find the perfect Figure of an Eagle upon it, put a peece thereof upon his Tongue, and it will cause him both to stale and dung, a Flint stone beaten to powder will make him Stale given him in Beer.

Particular Receipts to cause a Horse to Stale or Urine.

Take a quart of strong Ale and put it into a Pottle pot, then take as many keen Radish-roots washed, slit and bruised as will fill up the pot, then stop it up close and let it stand twenty four houres, then strain the Ale and Roots very hard and give it him Fasting, and ride him a little up and down, and set him up warm, and you shall see him Stale, this do two or three Mornings together.

Another.

Take a good peece of fine Castle-Soap about the bigness of a good big Wall-nut, and dissolve it in a quart of warm Beer with some bruised Parsley-seed, give it him in the Morning fasting, and ride him moderately after it, and set him up warm and it will cause him to stale.

Another.

Take three or four spoonfuls of bruised Bur-dock-seeds, and boyl it in a quart of Beer and give it him to drink luke-warm, putting a good peece of Butter to it whilst it cooles.

Things good for the Pain or Ulcers in the Kidneys.

Plantine, Licoris, the Decoction of the tender tops of Broom or Broome

Broom-rape boyled in Wine is good for the Kidneys and bladder, and provoketh Urine, and breaketh the Stone, to Bath his Back with Sallet oyl and Nitrum warmed together, and to cover him warm, then to drink the water wherein hath been boyled, Dill, Fennel, Anniseeds, Smallege, Parsley-seed, Mustard-seed, Spiknard, Myrrh, Cassia, or Sallet-oyl and Deers-sewet melted together, and the Root of the Daffodil boyled in wine.

Things good in General for the Strangury or Strangullion.

To bath his Loynes with warm water, then take Bread and Bay-berries and temper them with sweet Butter, & give him two or three Balls thereof three days together, or take a quart of New Milk and a quartern of Sugar, and after they are well brewed together, give it him to drink fasting in the Morning, and to keep him from all sharp Meats, as Mowburnt-Hay, Bran, and the like, or to boyl in the Water that he drinketh good store of the Herb Mayth or Hogs-Fennel, and it will cure him.

Things good for the Stone in General, or for the Stone in the Kidneys.

Alc-hoof, Alkanet, Birds-foot, the seeds of the Bur-dock, Parsley-seeds, the Kernels of the Husks of the Ash-tree, the Bark of the Bay-tree-root, Broom, Bucks-horn, Plantain, Carrot-seeds, the Berries or Fruit of the Winter-cherry, expelleth the Stone out of the Reins and Bladder, the Juice of Garden-chevill, Chich-Pease or Cicers, the Root of Columbines, Coral-wort, Dogs-grass, Doves-foot or Cranes-bill, Elecampane, Eringo or Sea-holly, Fennel, the powder of the Root of Filapendula or drop wort, the Flower de-luce, the Fuz-bush, Garlicn-rod, Herb Robart, the smoother not the rougher Horse-tail, St. Johns-wort, the berries of Ivy, Maiden-hair, the Juniper-berries, Kidney-wort, Knot-grass, Wall Rue, the Roots of Master wort, Medlar stones made into powder and given in Wine or Beer, wherein some Parsley seed hath been-infused all night and a little boyled, the powder of spear-mint, ground Moss boyled, Mouse eare, Mug wort, Nettle seeds, Parsley pierce or Parsley break stone, the Kernels of the Peach tree, Pellitory of the Wall, Pimpernel, the Gum of the Plum-tree, the powder of the Bark of the Root of Rest-Harrow given in white-Wine, Winter-Rochet

Rochet or Winter-creffes, wilde Briar-Balls beaten to powder and given in white-Wine; the seeds of the great round-leav'd dock, Cummin, white Saxafrage, Burnet Saxafrage, the seeds or roots of Sorrel, the Milk of the Sow-thistle given in Wine, Spleen-wort, the seed of the Star-thistle, Garden Tanfie, the great Turn-sole boiled in water with Cummin, Vervain, the Tears of the Vine given, but the salt of the leaves is better, Vipers bugloss, Dodder, Sallet-Oyl, the Lard of a Goat, Coriander-seeds, Castle-sope, the Juice of the red Cole-wort, the Roots of Alexander, Wormwood, Southern wood, Galingale, Mallows, black Sope, Hylop.

Particular Receipts good for the Stone in the Reins, Kidneys or Bladder.

Take Saxafrage, Nettle-roots, Parsley-roots, Sperage-roots, and Dodder of each a handful, bruise them and boil them gently with white Wine until a third part be consumed, then put to it of Salt a handful of Sallet-Oyl and of the Lard of a Goat, of each three ounces, of Horney half a pound; when all this is boiled, strain it and ring it very hard, and give him of this one Pint every Morning fasting, blood-warm, and if it become too thick by boiling, dissolve into it some white-Wine; and after the first boiling it must be but only warmed, and let him have it so long as it will last.

Another.

Take of Ale or Beer a quart, and put it into a Pot, and put to it so many of the reddest Radish roots clean washed and sliced into small Pieces, as will fill up the Pot, then stop it up so close that the Air get not in, and let it remain twenty four houres, then strain the roots from the Ale or Beer very hard, and give it him in a Morning fasting, and ride him gently upon it, and after that set him up warm covered and littered, and in a little while you shall see him piss, and let him have it several Mornings together, and during the Cure let his drink be white water.

Another.

Make a strong decoction (that is to say) boil the first quantity of water to an half part three times over, of keen Onions clean pilled and Parsley, then take a quart thereof, and put to it a good spoonful of

London.

London-Treacle, and as much of the powder of Egg-shells, and give it him. And thus do divers Mornings if the infirmity be great, otherwise when you see him offended.

Things good in general for the Cholick or Stone, or for the Gripings or fretting of the Guts by wind.

Centorie, Costmary is good for the Gripings of the Belly, Camomel good for the Cholick and Stone, and is good given in a Glister for that purpose; the Roots of the Sea holly boiled in white-Wine, Rue boiled with Dilland Fennel-seeds in Wine is good, Cinnamon, sixteen or eighteen of the Berries of Holly purgeth the body of thick and cholegmatick humors, Hawthorn-berries, Cardamum, Cloves, Pepper, Juniper-berries given him, or to put a Jagged Onion into his Fundament, or to give him a Pipe of Tobacco at his Fundament, Hore-hound, Southern-wood or the powder of a Stags Pizel dried and given in Beer, or the Heart of a Lark swallowed down whole, Hyssop, Cowslips, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, the urine of a Child given him to drink, Gentian, Aristolochia rotunda, Enula Campana, or a Glister made of Sope and salt water, or to give him two drams of Myrrh in Wine, Nettle-roots, Sperage-roots, Dodder bruised and boiled in white-Wine with some salt amongst it, is good to give him fasting, the powder of the wild-Briar apple Balls.

Particular Receipts for the Cholick or Stone.

Take of white Wine a quart, Fennegreek four ounces, Bay-berries and Pepper, of each four ounces, Grains and Ginger of each an ounce, Water-creffes two handfuls, Sage one handful, Sengreen one pound, Mint a handful, stamp the Herbs, and pound the Spices, and put them in the Wine and boil it, then strain it and put two spoonfuls of honey in it, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, of each one ounce, all made into the powder and well mixed, then put it into a quart of Sack, and let it boil a while, then take it off, and put to it one spoonful of honey and give it him luke-warm, then cloath him up and litter him, and let him rest three or four houres after it, then give him Hay, and one hour after eat a sweet Mash or white water.

Another.

Another for the Cholick and Stone.

Take of white-Wine one Pint, of Bur-seeds eight ounces made into fine powder, of Parsley-seeds two ounces, two ounces in powder of Hyssop, unset Leeks and Water-creffes of each half a handful, of black Soap half an ounce, stamp them well and strain them with the Wine, then put to it your Bur and Parsley-seeds, and so give it him blood-warm; this will break the stone, and bring it from him with much ease, and cure his cholick.

Things good in general for the Dropsey.

To let blood first, to take away the thin wheyish blood, the Kernels within the husks of the Ashen Keys, Broom, Chamomel, wild carrets, centaury, the berries of Elder either green or dry, Dwarf-Elder, Hawkweed, Wormwood, Juniper berries, Kidney-wort, wild Marjorem, the Juice of Pellitory of the Wall, the seed of Plantain, Bay-berries, Succory, the bark of the Tamarisk Tree, Lady Thistle, Vervain, Peony-seeds, cole-worts, Smallage, Elm boughs, Sallow leaves, or whatsoever else that will make him urinate, Chiche steeped in water a day and a night, Parsley stamped and mixt with white-Wine, or Burr-dock seeds taken the same way, Rue, red Sage, Winter-savory, Time, Horse-Radish roots, Rubarb, Saldenella, Salt of Scurvey-Grass, Garden Scurvey-Grass, Rosemary tops, &c.

A particular Receipt for the Cure of the Dropsey.

Take a Gallon of Ale, and set it upon the Fire, and scum off the froth as it riseth, then put into it of Wormwood and of Rue, the tender tops and leaves without stalks, very well picked, of each a handful, and boil it to a quart, then strain it, and dissolve into it three ounces of London Treacle, and put into it of long Pepper and Graines made into fine powder, of each an ounce, then brew them well together, and give it him blood-warm, and bath and anoint his legs that be swelled with Train Oyl twice a day, till it go away, and give him Mashes or white water and feed him with such meat as he will best eat, and if the Weather be seasonable turn him to Grass, and he will do well.

Things good in general for Graveling.

To take off his Shooe, and with your drawing Iron draw the place that you come unto the quick, prick forth all the Gravel, and crush forth

the matter and blood clean, then wash it clean with your Copperas water taught you in my First Part; then pour upon it Sheeps Tallow and Bay-salt molten together scalding hot, and stop up the hole with Hurds, and set on the shoe again, and at two or three times dressing it will be whole; but till he be thoroughly well do not travel him, neither let his foot come into any wet, or after the gravel is gotten out, stop his foot with Hogs-grease and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the wound scalding hot, or to stop it with Hogs-grease, Verjuice, Bees-wax, the Juice of Housleek beaten in a Mortar together, and melt it, and dip Flax therein, and use it as you did the other; or to wash it with Beer and Salt, or Chamberly and Salt, and to put into it scalding hot Pitch, Virgins Wax, Deers Sewer, Bores-grease and the Juice of Housleek, and stop it up with Hurds, and tack on the shoe again, or to lay into it Flax dipped in the white of an Egg, or to heal it with the powder of Galls and Tartar mixt together.

Things good in general for molten Grease.

First, to take blood from the Neck vein, to a good proportion, to let out all the inflamed blood, and to give him Bran prepared or dried Bran, and if he empties himself, to give him a restrigent Glistre, which you may find in my First Part. But things in general to be given inwardly are these, Sallet Oyl, Honey, Sack, Cordial powder of Anniseeds, Hemp-seed, Cummin seeds, Fennegreek seeds, Powder of Elecampane roots, Brimstone, Licoras, Colts foot. In maladies of this nature you must forbear to administer such drugs as be hot, for that is the way rather to kill then recover your horse, for lenitive and gentle things are the only means to bring it away.

Particular Receipts for molten Grease.

Take of Titian three Pints, three ounces of Loaf sugar finely powdered, of Cordial powder an ounce, of Live honey four ounces, and give it him to drink blood-warm.

Another for Grease fallen into his Legs.

When you have warmed him well by riding him two or three miles; then take about half a Pint or more of Sack, and three or four penny-worth of Sallet Oyl, and give it him to drink, then ride him as far again, and he will purge out his molten grease; This done two or three times will Cure him for that Winter.

Another for Molten-grease.

You shall find
another most
excellent Re-
ceipt for this
purpose af-
terwards

After you have let him blood, take a pint of White-wine, half a pint, of Sallet-oyl of Rubarb and of Aloes two drams, of Sene half an ounce, of Agarick three drams, Bay-berries half an ounce, Saffron two drams, Duck or Duke powder, and of Cordial-powder of each two drams make what is to be powdred into powder, and mix them well together, adding thereunto four ounces of Life-honey, give it your Horse after it is well warmed upon the fire blood warm, but be sure you let him fast about three houres before you give it him, and three houres after you give it him, and let his drink be either a sweet Mash or white Water for five or six days after, and let him have instead of Oates, Bread made for him, or Bran prepared, but if you give him Oates, put in amongst them Fennegreek bruised; but if you desire to approve of another Receipt, look in my First Part for Balls for Colds, Glanders, or Molten-grease,

A Receipt for a Surfeit.

Take three quarts of strong Beer, one handful of Wormwood, one handful of Sellandine, one of Herb-grace, Alias Rue, chop them gross, and boyl them till they come to a quart, then strain it and put into it two spoonfuls of Honey, and three ounces of Treacle of Jeane and give it him fasting, and ride him after it, and set him up very warm, and after three or four houres give him a Mash and white Water.

Things good in General to Mollifie hardnes.

Lynseed, Fennegreek, Rosin, Pitch of Greece, Flower of Roses boyled together with Turpentine, Honey and Sallet-oyl, till it come to an Oyntment, Malvarisco, Oleum, Rosatum, Brank-ursine, Mallows, Cole-worts, Lard, Oyl of Cypress with Meal, Pellitory, Wormwood, or Grease, Mustard-seed and Cummin boyled together, or the Juice of the Roots or Leaves of Elder, Armoniack, Aloes, Apoponax, Nettles, Mercorella, the roots of Cucumbers, Hogs-grease and Tar, Turpentine and Old Grease beaten together, Oyl of Turpentine is very Excellent to take down a Swelling, Patch-grease and Turpentine melted together, and stop his Feet therewith, and annoint his Coffins therewith, or Salt and

and Water mixt together, and Bath the Swelling therewith, and dip a Linnen Cloth in the same and lay over it, will dissolve it.

What is good for Bruised Kidneys.

The powder of the Herb called Crabs claws.

Things good in General for a sore Mouth and Throat.

Wood-bine leaves, Bolearmoniac, Plantine-water, to wash it with a water made of them, or to wash it with Bay salt and Verjuice warmed together. If the Pallate be sore, then let him bleed there, then take Honey, young Onions, and toasted Cheese boyled together and annoint the Pallat with it, or to wash it with the Juice of Alehoof, the Juice of Golden Rod or Mallows, or Marsh-Mallows, or Mint, or Mulberries, or Nettles, or Pellitory of the Wall, or Privet, or Queen of the Meadows, or Rag-wort, or Sage and Allum, or Self-heal, or Succory, or the Juice of the *English Vine*.

What is good for the Quinsie.

To let blood under the Tongue, and if his Throat is so Swelled that you can get nothing hardly to go down it, lay a Poultice under his Chaul, and that will open the Passage, then take a Bulls Piss: or a Whale-bone and tie a Linnen Rag about it, and dip it into Milk, wherein Allum and the powder of a Dogs-turd hath been dissolved, and thrust it up and down his Throat, and put a hornful of it down after it, if he be so bad that he can cate nothing but what you give him with a Horn, which must be comfortable and Cordial things, be sure let the Hornful of Milk, wherein Allum and Dogs turd hath been dissolved, be the last thing you give him, or else it will do him no good, and to tie him up to the Rack half an hour after it, you are to use it two or three times a day, or oftner as you shall see occasion, or four ounces of the Juice of Cinquefoil given down at a time for certain days together cureth it, or the Juice of Cud-weed or Cotton-weed taken in Wine and Milk is a good Remedy against it, so is Hylope boyled with Figs.

Things good in General to kill Lice or Vermin.

The Decoction of the Herb or seed of Henbane, and wash him with it, to wash his Body all over with Cows Piss for three or four days together

ther, it is an approved and certain cure, and is as good as any I can give you. However I shall give you some more Receipts, which is to annoint him with Quick-silver and Hogs-grease mixed together, or stake Staves-acre and green Copperas boyled in running-water, and wash him all over therewith, and at twice dressing it will cure him, or Tobacco shred small and boyled in small Beer with some powdred Allum, and when the Allum is dissolved, to wash him therewith.

Things good in General to keep the Flies off a Horses Head.

To annoint his Head with Oyland Bay-berries mingled together, or to rub his Head all over with the water wherein Rue hath been steeped in after it is well bruised, or to annoint his Head or round about his Eyes with Lynseed Oyl, and it will keep them away, or with the water wherein Devils dung hath been dissolved is the best of all, or with the water of Pellitory of Spain.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Leprosie or Mange.

To take Blood first from the Neck-Vein, good store, and scrape away the Scurf with an old Curry-comb, Oyfter-shell or such like, then these things you are to use as your discretion serves, Staves-acre, Chickweed, Elecampane, Mercury Sublimate, the leaves of Bramble boyled in Lye, Cow-piss, the powder of the dried root of Briony, the powder of the Red-dock, or the powder of Artnick, Refalgar or white Mercury mixed with Hogs-grease till it be killed, Urine, Tobacco and Brimstone boyled together is very good, or Salt, Verdegrease, Allum, Verjuice and Train-oyl boyled together and annoint him therewith, or Broom, Wormwood, Mustard-seed, Elecampane, Chimney-foot and black Soap boyled together, or the Juice of Hemlock, unslackt Lyme, Pepper and Ginger boyled in Beef-broth.

Refalgar is
a Composition
of Sulphur,
Orpiment
and unslackt
Lime, and is
a most strong
Corrosive.

Particular Receipts for the Mange.

Take a quart of fair running-water, and put into it half a pound of green Copperas, and an ounce of Allum, and an ounce of Tobacco chopped small, then boyl them together till they come to somewhat more then a pint, and annoint him all over with it very warm after you have rubbed off the Scabs, and tie him to the Rack three or four houres, twice dressing him cures him.

Another

Another.

First, let Blood, then take a quart of Old Urine or Vineger, and break it into a quarter of a ponne of Tobacco, and set it on the Embers to stew all night, and wash the infected places, whether it be in the Mane or otherwise.

Another for any Mange or Universal Leprosie in a foul Surfeited Horse.

After you have let him Blood and scraped off the Scabs or Scurf, take of Verjuice and Vineger a pint, Cow-piss a pint, Train-oyl a pint, old Urine a pint, and put to them a handful of wilde Tanfic, and a handful of Bay-salt, a quarter of a pound of Brimstone, as much Allum, two ounces of Verdegrease, and four ounces of Bolcarmoniack, boyl all well together, with this very hot wash him well, and if you put to it a quantity of a pint of Blood you take away, it is not amiss, do this twice or thrice.

Another.

Take Mother of Salt-peter, the best and strongest, and wash the Sores therewith so hot as he is able to suffer it, and in three or four times dressing it will cure him, this will not only kill the Mange, but all Scratches, Pains, Rats-Tails, &c.

Another.

Take Sopers-lees, and after you have scraped away the Scurf, wash him with it, and in once or twice dressing he will be well, it cures the Mange not only in Horses, but also Dogs, provided they get not to it with their Mouth.

Things good in General for the Cure of the Scab, Tetter, or Ring-worm

The water that is found in the hollow places of a decayed Beech tree, and annoint him with it, the Juice of the leaves and roots of stinking Gladwin, one part of Plantine-water, and two parts of the Brine of Beef boyled together and clarified, and annoint him with it, Plum-tree leaves boyled in Vineger, killeth Tettters, the Juice of the Root of Monks Rubarb, which is a kind of dock, some call it Garden-patience is very good, the Oyl of Wheat pressed between two thick Plates of Copper, the Juice of Mercury mingled with Vineger, Water-cresses, the roots of docks boyled in Vineger and bathed therewith, Cardimonium mixt with Vineger.

From

To make a strong Lye of old Urine, Ash Keys and green Copperas, and bathe the Knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them; or to cut the Head and Tail of a Snake, and cut it into small pieces and roast it, and anoint the sore with the Grease of it, and it will heal it in a short time, and have a care you touch no place but the Sorrance, for it will venom.

Particular Receipts to Cure the Tetter or Ring-worm.

Take two drams of Precipitate and put it into a small Vial-Glass with fair water, much more then will cover the powder, keep it close stopped, and with this water twice a day wash it, and it will infallibly Cure it; and after you have dressed the Sorrance, shake the Glass, and let it stand till the next dressing; But if it be in any fleshy part, you may kill it by bathing the Sorrance with the Juice of Southern-wood, Maudlin and Rue of each alike stamped together and strained, and bathe the place with it twice a day till it be whole.

Another.

Take the roots of Elecampane, and the roots of red Docks, of each alike, slice them thin and put them into three quarts of urine, with two handfuls of Bay-salt, let it boil till one quart be consumed, then take it off, and with a clout fastened to a stick wash the Sorrance very hot, four or five Mornings together, and it will kill it.

Things good in general for the Crown Scab, which is a stinking and filthy Scab, breeding round about the corners of the Hoof.

Spread upon a Plaister this Ointment, take salt Bacon Grease, Soot, Wax and Pitch molten together, and lay to it; and if the Flesh grows proud, eat it away with Verdegreafe beaten to powder, or with burnt Allom, or scrapings of Harts-horn or Ox-horn made into powder, or take Sope and Hogs-grease, and half a pound of bole-Armoniack, and a quarter of a pound of Turpentine mixed well together, and make a Plaister and bind it on fast, renewing it every day till it leave running, and then wash it with strong Vineger made warm, and let him come into no water during the Cure; or to bathe him with old Urine sod with salt, and that will dry up the humors and heal it; or to wash it with green Copperas, Allum and Honey boiled together in fair water, and wash the sore with it three or four times a day, and this will both kill and heal it without any other Medicine.

Things good in general for a surbated Horse.

Take two new laid Eggs, and after you have well pricked his fore-Feet, break them raw into his Soles, then stop them up with Ox or Cow dung, and he will be well by the next Morning; or Sugar candy melted with a hot Iron between the Shoo and the Foot, and when it is hardened take Nettles and Bay salt, stamped and laid upon it, or after his Foot is pared, to cool it stop his Feet with Bran and Hogs-Grease boiled together very hot, and to cover the Coffin round with the same, or to stop them every night with Cows dung and Vineger mingled together.

Things good in general for Sinews that are Cut, Prickt, Bruised or Shrunk, &c.

Alheal is good for the grief of them; Wood-bitony, Comfrey soddereth cut Sinews together, the dried powder of red Wheat boiled in Vineger is good, wild Tansie, Oyl of Chamomil, Mugwort cureth the contraction and drawing together of the Sinews; or Tarr, Bean-flower and Oyl of Roses mixed together, and laid to the place hot, and if it do not presently good, then take Wormes and Sallet-Oyl Fried together, or else the Ointment of Wormes, which you may have at the Apothecaries, and apply either of them, for they knit the Sinews again, if they be not quite cut asunder; but if there be a Convulsion, you must with your Scissers cut the Sinew asunder, then take Rozin and Turpentine, Pitch and Sanguis Draconis melted together, and clapped somewhat hot to the sore, then take Flax and clap upon that, for that will cleanse and defend, and is a very excellent Medicine for any swollen Joynt whatsoever. But if the Sinews be not much swelled, but only stiff; Then take of black Soap a pound, and see the it in a quart of strong Ale, till it wax thick like Tarr, and anoint the Sinews and Joints with it, and it will supple them and stretch them forth be they never so much shrunk; Or take a quart of Neats-foot Oyl, a quart of Ox-galls, a quart of Aquavita or Brandy, a quart of Rose-water, or a handful of Rosemary stamped, boil all these together till half be consumed, and strain it, and use it as you see occasion.

Things



Things good in general to cure the Tongue of a Horse that is hurt.

To boil in water Wood-bine leaves, Primrose-leaves, black Berry-leaves, Knot-grass with some hony, and put to it a little Allom, and two or three times a day wash it with a Clowt tied upon a stick, being luke warm, or take *Mel Rosatum* and anoint it therewith and be sure whensoever you dress his Tongue or Mouth, tie him up to the Rack an hour after it, that so the Medicine may take the better effect; or take red Honey, the marrow of powdered Pork, quick Lime and Pepper made into fine powder, of each alike boiled together till they come to an Ointment, and anoint with it twice a day.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Tongue of a Horse that is hurt.

Take of Arman half an ounce, and put it into the Fire till it become red hot, then take it out and beat it to very fine powder; then take a Sawcer full of live honey and of white Wine one pint, mix and steep these with the powder together, and so let it boyl over the Fire, keeping it stirring, then take it off and let it cool, and so wash his Tongue with it Morning and Evening till it be whole.

Another.

Take the Juice of Selandine, and wash the hurt therewith nine days together, and it will cure it though it be half cut asunder, for the Juice of the Selandine will conglutinate and sodder the tongue together, being cut or wounded.

Things good for venomd things.

Garden Bazil or sweet Bazil laid to it is good for any thing venomd, by a Spider, Wasp, Bee or Hornet, Water-Bistort or Snake-weed is likewise good; and if he hath drunk Horse leeches, Hens dung and the like, give him three spoonfuls of the Herb Sow thistle dried in a quart of Ale.



Things good in general for Uleers.

Tarr, Hogs-grease, green or white Copperas, Salt Peter, Bees wax, Honey, Rozin, Verdegrease, Linseed Oyl, all boiled together, and make a Salve of it, and dress it with it. Euphorbium, Mastick, French soap is good, or to wash the sore with white Wine and green Copperas dissolved together, and to heal it up with Swines grease, the leaves of
illies

Lillies beaten in a Mortar, and make a Salve of it, and lay it upon the sore, and cover it with a Plaister, or Loam and Horse-dung mixed with Pepper and the white of an Egg; or to strow upon the sore of the powder of Galls, or to scald it once a day with Sallet Oyl or Sack, Frankincense, Cloves, green Copperas and Brimstone, and double as much Myrrh as any of them, and put it upon a Chasing-dish of coales, and receive the smoke of it upon Hurds, and keep it close in a box, and when you use it, wash the sore with urine or vinegar twice a day.

Things good in general for an Ulcer or Canker in the Nose.

Green Copperas and white Copperas, with some Allum boiled in running water, and squirted into his Nostrils luke-warm, three or four times one after another, is good; but if the Canker be hot and very burning with great pain; then take the Juice of Purslain, Night-shade, Lettice, and mix them together, and wash the sore with a fine Cloth dipt therein, or else squirted up his Nostrils, and it will allay the heat of it; or to take, Sage, Rue, Hyssop, of each a handful, and seethe them in urine and water, and strain it out, and put into it a little white Copperas, Honey and Aquavitæ, and wash or squirt it into the place; But if the Canker be killed, heal it with this water, take of Rib-wort, Bitony and Daisies, of each a handful, and seethe them well in Wine and water, and wash the sore therewith; or take Chrystal made into fine powder, and strow upon it Pauls bitony bruised is very good.

Things good in general to Cure the Vives.

To cut a hole where the Kernels are, and pick them out with a Wire, and fill the hole with Salt, and at three days end it will run; then wash it with the Juice of Sage, and heal it up with an Ointment made of Honey, Butter and Tarr; or with your green Ointment in my First Part; or to wash the sore wherein hath been boyled green Copperas and Allum, and to taint it with Flax dipt in the white of an Egg beaten to an Oyl, or to heal it up with Hogs-grease, Turpentine and Wax molten together; or take a sponge dipped in white-Wine Vineger, and bind to the sore, and renew it twice a day, till the Kernels do rot, then open the nethermost part of the softness, and let the corruption out, and fill the hole with Salt finely brayed, and the next day wash away the filth with warm water, and the next day after wash the sore with Honey and Fitch-flower mingled together till it be whole.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Vives.

Take Tar, tryed Hogs-grease, Bay-salt, and Frankincense powdred, of each as much as will suffice, melt them together, and with a Clout fastened to a stick, scald the place four or five mornings together, until the inflamed places do become soft and ripe, then slit the Skin with your Incision-knife, and let forth the Crrruption, and heal up the Sore with tryed Hogs-grease and Verdegrease made up into fine powder, melt them upon the fire, and let it not boyl more then a waum or two, then put in some ordinary Turpentine, and so stir all together till it be cold, and annoint the Sorrance with it till it be whole.

Another which is the best Cure for it.

Take a penny worth of Pepper beaten to fine powder, Swines-grease a spoonful, the Juice of a handful of Rue, Vineger two spoonfuls, mix them very well together, and convey it equally into both the Eares of the Horse, and so tie or stich them up, then shake his Eares that the Medicine may sink downwards, which done, let him blood in the Neck-Vein, and Temple-Veins, and this is an infallible cure.

What is good to Cure the Arraisses or Rat-Tails, which is a kind of Scratches.

To ride him till he be warm, which will make the Veins to swell, and the better to appear, then let him blood in the Fet-lock-Veins on both sides, making him to bleed well, and the next day after to wash the Sores with warm water, and then clip away all the Hair from about the Sores, and annoint the grieved place with this Oyntment, viz. Take green Copperas and Verdegrease, of each two ounces, and of Common Honey, four ounces, beat your Copperas and Verdegrease very small, and so work them with your Honey to an Oyntment, and annoint the Sores daily with it till it be whole.

Things good in General for the Cure of the Wind-Cholick.

Alheal, True-love or one Berry, the Berries of Holly, Holm, or Hulver-bush, Juniper-Berries, the Flowers of Lavender steeped in Wine, Wilde Parsnips, Jack by the Hedge, Winter and Summer Savory, but the Summer is the best, Burnet, Saxafrage, the leaves of the Willow-tree bruised, and the Juice given with some Pepper in Beer, Cardamum, Fennegreek, Haws beaten to powder, Rue, Cloves, Cynamon, an Onion peeled and Jagged and put it into his Fundament, or to give him a Pipe

Pipe of Tobacco at his Fundament lighted, and the Wind of his Body will draw it out. If you intend to see more of this nature, look for Cholick.

A Plaister to lay upon a Wound to keep in the Taint or Salve.

Take Pitch, Rozin, Mastick, Turpentine, Hogs-grease, of each so much as will suffice, melt them together and keep it for your use, when you use it, spread it upon Leather and cover the wound therewith, this Salve doth infinitely comfort a Wound both green or old, be the same Fistula or otherwise.

Things good in General to Cure the Wind-Galls.

To open them the length of a Bean and thrust out the Jelly, then take the White of an Egg, and Oyl de-bay, and mix them together, and apply it with Hurds, Plaisterwise, and in three or four days thus dressing, it will be cured, and after you have opened it, and the Jelly squeezed out, to lay Pitch and Rozin melted together upon it, and clap some Hurds upon that.

This is a very good Cure.

To lay to lay to it Oyl de-bay, Turpentine, Verdegrease, the White of an Egg and Red-lead boyled together till they become a Salve, or the Roots of Cummin beaten with Salt and laid to it, or to annoint them with the Juice of Onions, or Leeks, or Ground-Ivy and Wormwood sodden in white-Wine, and laid to them; or after the Jelly is let out, to lap a wet woollen Cloth about it, and with a Tailors Hot-pressing Iron rub upon the Cloth, till all the moisture is dried up, then daub all over it Pitch, Mastick and Rozin boiled together, and lay Hurds upon it. In all these kind of Cures you must first shave away the hair, and open the Sorrance, and squeeze forth the Jelly before you lay any charge to it, and to keep him out of the water during the cure.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Wind-galls.

Take Tacha mahacha, Mastick, Perozin, of each the quantity of a Hazel-nut, and of Stone-Pitch to the quantity of a Wall nut, with a little Brimstone powdered, melt all these together, and when it is molten put in as much Turpentine as a Wall-nut will contain, and spread it upon a Plaister, and lay it to the place warm, and daub it all over with the same Salve, and Flox upon that, and let it remain on till it fall away of itself.

Another.

Take of Oyl of Vineger and dip your thumb therein, and rub the Sorrance with it every day till the hair do fall off, which will cause the Wind-galls to break out and bleed, then heal and cure them as you have been already taught.

A Purgation for a Horse sick of Grease or Costiveness.

Take a pint of old white Wine, and set it on the Fire, and dissolve into it a lump of Castle-soap as big as a Hens Egg, and stir them well together, then take it off, and put into it two good spoonfuls of Hemp-seed beaten, an ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder, and brew all together; then having warmed the Horse, to stir up his Grease and other foul humours, give it him to drink, and walk him up and down a little after it, to make the potion work, then set him up warm, and after a little stirring him in his Stall, if he grow sickish, give him liberty to lie down, then after two houres fasting give him a sweet Mash, and feed as at other times: Or if you find him sick, give him a pint of warm milk down his throat, and he will be quickly well.

To Cure a Horse that is swelled after Blood-letting.

Take Linseed-Oyl, Hogs-grease and red Lead mixt together, and melt them together over the Fire, keeping them stirring till it becomes cold, or else the red lead will sink all to the bottom; then rub it once a day well in with your Finger till the swelling be down, and this will dissolve the hardest knot that is; If it be in the Winter, you must heat it in with a hot Fire-shovel, but if it be in the Summer, the Sun will do the same thing.

Things good to cure a Bone-Spaven.

Though this is a very hard thing to cure, yet I shall give you such Receipts as I finde in an Eminent Author.

First, take up the Vein which feeds it, and let him bleed well, and do no more to him that day; the next day shave away the hair from off it, and rub it hard with a Rowling Pin, (having first anointed the place with *Petroleum*, and chafed it well with your hand,) or some other round and smooth stick Morning and Evening, for four days together, and at the fourth days end slit down the skin with your Incision-knife the full length of the Spaven, but be very careful you touch not the great Artery or Vein, both which do lie very near, for if you do but hurt that you maim the horse past all recovery, having thus done lay to the place the herb called *Flamula*, bruise it and bind it on so fast that it fall not off in two dayes more: Then for three days after take *Cantharides* and *Enphorbiun*, and incorporate them well together, (being before beaten to powder,) with black Soap and bay Salt, and lay this to the place, and thus dress it every Morning, this will lay the bone and crust bare. After
take

take Fearn-roots, Hounds-tongue and Boares-grease, incorporate all these together, and lay to the place till you perceive the crust to be loose, and to be waisted: and now and then try to loosen it with your Cornet, or other Instrument, and if you can conveniently take it off do so, which done heal up the wound with your green Ointment prescribed in my First Part. But if you finde a swelling begin to arise in the Spaven place whereby you suspect it, then for the prevention thereof, after you have first shaved away the hair, anoint the place with natural Balsam for two or three days together, then repress the humour with this charge, take three ounces of the Oyl of Roses, Bole-armoniack one ounce, Wheat flower half an ounce, and the white of an Egg, make all these into one body, and every day after you have anointed it with Balsam, lay on the said Charge.

Things good in general for all manner of Burnings or Scaldings, either by Shot, Gun-Powder or Wilde-fire.

The leaves or roots of the yellow Lilly, Daffodil stamped with honey, the Juice of an Onion, the Juice of the red Lilly, Lettuce, the Juice of Thorn Apples boiled in Hogs-grease to the form of an Ointment cures all manner of Burnings or Scaldings whatsoever in a very short time, Water Plantine, the Juice of Houleek, St. Johns wort bruised, the Herb Tutfan or Park leaves, an Ointment made of the Juice of Cowslips, and Oyl of Linseed, cureth all manner of Scaldings or Burnings whatsoever, Ivy that groweth upon walls or trees, Brank Urine, the Juice of Elder-leaves, the Decoction or the distilled water of Archangel, the Flowers and Herb of Ladies Bed-straw made into an Oyl, by setting it in the Sun, is good, the leaves of the Bur-dock bruised with the white of an Egg is a most excellent thing for all manner of Burnings by Fire, the Juice of Colts-foot, the Decoction of Daisies, Wall-wort and Agrimony cureth inward Burnings, being given inwardly.

Particular Receipts to allay Burning with Shot, Gun-Powder or wilde Fire.

Take Varnish and put it into fair water, and beat them very well together, then pour away the water from the Varnish, and anoint the place burned with a feather dipt into it, and in a few days dressing it will kill the Fire, which does heal the sore with your carnifying and healing Salves.

Another

Another.

Take Hogs-grease, and set it on the Fire, and take off the filth that shall arise, and when it is well boiled, take it off the Fire and put it into an earthen Pan to cool for four or five Nights together in the open Air, then wash it in fair running water so often till it become white, then melt it down again, and keep it for your use, and anoint the place grieved, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take fresh Butter and the whites of Eggs, as much of each as will suffice, beat them well together till you bring them to a formal Ointment, and anoint the places burned therewith, and it will speedily take away the Fire, and Cure them soundly.

Another.

Take a stone of quick Lime, which must be well burned, which you may know by its lightness, dissolve it in fair water, and when the water is settled, strain the clearest through a fine Cloth, then put into the water either the Oyl of Hemp seed or Sallet oyl of like quantity with the water, and so beating them well together, you shall have an excellent Unguent very precious for all sorts of burnings. And the Nature of these three Unguents be to leave no scars. Wherefore we apply them for most sovereign remedies, as well for man as beast.

To help a Horse that is Costive in his body.

Take a Decoction of Mallows one quart, Sallet Oyl half a pint, or fresh Butter half a pound, Benedista laxativa one ounce, give him this blood-warm Glister-wise, then clap his Tail to his Tuel, and hold it close, and make him keep it for half an houre at the least, and when it hath workt, give him a sweet Mash, and so keep him to Mashes, and white water for two or three days.

What is good to make a Horse draw up his Tard.

To bathe his Yard and Sheath with white Wine made warm, then anoint it with Oyl of Roses and Life-honey mingled together, and so put up the yard into the Sheath, and with a short bolster of Canvas keep it from falling down, and dress him once every day till he be well, and let his Back and Fillets be kept warm, and anoint him with Acopum, but if you have it not, apply this charge unto his Back and Fillets.

Take

Take Bolearmoniack, the Whites of Eggs, Wheat-Meal, Sanguis draconis, Venice-Turpentine, and strong White-wine Vineger, of each as much as you think fit, mix them well together and charge his Back with it, as also his sheath and his Stones.

Another.

Take the Ashes of Ashen-wood, the whitest, finest, and best burned, and searce them, one pound of red Clay dried, and made into fine powder, half a pound, Bolearmoniack half an ounce powdred, boyl all these in as much Verjuice of the Crab, as will make it liquid like Pap, and with it annoint his Yard, Sheath and Stones, Morning and Evening, and he shall be presently cured.

A Receipt to prevent Diseases in a Horse the whole year.

The first day of *April*, open a Vein in the Neck, and if it be good take the less, if bad take the more, then from that day untill the first of *May*, give him this which I shall prescribe, and let him have it Morning and Evening during the whole Month of *April*, from the first to the last, which is before his turning out to Grass, or Soyling, which shall be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the same all the whole Month of *October* (like as you must do in *April*) after you have taken him from Grass about *Bartholomew* tide) that which I prescribe is this.

Diseases to prevent:

Take a Bushel of Old Rye, sweet and clean, well purged, or made clean from all Filth, and put it in a clean Iron pot, dry, and without water, put it over the fire, and put in your Rye, and keep it continually stirring to the bottom, until it be so parched that it becometh black, hard and dry, then take it from the fire and put it into some clean Vessel, and when it is cold keep it close stopped for your use. When you use it, take two or three handfuls of it, and beat it into fine powder, and mingle it amongst his Provender at every watering, Morning and Evening, or at other times when you give him Oates; do this these two entire Months of *April* and *October*, for all men hold that in these two Months the Blood turneth and altereth, as we alter his Diet, from hard and dry Meat to Grass, and so likewise from Grass to dry Meats, for this Rye thus parched and ordered, doth refine the Blood, cool the Liver, and purgeth the Spleen, so as the whole structure of the body is thereby the better cured and freed from all such bad and unnatural Humours, which would otherwise make the body inclinable to sundry Maladies and Diseases, which this Rye preventeth.

Things

Things good to keep a Horse from casting forth his Drink.

As it proceeds from cold in the Stomach, or other causes, as cold in the Head where the Rheum bindeth, about the roots and kernels of the tongue, hath as it were strangled and made strait the passages to the Stomach; therefore to prevent this mischief you must give him cordial and warm drinks, as Malmsey, Cinnamon, Annileeds and Cloves, well brewed and mixed together; and to anoint his Breast and under his shoulders with either the Oyl of Cypress, Oyl of Spike, or the Oyl of Pepper, and to purge him with fumig or pills, for such fumigations joyning with these hot Oyls, will soon dissolve the humors.

Things good in general for the hungry evil.

To comfort his Stomach by giving him great Slices of white bread, toasted and steeped in Sack, or to let him drink Wheat-flower and Wine mingled together; or to make him bread of Pine-Nuts and Wine mingled together, but there is nothing better then moderate feeding of the Horse many times in the day with wholesom Bread well baked; or Oats well dried and sifted.

Particular Receipts for a Horse that hath swallowed down Hens dung, or any other venomous thing.

Take a Pint of Sallet-Oyl, and two spoonfuls of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder of Diapente, and brewing them well together give it him to drink, and for want of Diapente so much of the shaving of Ivory, or of an old Stags-horn especially, the tips thereof burnt.

Another.

Take of the urine of a man, as it cometh warm from him, one Pint, of bay Salt a handiul, stir them well together, and give it him, and after walk him up and down for half an hour. If you desire to see more Receipts, you must look for things that are good to expel poison.

Things good for Pain in the Teeth, loose teeth, Wolfes-teeth and Jaw-teeth.

For loose teeth the Cure is to prick all his Gums over with a Lancet, making them bleed well, then rub them all over with Sage Salt, or with the leaves of Elecampane, and it will fasten them.

The Pain of his Teeth comes by means of distillation of humors, which is cured by rubbing all the out-side of his Gums with fine Chalk and strong Vineger mixt together, or after they are so washed to strow upon them the powder of Pomegranate Pills, or to cover the Temples of the Head with a Plaister of Rozin and Mastick molten together. Now for the Cure of the Wolfes Teeth or Jaw Teeth, Tie up his Head to some Post or Rafter, and after you have opened his Mouth with a Cord so wide as you can see any part thereof, take an Instrument of Iron made like unto a Carpenters Gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the Tool to the foot of the Wolfes-teeth on the out-side of the Jaw, turning the hollow side of the Tool downwards, knock it out as steadily as you can with your Mallet, and put some Salt finely brayed into the holes. Now if the upper Jaw teeth doth hang over the nether Jaw-teeth, and so cut the inside of the Mouth, then take your Gouge and Mallet and pare the teeth shorter by little and little, turning the hollow side of your Tool downwards towards the Teeth, by which means you shall not cut the inside of his cheeks, then with your File file them all smooth, without any ruggedness, and then wash his Mouth with Vineger and Salt.

Things good in general for the Crick in the Neck.

The Cure is to thrust a sharp hot Iron through the flesh of the Neck in five several places, three inches distant from one another, and to have a care you touch not any Sinew, and Rowel all of them with Horse-hair, Flax or Hemp, for the space of fifteen days, and anoint the Rowels with Hogs-grease, and the Neck will soon be restored, or to bathe the Horfes Neck with the Oyl of Peter, or the Oyl of Spike very hot, and then Rowling it up in wet Hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping him very warm, without using any burning, wounding, or other violence, he will do well.

A certain way to raise up the Crest that is fallen.

Is first to raise it up with your hand, and to place it where it ought to stand, then having one standing on the same side the Crest falleth from let him with one hand hold up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottom of it, so as it may stand upright, then on that side to which it falleth, with a hot Iron (somewhat broad on the edge) drawing his Neck first at the bottom of the Crest, then in the midst of it, and lastly at the setting on of the Hair, and to draw it through the skin, and no
S deeper

deeper then on the other side (from whence the Crest falleth) gather up the Skin with your hand, and with two Plaisters of Shoo-makers-wax, laid one against the other at the edge of the Wound, and with smooth Splints to stay the Skin, that it may shrink neither upward nor downward, then with a Pair of sharp Scissers, clip away all spare Skin which you had gathered with your hand, then with a Needle and some red Silk, stitch the Skin together in divers places, and to keep the Skin from breaking, stitch the edges of the Plaister also, then annoint the Sore with Turpentine, Honey, and Wax melted together, and the places which you drew with a hot Iron, with Peece-grease made warm, and thus do twice a day till it be whole; and have great care that your Splints shrink not. But the best cure for this Infirmity, is to let him Llood, and to keep him very well, for strength and fatness will ever raise the Crest.

. Things good for a Horse that is wrung, or hurt in the Withers.

If you find that by taking off the Saddle his Withers be Swoln, clap on the Saddle again, and lay upon the place some wet Litter, then take up a thin-Turfe of Grass and Earth together, and put into the fire, and let it there rema in till it become red hot, then take it out and moisten the Grassy side very well with white Wine Vineger, then take off the wet Litter, and lay the Turfe very hot with the Grassy-side next to the place, and so put on the Saddle again, and let it so remain all night, and this presently helpeth any Swelling in the Withers, or any other part of the Back, as also any Swellings by Spur-galls. But if the Skin be broken or ulcerated, then take sweet Butter, Bay-salt and the powder of Frankincense, of each as much as will suffice, boyl all these together, and with a Clout fastened upon a stick, dip it into it scaulding hot, and scauld it two or three times, but if it be full of corruption, then make incision in both sides beneath, that the Matterative stuff may the more easily void away downwards, and heal it up with your powder of Lyme and Honey, or to annoint it well with the Oyl of Turpentine, and it will either assuage or break the Swelling, and if it be broke, squeeze forth the corruption, and drop some of the said Oyl into it Morning and Evening, and it will both cleanse and heal it; but if the Skin be only galled off, take Cream and Soot well mixed together, and lay upon the Sore, and it will heal it presently, if the Wound be not very deep.

Things

Things good in General for Swelled Cods.

If it come of rankness of Seed, or of Blood, then let him have a Mare, and let him cover her two or three days together, and half an hour after ride him into the water about the Cods or Stones against the stream, and he will do well. But if it come of other causes, take the Lees of Claret-wine, or for want of that, the Dregs of strong Beer and Cummin-seed made into fine powder, and a little Wheat and Bean-Flower, boyl them altogether to an Oyntment, and annoint his Cods warm therewith, then draw forth his Yard, and wash that and his sheath also with white-Wine Vineger, and three or four houres after, ride him into the water above the Cods, and let him stand in the water some short time, and to ride him against the stream, do this every day till the Swelling be asswaged, or take the Roots of Wilde Cucumbers and white Salt, boyl them in fair water to an Oyntment, and annoint his Cods with it warm, and then apply this Oyntment. Take Goats-grease, or Deers Sewet, the white of an Egg and Sallet-oyl, boyl them gently, and annoint his Cods therewith, but this must be after he hath been ridden into the water, and dry again.

A Charge for Swelled Cods.

Or take Bolcarmoniack beaten into fine powder, Vineger, and the Whites of Eggs well beaten together, and annoint him therewith daily, till it be abated, and if it impostumate, where you find it to be soft, open it with hot Iron, or with your Incision Knife, if it break not of it self, and heal it up with your green Oyntment, taught you as aforesaid.

Things good in General for Bursling or Ruptures in Horses.

Though I hold it incurable, yet I shall give you those things that worketh much good, though no absolute Cure. These things are great knitters, and are to be taken inwardly, Valerian, Rupture-wort, Crows-wort, Cranes-bill, the powder of the roots of Chammeck, the Leaves and Nuts of the Cypress, Elm leaves or the Bark thereof, Corn-Flag, any of these things given inwardly with the outward means used, maketh the Cure the more effectual.

the outward meanes is this, Bring the Horse into a place where there is a Beam overthwart, and strow it thick with straw, then put on four strong Pasterns, with four Rings on his feet, and fasten one end of a long Rope to one of those Rings, with the loose end of the Rope, and so draw all his four feet together, and he will fall; then cast the Rope over the Beam, and hoist him up so, that he may lie flat on his back with his legs upwards without struggling, then bathe his Stones well with warm water and Butter melted together, and the Stones being somewhat warm and well mollified, raise them up from the body with both your hands, being closed by the Fingers close together, and holding the Stones in your hands in such manner, work down the Gut into the body of the Horse, by stroaking it downwards continually with your two Thumbs, until you perceive that that side of the Stone to be so small as the other, and so having returned the Gut to the right place, take a List of two Fingers broad, thoroughly anointed with fresh Butter, and tie his Stones both together with the same, so high the body as may be, yet not over-hard, but so as you may put your Finger between, that done, take the Horse quietly down, and lead him gently into the Stable, & keep him warm, and let him not be stirred for the space of three weeks, but forget not the next day after you have placed his Gut in his true place to unloosen the List, and to take it away, and as well at that time as every day once or twice after, to cast a dish or two of cold water up upon his Cods, and that will make him to shrink up his Stones, and thereby to restrain the Gut from falling down, and at the three weeks end, to make the Cure so much the surer, take away the Stone on that side he is bursten, so he shall hardly be bursten on that side again, and during the Cure let him not eat much nor drink much, and let his drink be always warm.

Particular Receipts for the Bitch in the Groin of a Horse, which is a hard swelling there, which will cause his Legs to swell, especially from the Cambrels or Hoofs upwards.

The Cure is to ripen it with this Plaister, Take of Wheat flower, of Turpentine and of Honey, of each a like quantity, stirring it together to make a stiff Plaister, and with a Cloth lay it on the sore, renewing it once every day till it break or wax soft, and then lance it, so as the matter may run downwards, then Taint it with Turpentine and Hogs greafe molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

Another

Another for the Botch in the Groin, or any Impostumation.

As soon as you can perceive the Swelling to appear, lay upon it a Plaister of Shoemakers wax spread upon Allum-Leather, and let it lie until the sore grow soft, then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of it self, when the filth is come out, wash the sore very well with strong Allom-water, then taint it with the Ointment called *Egyptiacum* till it be whole.

A Receipt to Cure the Mellet, which is a dry scab, that groweth upon the Heel of the fore-Fet.

Take of ordinary honey half a Pint, black Soap a quarter of a pound mix them together, then put thereto four or five spoonfuls of Vineger and as much Allom finely beaten and imburned as a Hens Egg, and of Rye Flower two spoonfuls, mix them very well together, and having clipped away the Hair apply it to it Plaister-wise, so far as the Sorrance goeth, and let it so remain for five dayes, then take it away, and wash all the Leg, Foot and Sorrance, with powdred Beef-Broth, and after rope up his Legs with Thumb-bands of soft Hay wet, in the same Liquor, and he will be found, you are to remember that whensoever you dress the Sorrance, you take off the dry scab, or whatever crusty thing shall be upon the place, and to wash it very clean.

A Receipt for the Hough-bonny.

To ripen it either with rotten Litter or Hay boiled in old Urine, or else with a Plaister of Wine Lees and Wheat-flower boiled together, to ripen the Swelling, and bring it to Putrefaction, or else to drive the swelling away; but if it come to a head to lance it in the lowest part of the softness, with a thin hot Iron to let out the matter; then to Taint it with Turpentine, Deers Sewet and Wax, of each alike molten together, laying a Plaister of the same Salve over it, to hold in the Taint until it be perfectly well.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Fig in a Horses Foot.

Cut away the Hoof so as there may be a convenient space betwixt the Sole and the Hoof, to the end the Fig may the more easily be cured; then put to the Sorrance a piece of a Sponge, which you are to bind close upon it, which will eat it off to the very root, and heal it up with your green Ointment, in my first Part. Or to cut it away close with

with your Incision knife, or else to burn it off with a hot Iron (which is the better way) then for two days after lay tried Hogs-grease to it, to take away the Fire, take then the tops of the most angriest Nettles you can find, pound them very small, and so lay them upon a Linnen Cloth, just the bigness of the Fig; then take the powder of Verdegrease, and strew it upon the chopped Nettles (which must be done before you lay it to the Sorrance) and so bind it upon the Sorrance, renewing it every day once till the Hoof have recovered the Sore.

To Cure Blisters.

Fret them in the Sun till they bleed, then take the roots of Ivy, and stamping them in a Morter, mix them with as much Tar, Brimstone and Allum, till they come to a Salve, and dress it therewith, and it will heal it.

Things good in General for Knots in the Joynts, Hardness, Cramps, or any Inflammations.

The powder of Diapente beaten with Lynseed Oyl or Sallet-oyl to an Oyntment, and applied once a day to the Grief, is good for the Cramp or inflammation, or Wine, Oyl, and Tar mingled together as it is boyled, is good, or Mustard, Hogs-grease and Bay-salt mixed together with Vineger, and applied, is good, or take a Plaister of Figs, and the roots of Fern and Rochet mingled with Hogs-grease and Wine-Vineger, or take dry Pitch, Pitch of Greece, of each one part, of Galbanum and Lime, of each four parts, of Bitumen two parts, of Wax three parts, melt them altogether, and annoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the Grief.

How to Cure Wounds made with the Shot of Gun-powder.

Search first if the Bullet be in the Wound, if it be, take it cut with an Instrument made for that purpose, but if you cannot get it out, you must have patience, for nature it self will wear it out of its own accord, without any Impediment, for Lead is of that Nature that it will not Canker; then to kill the Fire, drop in some Varnish into it with a Feather to the bottom, and stop up the Mouth of the Wound with some soft Flax

dipt

dipt likewise in the same: then charge all the Swoln place with this charge. Take of Bolearmonieck a quartern, of Lynseed beaten into powder half a pound, of Bean-Flower as much, and three or four Eggs, Shells an all. and of Turpentine a quartern, and of Vinegar a quart, mingle them well together upon the Fire, and being somewhat warm, charge all the Sore place with part thereof, and clap a Cloth upon it to keep the Wound warm, continuing so doing every day for four or five days together, then at the fifth days end, leave annointing it, and taint it to the bottom with a taint dipt in Hogs-grease and Turpentine melted together, renewing once or twice every day till the Fire is killed, which you shall perceive by the mattering of the Wound, and by falling of the Swelling, for so long as the Fire hath the upper hand, so thick Matter will Issue forth, but only a thin yellowish water, neither will the Swelling assuage, and then of Turpentine washed in nine several waters, half a pound, and put thereto three Yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and taint it with this Oyntment, renewing it every day once till the Wound be whole; but if the Shot be got quite through the Wound, then take a few Weavers Linnen Thums made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them through the Wound, running them up and down in the Wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the Wound on either side upon the Swollen places with the charge aforesaid, until you perceive that the Fire is killed, then clap on a comfortable Plaister upon one of the Holes, and taint the other with a taint in the Salve, made of washt Turpentine, Eggs and Saffron, as is before said. Some Farriers use to kill the fire with Oyl of Cream, and to heal up the Wound with Turpentine, Wax and Hogs-grease melted together, or to kill it with Snow-water, and charge the Swelled place with Cream and Barm beaten together, and to heal up the Wound by dipping a Taint in the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, Saffron, well beaten together.

Of Bones being broken and out of Joynt.

If your Horse hath any broken Bone, then take a double strong Canvas, which ought to be as broad as the Horses Fore-shoulders to his Flanks, then you should have another double Canvas, which shall come from between his fore-Booths up to the top of the Withers, whereas meeting

meeting with the rest of the Canvas, and having very strong Loops and Ropes fastened to them, sling him up upon some Beam, no higher then that his Feet may touch the Ground, and if it be a fore-Leg that is broken, raise him up then higher before then behind, and if a hinder, then a little higher behind then before, so that he may rest most upon the Members most sound, when he is thus slung, put the Bone into the right place, and wrap it close up with unwashed Wooll, newly pulled from the Sheeps Back, bound fast to the Leg with a smooth Linnen Rowler soaked before in Oyl and Vineger mingled together, and look that your Rowler lie as smooth and as plain as may be; and upon that again lay more Wooll dipt in Oyl and Vineger, and then Splint it with three broad, smooth and strong Splints, binding them fast at both ends with a Thong, and be sure to keep out his Leg streight for the space of fourty days, and loosen not the Bones above thrice in twenty days, unless it shrink, and so require to be new drest and bound again, and sail not to pour on every day through the Splints Sallet Oyl and Vineger mingled together, and if at the fourty days end you find that the broken places be soddred together with some hard Knob or Gristle, then loose the bands, & ease the Canvas, so as the Horse may tread more firmly upon his fore-Foot, which if he doth, loose him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, using from henceforth to anoint the place with soft Grease, or to take of Liquid Pitch one pound, of Wax two ounces, of the purest and finest part of Frankincense one ounce, of Amoniacum four ounces, of dry Rozin and of Galbanum, of each one ounce, of Vineger two pints; boyl first the Vineger and Pitch together, then put in the Amoniacum dissolved first in Vineger and after that the aforesaid Drugs, and being united in one, strain it, and make into a Plaister and use it according to your occasion, or to take a quart of Old Sallet-oyl, and put to it of Hogs-grease and of Spicma, Nitre, of each one pound, boyled together till they begin to bubble above, then take it from the Fire, and when you use it, let it be chafed in very hot, and then the former Plaister folded about it, which is very comfortable for a broken Bone.

A Receipt to Cure a stifled Horse.

After you have tied down his Head to the Manger, then take a Cord and fasten it to the Pastern of the stified Leg, and draw his Leg forwards, and so the bone will come right, by helping it with your hand, which being in, your care then must be to keep it in with your hand, and

and then Ty the other end of the Cord to the Rack, so as he may not put back his Leg, to dislocate the Bone any more for an hour or two after, till it be settled and dress'd; wherefore let his Keeper stand by him all the while, lest he should lie down, or be unruly. Take Pitch, which you must have molten in a pot in a readines, and with a Clout upon a Strick, annoint his Stiffing three or four Inches broad at the least, and ten Inches long, and presently before the Pitch can cool, have a strong Piece of new Canvas cut fit for that purpose, which being made very warm by a Fire, clap it upon the place so neatly that the Bone cannot go forth again. This Plaister must not lie towards the Flank and Foot long wayes, but cross-wayes upon the Joynt, as it were about the Thigh, otherwise it cannot hold in the Bone. Having thus done, annoint the Plaister on the out-side all over with the said Molten Pitch, and whilst it is warm, clap Flox of the Hories Color all over the out-side of the Canvas, and let the Plaister remain on till it fall away of it self, and after that you may apply such good Unguents as you may think is most expedient for the Malady; but if the Bone be not out, then put in a French Rowel, a little beneath the stiffing place, and let it remain in fifteen days, turning it once every day, and at fifteen days end take it forth, and heal up the Orifice with your green Oyntment in my first Part.

To Cure the String-hals.

Take up the Vein in the Thigh, and then annoint all the Leg and the Thigh from the Body down to the very Foot, a long time together, holding a red hot Fire-Shovel to the place, and let him be annointed with this Oyntment.

Take of the Oyl Petrolium, of the Oyl of Wormes, of the Oyl of Nerval, of Patch or Peece-grease, of the Oyl of Spike, of each one ounce, of London-Treacle two ounces, and of Hogs-grease one pound, melt all these upon the Fire, then take it off, and keep it stirring till it be thoroughly cold, and with this annoint the Visited Member every day once, and then wisp him up with a soft Thumb-band of Hay from the Pastern to the top of the Hoof, and thus do for ten days together, rubbing and chafing in the Oyntment very well a long time together, holding a hot Fire-Shovel near it, the better to cause it to sink into the Sinews, Nerves, and Joynts. But after you have done annointing him, keep him warm and well Littered, and let the Thumb-bands be daily made lesser, and lesser, and shorter, and shorter, till you perceive him

to handle both Legs alike, and your Horse to be Recovered; but you must not Ride him that he may sweat much in a Moneth after; and so soon as warm Weather cometh, turn him to Grass in some dry Pasture, where is Water, and take him up again about *Bartholomew-Tide*, or before the Cold cometh; and whilest he doth remain in the Stable keep him warm, and so he will be free of his String-halt, and be a sound Horse again; To Anoint him also with *Acopum* is very good; With this Receipt *De Grey* says, he hath Cured sundry Horses of this Malady.

How to make your Unguentum Theriacum, which is good for any Ach in the Joynts, Grieffs in the Hip, Stifling Place, Legs, Shoulders, Pastern, or any other Part of the Legs, a Back-Sinew-sprain only excepted.

Take Nerval, of Oyl of Pamphylion, and of black Sope, of each two Ounces, and of Tried Hogs-grease half a pound, melt them all upon a gentle Fire, and being molten put into it of ordinary Treacle two penny worth, then take it from the Fire, and keep it stirring till it be cold, then will it be of a dun colour; keep it in a Gally-pot for your use, and when you use it, anoint the place grieved with the same, rubbing and chafing it in very well, and heating it well in with a hot Fire-shovel.

Hot Simples in general.

Agarick, Aloes, Allum, Anniseeds, Aristolochia, Assafetida, Astoneo, Asarabacca, Arsmart, Archangel, Angelica, Alexanders, Alehoof, Balm, Garden Bazil, Bayberries, wild running Bitony smelling like *Mazjorem*, Burrage is hot and cold, so is Brank-ursin, Briony, broom, Butter-bur, burdock, brimstone, Celendine, chervil, Garden-clary, Clowns wound-wort, calamus, coloquintida, Garden cummin, chamock, Cinnamon, Cloves, China, Darnel, Elecampane, Fennel, Genzian, Garlick, Germander, stinking Gladwin, Golden Rod, Gramel, *English* Galingale, Ginger, Glas-wort is so hot that it hath a costive burning quality, Galls, Grains of Paradise, Galbanum, Hemp-seed, Garden-Hysop, Honey, St-Johns wort, Juniper-berries, Ivy, Jack by the Hedge, Iris, Knee-holm, Lavender, Lavender cotten, Ladies smocks, Garden-lilly, Lovage, Leeks, Mallows and Marsh-mallows, wild

wilde Marjorem, sweet Marjorem, Marigolds, Maſter-wort, Meliſſe, *French* and Dogs Mercury, Spear-mint, miſt letoe, mother-wort, mouſe-ear, mug-wort, muſtard-ſeed, Neeling roots, Nutmeg, One blade, Pepper, Rag-wort, Reſt-harrow, the wilde Rochet, Roſe-mary, Garden Rue, Saffron, Sage, Sanicle, Saraſens Conſound, Savin, common Saxafrage, Burnet Saxafrage, Scabius, *English* Scurvy-Graſs, Self-heal, Smallage, Sope-wort, Southern-wood, Sea ſtar-wort, Staves-acre, Garden Tanſie, Time, Tutſan, Turmeric, Valerian, Vervain, Wold, Weld or Diars Weed, Fennegreek, Scutchanele, *London* Treacle.

Cooling Simples in general.

Clove Gilly flowers, Grounſel is an univerſal Medicine coming of Heat whatſoever, Hawk-weed, Houſleek, Knot-graſs, Kidney-wort, Lettuce, Water-lilly, Licoris, common Liver-wort, Medlars, Money-wort, Trec-Moſs, Ground-Moſs, the unripe fruit of Mulberries, Mace, common Night-ſhade may be uſed either inwardly or outwardly, and is no way dangerous as the others are, Navel-wort, Orpin uſed outwardly, Water Plantine, Land Plantine, Pomegranate, Queen of the Medows, Shepherds purſe, common Sorrel, Wood Sorrel, Sow-thistles, Straw-berry leaves, Succory, Stone-crop, Star-wort, Spinach, wild Tanſie, all the parts of the black thorn, or Sloe-buſh, Meadow trefoyl, Honey-ſuckles, both the Vervains, Vine-leaves, Violets, Viper bugloſs, Vineger, the Leaves, Flowers, Seed and Bark of the Willow tree, Yarrow, Antimonium, Alkanet, Garden Arach, Barberrie-buſh, Barley, Bilberries, Blew-bottle, Bucks-horn, Plantine, Bole-Armoniack, Comfrey, Cranes-bill, Dandelion, all the kinds of Docks are generally cold, Ducks-meat applied outwardly is a great Cooler of hot inflammations Fumitory.

Things good in general for a Prick in the Sole of a Horſes Foot.

To pull off his Shoo, and pare his Foot ſo deep that you may diſcover the Hole, making the Mouth of it about the Breadth of a Two-pence, then waſh it well with Chamberly and Salt, or green Copperas and Allum boiled together in water, then tack on his Shoo again, and ſtop the Hole with Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe and Verdegreaſe melted together, and lay Flax or Towe upon it, and put over it Cow dung, and cover it with Leather, and ſplint it with two croſs ſplints

and renew it once in two or three days, and keep him out of wet during the cure. Or taint it with Tallow and Turpentine melted together and annoint his Coffin all over with Bolearmoniack and Vineger mingled together, and take red-Nettles stamped with Vineger and black or common Soap, and stop the Wound therewith, or to wash the Wound with Vineger and Salt, or if it be in the Summer take the tender Buds, or Leaves of Elder stamped, if in the Winter, the inner Rind of it, and melt some hot Tallow with it into the Wound. Or take Turpentine, brown Sugar-candy powdred, and white Ginger powdred, and melt them all in an Iron spoon, and pour it hot into the Wound, and put Hurds or Flax upon it, or Roch Allum burned and made into powder, and fill the hole therewith, and lay Hurds thereupon, or Oyl of Turpentine poured into it is excellent good, for it will not only search it to the bottom, but take out the Venom, and heal it up. Or after you have cleansed it with Salt and Vineger, take Salt made into fine powder, and four times so much Turpentine, and boyl them well together, and pour it into the Wound scalding hot, and put into it the powder of Brimstone dissolved in white Wine, and lay Hurds upon it. Or take Oyl de bay four ounces, of Orpin, of Cantharides and Eusorbium, of each two ounces made all into fine powder, and set them on the Fire, keeping them stirring till they become an Oyntment, and with it dress him as before is taught. But if the Foot be bruised, scar a live Spider upon it with a hot Iron.

To Cure a Horse of Stumbling.

To cure this, is to cut him of the Cords as it is call'd, which is by cutting a slit upon the very tip of his Nose, and with your Cornet to take up the two great Sinews, which you sh. ll there find, and so cut them asunder, and heal them up with some healing Salve, and this will do him no harm, but good, for in so doing it will give him the use of his Legs so perfectly, as that he will seldom or never trip any more, and this can every ordinary Smith do. And my counsel is that when at any time, you shall either breed or buy a young Horse, before or presently after you shall Back him, let him be thus cut of the Cords, and you shall find great profit thereby.

To Cure an A. berry or Spungy-wart.

It were good first to purge him, or to take Blood from the Water-Vein

Vein; which you find doth most feed them, as well to divert as to stop the malice of that bad Humour which doth occasion the Malady. If the Wart be far enough from the Skin, then tie two of the longest of his Hairs taken from his Tail hard about the Sorrance, so fast as possibly you can, and so as that it may not loosen, and in few days it will fret and eat it off, which done, strew upon it the powder of Verdegrease, to kill it at the Root, & after heal it up again with your green Salve, taught you in my First Part, but if you cannot come to tie it with Hair, or Thread, then either with your Incision Knife, cut it away close to the Skin, or else burn it off with a hot Iron, and then first kill the Fire with Turpentine and Hogs grease molsen together, and after heal it up, as before is prescribed.

Of Clifts and Cracks in the Heels, crosse and over the wart, which are a kind of Scratches, and are Cured with the same Medicines as they are.

Falling Evil cured, which is no other then the Falling-sickness in Man.

Take a pretty quantity of Blood from the Neck, and four or five days after, let him Blood in the Temple Veins, and on his Eye-Veins, then annoint his Body all over with a comfortable Friction, then Bath his Head and Eares with Oyl de-bay, Liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together, and of the same, put some of it into his Eares, then make him a Cap or Biggin of Canvas, Quilted with Wooll, to keep his Head warm, then give him a Purgation or Scouring, but if the disease continue still, then pierce the Skin of his Fore-head with a hot Iron in divers places, and after annoint it with sweet Butter, for thereby you shall draw out the gross Humours which do oppress the Brain, and keep him warm in the Stable, during the time of his Physicking.

General things to be Given inwardly for it.

The Seed of the Bolbonack, or the Satten flower, the Leaves and Flowers of Flea-wort, stinking Ground Pine taken with Oxymell or Honeyed water is good, given Evening and Morning for some time together, Birony, the Flower of Violets, the roots of Pione, Master-wort of Gerrard, Anniseeds, the Leaves and Bark of the Mastick-tree, the Gum of it hath the same Vertue given in Ale, the distilled water of red Cherries.

A Hip-shot Horse; There is so uncertain a Cure to be made of it, that I durst say nothing of the Cure.

Quick-Scab to Cure.

To let him bleed, then clip away the Hair where the Sorrhance is, and take off the scurf and scabs with an old Curry-Comb, or other such like thing, then with fair cold water wash it well, and lay a Linnen Cloth well wet in it to the place, and do nothing to it in ten days after; and if you find it doth not heal, dress it as before; and so a third time and a fourth, till it be thoroughly healed; Or to take Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each alike, and boil them in fair water as much as will suffice, till they be soft; and with the Herbs and Decoction bathe and wash the Sorrhance two or three days together warm: Then take of common honey a pint, Copperas, Allum, of Glasse and Verdegrease, all made into fine powder, of each four ounces, Turpentine and Quick-silver mortified, of each two ounces, boil all these together with the Honey unto an Unguent, and with it dress him every day till he be whole.

Rot in a Horse Cured.

Let him first bleed under the Tail, then take of Mares Milk two quarts, or the milk of a red Cow, then take a Lump of Aremment, then take a young Horse about the Age of four yeares, and of colour black if it may be, if not of some other colour, run and chase him about till he sweat much; then with a Spoon or some other Instrument Rake off the Sweat from his Head, Neck, Breast, Back, Sides, Ribs, Buttocks, Legs, and in each part or member where you can get off any, and so put your Aremment and your Sweat into the Milk, mixing them well together, and by equal Portions give it him three Mornings together, till he hath taken it all, and let him drink no drink after it in six or seven houres; and immediately after his drink lead him forth into some Pasture where other Horses be, to sneeze, stale or dung, to empty himself. which is very wholesom for him so to do, before he either eats or drinks, then set him up warm and well Littered; and if the Season do serve, give him of the green Blades of Rye; if not, give him Barley steeped in Milk three days, but renewed every day once;

once; Then after every of these Drinks, if you feel him cold in the Pastern Joynts, or that he trippeth or stumbleth as you lead him in your hand, do no more to him, for he is past cure; Otherwise, for nine days together after, morning and evening, give him white water only, unless now and then a sweet Mash; and sometimes give him milk with his white water, if he be not above nine years old, this will prolong his life, whereby he may do the more service. *Mr. Grey* declares, that this Receipt a Knight taught him, who recovered sundry Horses with it.

Swaying in the Back.

Take of the Fat of the fruit of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozin four ounces, of Pitch four ounces, of Bole-Armoniack an ounce, and of Sanguis Draconis half an ounce, incorporate all these well together, and lay it plaister-wise all over the Reins of his Back, and let it remain till it fall off of itself.

Foundering in the Body to cure.

To cure this distemper, is first to Rake his Fundament, and to give him a Glisten, which you have variety of in my First Part; Then take Sack or Ale a quart, Cinnamon half an ounce, Licoris and Anniseeds, of each two spoonfuls beaten into fine powder, with five or six spoonfuls of Honey, put them all into the Ale together, and warm them till the Honey is molten, and give it him luke-warm to drink, and ride him gently after it, for the space of an hour, and let him fast two houres more, and keep him warm clothed and littered, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water, and his Oats very cleansifted from dust, and give it him by little and little, and let his drink be warm Mashes of Malt and Water, and when he hath recovered strength let him blood in the Neck-vein, and once a day perfume his Head with Frankincense. There is no Drink nor Diet that is comfortable, but is good for this disease.

The Way of Gathering, Drying and Preserving Simples and their Juices.

CHAP. I. Of Leaves, Herbs or Trees.

Of Leaves chuse only such as are green and full of Juice, pick them carefully, and such as are declining cast away.

2. Note, that what place they most delight to grow in, gather them there, for Bitony that grows in the shadow is better then that that grows in the Sun, because it delights in the shadow.

3. The leaves of such Herbs as run up to seed, are not so good when they are in flower, as before (some few excepted,) if through ignorance they were not known, or through negligence forgotten; you had better take the tops then the leaves.

4. Dry them well in the Sun, and not in the shadow.

5. Such as understand Astrology, I advise, let the Planet that governs the Herb be Angular, and the stronger the better if they can, in Herbs of Saturn, let Saturn be in the Ascendant; in the Herbs of Mars, let Mars be in the mid-Heaven, for in those Houses they delight.

6. Having well dried them, put them up into brown paper, making a bag thereof, press them not too hard together, but keep them in a dry place near the Fire.

7. As for the duration of dried Herbs a just time cannot be given, let Authors talk their pleasure, for such as grow upon dry grounds will keep better then those that grow upon moist, and those that are full of Juice will not keep so long as such as are drier, and such as are well dried will keep longer then such as are ill dried.

You may know when they are corrupted, by the loss of smell, colour or both.

8. Gather all Leaves in the hour of that Planet that governs them.

CHAP. II. Of Flowers.

The Flower which is the beauty of the Plant is of very good use in Physick, and is to be gathered when it is in its prime.

2. Gather them when the Sun shines upon them, that so they may be dry, for if you gather your Flowers or Herbs when they are wet or dewy, they will not keep.

3. Dry them well in the Sun, and keep them in Papers near the Fire, as I shewed you in the foregoing Chapter.

4. So long as they retain their colour and smell, they are good.

CHAP. III. *Of Seeds.*

1. The Seed is that part of the Plant which is endued with a vital Faculty to bring forth its like, and it contains Potentially the whole Plant in it.

2. Gather them from the places where they delight to grow.

3. Let them be full Ripe when they are gathered.

4. When they are gathered, dry them a little in the Sun before you lay them up.

5. You need not be so careful of keeping them so near the Fire as the other, because they are fuller of spirit, and therefore not so subject to corrupt.

6. They will keep several years, but they are best the first year.

CHAP. IV. *Of Roots.*

1. Chuse such as are neither rotten nor worm-eaten, but proper in their taste, colour and smell, such as exceed neither in softness nor hardness.

2. The drier time you gather them in, the better they are, for they have the less excrementitious Moisture in them.

3. Such as are soft, dry them in the Sun, or else hang them near the Fire upon a string, but such as are hard you may dry them any where.

4. Such Roots as are great will keep longer then small, yet most of them will keep a year.

7. Such Roots as may commonly be had, as Parsley, Fennel, Plantine, &c. It is in vain to dry them.

CHAP. V. *Of Barks.*

1. Bark of Trees are best Gathered in the Spring; if it be of great Trees, as Oaks, or the like, because then they come off easiest, and so you may dry them if you please; but indeed your best way is to Gather all Barks only for present use.

2. As for the Bark of Roots, 'tis thus, and thus to be gotten; Take the Roots of such Herbs as have a pith in them, as Parsley, Fennel, &c. slit

U u

them

them in the middle, and when you have taken out the Pith, that which remaineth is called (though something improperly) the Bark, and indeed is only to be used.

CHAP. VI. *Of Juices.*

1. Juices are to be pressed out of Herbs, when they are young and tender, and also out of some stalks and tender tops of Herbs and Plants, and also out of some Flowers.

2. Those Herbs that you intend to preserve the Juice of, you must gather them when they are dry, or else they will not keep, you must bruise them well in a Stone-Mortar with a Wooden Pestle, and having put it into a Canvas bag, press it hard in a Press, then take the Juice and clarify it; the manner of clarifying it, is to set it over the Fire in a Pipkin or Skillet, and when the Scum ariseth take it off, and let it stand on the Fire till no more Scum arise; then you have your Juice clarified.

4. When you have clarified it, you may preserve it two ways.

First, when it is cold put it into a Glass, and put so much Oyl on it as will cover it the thickness of two Fingers, the Oyl will keep a top, and keep the Air from coming into it to putrify it; when you use it pour into a Porringer a little more then you use; and if the Oyl come out with it, scum it off with a spoon, and put the Juice you use not into the Glass again, and it will quickly sink under the Oyl

The second way of preserving it, is after you have clarified it, to boil it over again, till (being cold) it be of the thickness of honey; and this is used for diseases of the Mouth.

The Way of Making and Keeping all necessary Compounds.

CHAP. I.

1. Waters are distilled out of Herbs, Flowers, Fruits and Roots; and they ought to be distilled when they are in their greatest vigour.

2. Distilled Waters are the weakest of all Artificial Medicines, and good for little unless for mixtures of other Medicines, and the strongest way of distilling them is in sand.

3. When it is distilled put it into a Glass, and bind on the top of it a Paper prickt full of holes, that so the fiery vapour may exhale, which will else cause the Mother in it, which corrupts the waters, cover it close, and keep it for your use.

4. Stopping them with a Cork will cause them to grow musty, and so will a Paper also if it do but touch the water; the best way to stop them

them is with a Bladder, being first wet in water; and bound over the top of the Glass.

Such Waters as are distilled in a Pewter Still (if well kept) will endure a year, such as are distilled in sand, as they are twice as strong, so they will endure twice as long.

CHAP. II. *Syrups.*

1. A Syrup is a Medicine of a liquid Form, composed of Infusion, Decoction and Juice.

1. Syrups made by Infusion are usually made of Flowers, and of such Flowers as soon lose their colour and strength by being, as Roses, Violets, Peach-Flowers, &c. and they are thus made. Having picked your Flowers clean, to every pound of them add three pounds, or three pints of Spring-water, (for it is all one) made boiling hot by the Fire; put them first into a pewter-Pot covered, and put the water to them, then cover it, and let it stand by the Fire to keep hot, twelve hours, then strain it out, (in such Syrups that purge as Damask-Roses, Peach-Flowers, &c. but the best way to make it stronger, is to repeat this Infusion by adding fresh Flowers to the same liquor divers times, then having strained it out into some vessel, add to it two pounds of fine sugar to every pint of it, then melt it over the fire without boiling and scum, will produce you the Syrup you desire.

2. Syrups made by Decoction are usually made of Compounds, yet may any simple Herb be thus converted into Syrup; Take the Herb, Root or Flower you would make into Syrup, and bruise it a little, then boil it in a convenient quantity of Spring water, the more water you boil it in the weaker will it be, a Handful of the Herb Root, &c. is quantity enough for a pint of water, boil it till half the water be consumed, then strain it when it is almost cold, through a woollen Cloth, letting it run out at leisure, without pressing; to every pint of this Decoction add one pound of sugar, and boil it over the Fire till it come to a Syrup, when it is well boiled strain it through a woollen Cloth, but press it not. Thus it is perfected.

3. Syrups made of Juices, are usually made of such herbs as are full of Juice, and is better made into a Syrup this way than any other; the Operation is thus, having beaten the herb in a Stone Mortar, with a wooden Pestle, press out the Juice and clarify it, as you were taught before in the Juices, and let it boil till a quarter of it be consumed, to a pint of this add a pound of sugar, and boil it to a Syrup, and strain it through a woollen cloth, as before taught you, and keep it for your use.

4. If you make Syrups of Roots that are any thing hard, as Parsley, Fennel and Grass roots, &c. When you have bruised them, lay them in steep in that water you intend to boyl them in, so will the vertue the berter come out.

5. Keep your Syrups either in Glasses or Stone-pots, and stop them not with Cork, nor Bladder, unless you would have the Glass break, but only bind a Paper about the Mouth.

6. All Syrups if well made, will keep somewhat above a year, but such as are made by Infusion keep the least while.

CHAP. III. *Of Decoctions.*

1. All the difference between Decoctions and Syrups made by Decoction is this: Syrups are made to keep, Decoctions only for present use, for you can hardly keep a Decoction a Week at any time.

2. Decoctions are made of Leaves, Roots, Flowers, Seeds, Fruits, or Barks, conducing to the cure of the disease you make them for, and are made in the same manner as are shewed you in Syrups.

3. Decoctions made with Wine, last longer then such as are made with water, and if you take your Decoction to cleanse the passages of of Urine, or open Obstructions, then make it with White-wine, because it is more penetrating then water.

4. They are of most use in such diseases as lie in the passages of the body, as Stomach, Poyels, Kidneys, Passages of Urine and Bladder, because Decoctions pass quicker to those places, then any other form of Medicines.

5. You may sweeten your Decoction with Sugar or any Syrup fit for the occasion if you please.

6. If in a Decoction you boyl both Roots, Herbs, Flowers and Seeds together, let the Roots boyl a good while, first because they retain their vertue the longest; then the next in order by the same Rule, viz. First Barks, second the Herbs, third the Seeds, fourth the Flower, fifth the Spices, if you put any in, because their Vertues come soonest out.

7. All Decoctions are to be kept in a Glass close stopped, and the cooler place you keep them in, the longer they will last.

Lastly, The usual Dose given at a time is, three, four, five, six ounces according to the Age and Strength of the horse, the season of the year, the strength of the Medicine, and the quality of the Disease.

CHAP. IV. *Of Oyles.*

1. Oyl Olive, which is Sallet-oyl, is temperate and exceeds in no one quality.

2. Of Oyles, some are Simple, and some Compound.

3. Simple Oyles are such as are made of Fruits or Seeds by expref-
fion, as Oyl of sweet and bitter Almonds, Linfeed, and Rape feed Oyl,
&c.

4. Compound Oyles are made of Oyl Olives, and other Simples, Ima-
gine Herbs, Flowers, Roots, &c.

5. The way of making them is, having^d bruised the Herbs or Flow-
ers you would make your Oyl of, put them in an Earthen Pot, and to
two or three handfuls of them pour a pint of Oyl, cover the Pot with a
Paper, and set it in the Sun about a Fort-night or less, according as the
Sun is in horness, then having warmed it very well on the Fire, press out
the Herbs, &c. Very hard in a Press, and add as many more herbs to
the same oyl, being first bruised, then set them in the Sun as before, the
oftener you repeat this, the stronger will your Oyl be; when it is strong
enough for your purpose, boyl both herbs and oyl together till the Juice
be consumed, which you may see now by leaving its Bubbling, and the
herbs will be crisp, then strain it whilst it is hot, and keep it in a Stone
or Glass Vessel for your use.

CHAP. V. *Of Oyntments.*

1. The easiest way to make Oyntments is this, bruise those Herbs,
Flowers or Roots you would make an Oyntment of, and to two hand-
fuls of your bruised Herbs, add a pound of Hogs-grease tried, beat them
very well together in a Stone-Mortar, with a Wooden Pestle, then put
it in a Stone-pot and cover it with a Paper, and set it in the Sun, or some
other warm place for four or five dayes, that it may melt; then take it
out and boyl it a little, and strain it whilst it is hot, pressing it out very
hard, to this Grease add as many more Herbs bruised as before, and let
them stand in like manner as long, and boyl them as you did the former,
and if you think it not strong enough, do it the third time, and the fourth,
and the fuller of Juice your Herbs are, the sooner will your Oyntment
be strong; the last time you boyl it, boyl it till your Herbs be crisp, and
the Juice consumed, then strain it very hard in a Press, and to every
pound of Oyntment; add two ounces of Turpentine, and as much Bees-
wax, because Grease is as offensive to Wounds as well as Oyl.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI. *Of Plaisters.*

1. The *Greeks* make their Plaisters of divers Simples, and put Metals in most of them, if not in all, for having reduced their Metals into powder, they mixed them with that fatty substance whereof the rest of the plaister consisted, whilst it was yet hot, continually stirring it up and down lest it should sink to the bottom, so they continually stirred it till it was stiff; then they make it up into Rolls, which when they need for use they could melt by Fire again.

2. The *Arabians* made up theirs with Meal, Oyl and Fat, which needed not so long boiling.

3. The *Greeks* Emplaisters consisted of these Ingredients, Metals, Stones, divers sorts of Earth, Feces Juice, Licoris, Seeds, Roots, Herbs, Excrements of Creatures, Wax, Rozin, Gums.

CHAP. VII. *Of Poultisses.*

1. Poultisses are those kind of things which the Latins call *Cataplasmata*, and our Vulgar *Cutaplasme*; it is a very fine kind of Medicine to ripen Sores.

2. They are made of herbs and roots fitted to the disease and member afflicted, being chopped small, and boyled in water almost to a Jelly, then by adding a little Barley-Meal, or Meal of Lupines and a little Sallet-oyl, or rough sweet Suet, which I hold to be better, spread upon a Cloth and apply it to the grieved place.

3. Their use is to ease Pains, to break Sores, to cool Inflammations, to dissolve hardness, to ease the Spleen, to concoct humors, to dissipate swellings.

4. You use no Poultifs, if you can help it that is of an healing nature, before you first have cleansed the Body, because they are subject to draw the humors to them from every part of the Body.

CHAP. VIII. *Of Troches.*

1. Troches are little, round, flat Cakes, or you may make them square if you please.

2. Their invention was, that powders being so kept, might resist the intromission of Air, and so endure pure the longer.

3. Besides they are the easier carried in their pockets of such as travel for their present use.

They

They are thus made. Take two drams of the Gum Tragacanth, put it into a Gally-pot, and put half a quarter of a pint of any distilled water fitting for the purpose you would make your Troches for, to it, to cover it, and the next Morning you shall find it in such Jelly, as Physicians call Muffilage, with this you may make any powder into paste, and that paste into little Cakes called Troches.

5. Having made them, dry them well in the shadow, and keep them in a Pot for your use.

CHAP. IX. *Of Pills.*

1. They are called *Pilula*, because they are called Little Balls; The first invention of them were to purge the head; Now as I told you before, such infirmities as lay near the passages were best removed by Detractions, because they pass to the grieved part soonest: so here, if the infirmity lie in the head, or any other remote part, the best way is to use Pills because they are longer in digestion, and therefore the better able to call the offending humor to them.

2. The Way of making of them is easie, for with the help of a Pestle and Mortar, and a little diligence, you may make any powder into Pills.

Of hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

1. Heating the Head.

Demonicum, Fennel, Peony, Spikenard, Winters his Cinnamon, Bitony, Costmary, Cardus benedictus, Cowslips, Eye-bright, Feather-wort, Gouts-Rue, Herb Mastich, Lavender, Laurel, Lovage, Maudlin, Mellilot, Time, penny-Royal, Rosemary, Celandine, Scurvey-grass, Nettle-wort, Sena, Vervain, Chamomil, Sage, Nutmegs.

2. Heating the Throat.

Devils-bit, pilewort, Archangel white and red.

3. Heating the Breast and Lungs.

Birth-wort, Calamus, Aromaticus, Cinquefoil, Elicampane, Licoris, Price Squills, Cassia Lignea, Cinnamon, Bitony, Bayes, Bawm, Calamint, Camomil, Distaff, Thistle, Fennel, Germander, Hyssop, Horehound, Indian leaf, Maiden-hair, Nettle, Oak of Jerusalem, Organy, Twinkle, Rue, Scabius, Time, Figs, Raisins.

4. Heat-

4. Heating the Heart.

Angelica, Butter-bur, Buzil, Cinamon, Citrons, Carline-thistle, Turmentil, Valerian, Pimpernel, Bay-berries, Bawm, Broom, Cardus Benedictus, Rue, Goats-rue, Rosemary, Southernwood, Sene, Saffron, Spicknard, Juniper-berries, Mace, Nutmegs, Wall-nuts, Mustard-seed.

5. Heating the Stomach.

Avens, Fennel, Galangale, Ginger, Radish, Spicknard, Enula, Cassia Lignea, Cinamon, Citrons, Lemmons, Saffaphras, Bays, Biwm, Broom, Hyfop, Indian-leaf, Mints, Time, Parsley, Sage, Smallage, Wormwood, Rosemary, Cloves, Almonds, Ben, Nutmegs, Pine-nuts, Annis, Caraway, Cardamums, Cummin.

6. Heating the Liver.

Carlin-thistle, China, Dogs-grease, Fennel, Gentian, Parsley, Rheubarb, Smallage, Turneric, Sparagus, Agrimonia, Ale-cost, Ash, Bayes, Aiarabacca, Centaury the less, Chamepitys, German, Tox-gloves, Hops, Horehound, Hyfop, Ladies-thistle, Thyme, Maudlin, Pimpernil, Celandine, Samphire, Sage, Elder, Scordium, Water-cref-fes, Chamomel, Bitony, Annis, Caraway, Cummin.

7. Heating the Spleen.

Ash, Round Birth-wort, Carline, Fern, Fennel, Gentian, Parsley, Sparagus, Bayes, Agrimony, Centaury the less, Chamepitys, Doder, German, Hops, Hore-hound, Harts-tongue, Maiden-hair, Thyme, Smallage, Samphire, Sage, Scordium, Sena, Tamarisk, Water-creffes, Wormwood, Bitony, Wall-flowers, Annis, Caraway.

8. Heating the Bowels.

Ginger, Valerian, Zedory, Ale-hoof, Alexanders, Chamomil.

9. Heating the Reins and Bladder.

Bazil, Burdock, Carline-thistle, China, Cyprus long and round, Dropwort, Kneec-holly, Marsh-Mallows, parsley, Smallage, Sperage, Spicknard, white Saxafrage, Valerian, Saffaphras, Agrimonia, Bitony, Brook-lime, Bayes, Broom, Chervil, Costmary, Camomil, Clary, German, Hops, Melilot, Thyme, Nettleseed Organy, Pimpernel, Peni-royal, Rocher, Samphire, Scordium, Toad-flax, Vervain, Gromwell, Rest-

Resharrow, Licoris, Pellitory of the Wall, Elder, Turpentine.

10. Heating of the VVomb.

Peony, Valerian, Angelica, Pimpernel, Briony, Aristolochia rotunda, Mugwort, Rue, Mercury, Featherfew, Savin, Bitony, Elder, Spicknard, red Vetches, Rosemary, Indian Nut, Juniper berries, Oringes, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cassia Lignea, Saffron, Cardanums, Ash Pepper, Castoreum.

11. Heating the Joynts.

Branca Ursina, Costus, Ginger, Hermodactils, Jallop, Mechoacan, Agrimony, Artimart, Camomil, Costmary, Garden cresses, Cowslips, Melilor, Rosemary, Rue, Sciatica cresses, Water cresses, Sage Bayes.

Of Cold Medicaments Appropiase.

1. Cooling the Head.

Lettice, Purslain, Mandrake, Plantine, Night-shade, Henbane, Water lillies, Roses, Poppy, Violets, Gourd, Cucumbe:r, Melons, Opium, Houfleck.

2. Cooling the Throat.

Bramble, Orpine, Privet, Strawberries, Poppies, Oringes, Lemons.

3. Cooling the Breast and Lungs.

Endive, Lambs-tongue, Plantine, Polypody, Purslain, Water-lillies, Colewort, Violets, Mallows, Buglofs, Cichory, Poppy, Quinces, Barley, Molberries, Pruens, Sanders, Fennegreek, Gumtragant, Amblick.

4. Cooling the Heart.

Dandelion, Sorrel, wood Sorrel, Water-lillies, Violets, Cucumbers, Gourds, Barberries, red Corans, Citrons, Pomegranates, Sanders, Camphire.

5. Cooling the Stomach.

Cichory, Sorrel, Asparagus, Water-lillies, Endive, purslain, Myrtle, Roses, Violets, Cucumbers, Barley, Quinces, Citrons, Oringes, Pomegranates.

6. Cooling the Liver.

Asparagus, Gramen, Water-lillies, Sorrel, Strawberries, Cichory, Sow-thistle, Endive, purslain, Lettice, Roses, Buglofs, Borrage, poppey, Barley, Lemons.

7. Cooling the Spleen.

Willow, Hemlock, Fumitory, Oyl of Vitriol.

8. Cooling the Reins and Bladder.

Grass, Straw-berries, Water-Lillies, Purslain, Willow, Lettice, Cassia, Fistula, Violets, Roses, Poppy, Citrons, Lemmons, Barly.

9. Cooling the Womb.

Bilfort, Comfrey, Bursa pastoris, Plantine, Sinking Arach, Balau-
stins, Water-Lillies, Willow, Henbane, Poppy, Pomgranats, Medlars,
Mirtles, Red Coral

10. Cooling the Bowels.

Cassia Fistula, Sow-thistle, Bucks-horn, Orpine, Plantine, Fumitory,
Mallows, Althæa.

11. Cooling the Joynts.

Henbane, Housleek, Lettice, Night-shade, Willow, Poppy, Opium.

The Properties of Purging Medicaments.

1. *Purging Choller.* 1. Mild; As Cassia Fistularis, Tamarins, Man-
na, Calabrina, Aloe Soccatrina, Rheubarb, Damask-Roses, Violets;
2. Strong; As Asarum, Scamonie, Pilulæ Rudii.
2. *Purging Phlegm.* 1. Mild; As Myrobalans, Chebulan and Em-
bican, Carthamus-seeds, Mechoacan, 2. Strong; As Agarick, Jallop,
Turpethum, Coliquintida, Hermodactyls, Euforbium, Sagapenum,
Briony, Spurge, Sow-bread, Elaterium, Squills.
3. *Purging Watry Humors.* 1. Mild; As Soldanella, German Or-
rice, 2. Strong; As Elaterium, Cambogia, Hedge-Hysope,
Efula.
4. *Purging by Vomit.* 1. Mild; warm Water, Fat Broath, Oyl with
Water, Butter, Roots of Garden-Cucumber, Orach, Mellon, Asarum,
2. Strong; As white Hellebor, Tobacco, Sulphur of Antimony, Mercu-
rius Vitæ, Crocus Metallorum, Turpethum, Minerale, Gutta gamba.
5. *Purging by Urine.* 1. Mild; as Roots of Parsley, Smallage, E-
ringo, Ruscus, Asparagus, Pimpernil, Leaves of Pellitory, Alarum,
Chervil, Scordium, Saxafrage, Seeds of Gromwell, Winter-cherries,
2. Strong; as Sal-tartari, Succini, Absynthij, Oleum taru, Saccarum
Juniper, Vitrioli, Sulphuris, Cera, Wood and Bark of Guajacum,
Sassaphras Absynthij.
6. *Purging by the Throat.* Mercurius dulcis, Sublimatus & Præcipi-
tatus,

tatus, Turpethum Minerale, Unguentaue Mercuriata.

7. *Purging by Sweat.* 1. Mild; As Angelica, Pimpernil, Tormentil, Gentian, Carduus, Scabius, Zedoary. 2. Strong; as Lignum Guajacum Sassafras, Bezoar-stone, Aurum Diaphoreticum, Antimonium Diaphoreticum, Bezoar-joviale & Minerale, Sal-tartari, Sulphur Auratum.

8. *Purging by the Nose.* Roots of Orrice, Bind-weed. Leaves of Beet, Marjorum, Sage, Betony, Ivy, Ginger, Roots of Pellitory of Spain, white Hellebor, Leaves of Sneez-wort, Tobacco, Pepper, Mustard, Euphorbium.

The Properties of Altering Medicaments.

Softening Things, Roots of Lillies, Althæa, Wild Cucumber, Briony, Leaves of Mallows, Pellitory, Violets, Elder, Dwarf-Elder, Flowers of Chamomil, Seeds of Fenugreek, Lime, Fat, Figs, Fresh Butter, Hogs-grease, Bears-grease, Old Oyl.

Loosening things. Lillies, Lynseed, Fænugreek, Fat, Butter, Althæa see more in my first part.

Abolishing Things. Herb Mercury, Chamomil, Melilot, Elder, Fænugreek and Lynseed, Old Oyl, Butter, Orris, Tyme, Penny-royal, Hysope, Mug-wort, Seed of Annis, Fennel.

Opening Roots, Smallage, Fennel, Asparagus, Parsley, Holm, Cichory, Eringo, Gentian, Fern, Madder, Tamarisk, Ash-leaves, Fumitory, Wormwood, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, Liver-wort, Chamepitys, Dodder, Hore-hound, Calamint, Penny-royal, Scurvey-grass, Brook lyme, Water cresses, Hops, Seeds of Annis, Ameos, Lupins, Almonds, Cinamon, Vineger, Endive, Garlick, Onions, Pellitory, Turmeric, &c.

Binding things; Roots of Turmentil, Plantine, Comfrey, white Lillies, Peony, Bistort, Rhubarb roasted, leaves of Amomum, Agnus Castus, Cypress, Cinquefoil, Bawm, Flea-wort, Horse-tail, Ivy, Knot-grass, Solomons Seal, Bay, Myrtles, Oak, Purslain, Shepherds Purse, Medlars, Rice, Lentiles, Galls, Mirtle-berries, Barberries, Acorns, Mastick, Dragons blood, Allum, Coral, bole-Armoniack, Iron, Sumach, Pomegranate Rind. See more of this Nature before-spoken of.

Drawing things; Birth-wort Roots, Roots of Anemomy, Bind-weed, Taragon, Gentian, Pellitory, Crowfoot, Daffadil, Aren, Garlick, Onyons,

Onyons, leaves of Scitica cresses, Calamint, Ditany, pimpernel, Ivy, Seeds of Nettles, Euphorbium, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Sagaponum, Pitch, Rozin, Cantharides, Pigeons and Hens dung, Sope. See more in this part before spoken of.

Striking back things. Roots of Plantine, leaves of Housleek, purslain, Duckweed, Endive, Lettice, Night-shade, Sumach, Hen-bane, red Roses.

Dissolving things. Roots of Asphodil, Birth-wort, Briony, leaves of Arach, Beets, Camomil, Chickweed, Dill, Maiden-hair, Althæa, Mints, pellitory, Bawm, Cleavers, Mallows, Scordium.

Cleansing things. Roots of Aron, Alphodil, Birthwort, Celandine, Orrice, Gentian, Solomons Seal, Tamarisk, leaves of Smallage, Wormwood, Hyfop, Water-cresses, Horshound, Agrimony, Tansey, pimpernel, pellitory, Arach, Beets, Aloes, Sugar, Honey, Fennegreek-seeds, Turpentine, Verdegrease, Vitriol, Whey.

Pain-removing things. Roots of Eringo, Orris, Restharrow, Water-flag, Marsh-Mallows, Lillies, leaves of Arach, Beets, Camomil, Chick-weed, Dill, Maiden-hair, Fennel, Marjorem, Time, parsley, Rosemary, Rue, Saffron, Fennegreek-seed, Hogs and Hens-grease.

Things good to clear the Wind. Costus, Galingal, Garlick, Fennel, parsley, Smallage, Spicknard, Zedoary, Camomil, Dill, Juniper, Marjorem, Organy, Savory, Wormwood, Schenanth, Bay, Nutmeg, pepper, Ginger, Annis, Caraway, Cummin.

Humour-dissolving things. Roots of Turmentil, Zedoary, Virginian Snakeweed, Ginger, leaves of Cardus benedictus, Scordium, Butter-bur, Rosemary, Sage, Rue, Flowers of Saffron, Bezoar stone, Cochenle, Treacle.

Things good to drive away Poison. Angelica, Birthwort, Bistort, Buglofs, Costus, Cyprus, Carline, Dorconicum, Enula, Garlick, Gentian, Smallage, Turmentil, Vipers Buglofs, Zedoary, Bitony, Cardus, Calaminth, Agrimony, Avena, Juniper, Organy, penni-royal, Rue, Scordium, Wormwood, Centaury, Bay-berries, pepper, Citrons, Aniseeds, Animi, Cardamums, Caraway, Fennel, Bezoar, Saffron, Cochenle, Dragons, plantine. See more in this part.

Asronishing things. Mandrake-roots, leaves of Mandrake, Henstock, Henbane, poppey, Opium, Spirit of Darnel, and Darnel-meal.

The best Receipt for the Cure of the Glanders that is, which if the Lungs be not too much wasted, you need not fear the Cure; For if any thing in the World will Cure this disease, this Receipt will.

Take a small Fagot made of the green boughs of the Ash tree, and set it on Fire in some Chimney-corner, clean swept for your use. then having a Gallon of the best Ale you can get in a readinels, quench so many of the coals that is made thereof therein as will make it pretty thick, then strain it through a Linnen cloth into some convenient Vessel fit for your use; then double it over again to make it the stronger, by quenching fresh coals therein; then strain the liquor from the coals as you did before, and when it is cold put it into a Bottle close stopped for your use; for if you do not put it in cold, it will quickly soure, which will spoil it. If you make it strong enough, you shall find that the coales will drink up a quart or more of your Ale; when you use it, shake the Bottle to make it all alike, then pour out of it so much as you think fit for your use, and warm it luke-warm, and put a small drenching Horn full of it into each Nostril of your Horse, if he runs at both, if not but one will serve; do this Morning and Evening during his Cure, and ride him gently after it for about an hour, then let him feed a while upon Hay, and after that you may give him some drink; Three or four quarts of this Liquor will perfect the Cure at the farthest; if you find, that the Kernels under the Chaul do waste, which this Liquor will take away in four or five days at the furthest, you need not much question the Cure; you are to keep him in the House, during his Cure. After you have given him this drink for about a week together you may rest him, by forbearing to give him any more for a day or two, then give it him again, and so use it till you have Cured him.

'Tis convenient if the Horse be very strong and lusty, before you give him this Drink, to cleanse his Body with this Scouring, which is both safe and sure.

Take an ounce of the best Aloes you can get for money, & beat it very fine, then mix it very well with fresh Butter, and after you have so done divide it into three parts, and cover every part all over with Butter, as big as a good Wash-Ball; then give them the Horse in a Morning fasting upon the point of a stick, and stir him a little after it, then bring him into the Stable, and keep him warm, and let him fast two or three houres, then give him some Hay, and after that a Mash of Malt.

A Particular Receipt for Splaiting of the Shoulder, which is a Torn Shoulder.

Put a Pair of strait Pastornes on his Feet, keeping him in the Stable without disquieting of him; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Sallet Oyl one Pint, of Oyl de Bay half a pound, of fresh Butter half a pound; Melt all these together in an Earthen Pot, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and also round about the inside of the Shoulder, and within two or three days after, both that place and all the Shoulder will swell, and either prick it with a Launcet or Fleam in all the swelling places, or else with a sharp hot iron, and then anoint it still with the Ointment before said; but if you see that it will not go away, but swell still, and gather to a head, then Launce it where the Swelling doth gather most, and is softest under your Finger, and then Taint it with your Green Ointment, which you may find in the First Part.

Things good in general to Cure a Shoulder Pight, which is a Shoulder out of Joynt.

To make him swim in a deep water up and down a dozen turnes, for that will make the Joynt to go into its right Place again; then make two Pins of Ashen Wood the bigness of your Finger, being sharp at the Points and five inches long, then slit the skin an inch above the Point, and an inch beneath the Point of the Shoulder, and thrust in one of these Pins from above downwards, so as both the ends may equally stick with the skin; and if the Pin of Wood will not easily pass through, you may make it way first with an iron Pin, then make other two holes cross to the first holes, so as the other pin may cross the first pin right in the midst with a right Cross; and the first pin should be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent, that the other being round may press the better without stop, and close the juxter together; then take a piece of a little Line, somewhat bigger then a Whip-cord, and at one end make a Loop, which being put over one of the Pins end, so that it may lie betwixt the pins ends and the skin, and fasten the last end with your pack-thread unto the rest of the Cord, so as it may not slip; And to do well, both the Pins and the Cord should be first anointed with a little Hogs-grease, then bring him into the Stable, and let him rest the space of nine or ten days, and let him lie down as little as may be, and put a Pastorn shoo on the fore leg, and at nine or ten days end anoint the place with a little Dialthea or Hogs-grease, and so turn him

out to Grafs, and let him run there till the pins are rotted off; If you work him in a Cart, after a Moneths time it will settle his shoulder the better, and make him the more fit to ride.

The Cure for the Canker in the Mouth.

Take Allum half a pound, Honey a quarter of a pint, Columbine leaves and Sage-leaves, of each a handful, boyl them together in three pints of running water, until a pint be consumed, and wash the sore places therewith, (with a Rag tied upon a stick) till they bleed, Morning and Night till it be cured.

The Curing of the Gigges, Bladders or Flappers.

Pull out his tongue, and slit them with an incision-knife, and thruff out the kernels or corruption, and wash the place with Vineger and Salt, or Allom water, and they will do well again. But to prevent their coming at all is to wash it often with Wine, Beer and Ale, and so shall no Blister breed thereon, nor any other disease.

F I N I S.



M I C

TABLE Alphabetically set down, shewing, where the Diseases of a Horse do grow, either inwardly or outwardly, in any part of his Body, and how you may know them, and what were the Causes that bred them.

THE SECOND PART.

A.

Accloyed or Cloyed, is no other then Prickt with a Nail in the Shoeing, vide Prickt page 139

Criftes, vide Rat-tailes 122

Anthones Fire is a vehement burning disease in the Flesh, and is of the Nature of Noli me tangere, or Wild-Fire, and is named of some, The Singles of an Horse, which is very hard and difficult to Cure 2

Aticor or Heart-sicknes, is caused many times by too much feeding, without exercise, and sometimes by hard and immoderate riding, and careless looking after him afterwards, which makes the Blood of this useful Creature (a Horse) so corrupted and inflamed, that unless it find some way to vent it self forth, it soon puts a Period and end to his life. This Disease hath its Seat and Residence near the Heart, and is known by a swelling in the middle of his Breast against the Heart, from whence it derives its name 3

aint upper, is a Swelling of the Master Back-Sinew of the Fore-legs, near the Pastern-Joynts, and cometh ordinarily by an Over-reach ib.

Attaint Nether is the same with the other, coming sometimes by a Wrench, and sometimes by a strain; all the difference of them is, whereas the other is upon the Foot-lock Joynts, this is under it, and is usually upon the Heel or Frush, and is not always visible to the Eye; but it may be felt by the heat and burning of it, and by its softness, which will arise by a Swelling like a bladder or blister, wherein will be corrupt and vitious matter like to Jelly, which will make him complain very much. ib.

Anbury is a kind of Wen or spongy Wart, growing upon any part of a horses body. 41 and 140

Apoplexie, vide Pallie 104

Avives, Vives or Fives, are certain flat Kernels, muchlike unto bunches of Grapes growing in Clusters under the Ear, and creepeth down towards the Throat, which will kill him if not presently Cured 121

Ach or Numbness in the Joynts cometh by Cold, taken by hard and violent exercise or labour I

B.

Bloody Flux, vide Flux bloody 66

Yy

and 67
Barbos

The Table.

Barbes are a common disease, and few horses are without them, they are known by two Paps under his tongue, which seldom prove hurtful to him, till they be inflamed with corrupt blood, proceeding from vicious humours, which will make them raw and grow beyond their usual length, and cause them to become very painful to him, which will hinder his feeding. You must clip them away with the Scissors 60

Blood-spavens is a soft swelling which groweth through the hough, and is commonly full of blood, and is biggest upon the inside, and being fed by the Master-vein, makes it greater then the swelling on the out-side; It runneth down the inside of the hough down the leg to the Pastern: This Disease is occasioned from the corruption of the blood, taken by hard riding when the horse is young and tender, which by overmuch heating, makes it so thin and flexible, that the humour falling downwards resideth in the hough, which makes the Joynts stiff, and causeth him to go with great pain and difficulty. This Disease not growing hard makes it more easie to Cure then the Bone-spavens 25

Bone-spavens is a great Crust as hard as a bone, if it be let run too long, it sticketh, or rather groweth on the inside of the hough, under the Joynt, near to the great Vein, which maketh him to halt very much, it cometh at first like a tender gristle, which by degrees cometh to this hardness; It is bred several ways, either by immoderate riding, or hard labour, which dissolves the blood into thin humours, and falleth down, and maketh its residence in the hough, which causeth the

Place to swell, and so becometh a hard bone, which occasions this name of Bone-spavens, it cometh also hereditary from the Sire or Dam, which are troubled with the same disease 26 and 124

Blood-running Itch cometh by the Inflammation of the blood, being over-heated by hard riding, or other sore labour; it getteth between the skin and the flesh, and maketh a horse to rub, scrub and bite himself, which if let alone too long will come to a grievous Mange, and is very infectious to any horse that shall be nigh him, what Cureth the Mange cureth this disease. 116

Bots and Wormes in general are of three sorts, viz. Pots, Trunchions and Maw-wormes: Bots are usually found in the great Gut near the Fundament, Trunchions are found in the Maw, and if they continue there too long, they will eat their Passage through, which will certainly bring death, if not killed. The third sort are called plain Wormes, which remain in a horses body, which are of an evil effect also. Bots are a small worm with great heads and small tails, breeding in the great Gut adjoining to the Fundament, which may be taken away by your hand, by picking them away from the Gut where they stick. Trunchions are short and thick, and have black and hard heads, and must be removed by Medicine. Maw-wormes are of a reddish colour, somewhat long and slender, much like unto Earth-wormes, about the length of a Mans Finger, which also must be taken away by medicine. They proceed all from one cause, which is raw, gross and phleg-

The Table.

phlegmatick matter engendred from foul Feeding, which causeth all these three sorts of evil Creatures to breed. The Signes to know when he is troubled with them is, He will stamp with his Feet, Kick at his Belly, turn his Head towards his Tail, forsake his Meat; He will groan, tumble and wallow, and also frisk his Tail to and fro 61

Bunches, Knots, Warts and Wens come sometimes by eating of foul meat, by bruises, by hard riding, & sore labor, whereby the Blood becomes so Putrified and foul that it turns into evil humors, which occasions these kind of Sorrances 134

Blood-shot Eyes, or all Diseases of the Eyes come of two Causes, viz. either inward or outward; The inward Causes proceed from evil Humors that resort and flow to the Eyes, or by some stroke or blow that is given him thereon 48

Bleeding at Nose cometh commonly among young horses, proceeding from great store of blood, or by means that the Vein ending in that place, is either opened, broken or fretted; It is opened many times by reason that the blood aboundeth too much, or for that it is too fine or too subtil, and so pierceth through the Veins; Or it may be broken by some violent strain, cut or blow; Or it may be Fretted or gnawn asunder, by sharpness of the blood, or by some other evil humors contained therein 63

Botch in the Groyn cometh by reason that a horse being full of humors, and suddenly labour'd, causeth them to resort to the weakest parts, and there gather together and breed a Botch, and especially in

the hinder parts in the Thighs, not far from the Cods; The Signes be these, His hinder Legs will be all swoln, especially from the Gambrels or Hoo's upwards, and if you feel with your hand, you may find a great Knob or Swelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head 132 and 133

Blisters are certain hollow risings between the skin and the flesh, proceeding either from some Burn, Scald or Chafing, and are very full of thin water 134

C.

A Canker is a very filthy and loathsome Sorrance, which if it continue long uncured, it will fester and putrifie the place so where it is, that it will eat to the very bone, and if it happens to come upon the Tongue, it will eat it asunder, if it lighteth upon the Nose, it will eat the Gristle through, and if it cometh upon any part of the flesh, it fretteth and gnaweth it in great bredth; you may easily know this Sorrance, for where it is the places will be raw, and bleed often, and many times a white Scurf will grow upon that place infected with it. It proceedeth many ways, either by Melancholy and filthy blood ingendred in the body, by unwholesome meat, or by some sharp and salt humors coming by cold, not long before taken, which will make his Breath to stink very much, 60, 61 and 74

Clifts and Cracks in the Heel. cometh several ways, either by over-hard riding or labour, which occasions Surfeits; or

The Table,

by giving him unwholesom Meat, or by washing him when he is hot, which corrupts his Blood, and causes the Pec-
cant humours to fall down and settle
where the Sorances are, which makes
his Heels very raw, and run very offen-
sively, with stinking Water and Matter,
which prove very troublesome to the
poor Creature 141

Cods and Stones Swelled, cometh several
wayes, Either by some Wound, or by
the sting of some Venomous Creature,
or by fighting of one Horse with ano-
ther, or by means of some evil Humors,
which corrupt the Mass of Blood,
which fall down to the Cods, sometimes
after Sicknes, or Surfeiting with Cold,
and then it is a sign of Amendment, and
sometimes from having too much plen-
ty of Seed. 121

Cord is a strait Sinew in the Fore-Legs,
which cometh from the Shackle Vein to the
Gristle in the Nose, between the lip, the
length of a Bean, Or there be two
strings like threads, that lie above the
Knee and the Body, and runneth like a
small Cord through the Body to the
Nostrils, which causes a Horse to stum-
ble, and sometimes to fall, and is a de-
fect which is very common amongst
young Horses. You may know this In-
firmity by his stiff going, and stumbling
without any visible Sorance. 94 & 140

Colick is commonly occasioned by VVind,
which makes it bear this Name of VVind-
colick; It causeth very violent pain,
by Gripping of the Belly of a Horse,
which will make him strike at it, and
sometimes to lie down and tumble, and

stamp with his Feet, and be so painful
as to make him forsake his Meat 111
Colt-Evil, Is a Disease that is subject both
to a Horse or Gelding. It cometh to a
Horse with an unnatural Swelling of
the Yard and Cods, proceeding of
VVind, filling the Arteries and hollow
Sinew or Pipe of the Yard, or else
through the abundance of Seed, And to
a Gelding for lack of Natural heat to
expel their seed any further 83

Cold or Poze in a Horses Head; Is gotten
by means and wayes unknown, according
to the temper and Constitution of a Hor-
ses Body, and the best Keeper that is cannot
warrant his horse from this Infirmary. You
must know that if the Horse be subject to
bad humors, you must endeavour to expel
them, by Purging of his Head. Now
according as the Cold which a Horse
hath taken, is new, or old; great, or
small, according as the Humors do a-
bound in his Head, and as those Hu-
mors be thick or thin, so is the disease
more or less dangerous; If he hath but a
new taken Cold, he will have small Ker-
nels like VVax Kernels, under his
Chaul about the Root of his Tongue,
but if he hath great, then you may ima-
gine his Cold of a longer date. His
Cold may be new also, if you find him
rattle in his head, or avoid thin Matter
out of his Nose or Eyes, or if he hold
down his head in the Manger, or when
he drinketh, his VVater cometh up a-
gain out of his Nostrils, or if he chew-
eth between his Teeth Matterative
stuff, but if he casteth foul stinking
Matter out of his Nose, and Coughs
grie-

The Table.

grievously; *Then it is a sign he may have the Glanders, or Consumption of the Lungs.*

8, 9, 10, 11, 12,
13, 14, 15, 16

Consumptions are of two sorts, One is called A dry Malady, the other A Consumption of the Flesh. The first cometh by violent Heats and Colds, with fretting and gnawing Humors, descending out of the Head, which fall upon the Lungs, which causeth at first thin Matter to run from the Nose; but after some certain time, it groweth thick, tough and vitious, which ceaseth and causeth a Maceration and Leanness of the whole Body, whereby he droopeth and pineth away, and though he doth eat and drink, yet he doth not digest it kindly, so do him good. The Signs to know this Malady is, His Flesh will clean consume away, his Belly is gaunt, and the Skin thereof so hard stretched, or rather shrunk up, that if you strike it with your hand it will sound like a Tabor, neither will his Hair shed in due season, as other Horses do, he will Cough, and that but Huskingly, as if he had swallowed some small Bones; and is a Disease hard to be Cured. The other Consumption is that of the flesh, which also is occasioned by a Cold, which for want of a Cure in time, causeth this Maceration and Leanness throughout the whole Body, and cometh several wayes, Either by violent Heats, or immoderate Labour, or Riding him into the Water before

he be thoroughly Cold, and setting him up negligently afterwards
85 and 87

Cramp or Convulsions are all one Malady, they are forceable Contractions of the Sinews, Veins and Muscles, in any Member or Part of the Body, which proceeds several wayes, either from some Wound or Sinew cut asunder, or for want of Blood, or by over heats, and sudden cooling afterwards; or lastly by over-much Purging him. The Signs to know this Malady is, That the Infected will be so stiff, that the whole strength of a man is not able to bow it, he will be Lame and well as it were in a moment. There is also another kind of them, which seizeth upon a Horses Neck, and Reins of his Back, and so almost universally over his whole Body, which proceedeth several wayes; Either from some great Cold, which may be catched several wayes, or by loss of Blood, whereby a great Windiness entereth into the Veins, and so benumeth the Sinews. This is also known by his Neck and Head standing awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his Mouth dry and clung, and his Back will rise like a Camel; which must be Cured by giving him something to make him Sweat; and by loading him with warm Woollen Cloaths.

7.

Costiveness, is when a Horse is so bound in his

The Table,

his belly, that he cannot dung but with great pain and trouble; it is a Disease very dangerous and perillous to him, and is the Origen of several Maladies, you may know it by several Symptomes, sometimes it proceedeth from Glut of Provender, or over-much feeding, sometimes by eating too dry and hard meats, which sucketh and drieth up the moisture of a horses body, viz. Beans, Pease, Wheat or Tares, &c. Not but that they are very wholesom food, and the heartiest meat a horse can eat; but feeding too much upon them over-heats his body, more then any other Grain whatsoever, which shuts up a Horses Office of Nature, so that it makes him he cannot dung: And besides, they are very windy food, which causeth many bad humours and obstructions in the body; sometimes Costiveness cometh also by much fasting, in the Dieting of them for Races or hunting, wh't' doth suck up (like a Sponge) the phlegmatick moisture of the body 124 and 126

Crown-scab is a filthy, stinking and cancerous disease, breeding round about the Feet, upon the Coronet: or top of the hoof, next the hair, which causeth much pain unto him; It cometh to him, by reason he hath been bred in som cold wet Soyl, striking corrupt humours up to his Feet, and is more troubled with these in the Summer then the Winter. The Signes to know it are these, The hair about the Coronets will be thin and staring like Bristles, and run with inattentive water. 118

Camery or Frounce, are small Warts or

Pimples in the midst of the Palate of a Horses mouth, which are very soft and sore, and are bred also sometimes in his Lips and Tongue; It is occasioned many wayes, sometimes by eating of wet Hay whereon Rats or other Vermin hath piss'd upon, sometimes by drawing frozen dust amongst the Grass into his Mouth, and sometimes by licking up of Venom; The Signes shew themselves, which are the Pimples or wheelks, and soreness of them, with the unfavoriness of his food that he hath eaten before, and his falling from his seat 60

Curb is a long Swelling beneath the elbow of the hough in the great Sinew behind, above the top of the Horn, which maketh him halt and go lame when he hath been heated; It cometh to him several wayes, either hereditary, or by some bruise or strain, or by heavy loading him when he was too young 29

Castling out of his Mouth and Nostrils his drink, proceedeth from a cold Stomach, or by some Cold taken in his Head where the Rheum bindeth upon the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue, which hath as it were strangled and made strait the Passages of the Stomach 128

Canker in the Eyes cometh of a rank and corrupt blood, descending from the Head into them, where it breedeth a little Worm like the Head of a Pismire, which groweth in the corner next his Nose, which will eat in time, if let alone, through the Gristle of his Nose, and so passe into his Head, and kill him. You may know it by the great and small Pimples within and without the Eye-lids, and the Eye 96

The Table.

Eye it self will be full of corrupt matter. *What Cures it in the Month cures this.* 139

Chops, Clefts or Rists, in the *Palate* of a *horses Mouth*, proceedeth either from course and rough Hay full of thistles, and other pricking stuff, or by foul Provender full of sharp seeds, which by frequent pricking the bars of his Mouth, doth cause them to wrangle and breed corrupt blood, which may turn to the Canker. *What Cures the Canker in the mouth, if it comes to that disease, cures this; but to prevent the Canker wash his Mouth with Vineger and Salt, and anoint it with honey* ib.

Canker in the Mouth, is a rawness of the mouth and tongue, which is full of Blisters, and cannot eat his meat; It proceeds from crude and undigested meat, rankness of blood, or unnatural heat coming from the stomach ib.

Criek in the Neck is a kind of Convulsion, which I shall speak but briefly hereof, because I have handled it fully before in all the Kinds thereof. It is when the Horse cannot turn his Neck any manner of wayes, but hold it right forth, insomuch that he cannot take his meat from the ground, but with great trouble and pain 129

Crest-fallen is, when that part which a *horses Main* groweth on, which is the upper Part thereof, and called the Crest, leaneth either to one side or other, not standing upright as it ought to do. It cometh for the most Part from Poverty, occasioned by ill keeping, and especially when a fat Horse falleth away suddenly upon any inward sickness ib.

D.

Dropsey is a Disease which causeth a Universal Swelling of the Body through the great quantity of Water that lieth between the Skin and the Flesh, occasioned by Melancholy Blood, Water and Wind which will make his Belly and Legs to Swell, but his Back, Buttocks and Flanks, will be dried and shrunk up to the very Bones, and if you thrust your Finger hard upon the place swollen, you shall leave the print thereof behind, for the Flesh wanting natural heat, will not return again to its place. Other Signs there be to know this disease, viz. he will be Evil-coloured, heavy, dull, & of no Face, Strength nor Spirit, and therefore proceedeth principally for want of good Nourishment and Digestion, which passeth into Melancholy. It proceedeth also either from the Spleen or the Liver, or both, the Blood being putrified and turned into a thin Water, and sometimes for want of good Exercise, or overmuch rest. He will be also short Breathed, lose his Stomach, and be very dry, and though you bring him to the water he will drink little, but only padler long with his Nose in it. In a word, He will be as if he had a general Consumption over his whole Body, and his Hair will peel off with the least rubbing. 112

Dimness of Sight, or Blindness, is occasioned several ways. Either by some Strain, violent Riding, hard Labour, and overcharging him with a burthen beyond his strength, whereby the Strings of his Eyes are stretched beyond their due compass,

The Table.

compass hereditary. Lastly, by some blow or wound. The Sign is, want of Sight, or the ill effected colour of the Eye.

52

E.

A Boney Excretion is occasioned most an end by Causticks, or Burning Corrosives, which are put to Wounds that lie close to the Bone; as when the Wound is in the Leg or about the Pasterns, for the Flesh being very much burned by them, causeth an Excretion to grow upon the Bone, which by the little experience of the Farrier the Wound is healed, but this Excretion doth remain; and sometimes it cometh by a Shackle, or the Galling of a Lock or Fetters, that has bin long continued upon the Foot. What Cures the Bone-Spaven Cures this

26 and 124

Enterfeering cometh several ways, Either hereditary from the Parents, or by some stiffness in his Pace, or by evil and too broad Shooing, which maketh him to go so narrow behind with his hinder Feet, that he fretteth one Foot against another, so that there groweth hard Mattery Scabs, which are so fore that they make him to go Lame. The Signs are his ill going, and the visible Sign of the Scabs

44.

Eyes Blood-shotten. See Blood-shotten Eyes

48

Eyes Lunatick. See Lunatick Eyes

48

Feltick is no other then a Galled Back Fraying, is stiffness taken in his Legs and Feet

44

Farcin or Fashions is a creeping Ulcer,

and is the most loathsome, stinking and filthy disease that can come to a horse. It proceedeth first of corrupt blood, engendred in the body by over-heats and colds, which beginneth first with hard knots and pustles, which at last by spreading and dilating it self will overrun the whole body of a horse; but it commonly beginneth in a Vein, or near to some master-Vein, which feedeth and nourisheth the disease; It cometh sometimes also by Spur-galling with rusty Spurs, Snaffle, Bit, or the like; As also by the biting of some other horse infected with the said disease; Or if it be in the Leg, it may come by Enterfeering one Leg with another, and by many other ways.

78

Flanks, is a Wrench, Crick, Stroke, or other Grief gotten in his Back, which word we are beholding to the French for. Now there is another sort of Flanks, which is quite different from the other, which is a kind of Pleurisie, which is when he is over-run with too much blood, which engendreth a Mange, or else falleth dangerously sick thereby, who by reason that he hath been often blooded before, his body now requires it, whereof he missing, falleth into a lothsome and dangerous malady.

59

Falling of the Fundament cometh several ways, either by weakness, being poorly Fed, or by some Cold, which occasions a Scouring and Flux of blood.

67

A Fever, according to the Learned Physicians, is an unnatural and immoderate heat, which proceedeth first from the Heart, and so spreadeth it self through

all

The Table.

all the Arteries and Veins of the Body, stopping all the Natural Motions thereof, and there be several sorts of them, viz. Quotidian, Tertian, Quartan, and Pestilential, and are all of one nature, though some be more Malignant then others are, only a Hæticque Feaver is of a nature far different from the former, and so likewise a Pestilential Feaver. Vegetius speaketh of Summer, Autumn, and Winter-Feavers, without making any great difference between them, more then that one is worse then another, by reason of the time and season of the year he hath it in; I shall shew you first, the Causes from whence they proceed, and then give you the Signes how you may know it. It cometh by hard Labour, or Exercise, as of too much Travelling, and especially in hot weather, and sometimes by extream heat of the Sun, and also by extream cold of the Air, and sometimes it is bred of crudit or raw digestion, which happeneth by too greedy eating of such Corn as was not thoroughly dried, nor cleansed. Now the Signes to know a Feaver, are these. The horse doth continually hold down his Head, and is not able to lift it up; his Eyes are so Swelled, that he cannot easily open them for Matterative stuff, and will fall away and consume in his Flesh, his Lips and all his Body is Lush and Feeble, his Stones hung down, he will covet much to lie down, and often to rise again; If his Ague come with a cold Fit, he will shake and quiver, and when the cold Fit is over, he will burn, & his breath will be hot and will fail, and his

Flanks beat, he will reel as he goeth, he will covet much to drink, and ever more keep his Mouth in the Water, although he will drink but little. These are the certain Signs of a Feaver as I know of 78
Fistula is a deep, hollow, crooked Ulcer, and for the most part springs from Malignant Humors ingendred in some wound, Sore, or Canker, not well Cured, sometimes it cometh by a Bruise which hath Festered Inwardly, which either burst forth of it self, or was opened by the Farrier, sometimes it cometh by a co-wrench or pinch of a Collar in drawing, or by being rung with the Tree of a Saddle. The Signes to know it, is the hollownes of it descending downwards from the Orifice, which is much straiter at the Mouth then the bottom, and sendeth forth thin Matter from the same. 75

Foundering in the Feet, cometh ever more by hard riding, or sore Labour, by great heats and colds, which distemper the body, and stirs up Peccant and Malignant humors, that inflames the blood, melts the grease, and causeth it to descend downwards into his Feet, and there settleth, which causeth such a nummes, and pricking in his hoofs, that he hath no sence nor feeling of them, for he is hardly able to stand, which if he do, it is but after a feeble manner, for you may soon push him down with your hand; besides, he will stand shaking and quaking, as if he had a Fit of an Ague. This disease cometh several wayes, sometimes by watering him when he is very Fat, and his Grease molten within him, and then suddenly cooled, by setting him upon cold

The Table.

Planks without Litter, or taking his Saddle off too soon, or else by letting him stand when he is hot in some shallow water up to the Feet-locks; by which means, through the extraordinary coldness of it, causeth the Molten-grease to descend into his Feet, and there to cake and congeal, which is the true reason of this Mallady. *A Horse also may be Foundred, by wearing strait Shoes in the heat of Summer, and Travelling upon hard Ground. To know when a Horse is Foundred upon his fore-Feet, and not on his hinder-Feet. You may know it by this, He will tread only upon his hinder-Feet, and as little as he can on his fore-Feet, and go crouching and crimpling with his Buttocks. Sometimes he will be Foundred on his hinder-Feet, and not on his fore-Feet, (but this is very seldome) which you may know by his seeming very weak behind, and will rest himself as much upon his fore-Feet as he can, being very fearful to set his hinder Feet to the Ground.*

35

Foundering in the Body, cometh by eating too much Provender suddenly when he is too hot, and panting, whereby his Meat not being well digested, breedeth evil humors, which by little and little do spread through all his Members, and at length doth so oppress all his Body, that it taketh away his Strength, and make him in such a weak condition, that he can neither go nor bow his Joynts, and being once laid, is not able to rise again, neither can he stale nor dung, but with great pain. It cometh also if he drink too much upon Traveling

when he is hot, and not riding him after it. The Signs to know it, He will be Chill and quake for cold after drinking, and some of it will come out of his Nose, and some few dayes after his Legs will Swell, and after a while begin to Pill and have a dry Cough, which will make his Eyes to water, his Nose to run with a white Phlegmatick stuff, and cause him to forsake his Meat, and make him hang down his Head for extream pain in the Manger. Foundering is a French Word, and signifieth no more then a Sarfeist given in the Body of a horse.

143

Falle Quarter is a rift, crack or chink on the Outside, but most commonly on the Inside of the hoof, which is an unsound Quarter, seeming like a piece put therein, and not all of one entire piece; It cometh several wayes, sometimes by ill Shooing and Paring, sometimes by Graveling, or a prick with a Nail or Stub, which will make him halt, and waterish Blood will issue out of the Chink or Rift.

88

Flux cometh several wayes, vide Lask or Loofenes.

Bloody Flux or Flix are of several kinds, somtimes the far o the slimy filth that is avoided, is sprinkled with a little Blood, sometimes the Excrements is like waterish Blood, and sometimes like pure Blood, and all these do spring from one and the same cause, which is the Ulceration of the Guts. Now you may know by their several mixtures, whether the Ulceration be in the Inner small Gut, or in the Outward great Gut,

if.

The Table.

if it be in the Inner Guts, then the Matter and Blood will be mixt together, but if it be in the Outward Gut, then they be not mingled together, but come out severally, the Blood most commonly following the Matter. *It cometh commonly of some sharp Humor*, breeding by filthy raw Food, or sore Travel, or Labour, being violently driven through many crooked and narrow Passages, do cleave to his Guts, and with their heat and sharpness fret them, causing Ulcerations and grievous Pains. *It cometh also by some great Cold*, heat or moistness, or by means of receiving some violent Purgation, as Scamony, Stibium, or such like violent Simples applied in too great a quantity, or it may come by weakness of the Liver.

66 and 67

The Fig, this disease bears its name from a hard piece of Flesh growing upon the Frust or Heel, which resembleth the shape and fashion of a Fig. *It cometh by reason of some hurt received in his Foot* (being not thoroughly Cured) or by some Stub or Nail, Bone, Thorn, or Stone, and sometimes by an over-reach upon the Heel or Frust

133

Falling-Evil, is a disease that is seldom seen, which is no other then the Falling-sickness, proceeding from ill Blood, and cold and thick Phlegm gathered together in the fore part of the Head, between the Panicle and the Brain, which being dispersed over the whole Brain, doth suddenly cause the Beast to fall, and bereave him of all sense for a time. *It is more subject to*

Italian, Spanish and French Horses then to English. *Some are of opinion, that at a certain course of the Moon, Horses and other Beasts many times doth fall & dy for a time, as well as Men. This Disease is known by these Signs*, When they are fallen, their Bodies will quiver and quake, and their Mouths will foam, and when you think they are dying, they will rise up immediately and fall to their Meat. You may know whether they will fall often or not, by putting your Fingers to the Gristle of their Nostrils, and if it feel cold, he will have most, but if it be warm, he will seldome fall

6

Frenzy, vide Madness.

G

Giggs, Bladders, or Flappes in the Mouth of a Horse, are small Swellings, or Pastules, with black heads on the inside of his Lips, under his great Jaw-teeth, which will sometimes be as great as a Wall-nut, and so painful withal, that they will make him let fall his Meat out of his Mouth, or at least keep it in his Mouth unchawed. They do proceed from foul Feeding, either of Grass or Provender, you may feel them with your Finger.

159

Grease Molten, is when his Fat is melted by over hard riding or labour.

113

Glanders is such a loathsome and filthy disease, and withal so infectious, that it will infect those that stand nigh him. *It cometh first of Heats and Colds*, which beginneth with

Z 22

a

The Table.

a thin Rhume, and ascendeth up to the head, and settleth near to the brain, and so venteth it self at the Nose, which in time groweth thicker and thicker, till it comes of a Yellowish Colour, like unto Butter, which is then very hard to cure, but if it comes to a viscidious and of a tough and slimy substance, and the Colour be Green, and stink much, having run some Months with some redish specks in it; then the most Experienced Farrier may be failed in the cure thereof; and the horse dye under his hands; for then is it most certain, if he hath those last Symptoms, that his Lungs are Ulcerated, and his cure not to be performed without great difficulty. Besides, these Inward Signs to know this disease, I shall give you one Outward, one which is, He will have some Kernels and Knots that may be felt under his Chaul, and as they grow bigger and more inflamed, so doth the Glaunders more increase within the body of the horse. I would advise you before you begin his Cure, to prepare his Body for four or five days together with scalding Bran; and give it him in stead of his Provender, for this will dry up the moisture and bad humors in his body, then let him blood in the Neck, and the next day Rake him, and give him the Glister in the First Part p. 110.

Graveling cometh to a horse in travelling, by means of little Gravel stones getting betwixt the Hoof and the Shoe, which settleth at the quick, and there festereth and festereth

H.

Hoof-brittle or Brittle-hoof cometh either by Nature or Accident. It cometh naturally by the Sire or Dam; Accidentally, by a Surfeit that fell down into his Feet, or else in that he had been formerly Foundred

Hair falling or shedding from his Main or Tail cometh by Heat taken, which hath engendred a dry Mange therein, which occasioneth their shedding; sometimes it comes by a Surfeit, causing evil humours to resort to those Parts, &c. 97

Head-ach is a Pain that cometh either of some inward cause, as of some cholerick humour, bred in the Panicles of the Brain; or of some outward cause, as of extreme heat or cold, or of some sudden blow or noisome savour. The Signs to know it are, The Horse will hang down his Head and Eares, his Sight will be dim, his Eyes swollen and waterish, and he will forsake his meat. See the first Part p. 149 and 150.

Hoof-caster or Casting of the Hoof, is when the Colfin falleth clean away from the Foot, which cometh by means of some Foundering, Prick or Stab, which breaketh out on the top round about the Coronet, which in time causeth it to fall off.

Hoof-bound is a shrinking in of the hoof, on the top thereof, and at the heel, which maketh the skin to stare above the hoof, and to grow over the same; It cometh to a horse several ways, either by keeping them too dry in the Stable, by strait

Shooing

The Table,

Shoobing, or by some unnatural heat after Foundering. *The Signs to know it are,* He will halt much, and his hoofs will be hot, and if you knock them with a Hammer, they will sound hollow, like an empty Bottle, and if they are not both Hoof-bound, you may know which is the grieved Foot, by the smallness of it. Some call this Sorrance a dry Foundering. ib.

Hide-bound, is when the Skin sticketh so fast to the Horses Back and Ribs, that you cannot pull it from his Flesh with your hand. It cometh to a horse several ways, sometimes by Poverty, sometimes by want of good Ordering, sometimes by over-heating him by hard Riding, and carelessly letting him stand in the wet and Rain, and sometimes of corrupt and filthy Blood Siccicating the Flesh, which wanting its natural course, causeth this shrinking of the Skin together, which maketh him illy disposed, & to have a gaunt, shrivelled, and shrunk up Belly to his Flanks, making his Hair to stare, and his Legs to swell; with many more Signs, but let these serve instead of more. 22

Hip-shot, is when the Hip-bone is removed out of his right place. It cometh to him many ways, sometimes by a wrench or stroke of a Horse, sometimes by slip, strain, sliding or falling. *The Signs to know it are,* He will halt and go sideling in his going, and the Sore Hip will fall lower than the other, and the Flesh in process of time, will consume away, and if you suffer him to run too long, it will never be restored to its pristine Estate. 142

Hoof-Swelled, cometh sometimes to young Horses, when you over-Ride, or hard labouring them in their youth, which makes them to swell in that place, by reason the blood falling down there, setteth, which if it be not speedily removed, will beget a Wet-Spaven. 93

Haw in the Eye, is a Gristle growing between the nether Eye-lid and the Eye, and will put it quite out, if it be not taken in time away. It cometh to him by gross, tough, and phlegmatick Humors, which falleth from the Head, and kniteth together, which in the end groweth to this Infirmary. *The Signs of it are,* the watering of the Eye, and unwilling opening of the nether lid. 48

Hoof-Boney, is a round Boney Swelling like a Paris Ball, growing upon the very top or elbow of the Hoof, and cometh ever of some stripe or bruise, or by bruising himself in his Stall, by offering to strike at the horse that standeth next him, striketh against the Bar that divides them, 153

Hoof-Loosened, is dissolution or dividing of the horn or Coffin of the Hoof from the flesh, at the setting on of the Cronet. Now if the parting be round about the Cronet, it cometh by means of Foundering; If it be in part, then it cometh by some prick of some Channel-Nail, Quitter-bone, Retreat, Graveling, or Cloying, or such like thing. *The Signs to know it are these,* When Loosened by Foundering, it will break first in the fore part of the Cronet, right against the Tocs, because the Humor doth alwayes cover to

The Table.

to descend towards the Toe; *but if it proceeds from Pricking, Graveling, and such like Cankered thing, then the Hoof will Loosen round about, equally even at the first; but if it proceeds from a Quitter-bone, or hurt upon the Cronet, then the Hoof will break right above the place that is grieved, and very rarely seen to go any further* 83

Hungry-evil is a greedy desire to eat, it cometh from some great emptiness or lack of meat, when the horse being even at the Pinch, and almost Chap-fallen; It comes many times by cold outwardly taken, sometimes by travelling in Frost and Snow, and in barren places, which outward cold maketh the stomach cold, whereby all the inward Powers are become weakened. The Signs to know it are a change and alteration in his feeding, having lost all temperance, and snatching and chopping at his meat, as if he would devour the Manger. 128

1.

Impostumes are Swellings which come several ways, either by gathering of filthy and corrupt humors in any part or member of the body, making that part to swell, which grows at last to an inflammation, and breaks out into foul, mattery and running Sores, which proceed from corrupt food or bad blood, and at the first very hard and sore; There are two sorts of them, hot and cold; you must first ripen them before they can be healed; sometimes they are occasioned by some blow upon the eares, or bruise by a Hempen Halter, or of Cold taken in the Head, which remaining in the Body,

make their Passage through the Eares; It is known by much burning and glowing, and his unwillingness to be handled about that place. 99

K.

Kibed heels, is a scab breeding behind, somewhat above the nether Joynt, growing over-thwart the Fet-lock. It cometh many ways, sometimes by being bred in cold Grounds, sometimes for lack of good dressing after he hath been ridden or laboured in foul ways, which dirt sticking to his Leg, fretteth his skin, and maketh scabby rifts, which are very painful to the horse, causing his legs to swell, especially in Winter and Spring time, and then he goeth very stiffy. What Cures the Scratches Cures this disease 31

Kernels under the Chaul of a horse, cometh by heats and colds, which bringeth the Glanders. I refer you therefore to the Cure of the Glanders.

L.

Lask, Looseness or open Flux of a horses body, bringeth him to extreame weakness and faintness; It cometh sometimes from cold taken, sometimes by reason that Nature is offended with too many cholerick humors, descending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts; sometimes by drinking too much cold water presently after he hath had his Provender; for by that means the Water getting to the Provender, which causeth it to Swell, and breed Crudities and ill Humors in the Stomach, and so conveyeth themselves down into the Guts; sometimes by sudden Travelling, or hasty

The Table.

hasty running upon a full Stomach, before his Meat be well digested, sometimes by drinking cold Water when he is too hot, and not presently warmed in his Belly, sometimes by licking up a Feather, or Hens dung, with many other wayes which will occasion it; stop it not too suddenly, for nature it self is the best Physitian; but if you find he hath had it so long, that nature is become weak & feeble, then you are to seek out for some remedy for the Cure of it. *Swampals* is a Swelling that proceedeth from abundance of Blood, resorting to the first Furrow of the Mouth, joyning to the fore-Teeth, which will cause the said Furrow to Swell as high as his Gathers, which will hinder his Feeding, and make him let fall his Meat half chewed, out of his Mouth again. This is a natural Infirmitie which every Horse hath first or last. And every common Smith can Cure. *60* *prolie* is a Cankerred Manginess spreading over all the body, which is very Infectious, cometh of abundance of Melancholly, corrupt and filthy Blood, infected by Surfeits taken by over hard Riding, or Labour. The Signs to know this disease are, The horse will be all Mangy & Scurfey, full of Scabs and Raw places about his neck, and not very pleasant to look on, and be always rubbing and scrubbing. *116* *It cometh of Poverty, and will breed most about the Eares, Neck and Tail, and over all the body; they may be caught also by running abroad in the Winter in Woods, or places full of Trees, for the dropping of the Trees falling upon his Lean and thin body breed them, sometimes he may catch them from another horse; You may know*

when he hath them by this, He will scrub and rub himself against Walls and Posts, and will be always poor while he hath them 115
Low-Worm is a disease hardly known from St. Anthonies Fire, or the Shingles, having the very self same Symptoms. 'Tis a Worm that is bred in the Back of a Horse, between the Skin and the Bone, and runeth along the Neck to the Brain, and when it cometh to touch the Pinnacle thereof, it maketh him stark Mad; 'Tis known by these Signs, viz. After a long and wearisom Journey, he will be Sick, and fall from his Meat, and stretch out himself at length with his Feet, bending his Back and straining to Piss, but cannot, but if he doth Stale, it is but little, and that in his Sheath, which in time will make him so Mad, that he will gnaw the Manger, Rack-staves, or any thing within his reach. Some Farriers taking this disease for the Staggers, and so kill many a good Horse. The Cure hereof being not put down in the diseases I have here inserted it. Take six Heads of Garlick clean Pilled, or Acrement a quarter of a pound, Rue, and that Turmentile that beareth the Yellow Flower, of each one pound, bruise them in a Morter together, and put so much white-Wine to them, that after they be strained, there may be of the Juice and Wine two quarts; Then after you have Blooded him in the Tail pretty well, divide this Pottle of Liquor into six parts, giving him one part every Morning, till he hath taken all of them; And this will perfectly Cure him. *vide* St. Anthonies Fire Page 2.

The Table.

Lung, the diseases of them cometh from Heats and Colds by hard Riding, which let run too long without Cure, causeth them to putrefie, corrupt and rot. You may know this Infirmitie, by the beating of his Flanks, and working of his Ribs, but most chiefly when he Cougheth, and then the more slowly they do beat and heave, the more old and dangerous is the disease. He will draw his Wind short and but little at once, and grown o'ten, especially when he lieth down and riseth up again, out of his Nose will issue forth Corruption, and will seem to shew something between his Teeth. 85

Lethargy, or Sleeping-Evil, is most subject to Dun and White Horses. It proceedeth from Phlegm, cold and moist Humors which getteth into the Brain, do's so stupifie and benumb it, which bringeth this sleepiness upon him, and is the true Sign of this disease. 104

Lunatick-Eyes lock sometimes as if they were covered with White, and sometimes they will lock clear, and alter their colour according to the Moons, from which they take their name, vide Moon-Eyes 48

M.

Mattering of the Yard, vide Yard Mattered. 83

Melancholly, is called the Staggers, but the true Name thereof is the Stavers, vide the Staggers 4

Morfoundred cometh from the French, which signifieth molten grease, or Foundering in the Body 143

Moon-Eyes bear that name, by reason that at certain times of the Moon they will seem very well, and at other times they seem covered over with a white Phlegm, which is the worst sort of Blindness that is, and is not to be Cured, for the more you tamper with it, the worse it is; therefore my advice is that you let them alone, for they will go in and out till they go quite out. It may be called a Lunatick-Eye, which cometh several wayes, sometimes from the Sire on Dam, sometimes from evil Humors residing in the Head, which descend down to the Eyes, and they come also by hard riding, or labouring, which the poor Beast was put to perform more then he was able 48

Mallender is a kind of dry and hard Scab, which hath chinks and chops in it, and hard, stubborn, and long staring hairs, like to Hogs Bristles, growing about it, upon the Inward Part of the Fore-legs, just against the bending of the Knee. It is an Evil Sorrance which Cankereth and Corrupteth the Flesh, and makes him go Lame at first going out; It cometh to him several wayes, sometimes by corrupt Blood, by hard Labour, or Riding, sometimes for lack of clean keeping and rubbing; and usually those horses that hath most hair upon their Legs, as the Flanders and Fresk-land horses hath, are most subject to this disease 38

Mange is a most infectious and filthy disease, which will make him rub and scrub against every thing he can lean against, and if you remove not his fellow Creatures that are in company with him, at home

The Table,

home or abroad, they are subject to catch it from him. The Signs to know it are, His Hair will stare, and in many places pill away from his Skin, and a Scurf will arise thereon; it cometh sometimes also by over heats and colds, by hard riding or labour, whereby the Blood is Corrupted, or by feeding upon unwholesome Meat. 116

Mourning of the Chine in plain English, is no other then the Glaunders, which hath its first Source and Origin from heats and colds by hard riding or labour, which being let run too long, cometh to this filthy disease, the Glaunders; which in time doth wast the Liver, and putrifie the Lungs, which will in conclusion kill the poor Creature, if not taken in time. 18

Those that have opened a Horse that hath dyed of this disease, have found the Pith and Chine sound and good, and therefore this Mallady in reason cannot be called the Mourning of the Chine, but the Glaunders.

Madness or Frenzy is divided into four Passions. The first is, when some bad Humors or Blood getteth into the Pannicle of the Brain, but in one part only, it quickly makes him dull of Spirit and Sight; which you will know by this Sign, He will turn round like one that is Giddy; the reason is, because the outward part of the Head is Grieved only. The second is, When the Venom of such bad Blood doth infect the middle of the Brain, then he becometh Frantick, leaping against Walls or any thing else that standeth in his way. The third is,

When corrupt and bad blood filleth the Veins of the stomach, and in effect as much the Heart as Brain, then he is said to be mad. The fourth and last is, When the Blood infecteth not only the Brain and Heart, but even the Pannicles also, and then he is said to be stark mad, which you may know by biting at every man that comes near him, and by gnawing the manger and walls about him, and at last he will be so very mad that he will tear his own skin in piece. 104

Malt-long or Malt-worm is a Cankerous Sorrance about the hoof just upon the Crown, which will break out into Knobs and Branches, which will run with waterish sharp Lye, or Humor, which will Venom the whole Feet. Which are Signs enough to know them. 93

Molten-Grease, see Grease Molten.

N.

Navel-gall is a bruise on the back, or Pinch of a Saddle behind, which if let alone too long, is difficult to Cure. 'Tis called a Navel gall, because the Hurt is right against the Navel. 103

Night-Mare is a Melancholy blood that doth oppress the heart, making him sweat more in the night then in the day, which doth take from him his rest; the way to know it is, by taking notice of him in the Morning, whether he Sweats in the Flanks, Neck and short Ribs, which if he do, you may be sure he hath it. 6

O.

Over-reach is a painful Swelling of the
A A A Master

The Table.

mafter-Sinew, which is by reason that he doth over-reach and strike that Sinew with the Toe of his hinder-foot, which maketh him to halt and go lame. vide Attaint upper and nether.

P.

Piffing of blood cometh several ways, sometimes by riding him too hard, by labouring him beyond his strength, or by carrying too heavy a burden upon his back; sometimes it cometh by reason of some Vein broken in his body, and then clean blood will issue forth many times; sometimes it cometh by some Stone fretting upon the Kidneys, by hard Riding or Labour; And lastly, it cometh by Journeying him in Winter, being newly taken up from Grass, and travelling him before he is thoroughly cleansed from his Grass, which cannot be well under a week or two. Your Eyes are the Witnesses of this disease, for he will Piss water like to blood.

71

Powle evil is a Fistula growing betwixt the Eares and the Powle, or Nape of the Neck, which proceedeth from evil humors that approach unto that place, or else of some blow or bruise, for that is the weakest and tenderest part of all the head, and therefore soonest offended, which rude Carters do little consider of, whilst in their fury they beat them upon their Head with their Whip-stocks; And therefore no Horses more subject to this disease then they; This disease cometh most in the Winter. The Signs to know it is by the swelling of the place, which in process of time will break of it self, rotting more inward then outward, therefore is more dangerous, if not Cured in time.

72

Pursiveness or shortness of Breath cometh two ways, Natural and Accidental; Natural is when he is Cock-thropled, for that his Throppel or Wind-pipe being so long, that he is not able to draw it in and out, with so much ease and pleasure as other Horses do that are loose thropled, for that the Wind-Pipe being too strait that should convey his Breath to his Lungs, and vent it forth again at his Nose, makes him Pant and fetch his Breath thus short; Likewise, when his Pipe is too much filled with fat or other phlegmatick stuff, which suffocates him, and makes his Lungs labour the more; It cometh secondly by Accident, when he is hard ridden after a full stomach, or presently after drinking, which causeth phlegmatick humours to distil out of the Head into the Wind Pipe, and so fall upon the Lungs, where they rest and congeal, &c. It cometh also by Heats, Colds, Glaunders, and the like; and brings with it a great many inconveniences, Viz. Dulness and heaviness in Travel, subject to sweat much, and ready to fall down upon every little strain.

12 and 17

Prick is called Accloyed, Cloyed, Retrait, &c. most of which names are borrowed of the French, and signifies no more then a Prick, by the negligence or unskilfulness of the Farrier, in driving of the Nails, by their weakness, ill pointing or breaking of them, which if not presently taken out, will in time break out into a foul sore; You may know it by his going lame; but if you desire to know it more certainly, pinch him round his Hoof

with

The Table.

with a Pair of Pinchers, and when you come to the grieved place, he will shrink in his foot; Or you may try him where he is prickt by throwing water upon his Hoof, for that place where he is prickt will be sooner dry then any of the rest. *With many other Signes there are which your Ingenuity may find out.* 139

P¹ *anet-struck or Shrow-running, is a deprivation of feeling or motion, not stirring any of his Members, but remain in the same form as when he was first stricken. It cometh to a horse several ways, sometimes by choler and phlegm superabundantly mixt together, sometimes from Melancholy blood, being a cold and dry humour, which oppresses and make sick the hinder part of the brain, sometimes of extraordinary heat or cold, or raw digestion, striking into the Veins suddenly; or lastly, from extreme hunger, occasioned by long-fasting; The Signs whereof you have had already, viz. Numbness and want of Motion. If this Disease cometh of heat, You may know it by the hotness of his Breath, and the free fetching of his Wind; If it proceed from cold, then you may know it by his stuffing and poze in his Head.* 6.

P² *alsie or Apoplexie is a Disease depriving the whole Body of Sense, and which is called a General Palsie, and hath no Cure. But when he is deprived but of some part and member of his Body, (and most commonly it is in his Neck) then it is called a particular Palsie; The Signs to know it are, He will go groveling and side-ways like a Crab, carrying his Neck as if it were broken, and go-*

eth crookedly with his Legs, beating his Head against the Walls, and yet forsaketh not his Meat, nor Drink, and his Provender seemeth moist and wet. It proceeds from foul feeding in Fenny Grounds, which breed gross and tough humors, which joyneth with crudities and raw digestion, oppresses the Brain, or it cometh by means of some wound or blow given him upon the Temples 164

Pearl, Pin and VVeb, or any unnatural Spot, or thick Felm over the Eye, cometh by some stroke or blow given him, or from descent of the Syre or Dam. The Pearl is known by a little round thick white spot like a Pearl (from which it hath its Name) growing on the Sight of the Eye. 48

The Pains is a kind of Ulcerous Scab full of Fretting Matterish water, and breedeth in the Pasterns betwixt the Fetlock and the Heel, which cometh for want of clean keeping, and good rubbing, after the Horse hath been journeyed, by means whereof the Sand and dirt remaining in the Hair, fretteth the Skin and Flesh, which cometh to a Scab, and therefore those Horses that have long Hair, and are rough about the Feet, as the Frizeland and Flanders horses are, are soonest infected with this disease, if they be not the cleaner kept, The Signs be these, His Legs will swell with the vehemency and heat that is caused from the venom and filthy water that issueth from the Scabs, for it is so sharp & scalding, that it will scald off the hair & breed scabs so far as it goeth.

74 *What Cures the Scratches, Cures these.*

The Table.

Pestilence, Plague, Murrain, or Garget is all one disease, which is very Infectious and Contagious; It cometh to a horse many wayes, sometimes by over hard riding or labour, whereby a Horse is Surfeited, sometimes by the Contagiousness of the Air, and Evil Vapors and Exalations that springs out of the Earth, after great and sudden Floods, or coming into Fenny or Marshy Grounds, that hath alwayes been bred in pure and wholsom Air. *The Signs to know this disease are these,* twil come suddenly upon him, but after three or four days drooping, he will swell under the Roots of his Eares, like the Swelling of the Vives, and under the Chaul, and come up to his Cheeks through the Malignancy thereof, and become very hard, he will forsake his Meat, and be very sleepy, hanging down his Head in the Manger, his Eyes will be Yellowish, he will Breath short, which will be very hot and offensive, and sometimes he will break forth in a Carbuncle or Boyl in his Groine, as big as a Goose Egg, and his stones will hang limp and flagging, but not alwayes. *If you cannot recover him, but that he dyeth, bury him very deep, that no scent, if possible, may remain on him, to infect the rest.* 70

Q

Quinsie is no other then a sore Throat, which if not carefully taken in time, will soon put a period or end to his dayes. It cometh sometimes by Cold and Phlegmatick Humors settling

there, or for want of Bleeding when he is over-run therewith. 115

Quarters Falle, vide false Quarters. 88
Quick Scab doth putrifie and corrupt the Blood and Flesh, and at last breaketh forth into a loathsome and infectious disease, much like unto the Mange or Leprosie. It cometh by a surfeit taken by over riding, or hard labour, it is called a quick scab, because it runneth from one member to another, for sometimes it will be in the Neck, and at other times in the Brest, sometimes in the Main, and then another time in the Tail 142

Quitter-bone is a hard round Swelling upon the Cronet, between the Heel and the Quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the Foot. It cometh to a Horse many wayes, sometimes by Gravel underneath the Shoo, sometimes by some Bruise, Stub, Prick of a Nail, or the like, which being neglected, will Impostumate and break out about the Hoof, it cometh sometimes also by evil humors which descend down to that place, whercof that Quitter-bone springeth. 105

R:

Red-water is that which issueth from any Wound, Sore or Ulcer, which so long as that remains in them, is doth so poison them, that till it get out, they are not to be Cured. 107

Ring-bone cometh two wayes, Naturally, or Accidentally, Naturally from the Stallion or Mare, Accidentally by some blow

The Table.

blow of a Horse, or any other Accident, the Pain whereof breedeth a vicious slimy Humour, like a Gristle upon the top of the Cronet, and sometimes goeth round about it, which resorting to the Bones that are of their own Nature, cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some Bone, which in process of time, cometh to a Bone; *The Signs to know it are,* There will be a hard swelling round about the Cronet of the Hoof, which will be higher then any place of it; besides, his Hair there will stare and be bristly, and make him halt.

106

Rottenness is to have his inward Part, viz. His Liver, Lights and Lungs so wasted and consumed, that he is not to be recovered by Art.

Rheumatick or waterish Eyes, cometh by the Flux of Humours distilling from the Brain, and sometimes by some stripe received; The Signs to discover it is, The continual watering of the Eye, and his close shutting of his Lids together, accompanied sometimes with a little swelling

48

Rupture, Incording or Burstness is, when the Rim or thin Film or Chaul, which holdeth up his Entrails, be broken or over-strained, or stretched, that the Guts fall down either into his Cod or Flank, which cometh several ways, either by some stripe or blow, or by some strain in leaping over a hedge, ditch or Pale, or by teaching him to bound when he is too young, or by forcing him when he is full to run beyond his strength; or by your sudden stopping him upon uneven ground,

whereby he straddling and slipping his hinder feet, teareth the Rim of his Belly. The Signs to know it are these, He will forsake his Meat, and stand shoring and leaning on that side that he is hurt; And if you search on that side with your hand, betwixt his Stone and his Thigh upwards to the body, and somewhat above the Stone; you shall find the Gut it self big and hard in the feeling, whereas on the other side you shall finde no such thing

131

Rat-tailes is a most venomous disease, and not much unlike to the Scratches of a horse. It cometh to him several ways, sometimes by too much rest, and the Keepers negligence in not rubbing and dressing him well; and by reason of too much rest and good keeping without exercise, the blood corrupting in his body falls down into his Legs, which causeth this disease

122

Retrait is no other then a Prick in the Foot by a Nail, vide Pricks

139

Rheum cometh by Cold, which maketh his Teeth loose, and seem long by the shrinking up of his Gums, which will spoil his feeding, that all the meat will lie in Lumps in his Jaws, vide Colds

8

Rot is a disease so like unto a Dropsy, that it is hard to distinguish it from the same; mistake not this disease for rottenness; for if he be rotten, his Liver and Lights are so putrified, that they are not to be recovered: But this Rot is of the Nature of a Sheeps Rot that is said to be rotten, when his Liver is become foul and tainted, yet we do eat his flesh, and affirm it to be good meat, whereby the Sheep is not rotten,

The Table,

Totten, but hath a Disease called the Rot; It cometh several ways, sometimes to young Horses feeding in wet or Fenny Grounds, and sometimes when they are over-heated in their breaking, whereby their blood is inflamed, putrified and-corrupted, causing Obstructions in the Liver, which cause putrefaction, and so knots and pustils do engender therein, which breedeth this Disease. *The Signes are these,* he will lose his stomach, pant much, beat and heave in his Flanks, swell under his Belly, his Hair will stare, his legs swell, burn and dint when you press it with your finger, and his Coat will not shed at those usual times as other Horses do, and will be so faint and feeble that he will lose his courage and mettle 142

S.

Shedding of the Seed cometh sometimes from abundance and ranknels of the Seed, sometimes by strains, or putting too heavy a load upon his back, and sometimes by weakness of the Stones and Seed-vessels, not being able to retain the Seed, until it be digested and thickned 82

Strain or Sprain, is the sinews stretched beyond their strength, by reason of some slip or wrench 53

Shackle-gall is on the *Pastornes*, Vide Gall 48

Sinbaring is *ateari-g* of the hoof against the ground; It cometh sometimes by means of evil shoeing, lying too flat to his feet, some-times by travelling a

Horse too young before his Feet are hardened, which many times doth occasion a Foundring, sometimes by hardness of the Ground, and high lifting up of the Horses Feet; and those horses that are flat footed, their Cossins are so tender and weak, that they be most subject to this Sorrance. *The Signes to know it is,* he will halt on both his fore-legs, and go stiffely and creeping although he were half Foundred 119

Screw is of the nature of a Splint, only the splint is on the inside of the Knee, and the screw is on the out-side 27

Swellings and Tumors cometh by heats & colds, taken by hard riding or sore labour, whereby the horse being over-much heated, the Grease falleth down and setleth in his legs and other parts, which grow dry and hard, and breedeth splints, spavens, curbs, ring bones and the like sorrances, which in time are no other thing then proper Tumors: Besides, it doth occasion other knots and swellings. 98 first Part

Scratches are of several sorts. and kinds, though they are called by several Names, viz. Crepanches, Rats-tails, Mules, Kib's, pains, &c. being no other then the very scratches which are certain dry scabs, chaps or rifts, that breed between the heel and the pastorn-Joint, and so goeth many times above the pastorn, even up to the very hoof of the hinder legs, but sometimes they are upon all four legs, though not very common

The Table.

common; *They proceed several ways,* sometimes by dry melancholy humors, which fall down upon his legs, sometimes by fuming of his own dung lying under his heels, or near him, sometimes by the negligence of the Groom in not rubbing his heels well, especially after a Journey or hard labour, when he brings in his horse from water, and doth not rub his legs and heels dry from the sand and dirt which doth burn and fret them, and so cause swellings, and those swellings cause scratches; sometimes it cometh by corruption of the blood after great heats and surfeits, taken sometimes by being bred in Fenny, Marish and watery Grounds; and sometimes they come to a horse after a very great sickness taken by surfeit; Or lastly, by overhard riding or labour, whereby his Grease is molten, which falleth down and settleth in his pasterns and foot-locks, which doth occasion this Sorranee. *The signes to know it are these,* the staring, dividing and curling of the Hair; it beginneth first with a dry scab upon his pastern-joints, like unto chaps or chinks, and are in several shapes and formes, sometimes long, sometimes downright, sometimes overthwart, which will cause the legs to swell, and be very gourd, and run with fretting, waterish, matterative and offensive stuff, which will make him go so lame at the first setting out, that he will be hardly able to go. 'Tis good to clip away his long shaggy hair from his pasterns, (if he have any) which will in some measure prevent them, or

or at least curb them.

31

Sit-fast, or Stick-fast is a hard knob, which is as hard as a Horn that grows in a Horses skin, under the Saddle, fast to his Flesh, which cometh by a Saddle-gall or Bruise, which not Impostumating the skin falleth dead, and looketh like a hard piece of Leather.

103

Not Staling or Dinging cometh several ways, sometimes by being too high kept, and but little exercise given him; therefore exercise is as wholsom for a horses health, as good Food is nourishing to his body, sometimes it cometh when you suddenly travel him, when he hath been newly taken from Grass, before his body is emptied of it, and dry meat put into the room thereof, *The Sign to know this grief is,* He will lie down and tumble with extream pain, as if he had the Bots.

107

Salender is a kind of a Scab, and is the same with the Mallender, only the difference is, that the Mallender breedeth upon the bending of the Knee, on the inside of the fore-Legs, and the Salender is bred on the bending of the Hoot in the Legs behind, proceeding both of like causes, and requireth like cure.

38

Stinking Breath is occasioned by means of corrupted and infected Lungs, and you may know it by the smell, vide Lungs Infected.

85

The Table.

A Splint in the beginning is a very Gristle, and will, if let run too long, become to be as hard as a bone, and will be greater or smaller according to the cause of its coming, sometimes as big as a Wall-nut, sometimes as big as a Hazel nut; It is found for the most part upon the inside of the Shank between the Knee and the Foot-lock Joyn, and is very hard and difficult to Cure; It is so painful to him, that it will not only cause him to halt, trip, stumble, but also fall in his Travel; It cometh to him by means of too hard Travel, or fore Labour, whilst he is very young. or by oppressing him with too heavy a burden, whereby the tender Sinews of his Legs are offended; It cometh also Hereditary, from the Sire or Dam being troubled therewith, and is known by the sight and feeling, for if you pinch it with your thumb and finger, he will shrink up his Leg

27

Stumbling cometh two ways; First, Naturally; Secondly, Accidentally: Naturally, by reason that the Sinews of the fore-Legs are somewhat straight, so that he is not able to use his Legs with that freedom and nimbleness he should; which to Cure him of this Disease, is to cut him of the Cords, viz. A Slit made upon the top of his Nose, and with your Cornet raise up the great Sinews, and cut them asunder, and heal it up again with some good Salve, and this will do him no harm but good, for it will give him the use of his Legs so perfectly, that he will seldom or never trip more. Secondly, Accidentally, by either Splint or Wind-galls, or by being foundred, prickt,

stub'd, graveled, Sinew-strained, hurt in the Shoulder or Withers, or by carelessly setting him up when he is too hot, which maketh him go very stiff, which stiffness causes stumbling 140 Stavers or Stagers is a Giddiness in the head, which when it seizeth the Brain, cometh to Madnes; It is caused several ways; sometimes by corrupt blood, or gross and tough humors oppressing the Brain, and is very common to most horses, and very dangerous if not taken in time; sometimes it cometh by turning him out too soon to Grass before he be cold, which by hanging down his head to feed, stirreth and make thin humors that fall down to the head, and so by degrees seizeth the brain, which bringeth this mortal sickness; It cometh also by fore riding and hard labour, which inflames and putrifies the blood, and disorders the whole body; The Signs of this Disease are these, Dimness of sight, reeling and staggering of the horse, who for very pain will beat his head against the walls, and thrust it into his Litter, forsake his meat, and have waterish Eyes

4

Swelled Legs cometh to a horse several ways, sometimes by hard riding or fore labour, when he is too fat, and carelessly putting him to Grass, or setting him up in the Stable too hot, whereby he taketh cold, which causeth the Blood, Grease and Humours to fall down into his Legs, and so cause them to swell, sometimes it cometh by long standing in the stable, when the Planks where his fore-feet stand higher then his hinder;

The Table.

der Feet doth, which uneasie posture causeth the Blood to settle in the hinder Legs, which causeth them to swell.

47

Stiffed, This Malady cometh to a Horse Accidentally, viz. Either by some strain in leaping, or by a slip in the stable, or on his Travel, or by some stroke or blow with a horse, which either puts out the bone, or much hurts or strains the Joynt, *The Sign to know it is*, by the dislocated bone, bearing it self out, which will make him grow lame, and unwilling to touch the ground, but only with his Toe, till it be put in again.

136

Stone cometh many wayes, sometimes from the weaknes of the Bladder, occasioned by gross and bad Humors, stopping the water conduit, or principally by violent labour, or immoderate riding, sometimes it cometh by foul matter descending from the Liver and Spleen, which falling down into the Kidneys and Bladder, settleth there; whereby there groweth in the Mouth of the Conduit, certain hard inflamed Knobs, which stopeth his Urine, and causeth him to Stale with great pain and trouble, by reason the Sinews and Pozes about the Neck of the Bladder are benumbed, which taketh away the sense and feeling of the Bladder, sometimes it cometh by keeping a Horse in his Travel too long from Staling, for his Water being over-heat by Exercise, doth conglutinate & become so viscous and thick, that nature cannot discharge it self so freely as it should do, and being pent up too long in his Kidneys,

engendereth Gravel, sometimes red, and sometimes grey, which falling down into the Conduits, by mixture of Phlegm and gross Humors, is there brought by conglutination, to become a hard stone, which stoppeth the Passage of the Urine, so as he will not be able to Piss or Stale, *The Signs to know this Distemper, needs no more then this*, That he would fain Piss, but cannot, and that many times drop by drop

109

String-halt is a sudden twitching or snatching up of his hinder Leg much higher then the other, and cometh most an end to the best Mettled Horses. It cometh by taking cold suddenly after hard riding or sore labour, especially if you wash him when he is too hot, which will chill his blood, and so stupifie and benumb his Sinews, that it takes away the sense and feeling of that Member.

54 and 137

Strangury or Strangullion is when a Horse is provoked to Stale often, and avoideth nothing but a few drops; It cometh to him several wayes, sometimes by hard riding or sore labour, which heats and makes sharp the Urine, sometimes by hot meats and drinks, sometimes by Ulceration of the Bladder, or by means of some Imposthume in the Liver and Kidneys, which being broken, the Matter falleth down into the Bladder, and with the sharpness thereof, causeth a continual provocation of Pissing, which will be with such pain, that he will whisk, wry, and beat about his Tail as he Pisseth.

109

B b b

T.e

The Table.

The Strangle is not as some suppose a Quin-
zey, but an Inflammation of the
Throat, proceeding from some Chole-
rick or bloody Fluxion, which cometh
out of the branches of the Throat-
veins into those parts, and there breed-
eth some hot Inflammation, stirred up
by a hard cold Winter, or by cold
taken a ter hard riding or labour. 'Tis
a great and hard swelling between the
Hortes nether chaps, upon the roots of
his Tongue, and about his Throat,
which swelling, if it be not prevented,
will stop his Wind-pipe, and so strangle
or choke him; *The Signes to know this
disease are,* His Temples of his Head
will be hollow; his Tongue will
hang out of his Mouth, his Head and
Eyes will swell, and the passage of his
Throat so stoppt that he can neither eat
nor drink, and his breath will be very
hot. 102

Swayed in the Back cometh several ways,
sometimes by some great strain, slip or
heavy burden, sometimes by turning
him too hastily round; His Grief com-
menly lieth upon these kind of straines
and wrenches, in the lower part of the
back below his short ribs, and directly
between his Fillets. You may perceive
it by the reeling and rowling of his
hinder parts in his going, and be ready
to fall to the ground by his frequent
swaying backward and side-long, and
when he is down, 'tis a great deal of
trouble for him to rise again. 143

*Shoulder-Pincht cometh either by labour-
ing or straining him too young, or by
putting too great a burden upon his*

*back. You may know it by the narrow-
ness of the Breast, and by the Con-
sumption of the flesh of the shoulders,*
insomuch as the fore-part of the shoul-
der bone will stick out, and be higher
then the flesh. And if it be of a long
standing, he will be very hollow upon
the brisket, towards the Arm-holes,
and will go wider beneath at the feet,
then above at the Knees. The Cure I
set down here because it is not in the
place of Cures; 'Tis this, Give him
a Slit with a sharp Knife an inch long,
upon both sides, an inch under the shoul-
der bone; then with a large Quill put
into the Slit, blow up first one shoulder,
and then the other, as big as you can pos-
sibly, even up to the Withers, and with
your hand strike the wind equally into
every place of the shoulders, and when
they be both full, beat all the windy places,
with a good Hazl-wand over all
the shoulder; then with a flat Scife of
Iron loosen the skin within from the
flesh; Then rowel the two slits or cuts,
with two round rowels made of the up-
per leather of an old Shoe, with a hole in
the midst, that the corruption may issue
forth, and let the rowels be three inches
broad, and put in flat and plain within
the Cut; Then make a Charge and lay
upon the same. Look in the Table for
a Charge, and there you may take
your Charge.

*Shoulder-wrench or strain cometh several
ways, sometimes by turning or stop-
ping too suddenly upon some uneven
ground, sometimes by running hastily
out at some door, sometimes by slip-
ping*

The Table.

ping or sliding in the Stable or abroad, sometimes by the stroke of another Horse, and sometimes by falls on the Planks or slippery ground. You shall perceive it by his trayling his leg upon the ground close after him.

Shoulder-splaiting or shoulder torn, *cometh* by some dangerous sliding, either abroad or at home, whereby the shoulder parteth from the Breast, and so leaves an open Rift, not in the skin, but in the flesh and film next under the skin, which maketh him so lame that he is not able to go. You may know it by the trayling of his leg after him in his going. 158

Shoulder-pight is, when the shoulder-point or pitch of the shoulder is displaced by some great fall, rack or strain; *You may know it by this*, His shoulder-point will stick out further then his fellow, and besides he will Halt downright. 16.

Spaven blood or bone, *vide* Blood or Bone spaven.

Shrow-running, *vide* Planet-struck

T.

Tongue-hurt *cometh* by accident, or with a Bit, Halter or the like 120

Tetter, Flying-worm or Ring-worm is a very evil sovrance, which ranneth up and down the skin of a Horses Body, from whence it bears its Name; *It cometh to him several ways*, sometimes by heat in the blood, which engendereth a sharp and hot humour; sometimes by bad and foul feeding; it is most commonly found in his Rump, which runneth down the Joynts till it comes into

his Tail, and if it continue there long it will turn to a Canker; But yet sometimes it will tetter upon some fleshy part of his body, which will so trouble him with itching and rubbing against walls and posts, that he will bring away the hair, yea, and the skin and flesh also with his teeth, if he can come at it, so violent is his itching. You may know it by the falling away of the hair, by his continual rubbing, but if it get into the Joynt between the top of the Rump and the tail, then it is known by a scab, which you may feel with your finger, and if you scrape or pick it away, there will come out of it by little and little a thin water, which being let long to run, will in time run into his Tail, and become a Canker, as I said before. 117

Trunchions are wormes in shape, short and thick, and of a pretty bigness, which have black and hard heads, vide more for Bots; and there you may finde all the kinds of them that do engender in a horses body. 61

V.

Vives.

121.

W.

Wind-broken or broken wind *cometh to a horse* when you let him stand long in the stable without exercise, and foul food, whereby gross and thick humors are drawn into his body to abundantly, that sticking to the hollow places of the Lungs stop up his Wind-pipe, that the Wind cannot get backward nor forward; sometimes it cometh to a horse when you run him off his wind, when

Bbb 2

no

The Table,

he is very fat and foul, you may know
by his heaving and drawing together
of his Flanks, and by blowing wide his
Nostrils. 16

Wart or spungy Excretion growing near
to the Eye, doth come from condensed
Phlegm residing there, which in time
causeth the Eye, either to consume or to
grow little, if it be not remedied. 140

A Wen is a hard rising out of the flesh,
like a Tumor or Swelling, and are of
several Sizes, sometimes great, some-
times small, some are pain'ul, and some
are not painful; They proceed from
gross and vitious humors, binding to-
gether in some sick part of the body,
but most commonly by some stroke,
bruise, blow or a stone thrown at that
place; it is outwardly flesh, but to-
wards the root it is matterative. 41

Wind-galls are bladders full of corrupt
Gelly, which being let forth is thick, and
of the colour of the Yolk of an Egg; they
are sometimes great, and sometimes
small, and grow upon each side of the
fet-lock Joynts upon all four legs, and
are so painful to him, especially in the
Summer-season, when the weather is
hot, and the ways hard, that they make
him not only halt downright, but some-
times fall; They come for the most
part from extream labour and heat,
whereby the humors being dissolved,
do flow and resort into the hollow
places about the nether Joynts, and
there settle, which is the occasion of
this evil malady. 123

Wolfs-teeth are two small teeth growing
in the upper Jaws, next unto the great

grinding teeth, which are so painful to
him, that he cannot endure to chew his
meat, but is forced either to let it fall out
of his Mouth, or to keep it still half
chewed. 128

Wormes vide Bots, and there you may find
all sorts of them that breed in a horses
body, and how you may distinguish them
one from another. 61

Wind-cholick, vide Cholick.

Wrench in a horses back. See Flanks.

The Womb of a Mare is subject to many
diseases, viz. Ascent, Descent, Falling
out, Convulsion, Barrenness, Abor-
tion, &c. She may be barren through
the untemperateness of the Womb or
Matrix, as for that it is too hot and
fiery, or else too cold and moist, or else
too dry, or else too short, or too nar-
row, or having the Neck thereof turn-
ed awry, or by means of some obstru-
ction or stopping in the Matrix, and
that the Mare is too fat, or too lean, or
sometimes for want of being well hor-
fed. The Cure is, Take a good handful
of Leeks well stamped in a Mortar, with
half a Glass full of white Wine, then
put to it twelve Flies called Cantharides,
then strain altogether with a sufficient
quantity of water, that may serve her
therewith two days together, by pouring
the same into her nature with a Horn or
Glisten-Pipemade of purpose, and at the
end of three days next following, offer
the Horse unto her that should cover her,
and immediately after she is covered,
wash her Nature twice together with
cold water. Or take Nitrum, Sparrows
dung and Turpentine, of each a like
quantity

The Table.

quantity wrought together, and made like a Suppository, and put into her Nature, causeth her to desire the Horse, and also to conceive.

Y:

Yellows in a horse is the same that the Physicians do call the Jaundice in a man, and there are two kinds of them, The yellow and the black, the yellow being moist, and the black dry; the yellow proceeds from the overflowing of the Gall occasioned by choler, and the black cometh from the overflowing of the Spleen, proceeding from Melancholy, which are both dangerous infirmities, but the black is most deadly and mortal. The yellow is discovered by the changing his natural colour from white to yellow, viz. The Balls of his Eyes, The Tongue, the inside of his Lips and inward parts of his Nostrils are coloured yellow; The black Jaundice is discovered by the quite contrary symptomes; for having this disease, the whites of his Eyes, Tongue, Mouth and Lips will be of a duskyish colour, and not so clear and sanguine as before. And though this distinction of the yellow and black Jaundice be strange to some Farriers, yet it is most certain, that when a Horse dieth of the Yellows, he dieth of the black Yellows, for when it cometh unto the case of Mortality, then are all the in-

ward parts converted to blackness, and the yellow substance is clean mastered. The Origen of this Malady cometh principally from unnatural heats given him by hard riding or labour, which inflames the Liver, Gall, Blood and Spleen, which causeth choler to have the sovereignty and dominion over the humors, which occasions this disease, which endeth in a sudden death.

Yard mattering or mattering of the yard, cometh most commonly in covering time, by his over-freeness in spending upon Mares, when the Horse and Mare are both too hot, doth burn them, giving him the Running of the Reins, as we truly term it, *The Signs to know it are*, The falling down of yellow Matter from the Yard, and a swelling at the end thereof, and when he staeth, he will do it with a great deal of pain, and cannot well draw up his Yard again.

Yard Fallen down, or Falling down of the Yard, cometh to him for want of strength, so draw it up within the Sheath, but lets it hang down between his Legs; It is occasioned either through the weakness of that Member, or by means of some Resolution in the Muscles and Sinews serving the same, caused by some violent slip, strain or stroke in the Back, or else by some great weariness, and tiring.

84

THE

The Table

THE Nature, Temperature and Vertue of most Simples set down Alphabetically, from page 1. to 54.

A.

Aches, Numbness or any swelling, coming of any cold cause; Things good in general for the Cure of them 1

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the same. ib.

St. Antonies Fire, things good in general for the Cure of it, 2

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the same. ib.

Anticor or Heart-sickness, things good in general for the cure of it. 3

Particular Receipts for the cure of the same. ib.

Attaint upper or nether, things good in general for the cure of it. ib.

Particular receipts for the cure of it. ib.

Auberry cured. 41 and 104

Aristes, vide Rats-tails. 122

Apoplexie, vide Palfey.

B.

Broken wind; 16

Breath short. 17

Bone-spaven or Blood-spaven, vide Spavens.

Bruises or swellings, things good in general for the cure of them, 46

Particular receipts for the cure of the same. ib.

Blood-hotthen Eyes, vide Eyes, their several infirmities to cure. 48

Back wrenched, weak or swayed to cure. 59

Barbes cured 60

Botts or Wormes, things good in general for the destroying of them. 61

Particular receipts for the same. 62

Bleeding, things good in general to staunch it. 63

Particular receipts for the same. 64

Binding things, vide Lask or Looseness stopped. 65

Bloody-Flux, things good in general for the cure of it. 66

Particular receipts for the same. 67

Biting of a mad Dog, things good in general for the cure of it. 68

Particular receipts for the cure of the same. 68 and 70.

Barrenness in Mares. 84

Good-letting, to cure the swelling of it, though it be never so hard. 124

Burnings or scaldings of all sorts, things good in general for the cure of them. 125

Particular receipts for the same. ib.

Bursting or Rupture, things good in general for the cure of it. 131

Botch in the Groin to cure. 132 and 133

Blisters cured. 134

Bones broken and out of Joynts to cure. 135

Bladders or Flappes cured. 159

C.

Cramp or Convulsions of the Sinews, things good in general for the Cure of them. 7

Particular receipts for the same. ib.

Colds or Coughs wet or dry, things good in general for the cure of them. 8

Particular receipts for the same. from p. 8. to 16.

Curb

The Table.

Curb, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 29
Particular receipts for the same. ib.
 Cib'd heels, *vide scratches, for what cures them cures this.*
 Crepances or Rats-tails, *vide scratches, for they cure this disease also.*
 Camery or Frounce, *things good to cure it.* 60
 Canker in the Mouth, Nose, or any other part of the body, *things good in general for the cure of it;* 60 and 74
Particular receipts for the cure of it. 61
 Canker, *vide Fistula.* 75
 Colt-evil, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 83
 Consumption, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 85 and 87
 Cords, or cutting of a horse of them. 94 and 140
 Cholick, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 111
Particular receipts for the Cholick or Stone. ib.
 Crow-scab, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 118
 Cost venels to help. 124 and 126
 Casting forth of his drink, *what is good to help it.* 128
 Crick in the Neck, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 120
 Crest fallen, *how to raise it again.* ib.
 Cods swelled, *things good in general for the Cure of them.* 121
 Cods swelled, *a Charge for the cure of them.* ib.
 Cooling Simples in general. 139
 Clits and Cracks in the heels to cure. 141
 Canker in the Mouth. 159

D.

Drawers out of any scab, thorn or iron, either out of the foot, or any other part of the body. 93
 Driers up in general of old sores, and of all manner of moist humours what soever. 94
 Dropsey, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 112
Particular receipts for the same. ib.
 Diseases in a horse to prevent the whole year. 127
 Diseases of the Eyes. 48

E.

Eaters of proud flesh, *things good for the cure of it in general.* 40
An Oynment for the same purpose. ib.
 Eyes watery, Eyes blood-shotten, Eyes dim, Moon-Eyes, Wart in the Eye, Inflammation in the Eyes, Pearl, Pin or Web, *things good in general for the Cure of all these diseases.* 48
Particular receipts for the cure of them, from 51. to 53

F.

Falling evil, *vide Planet-struck.*
 Foundering, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 35
Particular receipts for the cure of the same, from 36 to 38.
 Falling of the Fundament, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 67
Particular receipts for the same. 68
 Fistula, *things good in general for the cure of it.* 75
Particular receipts for the cure of the same 76
 Feavers, *things good in general for the cure of them.* 77 and 78
 Farcin, *things good in general for the cure of it inwardly* ib. *Things*

The Table.

<i>Things good in General for the Cure of it Outwardly.</i>	79	<i>Graveling, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	112
<i>Particular Receipts for the Cure of it Inwardly and Outwardly.</i>	ib.	<i>Grease molten, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	113
<i>Frush Running or Rotten, Things good in general for the Cure of it.</i>	81	<i>Particular receipts for the cure of the same.</i>	ib. and 124
<i>False Quarters, Things good for the Cure of them in General.</i>	88	<i>Grease fallen into the legs to cure</i>	ib.
<i>Frounce or Camery.</i>	60	<i>Grease to purge away.</i>	124
<i>Frenzy or Madnels.</i>	104	<i>Gigges, Bladder or Flappes cured.</i>	159
<i>Flyes, Things good in general to keep them away from coming to disturb a Horse by lighting upon his Head.</i>	116	H.	
<i>Fig in a Horses Foot, Things good in General for the Cure of it.</i>	133	<i>Hide-bound, Things good in General for the Cure of it.</i>	22
<i>Falling Evil Cured, which is no other then the Falling-sickness.</i>	141	<i>Particular Receipts for the Cure of the same.</i>	23
<i>General things to be given Inwardly for it.</i>	ib.	<i>Halting vide strains of all sorts.</i>	
<i>Foundering in the Body to Cure.</i>	143	<i>Hair to grow.</i>	75
<i>Flappes Cured.</i>	159	<i>Head purged, vide Perfumes in my first part.</i>	page 149 150
<i>Flanks, vide Wrench in the back.</i>	59	<i>Hoof-loose to Cure.</i>	88
G.		<i>Hoof-casting to Cure.</i>	89
<i>Glaunders, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	18	<i>Hoof-bound to Cure.</i>	ib.
<i>Particular receipts for the cure of the same, from p. 18, to p. 22.</i>		<i>Hoofs to preserve and to make them grow.</i>	91 and 92
<i>Glaunders, the best receipt that is for the Cure of it.</i>	157	<i>Particular Receipts for the same.</i>	91
<i>Galled back, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	44	<i>Hoof-brittle to Cure.</i>	ib.
<i>Particular receipts for the cure of the same.</i>	45	<i>Hoof to soften that is too hard.</i>	ib.
<i>Galls by Spur or Shackle to cure.</i>	48	<i>Hoof-hardened, if they be too soft.</i>	92
<i>Gall overflowed, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	81	<i>Humour dissolved.</i>	96
<i>Gangreens, things good for the Cure of them both inwardly and outwardly.</i>	82	<i>Humour to stop.</i>	ib.
<i>Griping of the Guts, Cholick or Stone.</i>	111	<i>Humour to drive back.</i>	ib.
		<i>Humour made thin.</i>	97
		<i>Humour Purged.</i>	ib.
		<i>Hair-shedding, Things good in General to prevent it.</i>	ib.
		<i>Hair to take away, things good in General for it.</i>	ib.
		<i>Particular Receipts for the same.</i>	98
		<i>Hair made Black.</i>	ib.
		<i>Hair made Yellow.</i>	ib.

The Table.

Hair made to grow, things good in General for it.	ib.	Lampas cured.	60
Particular Receipts to bring hair.	ib.	Lask or Looiness stopped, things good in general for the same.	65
Hardness mollified, things good for it in General.	114	Particular receipts for the same.	ib.
Hungry-Evil, things good in General for the cure of it.	128	Lungs, things good in general to cure the defect of them.	85
Hens-dung swallowed, or any other Venomous thing, Things good in General for the cure of it.	ib.	Particular receipts for the same.	86
Particular Receipts for the same.	ib.	Liver preserved, things good in general for it.	87
Hoof-bonny cured,	133	Lethargy or sleeping Evil, things good in general for the cure of it.	104
Hardness and Knots in the flesh cured.	134	Lice to kill, things good in general to destroy them.	115
Hot Simples in General.	138	Leprosie or mange, things good in general for the cure of it.	116
Hip-shot Horse cured.	142	Particular receipts for the same.	ib.
I.		M.	
Joynts and Sinews, things good in General for them.	1	Mules vide scratches, for what cures them, cures this.	
Impostumations hot or cold, things good in General for the cure of them.	99	Mallender to cure in general.	38
Particular Receipts to ripen them.	100	Particular receipts for the cure of it.	39
Impostumated Eares, things good in general for the cure of them.	101	Mattering of the Yard, to cure.	83
Particular receipts for the cure of the same.	ib.	Mares, what to give them to cause them to Foal easily, as also what to give them to make them cast Foal.	84
K.		Malt long in the Hoof, things good for it in general.	93
Kidneys bruised, the cure.	115	Madness in a Horse, things good in general for the cure of it.	104
Knots in the Jeynts, Hardness, Cramps, or Inflammations, things good in general to cure them.	134	Molten-Grease cured, things good for it in general.	113 and 124
Kib'd-heels, wide scratches.		Particular receipts for it.	ib.
L.		Mouth sore, things good for the cure of it in general.	115
Legs swelled, things good in general to cure them.	47	Mange to cure in general.	116
Particular receipts for the same.	ib.	Particular receipts for the same.	ib.
Loosening things in general, vide my first part.	page 103	Millet cured.	133
Lameness of all sorts to cure.	53	N.	
		Navel-gall to cure in general.	103
		C c c	

The Table.

<i>Particular Receipts for the same.</i>	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Particular Receipts for the cure of the same.</i>	<i>ib.</i>
O.			
<i>An Oyntment for the killing and shealing of all manner of scabs.</i>	34	<i>Quinsie, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	115
<i>Oyntments, things good in general to put into them.</i>	42	<i>Quick Scab to cure.</i>	142
<i>Observations upon dressing of Wounds.</i>	43	R.	
<i>Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen opened.</i>	87	<i>Running of the Reins, vide Yard Matting.</i>	
P.			
<i>Planet-struck, or Falling-Evil, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	6	<i>Ring-Bone, things good to cure it in general.</i>	105
<i>Particular receipts for the same.</i>	ib.	<i>Particular Receipts to cure the same.</i>	ib.
<i>Pains with scratches, for what cures that, cures this.</i>	31 and 74	<i>Red Water, cured.</i>	107
<i>Purpiveness cured.</i>	17	<i>Rat-Tailles, cured.</i>	122
<i>Poyson of all sorts Expelled.</i>	69	<i>Ring-worm, Scab, or Tetters, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	117
<i>Particular receipts for the cure of it.</i>	70	<i>Particular Receipts to cure the same.</i>	118
<i>Plague or Pestilence, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	ib.	<i>Rupture or Burstiness, to cure in general.</i>	131
<i>Particular Receipts for the same.</i>	71	<i>Rot in a Horse.</i>	142
<i>Pissing or Staling of Blood, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	ib.	S.	
<i>Particular Receipts for the same.</i>	72	<i>Stavers, Head-Ach, or Frenzy, things good in general for the cure of them.</i>	4
<i>Poll-Evil, things good to cure it in general.</i>	73	<i>Particular receipts for the cure of them.</i>	ib.
<i>Particular Receipts to cure the same.</i>	ib.	<i>Shortness of Breath, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	17
<i>A Plaster to dry up swellings, wounds, galls, splints, or bladder in or about wounds.</i>	96	<i>Particular Receipts to cure the same.</i>	18
<i>Pallie cured.</i>	104	<i>Stomach hot, things good in general to cool it.</i>	24
<i>A Plaster to keep in a taint or salve.</i>	123	<i>Stomach cold, things good in general to heat it.</i>	ib.
<i>A Purgation for a Horse that is sick of Grass or Costiveness.</i>	124	<i>Spaven-blood, to cure.</i>	25
<i>Prick in the Foot of a Horse, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	139	<i>Spaven-bone, to cure.</i>	26 and 124
<i>Pearl in the Eye.</i>	48	<i>Splint, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	27
Q.			
<i>Quarters False, General things good for the cure of them.</i>	83	<i>Particular Receipts for the cure of the same.</i>	ib.
<i>Quitter-Bone, things good in general for the cure of it.</i>	105	<i>Scratches, things good in general for the cure of them.</i>	31
		<i>Particular Receipts for the cure of the same, from</i>	page 31 to page 34
			Shealing

The Table.

Shealing of Scabs <i>about a Horses Legs,</i> <i>the cure.</i>	34	Stiffed horse cured.	136
Salves and Oyntments for Wounds.	42 and 43	String-halt cured.	137
Swelled Legs to cure.	p:47. and p:58.	Stumbling cured	140
Spur-gall'd or Shackle-gall'd	48	Swaying in the back cured, you may find in weaknes of the back more of this nature.	143
Sellender or Mallender.	p.38. and 39	Splating of the shoulder, which is a torn shoulder cured.	158
Strains of all sorts to cure. from p.53. to 58	72	Shoulder pight, things good in general for the cure of it.	ib.
Scuring or Lask stopped.	72	Shoulder pinch. See the Alphabetical Table that shews you where the diseases of a horse do grow, and there you may find the cure.	ib.
Spleen, what it is, and things good in gene- ral for the cure of it.	82	Sinews cut, bruised or shrunk,	119
Shedding of the seed, things good in gene- ral for the cure of it.	83	T.	
String-halt to cure.	94	Tired horses, things good in general for the cure of them.	23
Swellings dried up.	96	Particular receipts to cure the same.	24
Strangles, things good in general for the cure of it.	102	Throat sore.	115
Particular receipts for the same.	ib.	Tettar, scab or ring-worm, to cure in ge- neral.	117
Shoulder-sprain.	103	Particular receipts for the same.	118
Sit-fast, things good in general for the cure of it.	ib.	Tongue of a horse to cure in general.	120
Not staling or pissing of a horse, things good in general to cure it.	107	Particular receipts to cure the same.	ib.
Particular receipts for the same.	108	Teeth pained and loose to cure.	128
Strangury or Strangles, general things good for it.	109	Torn shoulder.	158 V.
Stone, things good in general to cure it.	ib.	Ulcer and Leprosie to cure.	75
Particular receipts for the same.	110	Urine provoked.	107
Surfeit, a receipt for the cure of it.	114	Ulcers in the Kidneys to cure.	108
Scab, Tettar or Ring-worm, things good to cure them in general.	117	Venomed things to cure.	120 and 128
Particular receipts for the same.	118	Ulcers to cure in general.	ib.
Surbated, general things good to cure it.	119	Ulcer or Canker in the Nose, to cure in ge- neral.	121
Swelling by blood-letting, though it be ne- ver so hard.	124	Vives to cure in general.	ib.
Spaven bone to cure, vide Bone spaven		Particular receipts to cure the same.	122
Scaldings by shot, gun-powder or wild- fire.	125	Unguentum Theatarum, which is good for any Ach in the Joyns, grief in the Hip, stiffing place, legs, shoulder, pastorn, or any other part of the legs.	138
Particular receipts for the same.	ib.		

The Table,

W.	VVart spungy, cured.	140
Wind broken, things good in general for it	VVomb, The diseases of it. See the Cure	
16	in the Alphabetical Table, that shews	
Particular Receipts for the cure of the same.	you where the diseases of a horse do grow,	
16 and 17	either inwardly or outwardly in any part	
A Water to cleanse a sore, or wound, as also a Receipt for a Puncture, or green	of his body.	Y.
Wound.	Yellows General, things good for the cure	5
40	of it.	6
Wen or Excreſſion taken away, arising in	Particular receipts for the same.	83
the Flesh.	Yard Mattering, to cure.	84
41	Yard Falling, General things good for the	126
Wounds in general, and what herbs are	cure of it.	The way of gathering, drying, and preserving
good to put into Wound Salves.	Simple, and their Juices, from	page 144 to page 146
42.	page 144 to page 146	The way of making and keeping all necessary
Of Wounds and Observations in dressing	Compounds, from p. 146 to p. 151	Hot Medicaments appropriate to the parts
of them.	of the body, from page 151 to p. 153	Cold Medicaments, appropriate to several
43	uses, from page 153 to p. 154.	The Properties of Purgings Medicaments.
Wrench in the Back, to cure.	page 154	The Properties of altering Medicaments.
59	134	
Wormes General, things good to kill		
them.		
61		
Particular receipts for the same purpose.		
62		
Wind-Chollick, general things good for		
it.		
122		
Wind-galls, things good in general for the		
cure of them.		
123		
Particular receipts good for the same.		
ib.		
128		
Wolfes-teeth to cure.		
VVithers Rung, to cure.		
130		
VVounds with the shot of Gunpowder cured.		
red.		
134		



F. I. N. I. S.

ERRORS that have Escaped the Press in the Second Part of the Experienced Farrier

There is a Hand wanting in the Margent against the Table of the Price, Vertue and Value of the principal Drugs, both Simple and Compound, belonging to Farring.

ERRORS in the Table of the Simples.

A Hand wanting in the Margent Page 1. page 3. line 35. for secure, read secure, p. 6. l. 33. f. fore, r. fore, p. 14. the next page following is 1 make 15. p. 21 make 19. p. 19. make 21. p. 20. make 22. p. 25. make 23. p. 26 make 24. p. 24. make 26. p. 42. make 40. p. 43. make 41. p. 42. l. 37. f. ib. r. ib. p. 35. make 44. p. 48. make 46. p. 49. make 47. p. 40. make 48. p. 41. make 49.

ERRORS in the Second Part of Cures.

Page 1. A Hand wanting in the Margent against General things good for the Joynts and Sinews, p. 2. A Hand wanting in the Margent against General things for the Cure of St. Anthems fire, p. 17. l. 10 f. mulier wort, r. master wort, p. 71. l. 35. f. Petroclum r. Petroclum, p. 8. l. 35. f. Herb. grasis r. Herbe-grais p. 12. A Hand wanting in the Margent against General things good for a Hide-bound Horle, p. 24 l. 3. f. Arsmart, r. Arsmart, p. 42. A Hand wanting in the Margent against Oynments and Salves for Green Wounds, p. 59. l. 11 f. week, r. weeks, ib. p. 15. f. r. r. is ib. p. 16. f. Verdegreafe, r. Verdegreafe, ib. p. 12. f. comolida, r. consolida, p. 53. l. 36. f. multipus, r. multipus, p. 67. l. 12. f. Crima r. Crimor, p. 69 l. 30. f. Chamepyllis r. Chamepilis, p. 73. A Hand wanting in the Margent against the Cure for the Poll-Evil, ib. p. l. 17 f. spavin r. Savin, p. 78. l. 9. f. good r. good, p. 81. l. 27. f. powder, r. powder, ib. p. l. 28. f. pip Tow, r. dip Tow, p. 89. A Hand wanting in the Margent against the Cure of the Lungs, p. 116. l. 3. leave out flake, p. 119. A Hand wanting in the Margent against the Cure of the Wind-Collick, p. 123. l. 18. so lay, is twice printed, put out one of them, p. 124. A Hand wanting in the Margent against the Cure of a Horse that is Swelled after blood-letting, p. 130 l. 18. f. shin Turse, r. Thin Turse, p. 136. l. 29. f. Fox gloves, r. Fox-gloves, p. 153. l. 5. f. red-Vishes r. red-Jetates, p. 154 l. 13. f. Enfular, r. Enula, p. 157. A Hand wanting in the Margent against the Cure for the Glauanders,



BOOKS Printed for *Richard Northcott*, at the
Mariner and Anchor, on the lower end of *New*
Fish-street Hill, and at his Shop adjoining to
St. Peters Alley in *Cornhill*.

The *Mariners Magazine*, or *STURMY's* Mathematical and Practical ARTS,
containing the Description, Making and Use for the most useful Instruments
for all Artifts and Navigators, the Art of Navigation at large, a new way of
Surveying Land, Gauging, Gunnery, Aftronomy and Dyalling, Performed
Geometrically, Instrumentally, and by Calculation.

The Compleat Academy, *A Drawing Book*.

Wright's Errors in Navigation detected and Corrected.

Mr. Norwoods Seamans Companion.

The Countrey Copy-Book.

Dr. Newtons Scale of Interest.

Dr. Newtons Art of Practical Gauging.

Mr. Cravens Eternaitia, or a Treatise on Eternity:

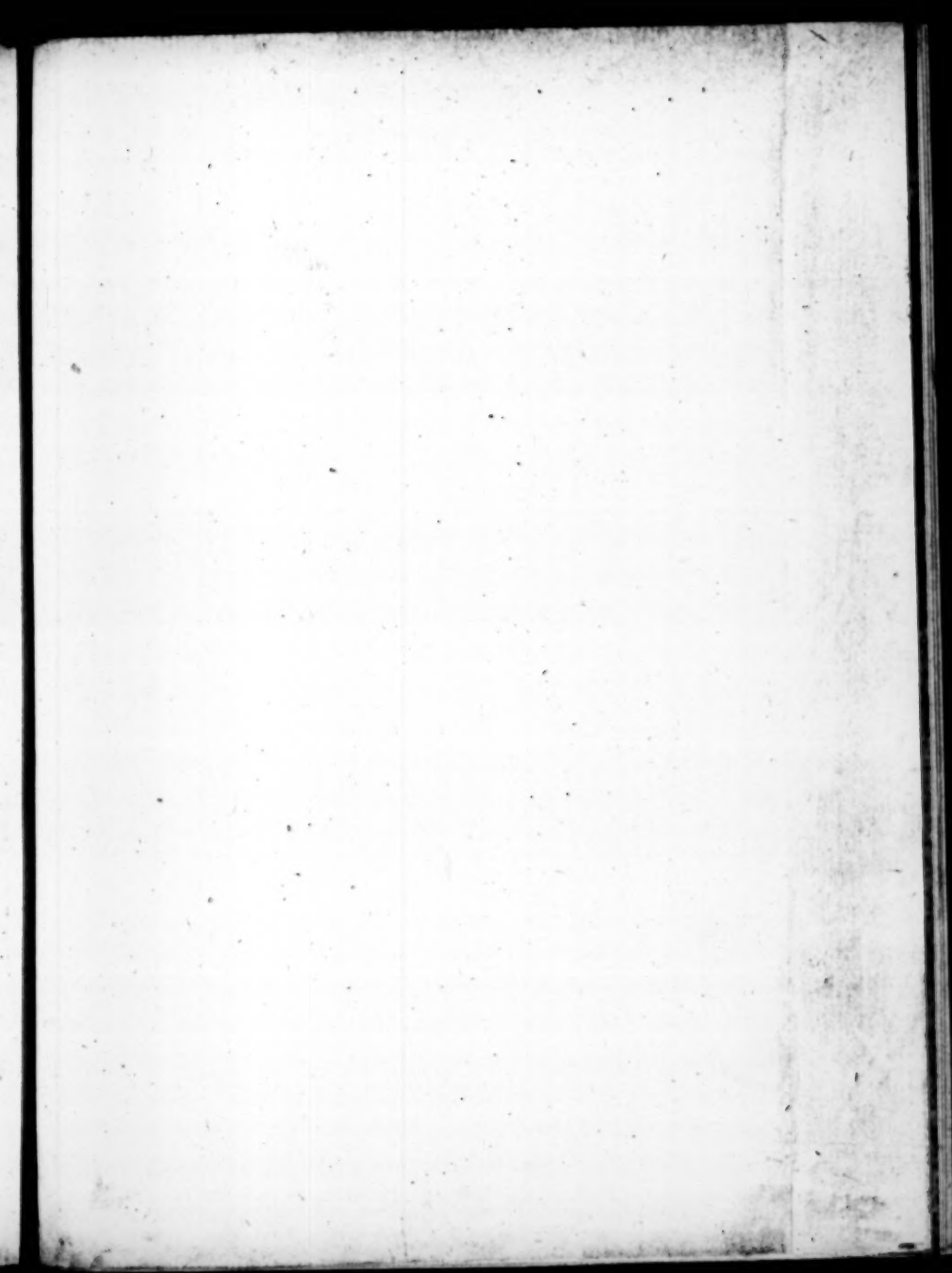
The *English Rogue* Compleat in four parts.

Mr. Philips his Mathematical Manual.

Jehosaphat, being the History of the Five Wise Philosophers.

Where you may also be Furnished with all other Sea-books.

F I N I S.





Alor: opt: ʒij
Cadiar: lond ʒij
Galap: pulv: ʒij

} Purgatio Equina.